

VISIT...

LANZAROTE  
*Caliente*.COM

#### PRAISE FOR *ATHENAZE*

"The finest textbook for teaching ancient Greek currently available. Its reading-based approach combined with a strong grammar component and its incorporation of cultural material are the text's primary strengths. The grammar is presented in a systematic but not overwhelming manner."

—Douglas Domingo-Forasté, *California State University, Long Beach*

"Part of the genius of *Athenaze* may be its ability to be as successful at the secondary level as it is with undergraduates."

—F. Carter Philips, *Vanderbilt University*

Combining the best features of traditional and modern methods, *Athenaze: An Introduction to Ancient Greek, 2/e*, provides a unique course of instruction that allows students to read connected Greek narrative right from the beginning and guides them to the point where they can begin reading complete classical texts. Carefully designed to hold students' interest, the course begins in Book I with a fictional narrative about an Attic farmer's family placed in a precise historical context (432–431 B.C.). This narrative, interwoven with tales from mythology and the Persian Wars, gradually gives way in Book II to adapted passages from Thucydides, Plato, and Herodotus and ultimately to excerpts of the original Greek of Bacchylides, Thucydides, and Aristophanes' *Acharnians*. Essays on relevant aspects of ancient Greek culture and history are also provided.

#### NEW TO THE SECOND EDITION

- **Short passages from Classical and New Testament Greek** in virtually every chapter
- **The opening lines of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*** toward the end of Book II
- **New vocabulary and more complete explanations of grammar**, including material on accents
- **Many new exercises** and additional opportunities for students to practice completing charts of verb forms and paradigms of nouns and adjectives
- **Updated Teacher's Handbooks for Books I and II** containing translations of all stories, readings, and exercises; detailed suggestions for classroom presentation; abundant English derivatives; and additional linguistic information
- Offered for the first time, **Student Workbooks for Books I and II** that include self-correcting exercises, cumulative vocabulary lists, periodic grammatical reviews, and additional readings

#### ABOUT THE AUTHORS

**Maurice Balme** is retired Head of Classics, Harrow School, UK. He is the author or coauthor of numerous books, including the *Oxford Latin Course, 2/e* (OUP, 1996).

**Gilbert Lawall** is Professor of Classics Emeritus, University of Massachusetts at Amherst. He has authored, coauthored, and edited many Latin and Greek textbooks for schools and colleges, including *Ecce Romani* (1995).

COVER DESIGN: MARY BELIBASAKIS  
COVER ART: ELIOT PORTER, *TEMPLE OF NIKE, ACROPOLIS, ATHENS, GREECE, MARCH 6, 1970*, DYE TRANSFER PRINT, P1990.51.2597.1 © 1990, AMON CARTER MUSEUM, FORT WORTH, TEXAS, BEQUEST OF THE ARTIST.

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
www.oup.com



BALME  
LAWALL



ATHENAZE  
BOOK I

Second  
Edition

OXFORD

# ATHENAZE

AN INTRODUCTION TO ANCIENT GREEK

BOOK I

MAURICE BALME *and*  
GILBERT LAWALL

Second Edition

# **ATHENAZE**

## **An Introduction to Ancient Greek**

**Second Edition**

**Book I**

**Maurice Balme**

**and**

**Gilbert Lawall**

**with drawings by Catherine Balme**

**New York | Oxford  
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS  
2003**

Oxford University Press

Oxford New York  
Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai  
Dares Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata  
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai  
Nairobi São Paulo Shanghai Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Copyright © 2003 by Oxford University Press, Inc.

Published by Oxford University Press, Inc.  
198 Madison Avenue, New York, New York, 10016  
<http://www.oup-usa.org>

Oxford is a registered trademark of Oxford University Press

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of Oxford University Press.

#### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Balme, M. G.

Athenaze : an introduction to ancient Greek, Book I / Maurice Balme and Gilbert Lawall ; with drawings by Catherine Balme.-- 2nd ed.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN 0-19-514956-4

I. Greek language--Grammar. 2. Greek language--Readers. I. Lawall, Gilbert. II. Title.

PA258.B325 2003  
488.2/421--dc21

2002045015

Printing number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed in the United States of America  
on acid-free paper

# PREFACE

This second edition of *Athenaze* was produced on the basis of suggestions made by anonymous reviewers contacted by Oxford University Press and with inspiration from L. Miraglia and T. F. Bórri's Italian edition of *Athenaze*. We are grateful to these teachers and professors and also to the following, who read versions of the revised edition at various stages, offered innumerable helpful suggestions, and caught many errors, typographical and other: Elizabeth Baer of the Berkshire Country Day School, Jessica Mix Barrington of the Northfield Mount Hermon School, James Johnson of Austin College, Cynthia King of Wright State University, Rosemary Laycock of Dalhousie University, Mark Riley of California State University at Sacramento, Kolbeinn Sæmundsson of the Menntaskólinn í Reykjavík, and Rex Wallace of the University of Massachusetts at Amherst. Thanks also go to Latin teachers in Sunday afternoon Greek classes who used preliminary versions of the revised chapters and made many useful observations.

The new features of the revised textbooks include the following:

- Short passages from Classical and New Testament Greek in virtually every chapter
- A strand titled Greek Wisdom, with sayings of the seven wise men of Archaic Greece at various points throughout Book I and fragments of Heraclitus at various points throughout Chapters 18–28 in Book II (Greek Wisdom in Chapter 29 contains material on Socrates)
- Some rearrangement of the sequence in which grammar is introduced, so that the future tense and the passive voice are now introduced in Book I and the first three principal parts of verbs are now listed from Chapter 10, with full sets of principal parts being given in Book II, as before
- Fuller grammatical and linguistic explanations throughout, including material on accents provided along the way, as needed for completing exercises accurately
- New, descriptive terminology used for the tenses of verbs
- Many new exercises, including periodic requests for students to photocopy blank Verb Charts at the ends of Books I and II and to fill in forms of requested verbs, adding new forms as they are learned
- New insertions in Book I titled PRACTICE, requesting that students write out sets of nouns or sets of nouns and matching adjectives
- Presentation of most of the new grammar by Chapter 28 and consolidation of the extracts from Thucydides and Aristophanes' *Acharnians* in the last two chapters, 29 and 30

The purposes of the course remain as they were in the first edition, as they are spelled out in the Introduction. We hope that inclusion of Classical and New Testament passages will attract more students to the study of Greek and that this revised edition will help expand interest in the study of Greek in North America.

—Maurice Balme and Gilbert Lawall

# CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTION ix

### Readings

#### 1 Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΙΙΣ (α) 2

The Athenian Farmer 6

Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΙΙΣ (β) 8

Ο ΚΑΗΡΟΣ 10

Classical Greek: Heraclitus 11

New Testament Greek:

Title of the Gospel of Luke 11

#### 2 Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (α) 12

Slavery 15

Greek Wisdom:

Cleobulus of Lindos 16

Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (β) 18

Ο ΔΟΥΛΟΣ 22

Classical Greek: Callimachus 23

New Testament Greek: Luke 3.22 23

#### 3 Ο ΑΠΟΤΟΣ (α) 24

The Deme and the Polis 28

Ο ΑΠΟΤΟΣ (β) 30

ΟΙ ΒΟΕΣ 34

Classical Greek: Menander 35

New Testament Greek: Luke 6.46 35

### Grammar

1. Verb Forms: Stems and Endings 4

2. Nouns: Genders, Stems, Endings, Cases, and Agreement 4

3. Labeling Functions of Words in Sentences 6

4. Use of the Definite Article 6

5. Accents 9

1. Verb Forms: Indicative Mood; 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Persons Singular 13

2. Proclitics 14

3. The Imperative 15

4. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular, All Cases 20

5. Uses of the Cases 20

6. Persistent Accent of Nouns and Adjectives 20

7. Recessive Accent of Verbs 21

1. Verb Forms: 3rd Person Plural, Imperatives, and Infinitives 26

2. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular and Plural, All Cases 31

3. Accent Shifting 32

4	ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ (α) 36	1. Verb Forms: All Persons, Singular and Plural 38
		2. Declensions of Nouns and Adjectives 40
		3. Feminine Nouns and Adjectives of the 1st Declension 40
	Women 43	
	Greek Wisdom: Pittacus of Mitylene 45	
	ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ (β) 46	4. Masculine Nouns of the 1st Declension 47
		5. Feminine Nouns of the 2nd Declension 48
		6. 1st and 2nd Declension Adjectives 48
		7. Formation of Adverbs 50
		8. The Definite Article as Case Indicator 50
	ΑΙ ΓΥΝΑΙΚΕΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΑΝΔΡΑΣ ΠΕΙΘΟΥΣΙΝ 51	
	Classical Greek: Callimachus 53	
	New Testament Greek: Luke 6.45 53	
5	Ο ΑΥΚΟΣ (α) 54	1. Contract Verbs in -α- 56
		2. Recessive Accent of Finite Verbs 56
		3. Article at the Beginning of a Clause 58
		4. Elision 58
	Gods and Men 59	
	Greek Wisdom: Chilon of Sparta 61	
	Ο ΑΥΚΟΣ (β) 62	5. Agreement of Subject and Verb 64
		6. Personal Pronouns 64
		7. Attributive and Predicate Position 66
		8. Possessives 66
		9. The Adjective αὐτός, -ή, -ό 68
	Ο ΑΡΓΟΣ ΤΑ ΠΡΟΒΑΤΑ ΣΩΙΖΕΙ 69	
	Greek Wisdom: The Seven Wise Men 70	
	Classical Greek: Anacreon 71	
	New Testament Greek: Luke 4.22 and 24 71	
6	Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (α) 72	1. Verb Forms: πλέω 74
		2. Verbs: Voice 75
		3. Verb Forms: Middle Voice 76
		4. Deponent Verbs 78
	Myth 81	
	Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (β) 84	5. Middle Voice: Meaning 86
		6. Some Uses of the Dative Case 88
		7. Prepositions 89

	Ο ΘΗΣΕΥΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΡΙΑΔΗΝΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΛΕΙΠΕΙ 91	
	Classical Greek: Marriage 93	
	New Testament Greek: Luke 13.10-16 93	
7	Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (α) 94	1. Substantive Use of Adjectives 96
		2. Nouns: Declensions 97
		3. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Velar and Dental Stems 97
		4. Reflexive Pronouns 100
	Homer 102	
	Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (β) 104	5. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Nasal Stems 106
		6. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Labial and Liquid Stems 107
		7. A 3rd Declension Adjective: σῶφρων, σῶφρον, of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled 107
		8. The Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective 108
		9. The Indefinite Pronoun and Adjective 109
	Ο ΤΟΥ ΘΗΣΕΩΣ ΠΑΤΗΡ ΑΠΟΘΝΗΣΚΕΙ 110	
	Classical Greek: Sophocles 111	
	Greek Wisdom: Thales of Miletus 111	
8	ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (α) 112	1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Middle Voice 114
	Athens: A Historical Outline 117	
	Classical Greek: Archilochus 121	
	New Testament Greek: Luke 5.20-21 121	
	ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (β) 122	2. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Stems in -ρ- 124
		3. Two Important Irregular Nouns: ἡ γυνή, τῆς γυναικός, woman; wife, and ἡ χεὶρ, τῆς χειρός, hand 125
		4. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, all; every; whole 126
	Greek Wisdom: Periander of Corinth 127	5. Numbers 128
		6. Expressions of Time When, Duration of Time, and Time within Which 128
	Ο ΔΑΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Ο ΑΙΟΛΟΣ 130	

Classical Greek: Sappho: The Deserted Lover:  
A Girl's Lament 131

9 Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (α) 132

The City of Athens 139  
Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (β) 142

1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Active Voice 135
2. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in -ντ- 145
3. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in a Vowel: ἡ πόλις and τὸ ἄστυ 145
4. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in Diphthongs or Vowels: ὁ βασιλεύς and the Irregular Nouns ἡ νᾶϋς and ὁ βοῦς 146
5. Uses of the Genitive Case 147
6. Some Uses of the Article 148

Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Η ΚΙΡΚΗ 149  
Classical Greek: Simonides 151  
New Testament Greek: Luke 6.31–33:  
The Sermon on the Mount 151

REVIEW OF VERB FORMS 152

PREVIEW OF NEW VERB FORMS 154

10 Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (α) 156

1. Verb Forms: Verbs with Sigmatic Futures 158
2. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs in -ίζω 159
3. Verb Forms: The Sigmatic Future of Contract Verbs 159
4. Verb Forms: Verbs with Dependent Futures 159

Festivals 162  
Classical Greek: Theognis 163  
New Testament Greek: Luke 6.35–36:  
The Sermon on the Mount 163  
Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (β) 164

5. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems 166
6. The Irregular Verb εἶμι 168
7. Future Participle to Express Purpose 170
8. Impersonal Verbs 170
9. Review of Questions 171

Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΕΤΑΙΡΟΥΣ  
ΑΠΟΛΛΥΣΙΝ 171  
Classical Greek: Menander 173

New Testament Greek: Luke 5.30–32 173

11 Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (α) 174

1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Aorist 176
2. Verb Forms: The Thematic 2nd Aorist 177
3. Aspect 178
4. Thematic 2nd Aorist Active and Middle Participles 180
5. Verb Forms: Common Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists 180

Greek Science and Medicine 183  
Classical Greek: Theognis 185  
New Testament Greek: Luke 6.20–21:  
The Beatitudes 185  
Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (β) 186

6. Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists from Unrelated Stems 189
7. Accents on Thematic 2nd Aorist Active Imperatives 189
8. Augment 190

Ο ΔΗΜΟΚΡΑΤΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΑ  
ΙΑΤΡΕΥΕΙ 192

New Testament Greek: Luke 6.27–29:  
The Sermon on the Mount 193

12 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (α) 194

1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Sigmatic 1st Aorist 196
2. Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active and Middle Participles 199

Trade and Travel 200  
Classical Greek: Scion:  
The Four Best Things in Life 203  
New Testament Greek: Luke 15.3–7:  
The Parable of the Lost Sheep 203  
ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (β) 204

3. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic 1st Aorist of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems 207
4. Irregular Sigmatic 1st Aorists 208
5. Verb Forms: Augment of Compound Verbs 209

Ο ΚΩΛΑΙΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΤΑΡΤΗΣΣΟΝ  
ΕΥΠΙΣΚΕΙ 210  
Greek Wisdom: Bias of Priene 211

13 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (α) 212

1. Verb Forms: The Imperfect or Past Progressive Tense 213
2. Aspect 216

The Rise of Persia 218

ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (β) 222	3. Relative Clauses 224
	4. 3rd Declension Nouns and Adjectives with Stems in -εσ- 226
	5. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective with 3rd Declension Stems in -υ- and -ε- 227
Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΕΛΛΗΣΠΟΝΤΟΝ ΔΙΑΒΑΙΝΕΙ 228	
Greek Wisdom: Solon of Athens 230	
Classical Greek: Archilochus 231	
New Testament Greek: Luke 21.1–4: The Widow's Mite 231	
14 Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ ΜΑΧΗ (α) 232	1. Comparison of Adjectives 234
	2. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives 235
	3. Comparison of Adverbs 236
	4. Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives 236
The Rise of Athens 238	
Classical Greek: Archilochus 241	
New Testament Greek: Luke 10.25–29: The Good Samaritan 241	
Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ ΜΑΧΗ (β) 242	5. Demonstrative Adjectives 244
	6. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs 246
ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑ ΥΠΕΡ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΩΝ ΣΤΕΝΑ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ 247	
Classical Greek: Theognis 249	
New Testament Greek: Luke 10.30–37: The Good Samaritan (concluded) 249	
15 Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (α) 250	1. Athematic 2nd Aorists 252
	2. More 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems in -εσ- 254
Aeschylus's <i>Persae</i> 255	
New Testament Greek: Luke 2.1–14: The Birth of Jesus 257	
Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (β) 258	3. Contract Verbs in -ο- 261
	4. Contract Nouns of the 2nd Declension 263
	5. More Numbers 263
	6. Uses of ὥς and Its Compounds 264
ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑΣ ΑΘΗΝΑΣ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ 264	
16 ΜΕΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗΝ (α) 266	1. The Passive Voice 269

The Athenian Empire 271	
ΜΕΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗΝ (β) 274	2. Verbs with Athematic Presents and Imperfects: δύναιμαι, κείμαι, and ἐπίσταμαι 276
Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΣΙΑΝ ΑΝΑΧΩΡΕΙ 278	
Classical Greek: Sappho: Love's Power 280	
Classical Greek: Simonides 281	
New Testament Greek: Luke 2.15–20: The Birth of Jesus (concluded) 281	
VERB CHARTS 282	
SYLLABLES AND ACCENTS 284	
ENCLITICS AND PROCLITICS 285	
FORMS 287	
INDEX OF LANGUAGE AND GRAMMAR 312	
GREEK TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY 323	
ENGLISH TO GREEK VOCABULARY 341	
GENERAL INDEX 350	
LIST OF MAPS 356	
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 356	
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS 357	

# INTRODUCTION

---

## Part I: About This Course

The aim of *Athenaze* is to teach you to read ancient Greek as quickly, thoroughly, and enjoyably as possible, and to do so within the context of ancient Greek culture. This means within the context of the daily life of the ancient Greeks as it was shaped and given meaning by historical developments, political events, and the life of the mind as revealed in mythology, religion, philosophy, literature, and art. The stories that you will read in Greek provide the basic cultural context within which you will learn the Greek language, and most of the chapters contain essays in English with illustrations drawn from ancient works of art and with background information to deepen your understanding of some aspects of the history and culture of the Greeks.

The course begins with the story of an Athenian farmer named Dicaeopolis and his family; they live in a village or deme called Cholleidae, located north of Athens. The events are fictitious, but they are set in a definite historical context—autumn 432 B.C. to spring 431. The Athenian democracy, led by Pericles, is at its height; the Athenians rule the seas and control an empire, but their power has aroused the fears and jealousy of Sparta and her allies in the Peloponnesus, especially Corinth. By spring 431, Athens and the Peloponnesian League are engaged in a war, which leads twenty-seven years later to the defeat and downfall of Athens.

The story begins with life in the country, but with Chapter 6 a subplot of mythical narrative begins with the story of Theseus and the Minotaur. This mythological subplot continues in Chapter 7 with the story of Odysseus and the Cyclops and runs through Chapter 10 with further tales from the *Odyssey* briefly told at the end of each chapter. The main plot continues in Chapter 8 as the family visits Athens for a festival, and the tempo quickens.

A terrible misfortune that strikes the family in Athens in Chapter 10 precipitates a plot that is interwoven with narratives of the great battles of the Persian Wars, based on the accounts of the historian Herodotus. As the main plot reaches its resolution in Chapters 18–20 of Book II, the family becomes embroiled in the tensions between Athens and Corinth that triggered the Peloponnesian War, and this sets the stage for the remaining chapters.

The experiences of the family of Dicaeopolis at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War in Chapters 21–23 are based on the accounts of the war written by the historian Thucydides. When the son Philip is left behind in Athens to further his education, we hear something of Plato's views on education (Chapter 24) and then read stories from a book of Herodotus's histories that Philip's teacher gives to him (Chapters 25–28). These are some of the most famous tales from Herodotus, including those dealing with Solon the Athenian and his encounter with Croesus, king of Lydia. In Chapter 28 you will

read the account by the lyric poet Bacchylides of Croesus's miraculous rescue from the funeral pyre. Chapter 29 returns us to the Peloponnesian War with Thucydides's descriptions of naval battles and the brilliant victories of the Athenian general Phormio. The course concludes with extracts from Aristophanes showing us Dicaeopolis the peacemaker. From there you will be ready to go on to read any Greek author of your choice with considerable confidence in your ability to comprehend what the ancient Greeks had to say.

The Greek in much of the main story line has been made up to serve the instructional purposes of this book. Most of the subplots, however, are based on the ancient Greek writings of Homer, Herodotus, and Thucydides. They move steadily closer to the Greek of the authors themselves. The extracts from Bacchylides and Aristophanes are unaltered except for cuts.

The readings in the early chapters are simple in content and grammatical structure. They are so constructed that with knowledge of the vocabulary that is given before the reading passage and with help from the glosses that are given beneath each paragraph, you can read and understand the Greek before studying the formal elements of the grammar. After you have read the story out loud, understood and translated it, and discovered the new elements of its grammar for yourself, you will study formal presentations of the grammar that usually incorporate examples from the reading passage. There are then exercises of various sorts to help you consolidate your understanding of the grammar and give you skill in manipulating the new forms and structures of the language as you learn them.

Grammar is introduced in small doses to start with and should be reviewed constantly. We also recommend frequent rereading of the stories themselves—preferably out loud—as the best way to reinforce your fluency of pronunciation, your knowledge of the grammar, and your skill in reading new Greek at sight—which is the main goal of any course in Greek.

At the beginning of each section of the narrative is a picture with a caption in Greek. From the picture you should be able to deduce the meaning of the Greek caption. Pay particular attention to these captions, since each has been carefully written to include and reinforce a basic grammatical feature or features of the Greek language that you will be learning in that particular chapter. It may help even to memorize the captions!

The vocabulary given in the lists before the reading passages is meant to be learned thoroughly, both from Greek to English and from English to Greek. Learning the vocabulary will be easier if the words are always studied aloud, combining the advantages of sight *and* sound. The words given in glosses beneath the paragraphs in the readings are not meant to be mastered actively, but you should be able to recognize the meaning of these words when you see them again in context. Fluency of reading depends on acquiring a large, working vocabulary as soon as possible.

Important words are continually reintroduced in the readings in this course to help you learn them. Your skill in recognizing the meaning of Greek words that you have not met will be greatly enhanced by attention to some basic principles of word building. We have therefore laid out some of

these basic principles and incorporated a coherent set of word building exercises in this course.

One of the widely recognized goals of classical language study is attainment of a better understanding of English. With regard to the study of Greek, this means largely a knowledge of Greek roots, prefixes, and suffixes that appear in English words. The influence of Greek on English has been especially notable in scientific and medical terminology, but it is also evident in the language of politics, philosophy, literature, and the arts. We have accordingly incorporated word study sections in the chapters of this course, highlighting the influence of Greek on English vocabulary and providing practice in deciphering the meaning of English words derived from Greek elements.

Finally, at the end of almost every chapter and sometimes in the middle of a chapter you will find passages from a wide variety of Classical Greek authors and from the gospels of Luke and John in the New Testament. These have been carefully chosen and are accompanied by glosses that will allow you to read the passages at the points in the course where they are located. We have also included sayings of the seven wise men of Archaic Greece at various points throughout Book I. You will thus be reading authentic Greek from the very beginning of the course and gaining access to the wisdom and the style of writing and thinking of the ancient Greeks and of the writers of the gospels. This is the icing on the cake, and we hope that you will enjoy it thoroughly and learn much from it.



Myrrhine and her daughter Melissa,  
two characters from our story, and their dog Argus

## Part II: The Greek Alphabet

Many of the letters of the Greek alphabet will already be familiar to you.

Letter	Name	Translit- eration	Pronunciation
A α	ἄλφα	alpha	α (short alpha), as the sound in <i>top</i> ; ᾱ (long alpha), as the sound in <i>top</i> , but held longer
B β	βῆτα	bēta	= b
Γ γ	γάμμα	gamma	= g (but before γ, κ, ξ, or χ = the sound in <i>sing</i> )
Δ δ	δέλτα	delta	= d
E ε	ἒ ψιλόν	epsīlon	as the sound in <i>get</i>
Z ζ	ζῆτα	zēta	= σ + δ = sd as in <i>wisdom</i>
H η	ῆτα	ēta	as the sound in <i>bed</i> , but held longer
Θ θ	θῆτα	thēta	= aspirated t as in <i>top</i>
I ι	ἰῶτα	iōta	ι (short iota), as the sound in <i>it</i> ; ῖ (long iota), as the sound in <i>keen</i>
K κ	κάππα	kappa	= the sound of k (without aspiration), as in <i>sack</i>
Λ λ	λάμβδα	lambda	= l
M μ	μῦ	mū	= m
N ν	νῦ	nū	= n
Ξ ξ	ξῖ	xī	= κ + σ = the sound of x in <i>axe</i>
O ο	ὀ μικρόν	omīcron	as the sound in <i>boat</i> or <i>goat</i>
Π π	πί	pī	= p (without aspiration), as in <i>sap</i>
P ρ	ῥῶ	rhō	= a trilled r
Σ σ, ς	σίγμα	sigma	= s as in <i>sing</i> , but = z before β, γ, δ, and μ (written ς when last letter of a word)
T τ	ταῦ	tau	= t (without aspiration), as in <i>sat</i>
Υ υ	ὕ ψιλόν	upsilon	υ (short upsilon), as the sound in French <i>tu</i> ; ῡ (long upsilon), as the sound in French <i>tu</i> , but held longer
Φ φ	φῖ	phī	= aspirated p as in <i>pot</i>
X χ	χῖ	chī	= aspirated k as in <i>kit</i>
Ψ ψ	ψῖ	psī	= π + σ = ps as in <i>lips</i>
Ω ω	ὦ μέγα	ōmega	as the sound in <i>caught</i> , but held longer

The symbol  $\sim$  will occasionally be used over a Greek vowel to indicate a vowel of short quantity. The symbol  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$  indicates a vowel of long quantity (see  $\bar{\alpha}$ ,  $\bar{\iota}$ , and  $\bar{\upsilon}$  in the right-hand column in the list above). Normally short vowels have neither mark above them (see  $\alpha$ ,  $\iota$ , and  $\upsilon$  in the right-hand column above). When these three vowels are long, they will usually be printed in *Athenaze* with long marks over them ( $\bar{\alpha}$ ,  $\bar{\iota}$ , and  $\bar{\upsilon}$ ). The long mark is referred to as a macron (Greek μακρόν, *long*). A long vowel is held approximately twice as long as a short vowel. The vowels  $\eta$  and  $\omega$  are always long and are therefore not marked with macrons. The digraphs  $\epsilon\iota$  and  $\omicron\upsilon$  represent two additional long vowels in Greek (see Long Vowel Digraphs below). The vowels  $\epsilon$  and  $\omicron$  are always short.

All vowels marked with a circumflex accent ( $\circ$ ) or with an iota subscript (see below) are always long and will usually not be marked with macrons.

In the Greek names for the letters of the alphabet given on the previous page, identify all long and all short vowels. Practice pronouncing the names of the letters, paying special attention to proper pronunciation of the long and short vowels. Hold the long vowels for twice the length of time as the short vowels.

### Breathings

There is no letter *h* in the Attic alphabet, but this sound occurs at the beginning of many Greek words. It is indicated by a mark called a *rough breathing* or *aspiration*, written over the first vowel of a word (over the second vowel of a diphthong), e.g.:

ἐν (pronounced *hen*)

οὐ (pronounced *hou*)

When an *h* sound is not to be pronounced at the beginning of a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong, a *smooth breathing* mark is used, e.g.:

ἐν (pronounced *en*)

οὐ (pronounced *ou*)

Thus, every word beginning with a vowel or a diphthong will have a rough or smooth breathing. Initial  $\rho$  always has a rough breathing, e.g., ῥάβδος, *wand*.

### Diphthongs

Diphthongs are glides from one vowel sound to another within the same syllable. Attic Greek has the following diphthongs:

Diphthongs	Words	Pronunciation
αι	αἰγίς	as the sound in <i>high</i>
αυ	αὐτοκρατής	as the sound in <i>how</i>
ευ	εὐγενής	ε + υ pronounced as one syllable
ηυ	ἡύρηκα	η + υ pronounced as one syllable
οι	οἰκονομία	as the sound in <i>foil</i>
υι	υἰός	υ + ι pronounced as one syllable

### Long Vowel Digraphs

Digraphs are combinations of letters that represent a single sound. Two long vowel sounds are represented in Greek by the following digraphs:

Digraphs	Words	Pronunciation
ει	εἴκοσι	as the sound in <i>they</i>
ου	οὔτις	as the sound in <i>mood</i>

### Iota Subscript

Sometimes the letter ι (*iōta*) is written under a vowel, e.g., α, η, and φ (these combinations are referred to as *long diphthongs*); when so written it is called *iota subscript*. In classical Greek this iota was written on the line after the vowel and was pronounced as a short iota. Its pronunciation ceased in post-classical Greek, and we usually do not pronounce it now. When it appears in a word that is written entirely in capital letters (as in the titles to the readings in this book), it is written on the line as a capital iota. Thus πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ > ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ. Note that accents and breathing marks are not used when all letters are capitalized.

### Paired Consonants

Paired consonants such as λλ, μμ, ππ, and ττ should be pronounced double and held approximately twice as long as the single consonant, e.g., the μμ in γάμμα.

Exceptions are γγ, γκ, γξ, and γχ (where the first γ is pronounced as the *ng* in *sing*), as in ἄγγελος, *messenger*, and ἄγκυρα, *anchor*.

### Double Consonants

Three consonants represent combinations of other sounds and are called *double consonants*:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta &= \sigma + \delta \\ \xi &= \kappa + \sigma \text{ or } \gamma + \sigma \text{ or } \chi + \sigma \\ \psi &= \pi + \sigma \text{ or } \beta + \sigma \text{ or } \phi + \sigma\end{aligned}$$

### Aspirated Consonants

Three consonants represent certain sounds followed by an *h* sound or aspiration:

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= \text{an aspirated } \tau \\ \phi &= \text{an aspirated } \pi \\ \chi &= \text{an aspirated } \kappa\end{aligned}$$

### Consonant Sounds

Nasals	μ	ν	and γ when followed by γ, κ, ξ, or χ
Liquids	λ	ρ	
Spirant	σ		
Stops	Voiceless	Voiced	Voiceless Aspirated
Labial	π	β	φ
Dental	τ	δ	θ
Velar	κ	γ	χ
Double	ζ	ξ	ψ

### Stops Followed by σ

Labial: β or π or φ, when followed by σ, becomes ψ.  
Dental: δ or ζ or θ or τ, when followed by σ, is lost.  
Velar: γ or κ or χ, when followed by σ, becomes ξ.

Compare what is said about the double consonants ξ and ψ above. These linguistic phenomena will be very important in understanding certain forms of nouns and verbs.

### Punctuation

The period and the comma are written as in English. A dot above the line (·) is the equivalent of an English semicolon or colon. A mark that looks like an English semicolon (;) is used at the end of a sentence as a question mark.

### Accents

Nearly every word in Greek bears an accent mark: an acute (τίς), a grave (τὸ), or a circumflex (ὀρῶ). These marks seldom affect the sense. They were invented as symbols to provide written aid for correct pronunciation; originally they indicated a change in *pitch*, e.g., the acute accent showed that the syllable on which it fell was pronounced at a higher pitch than the preceding or following syllables. Later *stress* replaced pitch, and now ancient Greek is usually pronounced with stress on the accented syllables (with no distinction among the three kinds of accents) instead of varying the pitch of the voice. For those who wish to use the pitch accent, we recommend the recording of Stephen Daitz, mentioned below.

Note that the grave accent stands only on the final syllable of a word. It usually replaces an acute accent on the final syllable of a word when that word is followed immediately by another word with no intervening punctuation, e.g., instead of τό δῶρον, we write τὸ δῶρον.

### Transliteration

Note the following standard transliteration of Greek into English letters:

$\alpha = a$	$\eta = \bar{e}$	$\nu = n$	$\tau = t$
$\beta = b$	$\theta = th$	$\xi = x$	$\upsilon = u \text{ or } y$
$\gamma = g$	$\iota = i$	$\omicron = o$	$\varphi = ph$
$\delta = d$	$\kappa = k$	$\pi = p$	$\chi = ch$
$\varepsilon = e$	$\lambda = l$	$\rho = r$	$\psi = ps$
$\zeta = z$	$\mu = m$	$\sigma, \varsigma = s$	$\omega = \bar{o}$

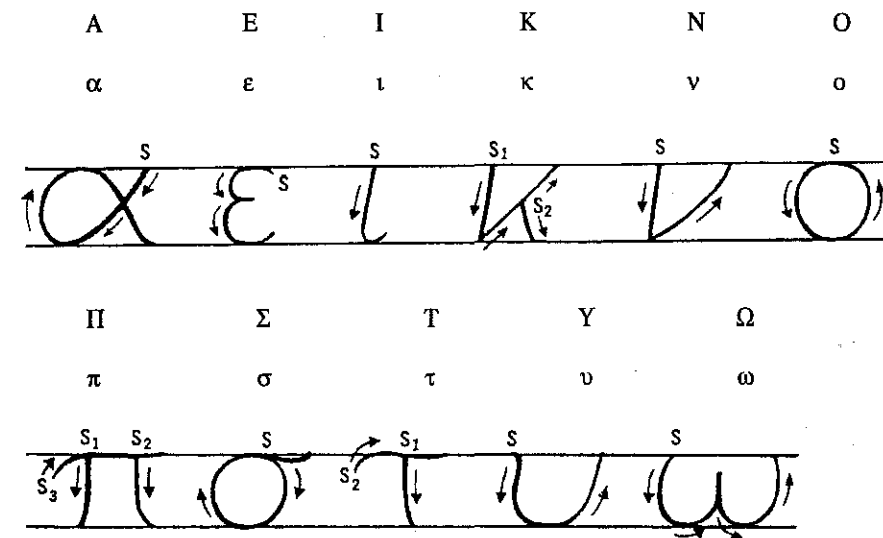
Remember the following:  $\gamma\gamma = ng$ ;  $\gamma\kappa = nk$ ;  $\gamma\xi = nx$ , and  $\gamma\chi = nch$ ;  $\alpha\upsilon, \varepsilon\upsilon, \eta\upsilon, \omicron\upsilon, \upsilon\iota = au, eu, \bar{e}u, ou, ui$ , but when  $\upsilon$  is not in a diphthong it is usually transliterated as  $y$ . And note that  $\alpha, \eta$ , and  $\varphi$  are transliterated  $\bar{a}i, \bar{e}i$ , and  $\bar{o}i$ , to distinguish them from the short diphthongs,  $\alpha i, \varepsilon i$ , and  $\omicron i$ , transliterated  $ai, ei$ , and  $oi$ .

[The recommendations for pronunciation given above (the *restored pronunciation*) are based on W. Sidney Allen, *Vox Graeca: A Guide to the Pronunciation of Classical Greek*, Cambridge University Press, 3rd ed., 1988, pages 177–179. For demonstration of the restored pronunciation, including the pitch accents, students should consult the cassette recording of Stephen G. Daitz, *The Pronunciation and Reading of Ancient Greek: A Practical Guide*, 2nd ed., 1984, Audio Forum, Guilford, CT 06437 (U.S.A.).]

### Part III: Writing Greek Letters

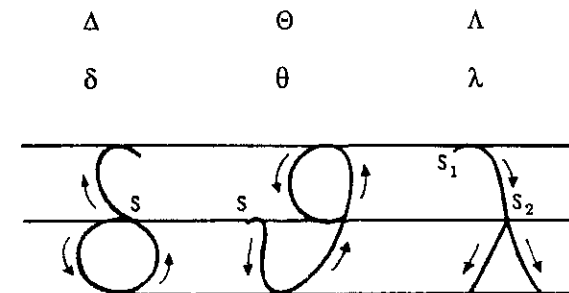
Certain conventions may be observed in writing Greek letters. With practice one can write them with ease and speed. There should be no difficulty in imitating the printed forms of the capitals; the small letters may be written as indicated below. A small "s" indicates the point where each letter should be begun ("s<sub>1</sub>," "s<sub>2</sub>," etc., are used if it is necessary to lift the pen or pencil), and an arrowhead (--->) indicates the direction in which the pen or pencil should move. For convenience, the letters may be divided into four groups:

(1) Eleven of the Greek small letters do not extend below the line of writing, and are approximately as wide as they are high (cf. English *a, c, e*, etc.). (The corresponding capitals are given first, then the printed forms of the small letters, then the "diagrams" for imitation.)

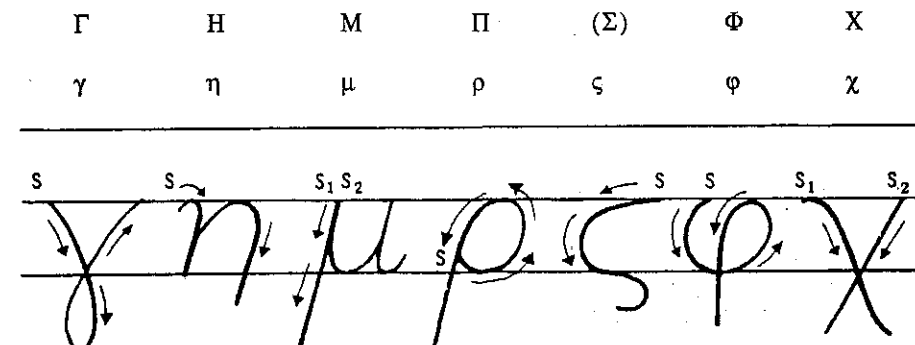


Note that  $\nu$  has a point at the bottom, whereas  $\upsilon$  is round.

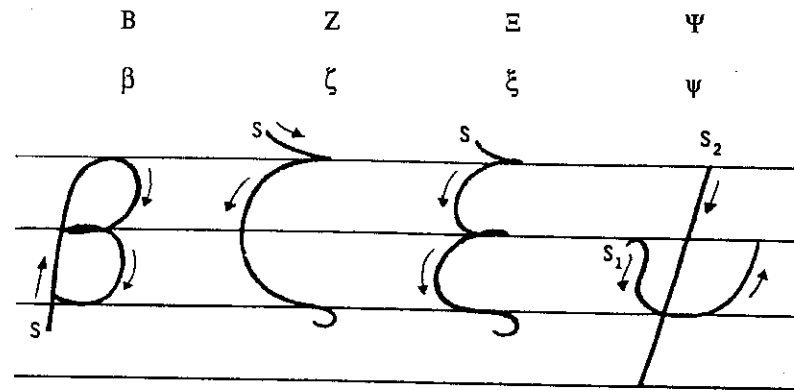
(2) Three of the Greek small letters rest on the line of writing but are twice as high as the letters in group 1:



(3) Seven of the Greek small letters rest on the line of writing and extend below it, but do not extend above the letters of group 1:



(4) Four of the Greek small letters extend both above and below the line of writing:



Students will, of course, develop their own writing style, and slight variations from the method of forming the letters that has just been described will not, in general, cause confusion.

[Most of the material in the above section is taken from *The Language of the New Testament* by Eugene Van Ness Goetchius, © Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, NJ.]

## Part IV:

### Practice in Pronunciation and Writing

Practice pronouncing the following words, imitating your teacher. Then copy the Greek words onto a sheet of paper; write the English transliteration of each Greek word, and give an English derivative of each.

- |              |             |              |              |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. αἶνιγμα   | 11. δόγμα   | 21. μάθημα   | 31. ῥεῦμα    |
| 2. ἀξίωμα    | 12. δρᾶμα   | 22. μίασμα   | 32. στίγμα   |
| 3. ἄρωμα     | 13. ἔμβλημα | 23. νόμισμα  | 33. σύμπτωμα |
| 4. ἄσθμα     | 14. ζεῦγμα  | 24. ὄνομα    | 34. σύστημα  |
| 5. γράμμα    | 15. θέμα    | 25. πλάσμα   | 35. σχῆμα    |
| 6. δέρμα     | 16. θεώρημα | 26. πνεῦμα   | 36. σχίσμα   |
| 7. διάδημα   | 17. ἰδίωμα  | 27. πρᾶγμα   | 37. σῶμα     |
| 8. διάφραγμα | 18. κίνημα  | 28. ποίημα   | 38. φλέγμα   |
| 9. δίλημμα   | 19. κλίμα   | 29. πρίσμα   | 39. χάσμα    |
| 10. δίπλωμα  | 20. κόμμα   | 30. πρόβλημα | 40. χρῶμα    |

Copy the following names, practice pronouncing the Greek, imitating your teacher, and write the standard English spelling of each name:

#### The Twelve Olympians

Ζεύς	Ἄρτεμις	Ἥφαιστος
Ἥρᾱ	Ποσειδῶν	Ἄρης
Ἀθηνᾶ	Ἀφροδίτη	Διόνυσος
Ἀπόλλων	Ἑρμῆς	Δημήτηρ

#### The Nine Muses

Κλειώ	Μελπομένη	Πολύμνια
Εὐτέρπη	Τερψιχόρᾱ	Οὐρανία
Θάλεια	Ἑρατώ	Καλλιόπη

#### The Three Graces

Ἀγλαΐᾱ	Εὐφροσύνη	Θάλεια
--------	-----------	--------

#### The Three Fates

Κλωθώ	Λάχεσις	Ἄτροπος
-------	---------	---------

Practice reading the following passage of Greek, imitating your teacher, and then copy the first two sentences. In writing the Greek, it will be helpful always to insert the macron over the vowel to which it belongs. As with the accent and breathing mark, the macron should be considered an integral part of the spelling of the word.

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις Ἀθηναῖός ἐστιν· οἰκεῖ δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἀλλὰ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς· αὐτουργὸς γάρ ἐστιν. γεωργεῖ οὖν τὸν κλῆρον καὶ πονεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς. χαλεπὸς δὲ ἐστιν ὁ βίος· ὁ γὰρ κλῆρὸς ἐστὶ μικρὸς, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος. ἀεὶ οὖν πονεῖ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις καὶ πολλάκις στενάζει καὶ λέγει· “ὦ Ζεῦ, χαλεπὸς ἐστὶν ὁ βίος· ἀπέραντος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ πόνος, μικρὸς δὲ ὁ κλῆρος καὶ οὐ πολὺν σίτον παρέχει.” ἀλλὰ ἰσχυρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ ἄοκνος· πολλάκις οὖν χαίρει· ἐλευθέρως γάρ ἐστι καὶ αὐτουργὸς· φιλεῖ δὲ τὸν οἶκον. καλὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος καὶ σίτον παρέχει οὐ πολὺν ἀλλὰ ἱκανόν.

## Part V: Date Chart

### BRONZE AGE

Ca. 1220 B.C.

Minos, king of Crete; Theseus, king of Athens  
Sack of Troy by Agamemnon of Mycenae

### DARK AGE

Ca. 1050 B.C.

Emigration of Ionians to Asia Minor

### RENAISSANCE

Ca. 850 B.C.

Formation of city states (Sparta, Corinth, etc.)

776 B.C.

First Olympic Games

Ca. 750–500 B.C.

Trade and colonization

Ca. 725 B.C.

Composition of *Iliad* and *Odyssey* by Homer (Ionia)

Ca. 700 B.C.

Composition of *Works and Days* by Hesiod (Boeotia)

Ca. 657–625 B.C.

Cypselus, tyrant of Corinth

Ca. 594 B.C.

Solon's reforms in Athens

### PERSIAN INVASIONS

546 B.C.

Defeat of Croesus of Lydia and Greeks in Asia Minor  
by Cyrus of Persia

507 B.C.

Foundation of democracy in Athens by Cleisthenes

490 B.C.

Expedition sent against Athens by Darius of Persia;  
battle of Marathon

480 B.C.

Invasion of Greece by Xerxes: Thermopylae (480),  
Salamis (480), Plataea (479)

Simonides, poet

### IMPERIAL ATHENS

478 B.C.

Foundation of Delian League, which grows into Athe-  
nian Empire

472 B.C.

Aeschylus's *Persians*

461–429 B.C.

Pericles dominant in Athens: radical democracy and  
empire

War between Athens and Sparta

446 B.C.

Thirty Years Peace with Sparta

Parthenon and other buildings

Herodotus, *History*

### PELOPONNESIAN WAR

431 B.C.

Outbreak of war between Athens and the Pelopon-  
nesian League

430–429 B.C.

Plague at Athens; death of Pericles

425 B.C.

Aristophanes' *Acharnians*

421 B.C.

Temporary peace between Athens and Sparta

415 B.C.

Athenian expedition to Sicily

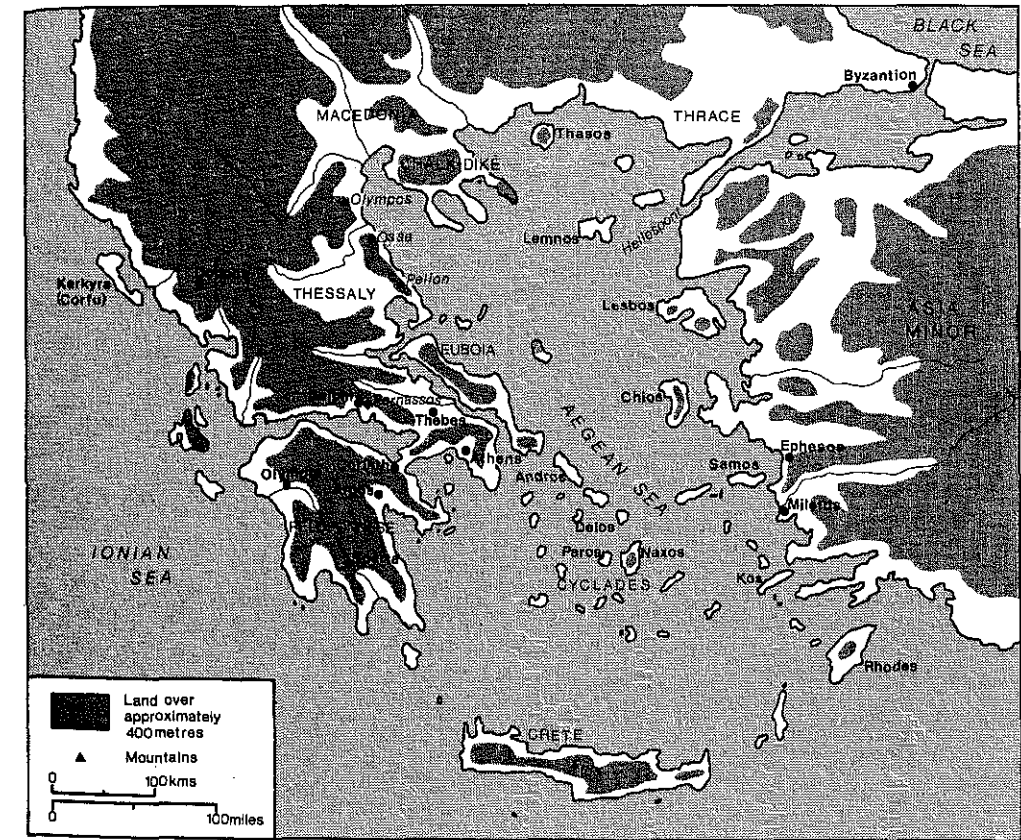
413 B.C.

Sicilian expedition defeated; war between Athens and  
Sparta

404 B.C.

Surrender of Athens

Thucydides, *Histories*



Greece and the Aegean Sea

# 1 Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ (α)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις αὐτουργὸς ἐστίν· φέρει δὲ τὸν μόσχον.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἐστί(ν), *he/she/it is*  
λέγει, *he/she says; he/she tells; he/she speaks*  
οἰκεῖ, *he/she lives; he/she dwells*  
πονεῖ, *he/she works*  
φιλεῖ, *he/she loves*  
χαίρει, *he/she rejoices*

### Nouns

ὁ ἀγρός, \* *field*  
ὁ ἄνθρωπος, *man; human being; person*  
ὁ αὐτουργός, *farmer*  
ὁ οἶκος, *house; home; dwelling*  
ὁ πόνος, *toil, work*  
ὁ σῖτος, *grain; food*

### Adjectives

καλός, *beautiful*  
μακρός, *long; large*  
μικρός, *small*  
πολύς, *much; pl., many*

### Prepositional Phrase

ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις, *in Athens*

### Adverbs

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, \*\* *not*  
οὖν, a connecting adverb, post-positive, \*\*\* *so* (i.e., because of this); *then* (i.e., after this)

### Conjunctions

ἀλλά, *but*  
γάρ, postpositive, \*\*\* *for*  
καί, *and*

### Particle

δέ, postpositive, \*\*\* *and, but*

### Proper Names and Adjectives

Ἀθηναῖος, *Athenian*  
ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, *Dicaeopolis*

\*ὁ is the definite article, *the*; when the noun is used as an object, the article becomes τόν. Sometimes the article need not be translated in English; sometimes it can best be translated as a possessive adjective, e.g., *his*. There is no indefinite article in Greek.

\*\*οὐ before consonants, οὐκ before vowels or diphthongs, and οὐχ be-

fore aspirated vowels or aspirated diphthongs (e.g., οὐχ αἰρεῖ, *he/she does not take*)

\*\*\*These words are always "placed after" and never occur first in their clause.

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις Ἀθηναῖός ἐστιν· οἰκεῖ δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἀλλὰ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς· αὐτουργὸς γάρ ἐστιν. γεωργεῖ οὖν τὸν κλῆρον καὶ πονεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς. χαλεπὸς δέ ἐστιν ὁ βίος· ὁ γὰρ κλῆρὸς ἐστὶ μικρὸς, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος. ἀεὶ οὖν πονεῖ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις καὶ πολλάκις στενάζει καὶ λέγει· "ὦ Ζεῦ, χαλεπὸς ἐστὶν ὁ βίος· ἀπέραντος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ πόνος, μικρὸς δὲ ὁ κλῆρος καὶ οὐ πολλὸν σῖτον παρέχει." ἀλλὰ ἰσχυρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ ἄοκνος· 5  
πολλάκις οὖν χαίρει· ἐλεύθερος γάρ ἐστι καὶ αὐτουργός· φιλεῖ δὲ τὸν οἶκον. καλὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος καὶ σῖτον παρέχει οὐ πολλὸν ἀλλὰ ἱκανόν. 10

[ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς, *in the country* (lit., *in the fields*) γεωργεῖ, *he farms, cultivates* τὸν κλῆρον, *the (= his) farm* χαλεπὸς, *hard* ὁ βίος, *the (= his) life* ἀεὶ, *always* πολλάκις, *often* στενάζει, *groans* ὦ Ζεῦ, *O Zeus* ἀπέραντος, *endless* παρέχει, *provides* ἰσχυρὸς, *strong* ἄοκνος, *energetic* ἐλεύθερος, *free* ἱκανόν, *enough*]

## WORD STUDY

Many English words are derived from Greek. Often these derivatives are scientific and technical terms formed in English from Greek stems because the precision of the Greek language makes it possible to express a complex concept in a single word.

What Greek words from the story at the beginning of this chapter do you recognize in the following English words? Define the words, using your knowledge of the Greek:

1. anthropology
2. polysyllabic
3. philosophy
4. microscope

English words such as those above often contain more than one Greek stem. Which of the words above contain stems of the following Greek words?

1. σκοπεῖ, *he/she looks at, examines*
2. σοφία, *wisdom*
3. λόγος, *word; study*

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Stems and Endings

Greek verbs have *stems*, which give the meaning of the word, and variable *endings*, which show such things as *number* and *person*. In addition to *singular* and *plural* number, Greek has *dual* number, used when referring to two people or things; it is fairly rare, however, and will not be taught in this course.

Number:	Singular	Plural
Person: 1st	I	we
2nd	you	you
3rd	he, she, it	they

This chapter introduces only the third person singular of the present tense, e.g., *he/she/it is*.

The Greek verb for *loosen*, *loose* will serve as an example of a regular Greek verb; the verb for *love* will serve as an example of a contract verb (a type of verb in which the vowel at the end of the stem contracts with the initial vowel of the ending). The irregular verb for *be* is also given.

**Stem:** λῶ-, *loosen, loose*

3rd singular λῶ-ει *he/she loosens, is loosening, does loosen*

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

3rd singular φιλέ-ει > φιλεῖ *he/she loves, is loving, does love*  
Note that > means "becomes."

**Stem:** ἐσ-, *be*

3rd singular ἐστί(ν)\* *he/she/it is*

\*ἐστίν is used when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or when coming as the last word in a clause. The -ν is called *movable ν*. The word ἐστί(ν) is *enclitic*, which means that it "leans upon" the previous word and often loses its accent. The rules for accenting enclitics and the words that precede them will be presented as needed for writing Greek in the exercises.

### 2. Nouns: Genders, Stems, Endings, Cases, and Agreement

#### a. Grammatical Gender

Greek nouns are usually *masculine* or *feminine* or *neuter* (neither masculine nor feminine) in gender. Some words such as Δικαιοπόλις, which is masculine, have *natural gender*; the gender of

other words such as ἀγρός is not determined by the gender of the thing referred to. Such words have what is called *grammatical gender*, this one being masculine. In learning vocabulary, always learn the article with the noun; this will tell you its gender: ὁ for masculine; ἡ for feminine; and τό for neuter. In this chapter all the nouns listed in the Vocabulary are masculine and are therefore accompanied by the masculine definite article, ὁ.

#### b. Stems, Endings, and Cases

Greek nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have *stems*, which give the meaning of the word, and variable *endings*, which show the function of the word in the sentence. The endings of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are called *cases*.

There are five cases in Greek (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative); in this chapter we focus on the use of two of them—the *nominative* and the *accusative*.

**Stem:** κληρο-, *farm*

**Nominative Ending:** -ς. κληρο- + -ς > κλῆρος. This case is used for the *subject* of the verb and the *complement* after the verb "is," e.g.:

Subject	Verb	Complement
ὁ κλῆρος	ἐστι	μικρός.
The farm	is	small.

**Accusative Ending:** -ν. κληρο- + -ν > κλῆρον. This case is used for the *direct object* of the verb, e.g.:

Subject	Verb	Direct Object
ὁ ἄνθρωπος	γεωργεῖ	τὸν κλῆρον.
The man	cultivates	the farm.

Note that it is the endings of the words and not the order in which they are placed in the sentence that builds the meaning of the sentence. The first sentence above could be written μικρός ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος (the definite article marks ὁ κλῆρος as the subject). The second sentence could be written τὸν κλῆρον γεωργεῖ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, with a change in emphasis but no change in basic meaning.

#### c. Agreement

Definite articles and adjectives agree with the nouns they go with in gender, number (singular or plural), and case, e.g.:

ὁ καλὸς ἀγρός: masculine singular nominative  
τὸν μικρὸν οἶκον: masculine singular accusative

### 3. Labeling Functions of Words in Sentences

In exercises you will be asked to label the functions of words in sentences. Label the subject S, the complement C, and the direct object DO. Label linking verbs such as *ἐστί*(ν) LV. Verbs that take direct objects, such as *γεωργεῖ* in the sentence above, are *transitive* and are to be labeled TV (Transitive Verb); verbs that do not take direct objects, such as *οἰκεῖ* in the sentence below, are *intransitive* and are to be labeled IV (Intransitive Verb):

S            IV  
ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οἰκεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς.

Note that the complement can be either an adjective as in the sentence *ὁ κληρὸς ἐστὶ μικρὸς* above or a noun as in the following sentence:

S            C        LV  
ὁ Δικαιοπόλις αὐτουργὸς ἐστίν.

### 4. Use of the Definite Article

The definite article is sometimes used in Greek where it is not used in English, e.g., *ὁ Δικαιοπόλις* = *Dicaeopolis*, and sometimes it can be translated with a possessive adjective in English, e.g.:

ὁ ἄνθρωπος γεωργεῖ τὸν κληρὸν.  
*The man cultivates his farm.*

#### Exercise 1a

Copy the following sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, or IV above the appropriate words (do not label words in prepositional phrases). Then translate the sentences into English:

1. ὁ πόνος ἐστὶ μακρὸς.
2. καλὸς ἐστὶν ὁ οἶκος.
3. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὸν οἶκον φιλεῖ.
4. πολὺν σίτον παρέχει ὁ κληρὸς.
5. ὁ ἄνθρωπος οὐ πονεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς.

### The Athenian Farmer

Dicaeopolis lives in a village in Attica called Cholleidae, about ten miles or sixteen kilometers north of Athens. Although Athens and its port, the Piraeus, formed a very large city by ancient standards, the majority of the Athenian people lived and worked in the country. The historian Thucydides (2.14) says that when Attica had to be evacuated before the Peloponnesian in-

vasion of 431 B.C. "the evacuation was difficult for them since the majority had always been accustomed to living in the country."

Most of these people were farmers like Dicaeopolis. Their farms were small; ten to twenty acres would be the average size. What they grew on their farms would depend partly on the district in which they lived. On the plain near Athens no doubt the staple products would have been vegetables and grain, but most of Attica is hilly; this poorer land would be more suitable for grape vines, olive trees, sheep, and goats (cows were not kept for milk). All farmers aimed at self-sufficiency, but few would have attained it (two-thirds of the grain consumed by the Athenians was imported). If they had a surplus, e.g., of olive oil or wine, they would take it to the market in Athens for sale and buy what they could not produce themselves.

For purposes of administration, the Athenian citizens were divided into four classes, based on property. The top class, the *pentacosiomedimnoi* or "millionaires," a very small class, were those whose estates produced five hundred *medimnoi* of grain a year (a *medimnos* = about one and a half bushels or fifty-two to fifty-three liters). The second class, also small, were the *hippeis*, "knights," whose estates could support a horse (*ἵππος*); these provided the cavalry for the army (see illustration, page 162). The third and largest class were the farmers like Dicaeopolis, called the *zeugitai*, who kept a team of oxen (*ζεῦγος*). These provided the heavy infantry of the army. The fourth class were the *thetes*, "hired laborers," who owned no land or not enough to support a family.

Our sources represent the farmers as the backbone of the Athenian democracy—sturdy, industrious, thrifty, and simple, but shrewd. In the comedies of Aristophanes they are often contrasted with self-seeking politicians, decadent knights, and grasping traders. The name of our main character, Dicaeopolis, contains the concepts *δίκαιο*-, *just*, and *πόλις*, *city*, and means something like *honest citizen*. He is taken from a comedy of Aristophanes called the *Acharnians*; the play was produced in 425 B.C., and at the end of this course you will read extracts from it.



Scenes of plowing and sowing on a Greek vase

# Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις μέγαν λίθον αἶρει καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ φέρει.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

αἶρει, *he/she lifts*  
 βαδίζει, *he/she walks; he/she goes*  
 καθίζει, *he/she sits*  
 φέρει, *he/she carries*

### Nouns

ὁ ἥλιος, *sun*

ὁ χρόνος, *time*

### Pronoun

αὐτόν, *him*

### Adjectives

ἰσχυρός, *strong*  
 χαλεπός, *difficult*

### Preposition

πρός + acc., *to, toward*

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ πονεῖ· τὸν γὰρ ἀγρὸν σκάπτει. μακρός ἐστιν ὁ πόνος καὶ χαλεπός· τοὺς γὰρ λίθους ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ φέρει. μέγαν λίθον αἶρει καὶ φέρει πρὸς τὸ ἔρμα. ἰσχυρός ἐστιν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀλλὰ πολὺν χρόνον πονεῖ καὶ μάλα κάμνει. φλέγει γὰρ ὁ ἥλιος καὶ κατατρίβει αὐτόν. καθίζει οὖν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ καὶ ἡσυχάζει οὐ πολὺν χρόνον. δι' ὀλίγου γὰρ ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν καὶ πονεῖ. τέλος δὲ καταδύνει ὁ ἥλιος. οὐκέτι οὖν πονεῖ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν οἶκον βαδίζει.

[ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ, *in the field* σκάπτει, *he is digging* τοὺς... λίθους, *the stones* ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ, *out of the field* μέγαν, *big* τὸ ἔρμα, *the stone heap* πολὺν χρόνον, *for a long time* μάλα κάμνει, *he is very tired* φλέγει, *is blazing* κατατρίβει, *wears out* ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ, *under the tree* ἡσυχάζει, *he rests* δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν, *he lifts himself, gets up* τέλος, *adv., finally* καταδύνει, *sets* οὐκέτι, *no longer*]

## WORD BUILDING

What is the relationship between the words in the following sets? You have not yet met two of these words (φίλος and γεωργός). Try to deduce their meanings (they both refer to people) from studying the relationship between the words in each set:

- οἰκεῖ      ὁ οἶκος
- πονεῖ      ὁ πόνος
- γεωργεῖ      ὁ γεωργός
- φιλεῖ      ὁ φίλος

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Accents

Attic Greek has three kinds of accent marks: acute ´, grave ` , and circumflex ˘. The acute accent will be found only on one of the last three syllables of a word, e.g.: ἄνθρωπος, λέγει, μακρός. An acute accent on the final syllable of a word will be changed to a grave accent if it is followed immediately by another word with no punctuation (comma, semicolon, or period) in between, thus ἀλλά + καλός > ἀλλὰ καλός.

An important exception to this rule occurs when *enclitics*, words such as ἐστί(v), which usually lose their accent and instead “lean upon” the previous word for their accent, follow words with an acute accent on their final syllable, e.g.:

χαλεπός + ἐστί(v) becomes χαλεπός ἐστι(v).

The acute on the final syllable of χαλεπός does not change to a grave when the word is followed by an enclitic, and the enclitic loses its accent.

Note also what happens when words accented like ἄνθρωπος, πόνος, and οἶκος are followed by enclitics:

ἄνθρωπος + ἐστί(v) becomes ἄνθρωπος ἐστι(v).

An acute accent is added to ἄνθρωπος, and the enclitic loses its accent.

πόνος + ἐστί(v) remains πόνος ἐστί(v).

The enclitic keeps its accent.

οἶκος + ἐστί(v) becomes οἶκος ἐστι(v).

An acute accent is added to οἶκος, and the enclitic loses its accent.

**Exercise 1β**

Copy the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, or IV above the appropriate words (do not label words in prepositional phrases). Then translate the pairs of sentences. When translating from English to Greek, keep the same word order as in the model Greek sentence. Pay particular attention to accents, following the rules given above. Do not forget to add the movable *ν* where necessary (see Grammar 1, page 4).

1. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ οἰκεῖ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις.  
The farmer walks to the field.
2. μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ἀγρός.  
The house is small.
3. ὁ αὐτουργὸς ἐστὶν ἰσχυρὸς.  
Dicaeopolis is a farmer.
4. ὁ κλῆρος πολὺν σῖτον παρέχει.  
The man carries the big stone.
5. ὁ ἄνθρωπος τὸν σῖτον παρέχει.  
Dicaeopolis lifts the small stone.

**Ο ΚΛΗΡΟΣ**

Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:

μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ πόνος καὶ χαλεπός. ὁ δὲ αὐτουργὸς οὐκ ὀκνεῖ ἀλλ' αἰεὶ γεωργεῖ τὸν κλῆρον. καλὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος καὶ πολὺν σῖτον παρέχει. χαίρει οὖν ὁ ἄνθρωπος· ἰσχυρὸς γάρ ἐστι καὶ οὐ πολλάκις κάμνει.

[ὀκνεῖ, *shirks*]

1. What is the farmer not doing? What does he always do?
2. What does the farm provide?
3. Why does the man rejoice?

**Exercise 1γ**

Translate into Greek:

1. Dicaeopolis does not always rejoice.
2. He always works in the field.
3. So he is often tired; for the work is long.
4. But he does not shirk; for he loves his home.

**Classical Greek**

Heraclitus

Heraclitus of Ephesus (fl. 500 B.C.) was a philosopher who maintained that, despite appearances, everything was in a continual state of change. Plato (*Cratylus* 402a) quotes him as saying "You cannot step into the same river twice."

In the same passage of the *Cratylus*, Plato reports that Heraclitus said:

πάντα χωρεῖ καὶ οὐδὲν μένει.

[πάντα, *everything* χωρεῖ, *is on the move* οὐδὲν, *nothing* μένει, *stays (unchanged)*]

**New Testament Greek**

Title of the Gospel of Luke

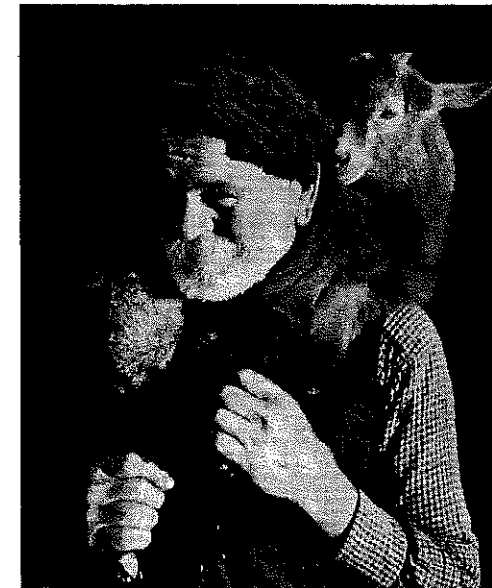
The New Testament readings in Book I of *Athenaze* are taken from the Holy Gospel according to Luke. Here is the title of this gospel in Greek:

ΤΟ ΑΓΙΟΝ ΕΥΑΓΓΕΛΙΟΝ ΤΟ ΚΑΤΑ ΛΟΥΚΑΝ

or

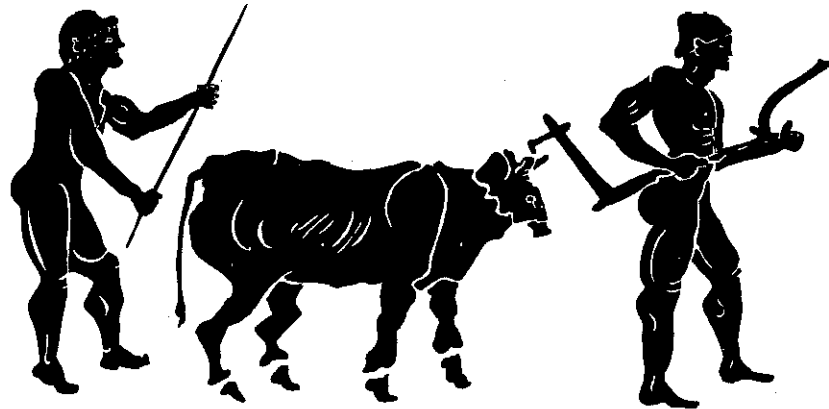
τὸ ἅγιον εὐαγγέλιον τὸ κατὰ Λουκᾶν

[τὸ, *the* ἅγιον, *holy* εὐαγγέλιον, *good news, gospel* (= Old English *gōd*, "good" + *spel*, "news") κατὰ, *according to*]



A farmer in contemporary Greece, carrying a kid

## 2 Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (α)



ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τὸν βοῦν, ὁ δὲ δοῦλος φέρει τὸ ἄροτρον.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἐκβαίνει, *he/she steps out;*  
*he/she comes out*  
 ἐλαύνει, *he/she drives*  
 ἐλθέ, *come!*  
 καθεύδει, *he/she sleeps*  
 καλεῖ, *he/she calls*  
 πάρεστι(ν), *he/she/it is present; he/she/it is here;*  
*he/she/it is there*  
 σπεύδει, *he/she hurries*

#### Nouns

τὸ ἄροτρον, *plow*  
 ὁ δοῦλος, *slave*

#### Pronoun

ἐγώ, *I*

#### Adjective

ἄργος, *lazy*

#### Adverbs

οὕτως, *before consonants,*  
*οὕτω, so, thus*  
 μή, *not; + imperative, don't ...!*  
 τί, *why?*

#### Particles

μὲν ... δέ ..., *postpositive, on*  
*the one hand ... and on the*  
*other hand ... ; on the one*  
*hand ... but on the other hand*

#### Proper Name

ὁ Ξανθιάς, *Xanthias*

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου καὶ καλεῖ τὸν Ξανθιάν. ὁ Ξανθιάς δοῦλός ἐστιν, ἰσχυρὸς μὲν ἄνθρωπος, ἄργος δέ· οὐ γὰρ πονεῖ, εἰ μὴ πάρεστιν ὁ Δικαιοπόλις. νῦν δὲ καθεύδει ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ Ξανθιά. τί καθεύδεις; μὴ οὕτως ἄργος ἴσθι ἀλλὰ σπεῦδε.” ὁ οὖν Ξανθιάς

βραδέως ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου καὶ λέγει· “τί εἶ οὕτω χαλεπός, ὦ δέσποτα; οὐ γὰρ ἄργός εἰμι ἀλλὰ ἤδη σπεύδω.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο καὶ συλλάμβανε· αἶρε γὰρ τὸ ἄροτρον καὶ φέρε αὐτὸ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐλαύνω τοὺς βοῦς. ἀλλὰ σπεῦδε· μικρὸς μὲν γὰρ ἐστὶν ὁ ἀγρός, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος.”

[ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου, *out of the house* εἰ μὴ, *unless* νῦν, *now* ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ, *in the house*  
 δεῦρο, *here = hither* μὴ ... ἴσθι, *don't be!* βραδέως, *slowly* δέσποτα, *master*  
 ἤδη, *already* συλλάμβανε, *help!* αὐτὸ, *it* τοὺς βοῦς, *the oxen*]

### WORD STUDY

1. What do *despotic* and *chronology* mean? What Greek words do you find embedded in these English words?
2. What does a *dendrologist* study?
3. Explain what a *heliocentric* theory of the universe is.
4. What is a *chronometer*? What does τὸ μέτρον mean?

### GRAMMAR

#### 1. Verb Forms: Indicative Mood; 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Persons Singular

The *moods* indicate whether an action is viewed as being real or ideal. The *indicative* mood is used to express statements and questions about reality or fact:

ἐλαύνω τοὺς βοῦς. *I am driving the oxen.*  
 τί καθεύδεις; *Why are you sleeping?*

The different endings of the verb show not only who or what is performing the action (I; you; he/she/it; we; you; they) but also how the action is being viewed (mood). In the following examples we give only the singular possibilities (I; you; he/she/it) in the indicative mood:

**Stem:** λῶ-, *loosen, loose*

<b>1st singular</b>	λῶ-ω	<i>I loosen, am loosening, do loosen</i>
<b>2nd singular</b>	λῶ-εις	<i>you loosen, are loosening, do loosen</i>
<b>3rd singular</b>	λῶ-ει	<i>he/she loosens, is loosening, does loosen</i>

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

<b>1st singular</b>	φιλέ-ω > φιλῶ	<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>
<b>2nd singular</b>	φιλέ-εις > φιλεῖς	<i>you love, are loving, do love</i>
<b>3rd singular</b>	φιλέ-ει > φιλεῖ	<i>he/she loves, is loving, does love</i>

**Stem:** ἔσ-, *be*

<b>1st singular</b>	εἰμί*	<i>I am</i>
<b>2nd singular</b>	εἶ	<i>you are</i>
<b>3rd singular</b>	ἐστί(ν)*	<i>he/she/it is</i>
*enclitic		

Since the endings differ for each person, subject pronouns need not be expressed in Greek, e.g.:

ἐλαύνω = *I drive*.

ἐλαύνεις = *you drive*.

ἐλαύνει = *he/she drives*.

But they are expressed if they are emphatic, e.g.:

ἐγὼ μὲν πονῶ, σὺ δὲ καθεύδεις. *I am working, but you are sleeping.*

### Exercise 2α

*Read aloud and translate into English:*

1. τὸν δοῦλον καλῶ.
2. ὁ δοῦλος ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ πονεῖ.
3. τί οὐ σπεύδεις;
4. οὐκ εἰμί ἄργός.
5. ἰσχυρὸς εἶ.
6. τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει.
7. πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν σπεύδω.
8. τί καλεῖς τὸν δοῦλον;
9. ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἔστιν ἄργός.
10. ὁ δοῦλος ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου.

## 2. Proclitics

The negative adverb οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ is called a *proclitic*. Proclitics normally do not have accents but “lean forward” onto the following word (cf. enclitics, page 4), e.g., τί οὐ σπεύδεις; (Exercise 2α, no. 3, above). When the proclitic οὐ is followed by the enclitic εἰμί (1st person singular), the enclitic retains an accent on its second syllable, e.g., οὐκ εἰμί ἄργός (Exercise 2α, no. 4, above). When οὐκ is followed by the enclitic ἐστί(ν) (3rd person singular), the enclitic receives an acute accent on its first syllable, e.g., ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἔστιν ἄργός (Exercise 2α, no. 9, above).

### Exercise 2β

*Translate into Greek. Do not begin your Greek sentence with an enclitic. When necessary, apply the rules for proclitics and enclitics given above and in Chapter 1, Grammar 5, page 9.*

1. He/she is not hurrying.

2. Why are you not working?
3. I am carrying the plow.
4. You are hurrying to the field.
5. He is lazy.
6. I am not strong.
7. You are not a slave.
8. The slave is not working.
9. The slave is carrying the plow to the field.
10. He is not lazy.

## 3. The Imperative

The *imperative* mood is used to express commands:

σπεῦδ-ε *hurry!* φίλε-ε > φίλει *love!* ἴσθι *be!*

In prohibitions (negative commands), μή + the imperative is used:

μὴ αἶρε τὸ ἄροτρον. *Don't lift the plow!*

μὴ ἄργος ἴσθι. *Don't be lazy!*

### Exercise 2γ

*Copy the following sentences and write C, DO, or IMP for imperative above the appropriate words. Then translate the sentences into English:*

1. ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου, ὦ Ξανθίᾳ, καὶ ἐλθε δεῦρο.
2. μὴ κάθευδε, ὦ δοῦλε, ἀλλὰ πόνει.
3. μὴ οὕτω χαλεπὸς ἴσθι, ὦ δέσποτα.
4. αἶρε τὸ ἄροτρον καὶ σπεῦδε πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν.
5. κάλει τὸν δοῦλον, ὦ δέσποτα.

## Slavery

The adult male population of the city-state of Athens in 431 B.C. has been calculated as follows: citizens 50,000, resident foreigners 25,000, slaves 100,000. The resident foreigners (*metics*, μέτοικοι) were free men who were granted a distinct status; they could not own land in Attica or contract marriages with citizens, but they had the protection of the courts, they served in the army, they had a role in the festivals, and they played an important part in commerce and industry.

Slaves had no legal rights and were the property of the state or individuals. The fourth-century philosopher Aristotle describes them as “living tools.” They were either born into slavery or came to the slave market as a result of war or piracy. They were nearly all barbarians, i.e., non-Greek (a document from 415 B.C. records the sale of fourteen slaves—five were from Thrace, two from Syria, three from Caria, two from Illyria, and one each from Scythia and Colchis). It was considered immoral to enslave Greeks, and this very rarely happened.

The whole economy of the ancient world, which made little use of machines, was based on slave labor. Slaves were employed by the state, e.g., in the silver mines; they worked in factories (the largest we know of was a shield factory, employing 120 slaves); and individual citizens owned one or more slaves in proportion to their wealth. Every farmer hoped to own a slave to help in the house and fields, but not all did. Aristotle remarks that for poor men "the ox takes the place of the slave."

It would be wrong to assume that slaves were always treated inhumanely. A fifth-century writer of reactionary views says:

Now as to slaves and metics, in Athens, they live a most undisciplined life. One is not permitted to strike them, and a slave will not stand out of the way for you. Let me explain why. If the law permitted a free man to strike a slave or metic or a freedman, he would often find that he had mistaken an Athenian for a slave and struck him, for, as far as clothing and general appearance go, the common people look just the same as slaves and metics. (Pseudo-Xenophon 1.10)

Slaves and citizens often worked side by side and received the same wage, as we learn from inscriptions giving the accounts of public building works. Slaves might save enough money to buy their freedom from their masters, though this was not as common in Athens as in Rome.

In the country, the slaves of farmers usually lived and ate with their masters. Aristophanes' comedies depict them as lively and cheeky characters, by no means downtrodden. We have given Dicaeopolis one slave, named Xanthias, a typical slave name meaning "fair-haired."

### Greek Wisdom

See page 70

μέτρον ἄριστον.

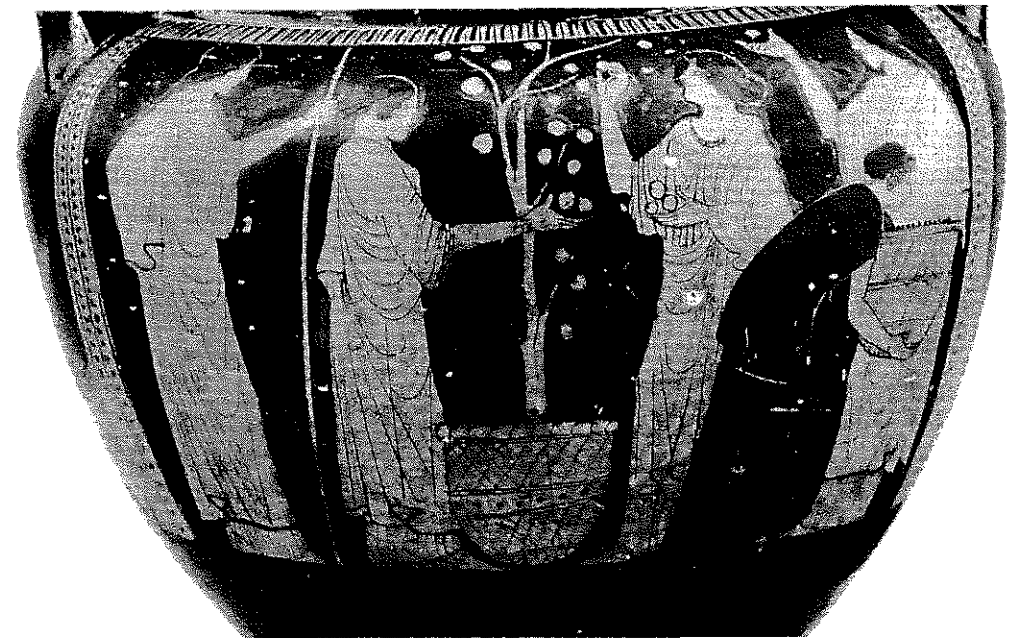
Κλεόβουλος (of Lindos)



A farmer on his way to market; he is followed by a slave carrying two baskets of produce and accompanied by a pig and a piglet.

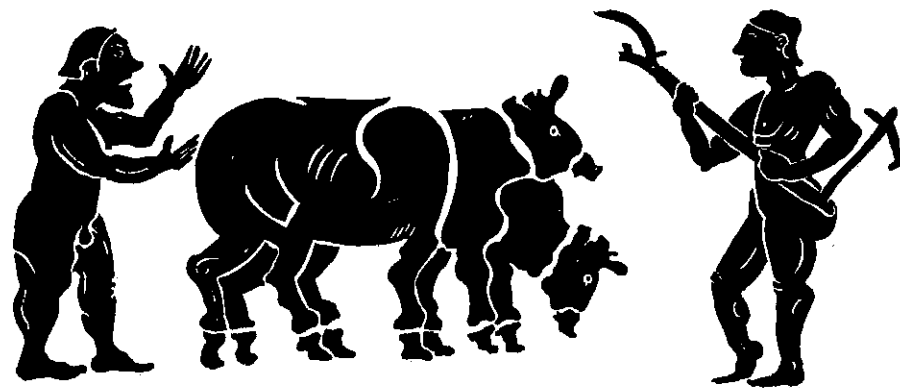


Slaves working in a clay pit



Women picking apples—slave and free

## Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις λέγει· “σπεῦδε, ὦ Ξανθιά, καὶ φέρε μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.”

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἄγω, *I lead; I take*  
 εἰσάγω, *I lead in; I take in*  
 βαῖνω, *I step; I walk; I go*  
 βλέπω, usually intransitive,  
*I look; I see*  
 λαμβάνω, *I take*  
 συλλαμβάνω [= συν-, *with*  
 + λαμβάνω], *I help*

## Nouns

ὁ βοῦς, *ox*  
 τὸ δένδρον, *tree*  
 ὁ δεσπότης, *master*

## Preposition

εἰς + acc., *into; to; at*

## Adverbs

βραδέως, *slowly*  
 ἔπειτα, *then, thereafter*  
 ἤδη, *already; now*

ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς ὀπισθεν βαδίζει καὶ φέρει τὸ ἄροτρον. δι' ὀλίγου δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις εἰσάγει τοὺς βοῦς εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν καὶ βλέπει πρὸς τὸν δοῦλον· ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς οὐ πάρεστιν· βραδέως γὰρ βαίνει. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “σπεῦδε, ὦ Ξανθιά, καὶ φέρε μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.” ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς λέγει· “ἀλλ' ἤδη σπεύδω, ὦ δέσποτα· τί οὕτω χαλεπὸς εἶ;” βραδέως δὲ φέρει τὸ ἄροτρον πρὸς αὐτόν. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις ἄγει τοὺς βοῦς ὑπὸ τὸ ζυγὸν καὶ προσάπτει τὸ ἄροτρον. ἔπειτα δὲ πρὸς τὸν δοῦλον βλέπει· ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς οὐ πάρεστιν· καθεύδει γὰρ ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ.

[ὀπισθεν, *behind* δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* μοι, (to) me ὑπὸ τὸ ζυγόν, *under the yoke* προσάπτει, *attaches*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ 10  
 κατάρᾳτε. μὴ κάθευδε ἀλλὰ συλλάμβανε. φέρε γὰρ τὸ σπέρμα καὶ  
 ὀπισθεν βαδίζε.” ὁ μὲν οὖν δοῦλος τὸ σπέρμα λαμβάνει καὶ  
 ἀκολουθεῖ, ὁ δὲ δεσπότης καλεῖ τὴν Δήμητρα καὶ λέγει· “ἔλεως ἴσθι, ὦ  
 Δήμητερ, καὶ πλήθυνε τὸ σπέρμα.” ἔπειτα δὲ τὸ κέντρον λαμβάνει 15  
 καὶ κεντεῖ τοὺς βοῦς καὶ λέγει· “σπεύδετε, ὦ βόες· ἔλκετε τὸ ἄροτρον  
 καὶ ἀροῦτε τὸν ἀγρὸν.”

[ὦ κατάρᾳτε, *you cursed creature* τὸ σπέρμα, *the seed* ἀκολουθεῖ, *follows* τὴν  
 Δήμητρα, *Demeter (goddess of grain)* ἔλεως, *gracious* πλήθυνε, *multiply* τὸ  
 κέντρον, *the goad* κεντεῖ, *goads* ἔλκετε, *drag* ἀροῦτε, *plow*]

## WORD BUILDING

In the readings you have met the following prepositions: εἰς, *into*; ἐκ, *out of*; ἐν, *in*; and πρὸς, *to, toward*. These prepositions may be prefixed to verbs to form compound verbs, e.g.:

βαίνει, *he/she walks, steps*

ἐκβαίνει, *he/she steps out*

Deduce the meaning of the following compound verbs:

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. προσφέρει   | 4. προσβαίνει |
| 2. ἐκφέρει     | 5. ἐκκαλεῖ    |
| 3. προσελαύνει | 6. εἰσελαύνει |

You can easily deduce the meanings of many more compound verbs of this sort, which are very frequent in Greek. Right from the start of your study of Greek you should begin to recognize the meaning of many new words from your knowledge of ones with which you are already familiar. To encourage you to develop and use this skill, the meaning of compound verbs will not be given in the chapter vocabularies when the meaning is clear from the separate parts of the word. When compound verbs have *special* meanings, they will be given in the vocabulary lists.

## GRAMMAR

## 4. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular, All Cases

	Masculine			Neuter		
Nominative	ὁ	καλὸς	ἀγρός	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
Genitive	τοῦ	καλοῦ	ἀγροῦ	τοῦ	καλοῦ	δένδρου
Dative	τῷ	καλῷ	ἀγρῷ	τῷ	καλῷ	δένδρῳ
Accusative	τὸν	καλὸν	ἀγρόν	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
Vocative	ὦ*	καλὲ	ἀγρέ	ὦ	καλὸν	δένδρον

N.B. The endings for the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are the same.

\*Not a definite article, but an interjection used with the vocative.

## 5. Uses of the Cases

The subject of the sentence and the complement of the verb "to be" are in the *nominative case*, e.g., ὁ ἀγρὸς καλὸς ἐστίν = *The field is beautiful*. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις αὐτουργός ἐστίν. *Dicaeopolis is a farmer*.

The *genitive case* is at present used only after certain prepositions, including those that express motion from a place, e.g., ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου = *He/She steps/comes out of the house*.

The *dative case* is also at present used only after certain prepositions, including those that indicate the place where someone or something is or something happens, e.g., καθεύδει ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ = *He/She sleeps in the house*.

The *accusative case* indicates the direct object of a transitive verb (e.g., καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον) and is used after certain prepositions, including those that indicate motion toward someone or something, e.g., πρὸς τὸν οἶκον βαδίζει = *He/She walks toward the house*.

The *vocative case* is used when addressing a person, e.g., ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ δοῦλε = *Come here, slave!* It is usually preceded by ὦ, which need not be translated.

## 6. Persistent Accent of Nouns and Adjectives

The accents of nouns and adjectives are *persistent*, i.e., they remain as they are in the nominative case unless forced to change because of one of several rules. One such rule is that nouns and adjectives such as those in the chart above, if they are accented in the nominative with an acute on the final syllable, change their accent to a circumflex on the final syllable in the genitive and dative cases. Note how this rule applies to the adjective καλός/καλόν and to the noun ἀγρός above. (Of course, the adjective καλός/καλόν as written above in the nominative, accusative, and vocative

cases has changed its acute to a grave because of the nouns immediately following.) Note also that the definite article follows a similar rule and has a circumflex accent on the genitive and dative.

## Exercise 2δ

Give the correct form of the article to complete the following phrases; be careful with the accents:

1. τὸν δοῦλον
2. ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ
3. ὁ ἄνθρωπος
4. ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου
5. τὸ ἄροτρον
6. ὑπὸ τοῦ δένδρου
7. ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ

## Exercise 2ε

Complete the following sentences by giving correct endings to the verbs, nouns, and adjectives, and then translate the sentences into English:

1. ὁ δοῦλος σπεύδ\_\_\_ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρ\_\_\_.
2. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὸν ἀγρ\_\_\_ δοῦλον καλ\_\_\_.
3. ἐλθ\_\_\_ δεῦρο καὶ συλλάμβα\_\_\_.
4. ἐγὼ ἐλαύν\_\_\_ τοὺς βοῦς ἐκ τοῦ ἀγρ\_\_\_.
5. μὴ χαλεπ\_\_\_ ἴσθι, ὦ δοῦλ\_\_\_, ἀλλὰ πόν\_\_\_.

## 7. Recessive Accent of Verbs

More will be said about accents on verbs later in this course (e.g., Chapter 5, Grammar 2, pages 56–57), but for now observe that the forms ἐλαύνω, ἐλαύνεις, and ἐλαύνει have accents on the next to the last syllable, when the final syllable has a long vowel or diphthong. When the final syllable is short, as in the imperative, the accent recedes to the third syllable from the end, thus, ἔλαυνε. In the second paragraph of story β, find six verbs accented on the third syllable from the end.

## Exercise 2ζ

Translate the following pairs of sentences:

1. ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἔστιν Ἀθηναῖος.  
Xanthias is not strong.
2. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου καὶ καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον.  
The slave hurries to the field and carries the plow.

3. ὁ δοῦλος οὐ συλλαμβάνει ἀλλὰ καθεύδει ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ.  
The man is not working but walking to the house.
4. εἴσελθε εἰς τὸν οἶκον, ὦ Ξανθίᾱ, καὶ φέρε τὸν σῖτον.  
Come, slave, and lead in the oxen.
5. μὴ πόνει, ὦ Ξανθίᾱ, ἀλλὰ ἐλθὲ δεῦρο.  
Don't sleep, man, but work in the field.

## Ο ΔΟΥΛΟΣ

Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:

ὁ αὐτουργὸς σπεύδει εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν καὶ καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον. ὁ δὲ δοῦλος οὐ πάρεστιν· καθεύδει γὰρ ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ. ὁ οὖν δεσπότης βαδίζει πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ δοῦλε ἄργε, καὶ πόνει.” ὁ οὖν δοῦλος βαδίζει πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “μὴ χαλεπὸς ἴσθι, ὦ δέσποτα· ἥδη γὰρ πάρεμι ἐγὼ καὶ φέρω σοι τὸ ἄροτρον.” ὁ οὖν δεσπότης λέγει· “σπεῦδε, ὦ Ξανθίᾱ· μικρὸς μὲν γάρ ἐστιν ὁ ἀγρὸς, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος.”

[σοι, to you]

1. What is the farmer doing?
2. What is the slave doing?
3. When told to come and help, what does the slave do?
4. Why is the slave urged to hurry?

### Exercise 2η

Translate into Greek. When you need to use μέν and another postpositive word together, always put μέν before the other postpositive (see line 5 of the story above):

1. Dicaeopolis no longer (οὐκέτι) works but loosens the oxen.
2. And (use δέ, postpositive) then he calls the slave and says: “Don't work any longer (μηκέτι) but come here and take the plow.
3. “For I (use personal pronoun) on the one hand am driving the oxen to the house, you (σύ) on the other hand carry (imperative) the plow.”
4. So on the one hand Dicaeopolis drives the oxen out of the field, and on the other hand the slave takes the plow and carries (it) toward the house.

## Classical Greek

Callimachus

Callimachus of Alexandria (fl. 250 B.C.) was a poet who rejected traditional genres such as epic and advocated the writing of short, light poems. The following saying based on fragment 465 (Pfeiffer) makes his preference clear:

μέγα βιβλίον μέγα κακόν.

[βιβλίον, book; supply ἐστὶ κακόν, evil, trouble]

## New Testament Greek

Luke 3.22

The context is: “And it happened that while all the people were being baptized and Jesus had been baptized and was praying, the heaven was opened, the Holy Ghost came down upon him in bodily form like a dove, and a voice came from heaven.” The voice said:

“σὺ εἶ ὁ υἱὸς μου ὁ ἀγαπητός. . . .”

[ὁ υἱὸς μου, my son ὁ ἀγαπητός, the beloved]

See Acknowledgments, page 356.



Youth with cow in a sacrificial procession

### 3 Ο ΑΡΟΤΟΣ (α)



ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες τὸ ἄροτρον ἔλκουσιν.

#### VOCABULARY

##### Verbs

μένω, *I stay (in one place);*

*I wait; I wait for*

πίπτω, *I fall*

προσχωρέω + dat., *I go toward,*  
*approach*

φησί(ν), *postpositive enclitic,*  
*he/she says*

##### Noun

ὁ λίθος, *stone*

##### Pronouns

αὐτό, *it*

αὐτόν, *him; it*

##### Adjectives

αἴτιος, *responsible (for); to*  
*blame*

δυνατός, *possible*

μέγας, *big, large; great*

##### Preposition

ἐκ, ἐξ *before words beginning*  
*with vowels + gen., out of*

##### Adverbs

αὖθις, *again*

δεῦρο, *here, i.e., hither*

ἔτι, *still*

οὐκέτι, *no longer*

##### Particle and Conjunction

τε . . . καί or τε καί, *the τε is*  
*postpositive and enclitic, both*  
. . . and

##### Expression

ὦ Ζεῦ, *O Zeus*

ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον, ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς σπείρει τὸ σπέρμα. ἀλλὰ ἰδοῦ, μένουσιν οἱ βόες καὶ οὐκέτι ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον. ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τοὺς βοῦς καλεῖ καί, “σπεύδετε, ὦ βόες,” φησίν. “μὴ μένετε.” οἱ δὲ βόες ἔτι μένουσιν. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις, “τί μένετε, ὦ βόες;” φησίν, καὶ βλέπει

πρὸς τὸ ἄροτρον, καὶ ἰδοῦ, λίθος ἐμποδίζει αὐτό. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις λαμβάνει τὸν λίθον ἄλλ’ οὐκ αἶρει αὐτόν· μέγας γάρ ἐστιν. καλεῖ οὖν τὸν δοῦλον καί, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ Ξανθιά,” φησίν, “καὶ συλλάμβανε· λίθος γάρ μέγας τὸ ἄροτρον ἐμποδίζει, οἱ δὲ βόες μένουσιν.”

[ἔλκουσι, (they) are dragging σπείρει, is sowing τὸ σπέρμα, the seed ἰδοῦ, look! ἐμποδίζει, is obstructing]

ὁ οὖν Ξανθιάς βραδέως προσχωρεῖ ἄλλ’ οὐ συλλαμβάνει· βλέπει γὰρ πρὸς τὸν λίθον καί, “μέγας ἐστὶν ὁ λίθος, ὦ δέσποτα,” φησίν. “ἰδοῦ, οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν αἶρειν αὐτόν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “μὴ ἄργος ἴσθι,” φησίν, “ἀλλὰ συλλάμβανε. δυνατόν γάρ ἐστιν αἶρειν τὸν λίθον.” ἅμα οὖν ὁ τε δεσπότης καὶ ὁ δοῦλος αἵρουσι τὸν λίθον καὶ

[ἅμα, together]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ φέρουσιν αὐτόν, πταίει ὁ Ξανθιάς καὶ καταβάλλει τὸν λίθον· ὁ δὲ λίθος πίπτει πρὸς τὸν τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος πόδα. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις στενάζει καί, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” φησίν, “φεῦ τοῦ ποδός. λάμβανε τὸν λίθον, ὦ ἀνόητε, καὶ αἶρε αὐτόν καὶ μὴ οὕτω σκαιὸς ἴσθι.” ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς, “τί οὕτω χαλεπὸς εἶ, ὦ δέσποτα;” φησίν. “οὐ γὰρ αἴτιός εἰμι ἐγώ· μέγας γάρ ἐστιν ὁ λίθος, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστὶν αὐτόν φέρειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “μὴ φλυᾶρει, ὦ μαστιγία, ἄλλ’ αἶρε τὸν λίθον καὶ ἔκφερε ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.” αὖθις οὖν αἵρουσι τὸν λίθον καὶ μόλις ἐκφέρουσιν αὐτόν ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες οὐκέτι μένουσιν ἀλλὰ ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον.

[ἐν ᾧ, while πταίει, stumbles καταβάλλει, drops πρὸς τὸν τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος πόδα, upon Dicaeopolis's foot στενάζει, groans φεῦ τοῦ ποδός, oh, my poor foot! ὦ ἀνόητε, you fool σκαιὸς, clumsy φλυᾶρει, talk nonsense! ὦ μαστιγία, you rogue (deserving of a whipping) μόλις, with difficulty]

## WORD STUDY

1. What does *lithograph* mean? What does γράφω mean?
2. What is a *monolith*? What does μόνος mean?
3. What does *megalithic* mean?
4. What is a *megaphone*? What does ἡ φωνή mean?

## GRAMMAR

## 1. Verb Forms: 3rd Person Plural, Imperatives, and Infinitives

- a. In Chapter 2 you learned the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd person singular indicative forms of λύω, φιλέω, and εἰμί. Here are the 3rd person plural indicative forms:

**Stem:** λῡ-, *loosen, loose*

**3rd plural** λῡ-ουσι(ν) *they loosen, are loosening, do loosen*

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

**3rd plural** φιλέ-ουσι(ν) > φιλοῦσι(ν) *they love, are loving, do love*

**Stem:** ἐσ-, *be*

**3rd plural** εἰσί(ν)\* *they are*

\*enclitic

Locate twelve 3rd person plural verb forms in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter.

- b. In Chapter 2 you learned some forms of the *imperative* mood. These were the singular forms, used to address a command to one person:

σπεῦδε *hurry!*

φίλει *love!*

ἔσθι *be!*

ἐλθέ *come! go!*

Note the accent of ἐλθέ, which is irregular.

In the reading at the beginning of this chapter you have met plural forms of the imperative (see also Chapter 2β, lines 15–16), used to address a command to more than one person (or animal!). The plurals of the imperatives given above are:

σπεύδετε

φιλέ-ετε > φιλεῖτε

ἔστε

ἐλθετε

Note the accent of ἐλθετε; compare ἐλθέ above.

Locate two plural imperatives in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter. To whom (or what) are the commands addressed?

- c. The *infinitive* is the form of the verb that we create in English by using the word *to*. Greek forms the infinitive by use of an ending:

**Stem:** λῡ-, *loosen, loose*

**Infinitive** λῡ-εἶν *to loosen, to be loosening*

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

**Infinitive** φιλέ-εἶν > φιλεῖν *to love, to be loving*

**Stem:** ἐσ-, *be*

**Infinitive** ἐσ- + -ναι > εἶναι *to be*

Locate three infinitives in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter.

## Exercise 3α

Copy the first five of the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, IMP, or INF for infinitive above the appropriate words (do not label adverbs, conjunctions, particles, words in prepositional phrases or the exclamatory ἰδοῦ). Then translate all of the sentences.

1. οἱ βόες οὐκέτι ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον.
2. ὃ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλος προσχωροῦσι καὶ βλέπουνι πρὸς τὸ ἄροτρον.
3. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἰδοῦ,” φησὶν· “λίθος μέγας τὸ ἄροτρον ἐμποδίζει.
4. “αἶρε τὸν λίθον καὶ ἔκφερε ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.”
5. ὁ δὲ δοῦλος, “ἰδοῦ,” φησὶν· “μέγας ἐστὶν ὁ λίθος· οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν αἶρειν αὐτόν.”
6. ὃ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλος τὸν λίθον αἶρουσι καὶ ἐκφέρουσιν ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
7. μὴ μένετε, ὦ βόες, ἀλλὰ σπεύδετε.
8. οἱ βόες οὐκέτι μένουσιν ἀλλὰ τὸ ἄροτρον αὐθις ἔλκουσιν.

## Exercise 3β

Translate into Greek:

1. The oxen are sleeping in the field.
2. Come here and drive out (use ἐξελαύνω)\* the oxen, slaves (ὁ δοῦλοι).\*\*
3. They take the goad (τὸ κέντρον) and slowly approach the oxen (τοῖς βουσί(ν)).

\* I.e., use the correct form of the word given in parentheses.

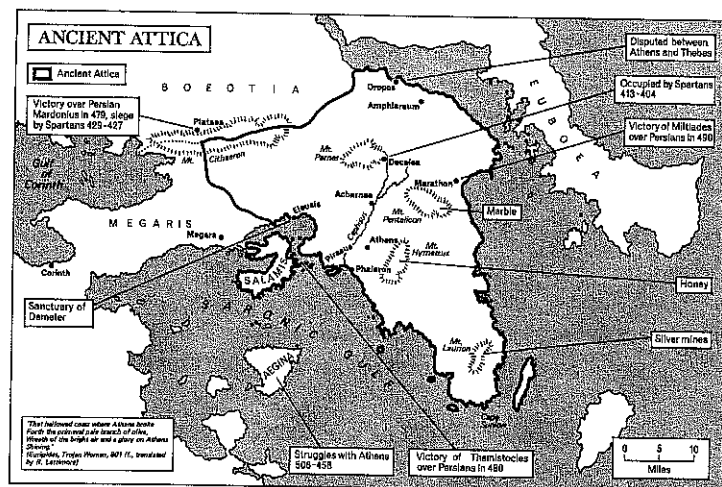
\*\* I.e., use the words given in parentheses without changing them.

4. Hurry, oxen; don't sleep in the field.
5. It is not possible to drive out (*use ἐξελαύνω*) the oxen; for they are strong (*ισχυροί*; begin your clause with this word).

## The Deme and the Polis

As we have seen, Dicaeopolis lives in a village about ten miles or sixteen kilometers north of Athens called Cholleidae, situated between Mount Parnes and Mount Pentelicon. Such districts were called demes, and at the time of our story there were about 170 of them in Attica, differing greatly in size and population. Each deme had its own assembly, to which all adult male citizens belonged. This assembly elected a *demarch* (δήμαρχος, *mayor* or *sheriff*) and passed decrees on local affairs, both secular and religious. It kept a record of all births; a man's rights as a citizen depended on his being registered in a deme when he reached adulthood. In all official contexts a man gave his name together with that of his father and deme, e.g., Περικλῆς Ξανθίππου Χολαργεύς (Pericles, son of Xanthippus, of the deme of Cholargus).

The houses that composed these villages were mostly small and unpretentious, as far as our evidence goes. A typical house would consist of a courtyard surrounded by single-story rooms, and in one corner a storage-tower with an upper floor; this upper floor would form the women's quarters, to which women would retire if strangers called. There would be no source of water within the house itself; it had to be fetched every day from a public fountain. Light would be provided by clay lamps fired by olive oil, which was also used for cooking and washing. We may assume that the majority of the farmers lived in the village and went out to work on their farms every day, as farmers still do in parts of Greece and Italy today, where houses are as a general rule not in the fields but clustered together in hilltop villages.



Attica and surroundings

The men worked most of the day in the fields, and no doubt in the evenings they spent their time in the wineshop in the agora or marketplace, discussing farming and politics with their friends. Life was enlivened by a succession of religious festivals. An inscription from the deme of Ercheia records a list of over fifty public sacrifices performed annually, and a public sacrifice usually entailed a public feast. In the winter, at the festival of the Rural Dionysia, touring companies from Athens even brought plays out to the demes. There were also private functions performed with traditional rituals, especially celebrations of birth, marriage, and death.

The farmer's horizon was by no means bounded by the deme. When he produced a surplus of any product such as wine or olives, he would go to Athens to sell it and to buy necessities he could not produce himself. There were religious festivals at regular intervals throughout the year at Athens (see Chapter 10), which he could attend with his wife and family; these included musical, dramatic, and athletic competitions.

There were important political functions that, as an Athenian citizen, the farmer was bound to perform. Forty times a year there were regular meetings of the Athenian Assembly, attended by all adult male citizens. The farmer would in fact have been prevented by his work from attending all of these, but he would certainly have gone to some of them. Every year the assembly of the deme chose representatives for the Council of 500, which was the executive committee of the Assembly. Councilors had to be over thirty years old, and no man could serve more than twice in his lifetime. It has been calculated that sooner or later nearly every farmer would have to take his turn in this office. This might involve residence in the city since the Council met every day.

Lastly, the farmers provided the heavy armed infantry, the *hoplites* (ὁπλίται), of the army. On reaching manhood they would have to do military training, since fighting in a hoplite line involved much practice and good discipline. In the fourth century every citizen did two years military service from the age of eighteen and thereafter was liable to be called up in an emergency.

At the end of the first year of the great war between Athens and Sparta (about a year after our story begins), the Athenian leader Pericles made a funeral oration over those who had been killed in the war. Most of his speech was devoted to praise of the ideals of Athenian democracy for which they had died. In the course of this he says: "The same people [i.e., the whole citizen body] are concerned not only with their domestic affairs but also with politics [i.e., the affairs of the city]; and although employed in different occupations, they are adequately informed on political matters. We alone consider a man who plays no part in these not as one who minds his own business but as useless" (Thucydides 2.40). The farmer's life under the Athenian democracy, despite primitive physical conditions, was far from drab.

## Ο ΑΡΟΤΟΣ (β)



"οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν, ὦ δέσποτα, τοσούτους λίθους ἐκφέρειν."

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

λείπω, I leave  
λύω, I loosen, loose

## Nouns

τὸ δεῖπνον, dinner  
ὁ ὢρ ἢ παῖς (ὦ παῖ), boy; girl;  
son; daughter; child  
ὁ πατήρ (τὸν πατέρα, ὦ πάτερ),  
father

## Pronoun

σύ, sing., you

## Adjectives

ἀνδρείος, brave

πολλοί, many

τοσούτος, so great; pl., so great;  
so many

## Preposition

ἐν + dat., in; on

## Adverb

μηκέτι + imperative, don't ...  
any longer!

## Conjunction

ἐπεί, when

## Proper Name

ὁ Φίλιππος, Philip

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ προσχωρεῖ ὁ Φίλιππος· ὁ Φίλιππος ἐστὶν ὁ τοῦ  
Δικαιοπόλιδος υἱός, παῖς μέγας τε καὶ ἀνδρείος· φέρει δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον  
πρὸς τὸν πατέρα. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσβαίνει, τὸν πατέρα καλεῖ  
καὶ λέγει· "ἐλθέ δεῦρο, ὦ πάτερ· ἰδοὺ, τὸ δεῖπνον φέρω. μηκέτι οὖν  
πόνει ἀλλὰ κάθιζε καὶ δεῖπνει."

[ἐν ... τούτῳ, *meanwhile* ὁ τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος υἱός, *Dicaeopolis's son* δεῖπ-  
νει, *eat!*]

together with

3. Ο ΑΡΟΤΟΣ (β)

31

ὁ οὖν πατήρ λείπει τὸ ἄροτρον καὶ καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον.  
καθίζουσιν οὖν ἅμα καὶ δειπνοῦσιν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ὁ  
Δικαιοπόλις, "μένε, ὦ παῖ," φησὶν, "καὶ συλλάμβανε. φέρε τὸ σπέρμα  
καὶ σπεῖρε. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ξανθία, σκάπτε τοὺς λίθους καὶ ἔκφερε ἐκ τοῦ  
ἀγροῦ. πολλοὶ γάρ εἰσιν οἱ λίθοι καὶ μόλις δυνατόν ἐστὶν ἀροῦν." ὁ  
δὲ Ξανθίας, "ἀλλ' οὐ δυνατόν ἐστὶ τοσούτους λίθους ἐκφέρειν." ὁ δὲ  
Δικαιοπόλις, "μὴ φλυᾶρει, ὦ Ξανθία, ἀλλὰ πόνει." πονοῦσιν οὖν ὅτε  
πατήρ καὶ ὁ παῖς καὶ ὁ δοῦλος. τέλος δὲ καταδύνει μὲν ὁ ἥλιος, οἱ δὲ  
ἄνθρωποι οὐκέτι πονοῦσιν ἀλλὰ λύουσι μὲν τοὺς βοῦς, τὸ δὲ  
ἄροτρον λείπουσιν ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καὶ πρὸς τὸν οἶκον βραδέως  
βαδίζουσιν.

[μετὰ, *after* σκάπτε, *dig!* μόλις, *with difficulty, scarcely* ἀροῦν, *to plow* τέλος,  
adv., *finally* καταδύνει, *sets*]

## WORD BUILDING

Here are more verbs with prepositional prefixes. Give the meaning of each:

1. εἰσπίπτω 2. ἐκπίπτω 3. εἰσάγω 4. προσάγω 5. προσβλέπω

## GRAMMAR

## 2. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular and Plural, All Cases

In Chapter 2 you learned the singular forms of masculine and neuter  
articles, adjectives, and nouns. Here are the singulars and plurals:

	Masculine			Neuter		
<b>Nominative</b>	ὁ	καλὸς	ἄγρός	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Genitive</b>	τοῦ	καλοῦ	ἀγροῦ	τοῦ	καλοῦ	δένδρου
<b>Dative</b>	τῷ	καλῷ	ἀγρῷ	τῷ	καλῷ	δένδρῳ
<b>Accusative</b>	τὸν	καλὸν	ἄγρον	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	καλὲ	ἀγρέ	ὦ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Nominative</b>	οἱ	καλοὶ	ἄγροί	τὰ	καλὰ	δένδρα
<b>Genitive</b>	τῶν	καλῶν	ἀγρῶν	τῶν	καλῶν	δένδρων
<b>Dative</b>	τοῖς	καλοῖς	ἀγροῖς	τοῖς	καλοῖς	δένδροις
<b>Accusative</b>	τούς	καλοὺς	ἀγρούς	τὰ	καλὰ	δένδρα
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	καλοὶ	ἄγροί	ὦ	καλὰ	δένδρα

Note:

1. In the neuter singular the nominative, accusative, and vocative all end in -ov; in the plural these cases all end in -α. The other neuter case endings are the same as for the masculine.
2. The genitive and dative, singular and plural, of the definite article have circumflex accents.
3. When adjectives and nouns of the type seen above are accented on the final syllable in the nominative case (e.g., καλός and ἀγρός), they change that accent to a circumflex in the genitive and dative, singular and plural (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, page 20).

### 3. Accent Shifting

Note what happens with the accents in the nouns ἄνθρωπος and οἶκος:

<b>Nominative</b>	ὁ	ἄνθρωπος	ὁ	οἶκος
<b>Genitive</b>	τοῦ	ἀνθρώπου	τοῦ	οἴκου
<b>Dative</b>	τῷ	ἀνθρώπῳ	τῷ	οἴκῳ
<b>Accusative</b>	τὸν	ἄνθρωπον	τὸν	οἶκον
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	ἄνθρωπε	ὦ	οἶκε
<b>Nominative</b>	οἱ	ἄνθρωποι	οἱ	οἴκοι
<b>Genitive</b>	τῶν	ἀνθρώπων	τῶν	οἴκων
<b>Dative</b>	τοῖς	ἀνθρώποις	τοῖς	οἴκοις
<b>Accusative</b>	τούς	ἀνθρώπους	τούς	οἴκους
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	ἄνθρωποι	ὦ	οἴκοι

The acute accent can normally stand on the third syllable from the end of a word only when the final syllable has a short vowel (not a long vowel or a diphthong), thus, ἄνθρωπος, ἄνθρωπον, and ἄνθρωπε. The accent of nouns and adjectives is persistent (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, pages 20–21), which means that the accent remains as it is in the nominative case unless forced to change because of one of several rules. One such rule is that when the final syllable of a word with its accent on the third syllable from the end in the nominative, such as ἄνθρωπος, becomes long (i.e., has a long vowel or a diphthong), the accent shifts one syllable toward the end of the word, thus the genitive and dative singulars, ἀνθρώπου and ἀνθρώπῳ, and the genitive, dative, and accusative plurals. However, the masculine nominative plural ending -οι, although a diphthong, is counted as *short* in determining the accent, and therefore the nominative plural is ἄνθρωποι.

If a word is accented on the next to the last syllable and that syllable is long and the final syllable is short, then the accent is a circumflex, as in οἶκος, οἶκον, etc. When the final syllable becomes long, the accent changes to an acute, as in οἴκου, οἴκῳ, οἴκων, οἴκοις, and οἴκους. Note οἴκοι.

What is said above about οἶκος applies to verbs as well. Thus we have σπεύδει with an acute accent but the imperative σπεῦδε with a circumflex, since the final syllable is now short.

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of the forms of ὁ ἀνδρεῖος δοῦλος and of τὸ μακρὸν ἄροτρον.

### Exercise 3γ

Give the correct form of the article to complete the following phrases:

1. \_\_\_ ἀνθρώπους
2. \_\_\_ δοῦλοι
3. ἐν \_\_\_ οἴκοις
4. ἐκ \_\_\_ ἀγρῶν
5. πρὸς \_\_\_ δένδρα
6. \_\_\_ Ἀθηναίων
7. \_\_\_ ἄροτρον
8. \_\_\_ χρόνον
9. \_\_\_ πόνοι
10. \_\_\_ δούλους

### Exercise 3δ

Complete the following sentences by giving correct endings to the verbs and nouns, and then translate:

1. οἱ δοῦλ\_\_\_ πον\_\_\_ ἐν τοῖς ἀγρ\_\_\_.
2. οἱ ἄνθρωπ\_\_\_ σπεύδ\_\_\_ πρὸς τὸν οἶκ\_\_\_.
3. ὁ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλ\_\_\_ μέν\_\_\_ ἐν τ\_\_\_ ἀγρῷ.
4. λείπ\_\_\_ τὰ ἄροτρ\_\_\_, ὃ δοῦλοι, ἐν τῷ ἀγρ\_\_\_.
5. αἶρ\_\_\_ τοὺς λίθ\_\_\_, ὃ δοῦλοι, καὶ ἐκφέρ\_\_\_ ἐκ τῶν ἀγρ\_\_\_.
6. οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι τοὺς λίθους αἶρ\_\_\_ καὶ ἐκφέρ\_\_\_.

### Exercise 3ε

Translate the following pairs of sentences:

1. ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες οὐκέτι ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον.  
The master calls the slaves, but the slaves do not drive the oxen.
2. μὴ καθίζετε ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ, ὦ παῖδες, ἀλλὰ ἔλθετε δεῦρο καὶ συλλαμβάνετε.  
Don't stay in the fields, boys, but walk to the house and sleep.
3. οἱ παῖδες ἰσχυροὶ εἰσιν· λίθους γὰρ μεγάλους φέρουσιν.  
The slaves are lazy; for they are no longer working.
4. λαμβάνετε τὰ ἄροτρα, ὦ δοῦλοι, καὶ σπεύδετε πρὸς τοὺς ἀγρούς.  
Loosen the oxen, slaves, and leave the plows in the field.

5. μὴ ὀκνεῖτε (*shirk*), ὦ παῖδες. ἀνδρεῖοι ἔστε.  
Don't wait, boys. Don't be so lazy.

## ΟΙ ΒΟΕΣ

Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:

Ὁ τε δεσπότης καὶ ὁ δοῦλος βαδίζουσι πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν. ὁ μὲν δοῦλος τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει, ὁ δὲ δεσπότης ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ ἀγρῷ προσχωροῦσιν, οἱ βόες οὐκέτι βαίνουνσιν. ὁ οὖν δεσπότης καλεῖ αὐτοὺς καί, “μὴ μένετε, ὦ βόες,” φησὶν, “ἀλλὰ σπεύδετε εἰς τὸν ἀγρόν.” οἱ δὲ βόες ἔτι μένουσιν. ὁ οὖν δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον καλεῖ καί, “ἔλθε δεῦρο, ὦ Ξανθία,” φησὶν, “καὶ συλλάμβανε. οἱ γὰρ βόες μένουσιν, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν ἐλαύνειν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸν ἀγρόν.” ὁ μὲν οὖν δοῦλος προσχωρεῖ καί, “ἀλλὰ δυνατόν ἐστιν,” φησὶν. “ἰδοῦ,” καὶ κεντεῖ τοὺς βοῦς. οἱ δὲ οὐκέτι μένουσιν ἀλλὰ σπεύδουσιν εἰς τὸν ἀγρόν.

[αὐτοὺς, *them* κεντεῖ, *he goads* οἱ δέ, *and they*]

1. What are the master and slave doing?
2. What happens when they approach the field?
3. What does the master do and with what result?
4. What does the master do in his helplessness?
5. What does the slave do that the master did not do? With what result?

### Exercise 3ζ

Translate into Greek:

1. The master hurries into the field.
2. He looks at (toward) the field and says, “So many stones are in the field! It is not possible to plow (ἀροῦν).”
3. “Come here, slave, and carry the stones out of the field.”
4. But the slave says, “It is not possible to carry so many stones out of the field. So *you* help!”

## Classical Greek

Menander

Menander of Athens (344–ca. 292 B.C.) wrote over 100 comedies of the type now called New Comedy, concerned with the every-day life of ordinary Athenians. One of his most famous sayings is the following (*Twice a Swindler*, fragment 4):

ὃν οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν, ἀποθνήσκει νέος.

[ὃν, (He) whom οἱ θεοὶ, the gods ἀποθνήσκει, dies νέος, young]

## New Testament Greek

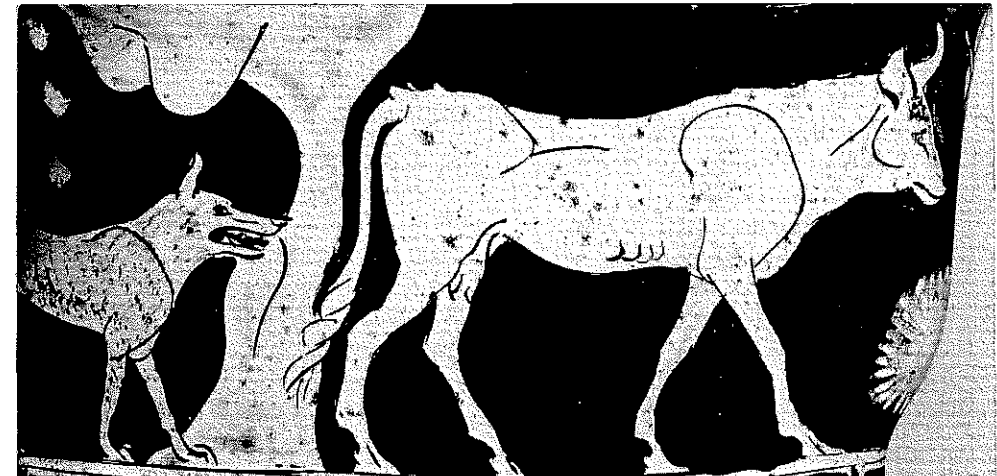
Luke 6.46

Early in his ministry Jesus said to his disciples:

“τί δέ με καλεῖτε, ‘κύριε, κύριε,’ καὶ οὐ ποιεῖτε ἃ λέγω;”

[με, *me* κύριε, *Lord* ποιεῖτε, *you do* ἃ, (the things) that, what]

The passage continues with the contrast between the man who hears Jesus' words and acts on them, like a man who builds a house with solid foundations, and the man who hears and does not act, like a man who builds his house without foundations.



Dog and cow in a field with a tree

# 4 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗΙ (α)



αἱ κόραι πληροῦσι τὰς ὑδρίας πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀκούω *I listen*; + gen. of person, acc. of thing, *I listen to*;  
*I hear*  
ἐθέλω + infin., *I am willing*;  
*I wish*  
ἔχω, *I have*; *I hold*  
θεωρέω, *I watch*; *I see*  
ποιέω, *I make*; *I do*  
χαίρω, *I rejoice*  
χαῖρε; pl., χαίρετε,  
*greetings!*

### Nouns

ὁ ἄγγελος, *messenger*  
ὁ ἀνὴρ (τὸν ἄνδρα, ὁ ἄνερ),  
*man*; *husband*  
ἡ γυνή (ὡ γύναι, αἱ γυναῖκες,  
τὰς γυναῖκας), *woman*; *wife*  
ἡ ἐορτή, *festival*  
ἡ θυγάτηρ (ὡ θύγατερ), *daughter*  
ὁ καιρός, *time*; *right time*  
ἡ κρήνη, *spring*  
ἡ μήτηρ, *mother*  
ἡ ὑδρία, *water jar*  
ὁ χορός, *dance*; *chorus*

### Adjectives

ἄργός [= ἀεργός = ἀ-, *not* + ἐργ-,  
*work*], ἄργόν,\* *not working*,  
*idle*, *lazy*  
φίλος, φίλη, φίλον, *dear*; as  
noun, ὁ φίλος or ἡ φίλη, *friend*

### Prepositions

ἀπὸ + gen., *from*  
ἀπο-, as a prefix in compound  
verbs, *away*  
πρὸς + dat., *at, near, by*;\*\*  
+ acc., *to*; *toward*

### Adverbs

ἰδοῦ, *look!*  
καί, *even*; *also*, *too*  
μάλα, *very*  
μόλις, *with difficulty*; *scarcely*;  
*reluctantly*  
πρῶτον, *first*  
ταχέως, *quickly*, *swiftly*

### Particle

ἄρα: introduces a question

### Expression

ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have in*  
*mind*; *I intend*

### Proper Names

τὰ Διονύσια, *the festival of*  
*Dionysus*  
τὰ Διονύσια ποιῶ, *I cele-*  
*brate the festival of Diony-*  
*sus*

ἡ Μέλιττα [= *bee*], *Melissa*  
(daughter of Dicaeopolis and  
Myrrhine)

ἡ Μυρρίνη [= *myrtle*, a shrub or

tree], *Myrrhine* (wife of  
Dicaeopolis)

\*Compound adjectives do not have  
separate feminine forms; the  
masculine serves for feminine  
as well; thus, ἄργός can be either  
masculine or feminine.

\*\*Note that new meanings of prepo-  
sitions are underlined and that  
previously given meanings are  
repeated.

τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἀνατέλλει ὁ ἥλιος, ἡ γυνὴ τὸν ἄνδρα  
καλεῖ καί, (ἔπαιρε σεαυτὸν) ὦ ἄνερ, φησίν. “ὁ γὰρ ἥλιος ἀνατέλλει,  
ὁ δὲ δοῦλος ἤδη ἄγει τοὺς βοῦς πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν, ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ ἡ  
θυγάτηρ ἐν νῷ ἔχομεν βαδίζειν πρὸς τὴν κρήνην. (ἔπαιρε σεαυτὸν)  
καιρὸς γάρ ἐστι βαδίζειν πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις μάλα  
κάμνει καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει ἐπαίρειν ἑαυτὸν· λέγει οὖν· “μὴ χαλεπὴ ἴσθι, ὦ  
γύναι· μάλα γὰρ κάμνω καὶ ἐθέλω καθεύδειν.” ἡ δὲ γυνή, “ἀλλ’ οὐ  
δυνατὸν ἐστίν,” φησίν, “ἔτι καθεύδειν· καιρὸς γάρ ἐστι πονεῖν. ἔπαιρε  
σεαυτὸν, ὦ ἄργε.”

[τῇ... ὑστεραίᾳ, *the next day* ἀνατέλλει, *is rising* ἔπαιρε σεαυτὸν, *lift your-*  
*self! = get up!* κάμνει, *is tired* ἑαυτὸν, *himself!*

ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις μόλις ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν καὶ βαδίζει πρὸς τὸν  
ἀγρόν, ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη καὶ ἡ Μέλιττα πρὸς τὴν κρήνην βαδίζουσιν (ἡ  
Μέλιττα θυγάτηρ ἐστίν, κόρη(μάλα καλὴ)). ἡ τε οὖν μήτηρ καὶ ἡ  
θυγάτηρ βραδέως βαδίζουσιν· ὑδρίας γὰρ φέρουσιν· μεγάλαι δ’ εἰσὶν  
αἱ ὑδρίαί, ὥστε οὐ δυνατὸν ἐστὶ σπεύδειν.

[κόρη, *girl* ὥστε, *so that!*

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ κρήνῃ προσχωροῦσιν, ἰδοῦ, ἄλλαι γυναῖκες ἤδη  
πάρεισι καὶ τὰς ὑδρίας πληροῦσιν. ἡ οὖν Μυρρίνη τὰς γυναῖκας  
καλεῖ καί, “χαίρετε, ὦ φίλοι,” φησίν. “ἄρα ἤδη πληροῦτε τὰς ὑδρίας;”  
[αἱ δὲ] λέγουσιν· “χαῖρε καὶ σύ· ναί, ἤδη πληροῦμεν τὰς ὑδρίας· πρῶ-  
τον γὰρ πάρεσμεν. ἀλλ’ ἐλθὲ δεῦρο ταχέως καὶ ἄκουε· ἄγγελος γὰρ ἦκει·  
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄστεως· λέγει δὲ ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὰ Διονύσια ποιοῦσιν. ἡμεῖς

οὖν ἐν νῶ ἔχομεν βαδίζειν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ· τοὺς γὰρ χοροὺς ἐθέλομεν θεωρεῖν καὶ τοὺς ἀγῶνας καὶ τὰ δράματα. ἄρα ἐθέλεις καὶ σὺ τὴν ἑορτὴν θεωρεῖν;

[ἄλλαι, *other* πληροῦσιν, *are filling* πληροῦτε, *are you (pl.) filling?* αἱ δὲ, *and they* ναί, *yes* πρῶ, *early in the day* ἦκει, *has come* τοῦ ἄστεως, *the city* ὅτι, *that* ἡμεῖς, *we* τοὺς ἀγῶνας, *the contests* τὰ δράματα, *the plays*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. acoustics     | 5. tachometer     |
| 2. angel         | 6. philanthropist |
| 3. gynecology    | 7. polyandry      |
| 4. choreographer | 8. misogynist     |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: All Persons, Singular and Plural

The reading passage at the beginning of this chapter introduces 1st and 2nd person plural verb forms, so you have now met verbs in all three persons, singular and plural. The following chart contains imperatives and infinitives as well. Be sure to learn all of the following forms thoroughly:

**Stem:** λῦ-, *loosen, loose*

Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
Singular			
1st	λύ-ω		λύειν
2nd	λύ-εις	λύε	
3rd	λύ-ει		
Plural			
1st	λύ-ομεν		
2nd	λύ-ετε	λύετε	
3rd	λύ-ουσι(ν)		

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

Indicative			Imperative	Infinitive
Singular				
1st	φιλέ-ω >	φιλῶ		φιλέ-ειν > φιλεῖν
2nd	φιλέ-εις >	φιλεῖς	φίλε-ε > φίλει	
3rd	φιλέ-ει >	φιλεῖ		
Plural				
1st	φιλέ-ομεν >	φιλοῦμεν		
2nd	φιλέ-ετε >	φιλεῖτε	φιλέ-ετε > φιλεῖτε	
3rd	φιλέ-ουσι(ν) >	φιλοῦσι(ν)		

**Stem:** ἐσ- (with some changes in some of the forms), *be*

Singular			εἶναι
1st	εἰμί*		
2nd	εἶ	ἴσθι	
3rd	ἐστί(ν)*		
Plural			
1st	ἐσμέν*		
2nd	ἐστέ*	ἔσθε	
3rd	εἰσί(ν)*		

\*enclitic

N.B. Verbs with stems ending in -ε- (e.g., φιλε-) are called *contract verbs*, because the vowel of the stem contracts with the vowel of the ending (remember that εἰ and οὐ represent long vowels; see page xiv). You have observed this with verbs such as φιλέω from the beginning of the course. The following rules for contractions may be observed:

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. ε + ω > ω   | 4. ε + ο > ου  |
| 2. ε + εἰ > εἰ | 5. ε + ου > ου |
| 3. ε + ε > εἰ  |                |

The reading passage above contains the following -ε- contract verbs: καλεῖ, προσχωροῦσιν, and θεωρεῖν. Locate all examples of these verbs in the reading.

The reading passage also contains examples of a contract verb of another type, with stem ending in -ο-, namely, the verb πληρόω, *I fill*. Locate three examples of this verb in the reading. For another example of a verb with its stem in -ο-, see ἀροῦτε (2β:16). There are few verbs of this type, and their forms need not be learned now but will be presented in Chapter 15.

A third type of contract verb, with stem ending in *-α-*, e.g., *τιμάω*, *I honor*, will be presented in Chapter 5.

### Exercise 4α

Make two photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present indicative, imperative, and infinitive forms of *ἔχω* and *θεωρέω*. Keep these charts for reference.

## 2. Declensions of Nouns and Adjectives

Greek nouns and adjectives are divided into three groups or *declensions*. In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter are three feminine nouns (*ἡ κρήνη*, *ἡ ὑδρία*, and *ἡ Μέλιττα*), which are said to belong to the *1st declension*, which has nouns with stems that originally ended in *-ᾱ* or *-ᾶ* (this group of nouns is therefore sometimes called the *alpha declension*). In nouns like *ἡ κρήνη*, the original *ᾱ* of the stem has been changed to *η* in the singular in Attic Greek.

In Chapters 2 and 3 you saw charts of masculine and neuter nouns and adjectives (*καλὸς ἄγρός* and *καλὸν δένδρον*) that are said to belong to the *2nd* or *omicron declension*.

Nouns such as *ἄνθρωπος*, *γυνή*, *θυγάτηρ*, and *μήτηρ*, which you have met in the reading at the beginning of this chapter, are said to belong to the *3rd declension*. The endings of 3rd declension nouns will be presented in Chapter 7; for the time being you can identify their case and number by observing the article that accompanies them.

## 3. Feminine Nouns and Adjectives of the 1st Declension

Most nouns of the 1st declension are feminine in gender. It is convenient to divide them into the following four types (masculine nouns of the 1st declension will be presented in the second half of this chapter).

### Type 1: ἡ κρήνη

The original *ᾱ* of the stem has been changed to *η* in the singular in Attic Greek:

	Singular			Plural		
<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	καλή	κρήνη	αἱ	καλαί	κρήναι
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	καλῆς	κρήνης	τῶν	καλῶν	κρηνῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	καλῇ	κρήνῃ	ταῖς	καλαῖς	κρήναις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν	καλήν	κρήνην	τὰς	καλὰς	κρήνας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	καλή	κρήνη	ὦ	καλαί	κρήναι

Note:

1. The genitive and dative, singular and plural, of the feminine definite article have circumflex accents, just as do those forms of the masculine and neuter (see Chapter 3, Grammar 2, pages 31–32).
2. When adjectives and nouns of the 1st declension are accented on the final syllable in the nominative case (e.g., *καλή*), they change that accent to a circumflex in the genitive and dative, singular and plural (again, see Chapter 3, Grammar 2, pages 31–32, for the same thing with masculine and neuter adjectives and nouns).
3. The accent of nouns and adjectives is persistent (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, pages 20–21). However, in any Greek word, when the next to the last syllable is long and receives the accent and the final syllable is short, the next to the last syllable will have a circumflex instead of an acute accent (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32). The nominative plural ending *-αι*, although a diphthong, is counted as *short* in determining the accent, thus *κρήναι* has a circumflex accent. Remember that the nominative plural ending of masculine nouns and adjectives of the 2nd declension, *-οι*, is also counted as short (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32).
4. The genitive plural of all 1st declension nouns has a circumflex accent on the final syllable; the original *-ᾶων* ending contracted to *-ῶν*.

### Type 2: ἡ ὑδρία

After *ε*, *ι*, or *ρ*, the original *-ᾱ* of the stem was retained in Attic Greek:

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	ὑδρία	αἱ	ὑδρίαί
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	ὑδρίας	τῶν	ὑδριῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	ὑδρίᾳ	ταῖς	ὑδρίαῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν	ὑδρίαν	τὰς	ὑδρίας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	ὑδρία	ὦ	ὑδρίαί

The word *κόρη*, *girl*, is an exception to this rule; it has the same endings as *κρήνη* above.

### Type 3: ἡ μέλιττα

A third group consists of nouns ending in *-ᾶ*, as *Μέλιττα*; as a common noun meaning *bee*, this noun is declined as follows:

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	μέλιττα	αἱ	μέλιτται
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	μελίττης	τῶν	μελιττῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	μελίττῃ	ταῖς	μελίτταις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν	μέλιττάν	τὰς	μελίττᾶς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	μέλιττα	ὦ	μέλιτται

Note the forms with *η* in the genitive and dative singular.

**Type 4: ἡ μάχαιρᾶ**

If the -ᾶ is preceded by ε, ι, or ρ, long α appears in the genitive and dative, as in μάχαιρᾶ, *knife*:

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	μάχαιρᾶ	αἱ	μάχαιραι
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	μαχαίρᾶς	τῶν	μαχαιρῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	μαχαίρᾳ	ταῖς	μαχαίραις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν	μάχαιρᾶν	τὰς	μαχαίρας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	μάχαιρᾶ	ὦ	μάχαιραι

Note that all 1st declension nouns decline alike in the plural.

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of the forms of ἡ ἑορτή, *festival*; ἡ οἰκία, *house*; ἡ θάλαττα, *sea*; and ἡ μοῖρα, *fate*.

**Exercise 4β**

Give the genitive of the following phrases:

- |                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. ἡ Μυρρίνη    | 5. ἡ καλὴ κρήνη     |
| 2. ἡ Μέλιττα    | 6. ὁ μακρὸς πόνος   |
| 3. ἡ καλὴ ὑδρία | 7. ἡ καλὴ μέλιττα   |
| 4. ἡ καλὴ ἑορτή | 8. τὸ καλὸν δένδρον |

**Exercise 4γ**

Supply the correct form of the definite article in the following phrases:

- \_\_\_ καλαὶ γυναῖκες
- ἐν \_\_\_ ἀγρῷ
- πρὸς \_\_\_ κρήνη
- \_\_\_ ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν
- ἐκ \_\_\_ γῆς (*earth*)
- ἐν \_\_\_ ὑδρίαις
- \_\_\_ μεγάλα δένδρα
- \_\_\_ ἄγγελοι

**Exercise 4δ**

Copy the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, IMP, or INF above the appropriate words (do not label other words). Then put into the plural and translate:

- ἡ κόρη ἄγει τὴν φίλην ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
- ἡ δούλη τὴν ὑδρίαν φέρει πρὸς τὴν κρήνην.
- καλὴ ἐστὶν ἡ κόρη· ἄρ' οὐκ ἐθέλεις αὐτὴν (*her*) καλεῖν;

- χαῖρε, ὦ κόρη· ἄρα βαδίζεις πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν; (ἡ οἰκία, *house, home*)
- ἐν νῷ ἔχω λείπειν τὴν ὑδρίαν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ καὶ συλλαμβάνειν.

**Exercise 4ε**

Put into the singular and translate:

- αἱ φίλαι μένουσι πρὸς ταῖς κρήναις.
- οἱ ἄνθρωποι φέρουσι τὰ ἄροτρα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν.
- ἀκούετε, ὦ φίλοι· ἐν νῷ ἔχομεν βαδίζειν πρὸς τὰς οἰκίας.
- τί (*what*) ποιεῖτε, ὦ δοῦλοι; μὴ οὕτω σκαιοὶ (*clumsy*) ἔστε.

**Women**

When Pericles drew to the end of his funeral oration, he finally had a word for the widows of the dead: "If I should say a word on the duties of the wives who will now be widows, I will sum up the whole in a short piece of advice: your great glory is not to fall beneath the nature you have been given, and hers is the greatest glory who is least talked about among the men for praise or for blame." Women lived in the shadows of their men. This is clearly seen from their legal position; they were treated in law as minors, being under the tutelage of their fathers or guardians until they were married and thereafter under the tutelage of their husbands. They could not own property in their own right; they had no place in public life, no vote in the Assembly, and no seat on the juries.

Their life centered on the *oikos*, and here they were important and respected figures. The fourth century Athenian writer Xenophon in a work called *Oikonomikos* (which means "management of the *oikos*," not "economics" in its modern sense) gives this advice to a young bride:



Two girls, one holding a writing tablet

Your business will be to stay indoors and help to dispatch the servants who work outside, while supervising those who work indoors. You will receive incoming revenue and allocate it to any necessary expenditure; you will be responsible for any surplus and see that the allocation for the year's expenses is not spent in a month. When wool is delivered to you, you will see that garments are made for those who need them, and you will take care that the dried grain is kept fit for consumption. And there is another of your duties that I'm afraid may seem to you rather thankless—you will have to see that any of the servants who is ill gets proper treatment. (*Oikonomikos* 7.35–37)

The duties of a farmer's wife were similar, though instead of organizing slaves she had to do the work herself. The work was endless and gave women little leisure.

Marriages took place early; a girl might be betrothed at five and married at fifteen, and marriages were arranged by parents, often with considerations of property in mind.

Nevertheless, Athenian art shows us many scenes of contented domestic life, and inscriptions testify to happy marriages: "In this tomb lies Chaerestrates: her husband loved her while she was alive and grieved for her when she died" (G. Kaibel, *Epigrammata Graeca ex lapidibus conlecta*, 44, 2–3, Piraeus, fourth or third century B.C.). The husband was his wife's protector and kept her safe from the dangers of life that lay outside the *oikos*. Even in the house she had no contact with men outside the family; if strangers called, she would retire to the women's quarters. In the opening scene of Euripides' tragedy, *Electra*, Electra is talking to women of the village outside her house, when two strange men appear. She immediately says to the women: "You flee down the path and I will take refuge in the house." Later her husband, a farmer, appears when she is talking to the men who claim to have brought news of her brother; he says: "Who are these strangers at our door? Why have they come to our country dwelling? Do they want me? (*to Electra*) It's a disgrace, you know, for a woman to stand around with young men."

But women's lives were not as confined as we have so far suggested. They attended the religious festivals in both deme and city, including, probably, the dramatic festivals. They had important functions in religious rites; they were priestesses in more than forty public cults, and they formed choirs and played a leading role in processions. Some of the most powerful figures in Greek tragedy are women, and all three of the great tragedians, especially Euripides, show deep insight into the character of women and portray them sympathetically. Despite the restrictions that hedged her around, the Athenian woman was no cipher. The sixth-century poet Semonides writes of the good woman:

The gods made her of honey, and blessed is the man who gets her. His property flourishes and is increased by her. She grows old with a husband she loves and who loves her, the mother of a handsome and reputable family. She stands out among all women, and a godlike beauty plays around

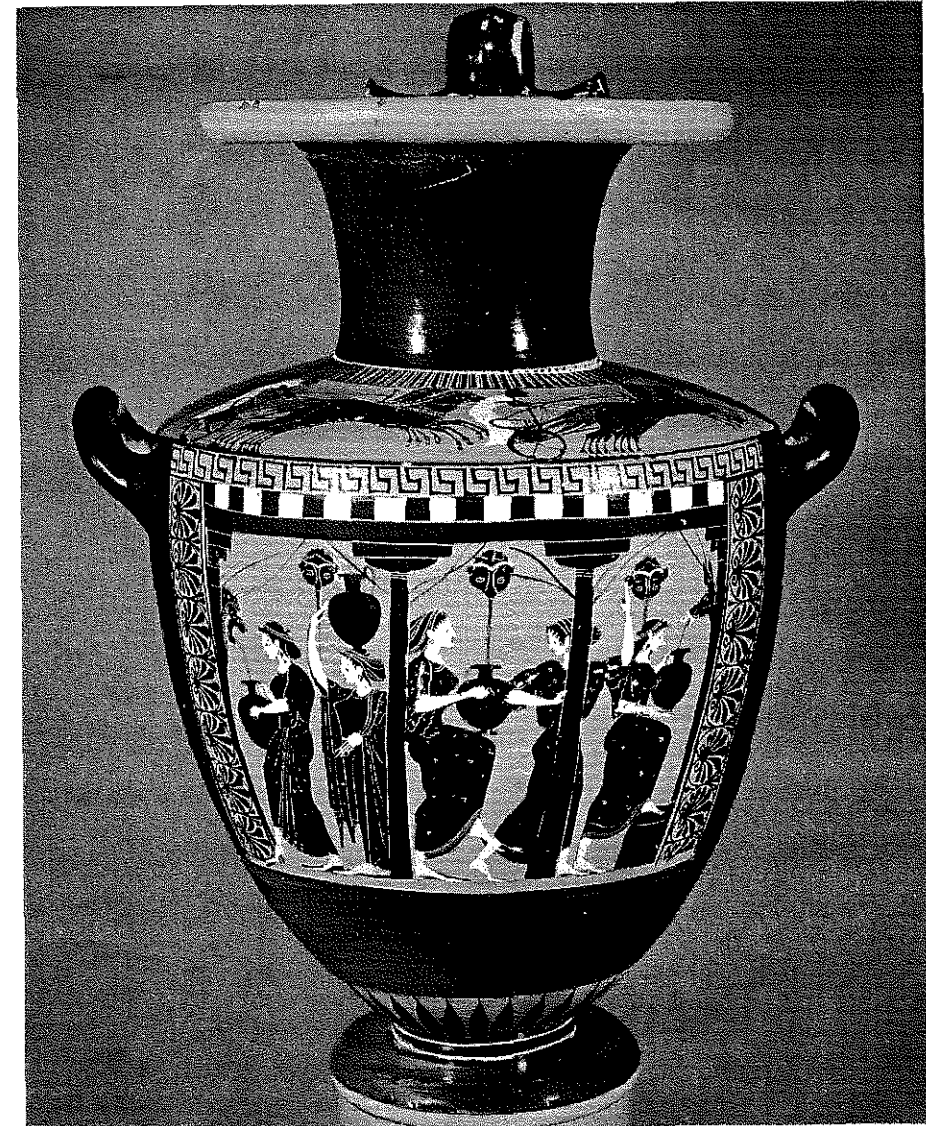
her. She takes no pleasure in sitting among women where they tell stories about love. (Semonides 7.83–91)

## Greek Wisdom

See page 70

καὶρὸν γυνῶτι.

Πιττακός (of Mitylene)



Women drawing water at a fountain

## ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗΙ (β)



ἡ Μέλιττα, “οὐκ αἰτία ἐγώ,” φησίν· “μεγάλη γάρ ἐστιν ἡ ὑδρία.”

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

πείθω, *I persuade*  
στενάζω, *I groan*

## Noun

ἡ γῆ, *land; earth; ground*  
ἡ ὁδός, *road; way; journey*

## Adjectives

ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο, *other, another*  
ῥάδιος, ῥαδίᾱ, ῥάδιον, *easy*

## Adverbs

ἀεί, *always*  
μάλιστα, *most, most of all; very much; especially*  
οἴκαδε, *homeward, to home*

## Expressions

ἐορτὴν ποιῶ, *I celebrate a festival*  
τί; *adv., why? pronoun, what?*

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “τί λέγετε, ὦ φίλοι; ἄρα ἀληθῶς ἐορτὴν ποιοῦσιν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι; ἐγὼ μὲν μάλιστα ἐθέλω αὐτὴν θεωρεῖν· σὺ δέ, ὦ Μέλιττα, ἄρα καὶ σὺ ἐθέλεις θεωρεῖν; ἀλλ’ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν· χαλεπὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ ἀνήρ· ἀεὶ γὰρ πονεῖ καὶ σπανίως ἐθέλει ἰέναι πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.”

[ἀληθῶς, *truly, really* αὐτὴν, *it* σπανίως, *rarely* ἰέναι, *to go*]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ἀλλ’ οὐ μάλα χαλεπὸς ἐστιν ὁ πατήρ· ῥάδιον γάρ ἐστι πείθειν αὐτόν.” ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “μὴ οὕτω φλυᾶρει ἀλλὰ τὴν ὑδρίαν ταχέως πλήρου· καιρὸς γάρ ἐστιν οἴκαδε ἐπανιέναι.”

[φλυᾶρει, *talk nonsense* πλήρου, *fill!* ἐπανιέναι, *to come back, return*]

ἢ τε οὖν μήτηρ καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ τὰς ὑδρίας ταχέως πληροῦσι καὶ οἴκαδε βαδίζουσιν. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πταίει ἡ Μέλιττα καὶ καταβάλλει τὴν ὑδρίαν πρὸς τὴν γῆν καὶ θραύει αὐτήν. στενάζει οὖν καί, “οἴμοι,” φησίν, “οὐκ αἰτία εἰμὶ ἐγώ· μεγάλη γάρ ἐστιν ἡ ὑδρία, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι φέρειν αὐτήν.” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “τί λέγεις, ὦ θύγατερ; μὴ φλυᾶρει ἀλλὰ οἴκαδε σπεῦδε καὶ ἄλλην ὑδρίαν φέρε.”

[πταίει, *stumbles* καταβάλλει, *drops* θραύει, *breaks* οἴμοι, *alas!*]

ἡ μὲν οὖν Μέλιττα οἴκαδε σπεύδει, ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη βραδέως βαδίζει· μεγάλη γάρ ἐστιν ἡ ὑδρία, καὶ ἡ Μυρρίνη οὐκ ἐθέλει καταβάλλειν αὐτήν.

## WORD BUILDING

Deduce the meaning of the words at the right from your knowledge of those at the left:

- |               |          |                                 |           |
|---------------|----------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. ὁ χορός    | χορεύω   | 4. ὁ ἵππος ( <i>horse</i> )     | ἵππεύω    |
| 2. ὁ δοῦλος   | δουλεύω  | 5. ὁ κίνδυνος ( <i>danger</i> ) | κινδυνεύω |
| 3. τὸ ἄροτρον | ἀροτρεύω | 6. ὁ ἱατρός ( <i>doctor</i> )   | ἱατρεύω   |

## GRAMMAR

## 4. Masculine Nouns of the 1st Declension

Some nouns of the 1st declension are masculine in gender and end in -ης or -ας in the nominative singular, in -ου in the genitive singular, and in -ᾱ or -ᾱ (or sometimes -η, not shown here) in the vocative singular. The ending -ας occurs after stems ending in ε, ι, or ρ. Otherwise they have the same endings as κρήνη and ὑδρία. As examples, we give ὁ δεσπότης in the singular and plural and ὁ Εὐανθίας in the singular:

	Singular	Plural	Singular
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ δεσπότης	οἱ δεσπόται	ὁ Εὐανθίας
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ δεσπότης	τῶν δεσποτῶν	τοῦ Εὐανθίου
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ δεσπότῃ	τοῖς δεσπότης	τῷ Εὐανθίᾳ
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν δεσπότην	τοὺς δεσπότης	τὸν Εὐανθίαν
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ δεσποτα	ὦ δεσπόται	ὦ Εὐανθίᾱ

Remember that all 1st declension nouns have a circumflex accent on the final syllable of the genitive plural.

The accent of the vocative singular of ὁ δεσπότης is irregular in that it is not persistent, i.e., it does not stay on the same syllable as in the nominative. Usually the accent is persistent, as in the vocative of ὁ πολίτης, *citizen*, which is ὦ πολίτα.

Here is the full declension of ὁ νεανίας, *young man*, a 1st declension masculine noun like ὁ Ξανθιάς above:

	Singular		Plural	
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ	νεανίας	οἱ	νεανίαι
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ	νεανίου	τῶν	νεανιῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ	νεανίᾳ	τοῖς	νεανίαις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν	νεανίαν	τούς	νεανιάς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	νεανία	ὦ	νεανίαι

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of the forms of ὁ πολίτης, *citizen*, and of ὁ ἄργος νεανίας, *the lazy young man*.

#### Exercise 4ζ

Locate all examples of the words ὁ δεσπότης and ὁ Ξανθιάς in the stories in Chapters 2 and 3.

### 5. Feminine Nouns of the 2nd Declension

Some nouns of the 2nd declension decline like ἄγρός but are feminine in gender, e.g., ἡ ὁδός, *road; way; journey*, and ἡ νῆσος, *island*.

#### Exercise 4η

Locate one example of the noun ἡ ὁδός in the reading passage above.

### 6. 1st and 2nd Declension Adjectives

Many Greek adjectives have 1st and 2nd declension endings, e.g., the adjective καλός, καλή, καλόν, *beautiful*, which we have shown along with the nouns ἄγρός, δένδρον, and κρήνη on pages 20, 31, and 40. Here are all the forms of this typical 1st and 2nd declension adjective:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	καλός	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά
<b>Gen.</b>	καλοῦ	καλῆς	καλοῦ	καλῶν	καλῶν	καλῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	καλῷ	καλῇ	καλῷ	καλοῖς	καλαῖς	καλοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	καλόν	καλήν	καλόν	καλούς	καλάς	καλά
<b>Voc.</b>	καλέ	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά

Note that adjectives with ε, ι, or ρ preceding -ος have feminine endings that show α̃ instead of η in the singular (like the noun ἡ ὑδρία), e.g., ῥάδιος, ῥαδιά, ῥάδιον:

<b>Nom.</b>	ῥάδιος	ῥαδιά	ῥάδιον	ῥάδιοι	ῥαδιαί	ῥαδια
<b>Gen.</b>	ῥαδίου	ῥαδιάς	ῥαδίου	ῥαδίων	ῥαδίων	ῥαδίων
<b>Dat.</b>	ῥαδίῳ	ῥαδίᾳ	ῥαδίῳ	ῥαδίοις	ῥαδιαῖς	ῥαδίοις
<b>Acc.</b>	ῥάδιον	ῥαδιάν	ῥάδιον	ῥαδίους	ῥαδιάς	ῥαδια
<b>Voc.</b>	ῥάδιε	ῥαδιά	ῥάδιον	ῥάδιοι	ῥαδιαί	ῥαδια

Remember:

1. The accent of adjectives is persistent, i.e., it stays where it is in the nominative masculine singular unless forced to move.
2. 1st and 2nd declension adjectives with an acute accent on the ultima circumflex the genitive and dative singular and plural.
3. Unlike nouns of the 1st declension, these adjectives do not circumflex the ultima of the genitive plural (e.g., ῥαδίῶν) unless the accent is already on the ultima (e.g., καλῶν).

In future vocabulary lists adjectives with 1st and 2nd declension endings will be given in abbreviated form, e.g., καλός, -ή, -όν or ῥάδιος, -α, -ον (remember the accent shift in the feminine: ῥαδιά).

Two common Greek adjectives, μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *big*, and πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, *much*, pl., *many*, have forms from two different stems:

**Stems:** μεγα- and μεγαλ-

<b>Nom.</b>	μέγα-ς	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλοι	μεγάλα
<b>Gen.</b>	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
<b>Dat.</b>	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλοις	μεγάλοις	μεγάλοις
<b>Acc.</b>	μέγα-ν	μεγάλην	μέγα	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα
<b>Voc.</b>	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλοι	μεγάλα

**Stems:** πολυ- and πολλ-

<b>Nom.</b>	πολύ-ς	πολλή	πολύ	πολλοί	πολλοί	πολλά
<b>Gen.</b>	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ	πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς	πολλοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	πολύ-ν	πολλήν	πολύ	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
<b>Voc.</b>	none					

#### Exercise 4θ

Locate all examples of the adjectives μέγας and πολύς in the stories in Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 4.

## 7. Formation of Adverbs

Many adverbs may be formed in Greek by changing the last letter of the genitive plural of the corresponding adjective from ν to ς, e.g.:

καλῶν > καλῶς, *beautifully; well*

## Exercise 4i

Find five adverbs ending in -ως in the reading passage on pages 46–47.

## 8. The Definite Article as Case Indicator

Along with your study of 1st and 2nd declension nouns on pages 31 and 40 you have learned all the forms of the definite article. Review them in the following chart:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	οἱ	αἱ	τά
Gen.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
Dat.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
Acc.	τόν	τήν	τό	τούς	τάς	τά

In your reading of Greek you should take full advantage of the definite article as a case indicator, which enables you to determine the case of nouns that you have not yet learned to decline. For example in the phrase τοῦ ἀνδρός the definite article τοῦ tells you that ἀνδρός is genitive singular. Remember that the vocative, which is not accompanied by the definite article, is usually preceded by ὦ.

## Exercise 4k

Give the case and number of each of the following phrases:

- |                |                     |                    |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. τοὺς ἀνδρας | 6. τὸν βασιλέα      | 11. οἱ κύνες       |
| 2. τῇ μητρί    | 7. τῆς πόλεως       | 12. τῆς μητρός     |
| 3. τῷ παιδί    | 8. τοῦ δεσπότης     | 13. τοῖς παισίν(ν) |
| 4. τὴν ναῦν    | 9. ταῖς γυναῖξιν(ν) | 14. τὸν πατέρα     |
| 5. ὦ πάτερ     | 10. τοῦ κυνός       | 15. ὦ γύναι        |

ΑΙ ΓΥΝΑΙΚΕΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΑΝΔΡΑΣ  
ΠΕΙΘΟΥΣΙΝ

Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:

πολλαὶ γυναῖκες ἤκουσιν εἰς τὴν κρήνην. ἐν ᾧ δὲ πληροῦσι τὰς ὑδρίας, ἄγγελος προσχωρεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάρεστιν, “ἀκούετε, ὦ γυναῖκες,” φησὶν· “οἱ γὰρ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐορτὴν ποιοῦσιν. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλετε αὐτὴν θεωρεῖν; πείθετε οὖν τοὺς ἄνδρας ὑμᾶς ἐκεῖσε ἄγειν.” αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες χαίρουσι καὶ λέγουσιν· “μάλιστα ἐθέλομεν θεωρεῖν, καὶ ἐν νῷ ἔχομεν τοὺς ἄνδρας πείθειν.” τὰς οὖν ὑδρίας ταχέως πληροῦσι καὶ οἴκαδε σπεύδουσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤκουσιν οἱ ἄνδρες ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν, ἐκάστη ἡ γυνὴ λέγει· “ἀκουε, ὦ φίλε ἄνερ· ἄγγελος γὰρ πάρεστι καὶ λέγει ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐορτὴν ποιοῦσιν. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλεις με ἐκεῖσε ἄγειν;” καὶ ῥαδίως πείθουσιν αὐτούς· οἱ γὰρ ἄνδρες αὐτοὶ ἐθέλουσι τὴν ἐορτὴν θεωρεῖν.

[ἐν ᾧ, *while* ὑμᾶς, acc. pl., *you* ἐκεῖσε, *there = thither* ἐκάστη, *each* με, *me* αὐτούς, *them* αὐτοὶ, *themselves*]

1. What are the women doing when the messenger approaches?
2. What are the Athenians doing?
3. What does the messenger tell the women to do? (Quote his words.)
4. How do the women react to the messenger's announcement?
5. What do the women do with haste?
6. What do the women do when their husbands return from the fields?
7. Why do they succeed in persuading their husbands?



Two women are folding up a finished piece of cloth over a stool, on which lies another finished piece. On either side a woman stands spinning. On page 112 there is a scene of weaving from the same vase.

**Exercise 4λ***Translate into Greek:*

1. Dicaeopolis approaches Myrrhine and says, "Greetings, dear wife (γύναι). What are you doing?"
2. "I am hurrying to the spring. For I wish to carry water (τὸ ὕδωρ) to the house. But what are *you* doing?"
3. "The slave and I are hurrying to the field. But listen.  
(Reverse the polite order of the subjects in the English and put the 1st person pronoun first in the Greek.)
4. "The Athenians are celebrating a festival. Do you wish to see it?"
5. "I very much wish to see it. So don't go (μὴ . . . ἵθι; put μή first in your sentence) to the field but take me to the city (τὸ ἄστυ)."



Four dancing girls on a sheep's knucklebone in ceramic

**Classical Greek**

Callimachus

For Callimachus, see page 23. His work included a number of funerary epigrams, including the following (21), in which a father laments his dead son.

δωδεκέτη τὸν παῖδα πατὴρ ἀπέθηκε Φίλιππος

ἐνθάδε, τὴν πολλὴν ἐλπίδα Νικοτέλην.

[δωδεκέτη, twelve year old ἀπέθηκε, laid to rest ἐνθάδε, here ἐλπίδα, hope]

**New Testament Greek**

Luke 6.45

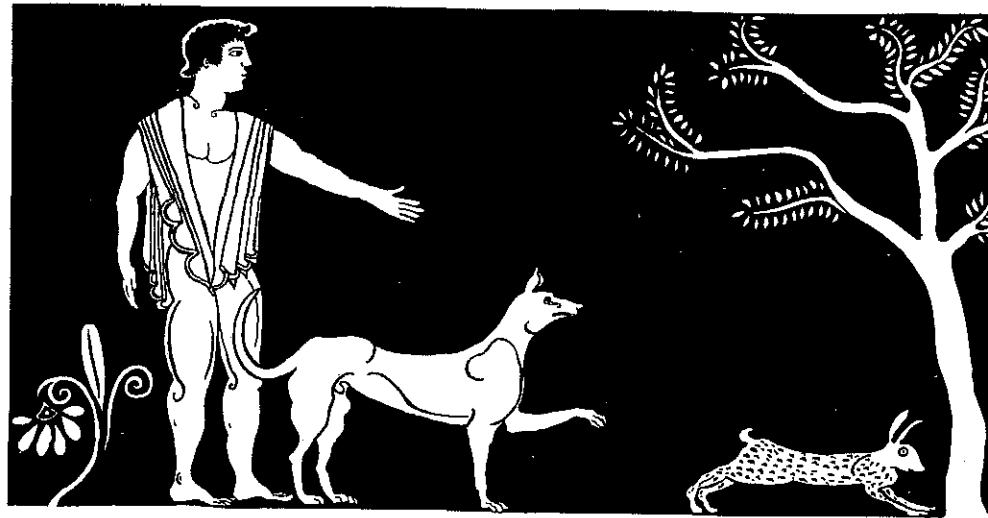
The following comes from a collection of the sayings of Jesus.

“ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος ἐκ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ θησαυροῦ τῆς καρδίᾳς προφέρει τὸ ἀγαθόν, καὶ ὁ πονηρὸς ἐκ τοῦ πονηροῦ προφέρει τὸ πονηρόν.”

[ἀγαθός, good θησαυροῦ, treasure τῆς καρδίᾳς, of his heart προφέρει, brings forth πονηρὸς, evil]

Jesus concludes: “For his mouth speaks from the abundance of his heart.”

# 5 Ο ΛΥΚΟΣ (α)



ὁ Φίλιππος λαγὼν ὄρᾳ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ τρέχοντα καὶ βοᾷ, “ἴθι δὴ, Ἄργε, διώκε.”

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἄπειμι, *I am away (from)*

Cf. πάρειμι

βοάω, *I shout*

διώκω, *I pursue, chase*

ζητέω, *I seek, look for*

ἴθι; pl., ἴτε, *go!*

ἴθι δὴ, *go on!*

ὁράω, *I see*

τιμάω, *I honor*

τρέχω, *I run*

φεύγω, *I flee; I escape*

φυλάττω, *I guard*

### Nouns

ὁ ὄρ ἡ κύων (τὸν ὄρ τὴν κύνα, ὦ κύων), *dog*

ὁ λαγῶς (τὸν λαγῶν), *hare*

ὁ λύκος, *wolf*

ἡ οἰκία, *house; home; dwelling*

τὸ ὄρος (τοῦ ὄρους, τοῖς ὄρεσι(v)),  
*mountain; hill*

ὁ πάππος, *grandfather*

τὰ πρόβατα, pl., *sheep*

### Adjective

ἄκρος, -α, -ον, *top (of)*

ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος, *the top of the mountain/hill*

ῥάθυμος [= ῥᾶ, *easily* + θυμός, *spirit*], -ον, *careless*

### Prepositions

ἀνά + acc., *up*

κατά + acc., *down*

### Adverb

ποῦ; *where?*

### Conjunctions

οὐδέ, *and . . . not; nor; not even*

οὔτε . . . οὔτε, *note the accent, neither . . . nor*

ὥστε, *note the accent + indicative or infinitive, introducing a clause that expresses result, so that, that, so as to*

### Expression

δι' ὀλίγου, *soon*

### Proper Name

ὁ Ἄργος, *Argus* (name of a dog;  
cf. ἀργός, -ή, -όν, *shining; swift*)

ἐν ᾧ δ' ἄπεισιν ἢ τε Μυρρίνη καὶ ἡ Μέλιττα, ὁ μὲν πάππος πονεῖ ἐν τῷ κήπῳ, ὁ δὲ παῖς καὶ ὁ Ἄργος βαδίζουσι πρὸς τὸ αὐλίον· ὁ Ἄργος κύων ἐστὶ μέγας τε καὶ ἰσχυρός· τὴν τ' οἰκίαν φυλάττει καὶ τὰ πρόβατα. ἐν ᾧ δὲ βαδίζουσιν ὁ τε παῖς καὶ ὁ κύων ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ὁ Φίλιππος λαγὼν ὄρᾳ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ τρέχοντα· λῦει οὖν τὸν κύνα καί, 5  
“ἴθι δὴ, Ἄργε,” φησὶν· “διώκε.” ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἄργος ὑλακτεῖ καὶ διώκει τὸν λαγῶν, ὁ δὲ φεύγει ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος. οὕτω δὲ ταχέως τρέχουσιν ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν ὄραν οὔτε τὸν κύνα οὔτε τὸν λαγῶν.

[ἐν ᾧ, *while* τῷ κήπῳ, *the garden* τὸ αὐλίον, *the sheepfold* τρέχοντα, *running* ὑλακτεῖ, *barks*]

ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος σπεύδει μετ' αὐτοὺς καὶ βοᾷ· “ἐλθε δεῦρο, Ἄργε· ἐπάνελθε, ὦ κύων κατάρᾳτε.” ἀλλ' ἔτι διώκει ὁ κύων. τρέχει οὖν ὁ 10  
Φίλιππος εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἀλλ' οὐχ ὄρᾳ τὸν κύνα. μέγα οὖν βοᾷ καὶ καλεῖ, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀκούει ὁ Ἄργος. τέλος δ' ἀθυμεῖ ὁ παῖς καὶ καταβαίνει τὸ ὄρος.

[μετ(ὰ) αὐτοὺς, *after them* ἐπάνελθε, *come back!* κατάρᾳτε, *cursed* μέγα, *loudly* τέλος, *finally* ἀθυμεῖ, *despairs*]

ἐπεὶ δὲ προσχωρεῖ τῷ κήπῳ, ὄρᾳ αὐτὸν ὁ πάππος καί, “τί ποιεῖς, ὦ παῖ;” φησὶν· “πόθεν ἦκεις καὶ ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ Ἄργος;” ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, 15  
“ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐλίου ἦκω, ὦ πάππε· ὁ δ' Ἄργος ἐστὶν που ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν· λαγῶν γὰρ διώκει.” ὁ δὲ πάππος, “ἴθι δὴ, ὦ παῖ· τί οὐ ζητεῖς αὐτόν; μὴ οὕτω ῥάθυμος ἴσθι.” ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “οὐ ῥάθυμός εἰμι, ὦ πάππε, οὐδὲ αἵτιος ἐγώ. μέγα γὰρ βοῶ καὶ καλῶ, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀκούει ὁ κύων.” ὁ δὲ πάππος, “ἐλθε δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ,” φησὶν. οὕτω λέγει καὶ τὴν 20  
βακτηρίαν λαμβάνει καὶ σπεύδει ἅμα τῷ παιδί ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδόν.

[πόθεν ἦκεις, *from where have you come?* πον, *somewhere* τὴν βακτηρίαν, *his stick* ἅμα + dat., *together with*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. geology
2. geography
3. geometry (what was the original meaning of geometry?)
4. geocentric

## GRAMMAR

## 1. Contract Verbs in -α-

In the story at the beginning of this chapter you have seen two contract verbs, βοάω and ὀράω, with stems in -α- instead of in -ε-, as were the contract verbs presented in earlier chapters. Contract verbs in -α- show their endings as follows (we use the verb τιμάω, *I honor*, as a model):

Stem: τιμα-, *honor*

	Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive
<b>Singular</b>			
<b>1st</b>	τιμά-ω > τιμῶ		τιμά-ειν > τιμᾶν
<b>2nd</b>	τιμά-εις > τιμᾷς	τίμα-ε > τίμα	
<b>3rd</b>	τιμά-ει > τιμᾷ		
<b>Plural</b>			
<b>1st</b>	τιμά-ομεν > τιμῶμεν		
<b>2nd</b>	τιμά-ετε > τιμᾶτε	τίμα-ετε > τίματε	
<b>3rd</b>	τιμά-ουσι(ν) > τιμῶσι(ν)		

The following rules for these contractions may be observed:

1. α + ω, ο, or ου > ω.
2. α + ει > α (the infinitive is an exception to this rule).
3. α + ε > ᾱ.

The third type of contract verbs, having stems in -ο-, like πληρόω, *I fill*, will be presented in Chapter 15. There are few verbs of this type.

## 2. Recessive Accent of Finite Verbs

While the accents of nouns and adjectives are *persistent* (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, pages 20–21), the accents of finite forms of verbs (i.e., forms limited by person and number) are *recessive* (see Chapter 2, Grammar 7, page 21). This means that the accent of these forms recedes to

the third syllable from the end of the word if the final syllable is short, but only to the second syllable from the end of the word if the final syllable is long.

Thus, in the uncontracted form τιμά-ω the accent cannot stand on the third syllable from the end because the final syllable is long; it therefore stands on the second syllable from the end. In the uncontracted form τιμά-ομεν, however, the final syllable is short, and the accent recedes to the third syllable from the end. The uncontracted form of the singular imperative clearly shows how the rule operates; this is the only form on the chart in which the accent falls on the first syllable of the verb: τίμα-ε.

When forms contract (as they do in the Attic dialect), an acute accent over the first of the vowels to contract becomes a circumflex over the resulting contracted vowel, thus τιμά-ω > τιμῶ.

Study the charts of verbs in Chapter 4, Grammar 1, pages 38–39, and observe how these rules operate in the forms presented there, except in the enclitic forms of the verb *to be*, which by convention receive an acute on the final syllable in charts of forms.

## Exercise 5α

1. Locate seven -α- contract verb forms in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Make two photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present indicative, imperative, and infinitive forms of βοάω and ὀράω. Keep these charts for reference.

## Exercise 5β

Read and translate the following forms, and then give the corresponding singular forms:

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. τιμᾶτε (2 ways)  | 5. ποιοῦμεν       |
| 2. φιλοῦσι(ν)       | 6. βοῶσι(ν)       |
| 3. ὀρώμεν           | 7. ὀρᾶτε (2 ways) |
| 4. οἰκεῖτε (2 ways) | 8. κονοῦσι(ν)     |

## Exercise 5γ

Read and translate the following forms, and then give the corresponding plural forms:

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. τιμᾷ   | 5. βοᾷς  |
| 2. φιλεῖς | 6. οἰκεῖ |
| 3. ζητῶ   | 7. φίλει |
| 4. ὀρῶ    | 8. τίμα  |

## Exercise 5δ

Copy the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, IMP, or INF above the appropriate words (do not label other words). Then translate the pairs of sentences:

- ὁ κύων τὸν λαγὼν ὀρᾷ καὶ διώκει πρὸς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος.  
Father shouts loudly (μέγα) and calls the slave out of the house.
- ἄρ' ὀρᾶτε τὸν λαγὼν; τί οὐ λῦετε τὸν κύναν;  
What are you doing, friends? Why are you silent (use σιγάω)?
- οὕτω κωφός (deaf) ἔστιν ὁ ἀνὴρ ὥστε αἰεὶ μέγα βοᾶμεν.  
The boy is so brave that we honor him greatly (μέγα).
- ἐν νῷ ἔχομεν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ (the city) βαδίζειν καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς ὀρᾶν.  
We wish to walk to the temple (τὸ ἱερόν) and honor the god (use ὁ θεός).
- μὴ οὕτω ῥᾶθυμος ἴσθι, ὦ παῖ· ἴθι πρὸς τὸ ὄρος καὶ ζήτει τὸν κύναν.  
Don't be so difficult, grandfather; for I am not to blame.

## 3. Article at the Beginning of a Clause

The article + δέ is often used at the beginning of a clause to indicate a change of subject; the article is translated as a pronoun, e.g.:

ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἄργος ὑλακτεῖ καὶ διώκει τὸν λαγὼν, ὁ δὲ φεύγει ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος.  
And so Argus barks and pursues the hare, **but it** (i.e., the hare) flees up the hill.

ὁ δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον καλεῖ, ὁ δὲ οὐ πάρεστιν.  
The master calls the slave, **but he** is not present.

ὁ πατὴρ τὴν κόρην καλεῖ, ἡ δὲ ταχέως προσχωρεῖ.  
The father calls the girl, **and she** approaches quickly.

## 4. Elision

If a word ends in a short vowel, this vowel may be *elided* (cut off) when the following word starts with a vowel, e.g., διὰ ὀλίγου > δι' ὀλίγου. Note that the elision is marked by an apostrophe. Further examples;

ἄρα ἐθέλεις > ἄρ' ἐθέλεις  
ἀλλὰ ἰδοὺ > ἀλλ' ἰδοὺ

If the following word begins with an aspirated vowel (i.e., a vowel with a rough breathing), the consonant left after elision is itself aspirated if possible, i.e., π becomes φ, and τ becomes θ. Thus:

ἀπὸ Ἑλλάδος (from Greece) > ἀφ' Ἑλλάδος

μετὰ ἡμῶν (with us) > μεθ' ἡμῶν

κατὰ ἡμέρῃν (by day = day by day, daily) > καθ' ἡμέρῃν

κατὰ ὅλου (on the whole, in general) > καθ' ὅλου or καθόλου, which gives English *catholic*, "comprehensive, universal."

Elision usually occurs when a compound verb is formed by prefixing a preposition that ends in a vowel to a verb that begins with a vowel, e.g.:

ἀνα- + αἶρω > ἀναίρω

ἀπο- + ἐλαύνω > ἀπελαύνω

ἐπι- + αἶρω > ἐπαίρω

ἀπο- + αἶρέω > ἀφαιρέω

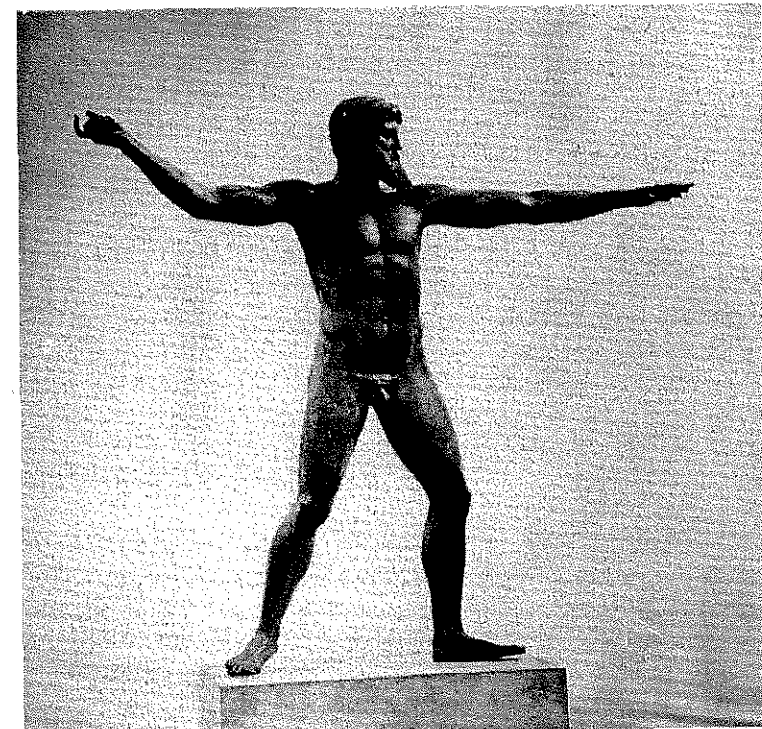
παρα- + εἰμί > πάρειμι

κατα- + ὀράω > καθοράω

Exceptions: περι- and προ-, prefixes that you will meet later, do not elide, e.g., περι- + ὀράω > περιοράω, *I overlook, disregard*, and προ- + ἔρχομαι > προέρχομαι, *I go forward, advance*.

## Gods and Men

When Dicaeopolis was about to start plowing, he first made a prayer to Demeter, goddess of grain. When he is about to take his family to Athens to the festival of Dionysus, god of wine, he first goes to the altar in the courtyard



Life-size bronze statue of Zeus hurling a thunderbolt

of his house and pours a libation (drink offering) to Zeus, father of gods and men. Religion permeated Greek life; prayer and offerings were daily obligations. Hesiod, the eighth-century poet, says:

Appease the immortal gods with libations and sacrifices, when you go to bed and when the holy light returns, so that they may have a kindly heart and spirit toward you, and you may buy other people's land and not have someone else buy yours. (*Works and Days*, 338–341)

The Greeks were polytheists (that is, they worshiped many gods), and their religion was an amalgam of many elements. For instance, when Greek speakers first entered Greece from the north about 2,000 B.C., they brought with them as their principal deity Zeus the Father (Ζεὺς πατήρ = Latin *Iuppiter*). The religion of the older inhabitants of Greece centered around a goddess, the Earth Mother, worshiped under various names, including Demeter. Eventually the various deities of different localities and different origins were united into the family of the twelve Olympian gods. They were called Olympian because they were thought to live on the top of the heavenly mountain Olympus, and each god had his (or her) special sphere of influence. Zeus was lord of the thunderbolt and father of gods and men; Hera was his wife and the patron goddess of women; Athena was his daughter and the goddess of wisdom and crafts; Apollo was the god of light, prophecy, and healing; Artemis, his sister, was a virgin huntress and goddess of the moon; Poseidon, Zeus' brother, was god of the sea; Aphrodite was goddess of love; Hermes was the messenger of the gods and bringer of good luck; Hephaestus was the god of fire and smiths; Ares was the god of war; Dionysus was the god of wine; and Demeter was the goddess of grain (for the Greek names, see page xix). Besides the great Olympians, there were many lesser gods, such as Pan and the nymphs, and many foreign gods whose worship was introduced to Greece at various times and who joined the pantheon.

There were in Greek religion no church, no dogma, and no professional full-time priests. Temples were built as the homes of the deity to which they were dedicated; no services were held inside, and the altar at which offerings were made stood in the open outside the temple. The gods were worshiped with prayer and offerings, both privately by the family and publicly by the deme and state at regular festivals recurring throughout the year. The usual offering in private worship was a libation of wine poured over the altar or a pinch of incense burnt in the altar fire. Public ritual culminated in animal sacrifice by the priest of the cult, often on a large scale, followed by a public banquet.

The gods were conceived in human form, and human characteristics were attributed to them. They were immortal, all powerful, and arbitrary. They were primarily interested not in the behavior of humans toward each other (morality) but in the maintenance of the honors due to themselves, and in this respect they were demanding and jealous. If you gave the gods the honors and offerings that were their due, you could expect them to repay you with their help and protection. At the beginning of Homer's *Iliad*, Chryses,

whose daughter the Greeks have captured and refuse to return for ransom, prays to Apollo:

Hearken to me, God of the Silver Bow, protector of Chryse and holy Cilla, mighty ruler of Tenedus, Smintheus, if ever I have built a temple pleasing to you, if ever I have burned the rich thighs of a bull or a goat for you, fulfill now my prayers: may the Greeks pay for my tears through your arrows.

Chryses prays to Apollo by two of his cult titles (the meaning of the second, Smintheus, is not known for certain) and three of the centers of his worship (the gods were not omnipresent, and Apollo might be resident in any one of these places). Chryses reminds Apollo of past services and only then makes his request, that Apollo may punish the Greeks by striking them down with disease (Apollo's arrows brought sickness and death—since he was the god of healing, he was also the god who sent sickness). The prayer was answered, and the Greeks were struck by a plague.



Woman pouring a libation

## Greek Wisdom

See page 70

near

ἐγγύα, πάρα δ' ἄτη.

Χείλων (of Sparta)

## Ο ΛΥΚΟΣ (β)



ὁ Ἄργος ὁρμᾷ ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἀποφεύγω, *I flee away, escape*  
 γινώσκω, *I get to know, learn*  
 Cf. Latin *cognōscō* and English  
*know*

ἤκω, *I have come*

θαυμάζω, intransitive, *I am*  
*amazed*; transitive, *I wonder*  
*at*; *I admire*

πάσχω, *I suffer*; *I experience*

τύπτω, *I strike, hit*

## Noun

ὁ μῦθος, *story*

## Pronouns

ἡμεῖς, *we*

ὑμεῖς, pl., *you*

## Adjectives

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, *good*

ἄγριος, -ᾱ, -ον, *savage*; *wild*;  
*fierce*

πρῶτος, -η, -ον, *first*

## Adjective or Pronoun

αὐτός, -ή, -ό, *intensive adjective, -self, -selves*; *adjective, same*; *pronoun in nom., gen., dat., and acc. cases, him, her, it, them* (see Grammar 6 and Grammar 9)

## Prepositions

ἐπὶ + dat., *upon, on*; + acc., *at*;  
*against*

ὑπὸ + dat., *under*; + acc., *under*

## Adverbs

ἐνταῦθα, *then*; *here*; *hither*;  
*there*; *thither*

ἐνταῦθα δὲ, *at that very*  
*moment, then*

νῦν, *now*

## Conjunctions

καὶ . . . καὶ, *both . . . and*

ὅτι, *that*

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ προσχωροῦσιν ὃ τε Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ πάππος, πολλὸν ψόφον ἀκούουσιν· ὑλακτεῖ γὰρ ἄγρίως ὁ Ἄργος, τὰ δὲ πρόβατα πολλὸν θόρυβον ποιεῖ. σπεύδουσιν οὖν· βούλονται γὰρ

5-7  
 1/2 of 11-12  
 5-7

γινώσκειν τί πάσχει τὰ πρόβατα. πρῶτος οὖν πάρεστιν ὁ παῖς, καὶ ἰδοῦ, ὁ μὲν Ἄργος μένει (πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ) καὶ ἄγρίως ὑλακτεῖ, καταβαίνει δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους πρὸς τὸ αὐλίον λύκος μέγας. ὁ μὲν οὖν Φίλιππος μέγα βοᾷ καὶ λίθους λαμβάνει καὶ βάλλει τὸν λύκον· ὁ δὲ Ἄργος ὁρμᾷ ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ οὕτως ἄγρίως ἐμπίπτει ὥστε ἀναστρέφει ὁ λύκος καὶ ἀποφεύγει. διώκει μὲν οὖν ὁ κύων, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος σπεύδει μετ' αὐτόν.

[ψόφον, *noise* θόρυβον, *uproar* βούλονται, *they want* βάλλει, *pelts* ὁρμᾷ, *rushes* ἐμπίπτει (ἐν- + πίπτει), *falls upon, attacks* ἀναστρέφει, *turns back* μετ(ὰ) αὐτόν, *after him*]

ὁ δὲ πάππος ἤδη (εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος) ἤκει καὶ τὸν λύκον ὁρᾷ καὶ βοᾷ, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, Φίλιππε· μὴ δίωκε ἀλλ’ ἐπάνελθε.” νῦν δὲ ὁ Ἄργος τὸν λύκον ὁδᾷ λαμβάνει καὶ κατέχει, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος αὐτὸς ἤδη πάρεστι καὶ τὴν μάχαιραν λαμβάνει καὶ τύπτει τὸν λύκον. ὁ δὲ ἀσπαίρει καὶ καταπίπτει πρὸς τὴν γῆν.

[ὁδᾷ, *with his teeth* κατέχει, *holds (it) fast* τὴν μάχαιραν, *his knife* ἀσπαίρει, *struggles*]

ἐνταῦθα δὲ προσχωρεῖ ὁ πάππος καὶ τὸν λύκον ὁρᾷ ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενον. θαυμάζει οὖν καὶ, “εὖ γε, ὦ παῖ,” φησὶν· “μάλα ἀνδρείος εἶ. μέγας γὰρ ἐστὶν ὁ λύκος καὶ ἄγριος. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἄργε, ἀγαθὸς εἶ κύων· εὖ γὰρ τὰ πρόβατα φυλάττεις. νῦν δέ, ὦ Φίλιππε, οἴκαδε σπεῦδε· ἡ γὰρ μήτηρ δήπου ἐθέλει γινώσκειν ποῦ εἶ καὶ τί πάσχεις.”

[κείμενον, *lying* εὖ γε, *well done!* εὖ, *well* δήπου, *I suppose*]

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ οἰκίᾳ προσχωροῦσιν, τὴν μητέρα ὁρῶσιν. ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος σπεύδει πρὸς αὐτὴν καὶ πάντα λέγει. ἡ δέ, “ἄρα τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγεις,” φησὶν. “εὖ γε, ὦ παῖ· μάλα ἀνδρείος εἶ. ἀλλ’ ἰδοῦ—προσχωρεῖ ἡ Μέλιττα ἀπὸ τῆς κρήνης. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ Μέλιττα, καὶ ἄκουε· ὁ γὰρ Φίλιππος λύκον ἀπέκτονεν.” ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος πάντα αὐτῆς λέγει, ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα μάλα θαυμάζει καὶ λέγει ὅτι καὶ ὁ Ἄργος καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος μάλα ἀνδρείοι εἰσι καὶ ἰσχυροί.

[πάντα, *all things, everything* τὰ ἀληθῆ, *the true things, the truth* ἀπέκτονεν, *has killed*]

ἔπειτα δὲ ἡ μήτηρ, “νῦν δὲ ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ φίλε,” φησίν, “καὶ κάθιζε μεθ’ ἡμῶν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ· μάλα γὰρ κάμνεις. σὺ δέ, ὦ Μέλιττα, κάθιζε καὶ σύ. ἀκούετε οὖν· ἐγὼ γὰρ μέλλω καλὸν μῦθον ὑμῖν λέγειν.”

[μεθ’ ἡμῶν, *with us* κάμνεις, *you are tired* μέλλω + infin., *I am about (to)* ὑμῖν, *to you*]

ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος καθεύδει—μάλα γὰρ κάμνει—οἱ δὲ παῖδες καθίζουσιν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ καὶ ἀκούουσιν· ἐπιθυμοῦσι γὰρ ἀκούειν τὸν μῦθον.

[ἐπιθυμοῦσι, *they desire*]

## WORD BUILDING

From your knowledge of the verbs at the left, deduce the meaning of the nouns at the right:

- |                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. βοάω                           | ἡ βοή     |
| 2. τιμάω                          | ἡ τιμή    |
| 3. ὀρμάω ( <i>I rush</i> )        | ἡ ὀρμή    |
| 4. νικάω ( <i>I defeat; win</i> ) | ἡ νίκη    |
| 5. τελευτάω ( <i>I end; die</i> ) | ἡ τελευτή |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Agreement of Subject and Verb

Note that in Greek neuter plural subjects take singular verbs, e.g.:

τὰ πρόβατα πολὺν θόρυβον ποιεῖ.  
τὰ ἄροτρα μικρά ἐστίν.

Translate the examples above.

### 6. Personal Pronouns

In previous chapters you have met the nominative singular personal pronouns ἐγώ, *I*, and σύ, *you*, and you have met the accusative singular pronouns αὐτόν, *him or it*, αὐτήν, *her or it*, and αὐτό, *it*. Personal pronouns in the genitive and dative cases (ἡμῶν and ὑμῖν) appear in the next to the last paragraph of the reading passage above (locate five personal pronouns in that paragraph).

The full declensions of the personal pronouns are given below:

1st Person Singular				1st Person Plural	
Nom.	ἐγώ	↓	I	ἡμεῖς	<i>we</i>
Gen.	ἐμοῦ	μου	<i>of me</i>	ἡμῶν	<i>of us</i>
Dat.	ἐμοί	μοι	<i>to or for me</i>	ἡμῖν	<i>to or for us</i>
Acc.	ἐμέ	με	<i>me</i>	ἡμᾶς	<i>us</i>
2nd Person Singular				2nd Person Plural	
Nom.	σύ		<i>you</i>	ὑμεῖς	<i>you</i>
Gen.	σοῦ	σου	<i>of you</i>	ὑμῶν	<i>of you</i>
Dat.	σοί	σοι	<i>to or for you</i>	ὑμῖν	<i>to or for you</i>
Acc.	σέ	σε	<i>you</i>	ὑμᾶς	<i>you</i>

Note: the accented forms ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ and σοῦ, σοί, σέ are emphatic and are used at the beginning of clauses and in expressing contrasts, e.g.:

ἐμέ οὐ σέ ἡ Μέλιττα φιλεῖ. *Melissa loves me not you.*

These forms are usually used after prepositions, e.g.:

ὁ λύκος ὀρμᾷ ἐπ’ ἐμέ. *The wolf rushes at me.*

The unaccented forms are unemphatic and enclitic.

### 3rd Person

The following forms are used as genitive, dative, and accusative 3rd person pronouns:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Singular</b>			
Gen.	αὐτοῦ <i>of him or it</i>	αὐτῆς <i>of her or it</i>	αὐτοῦ <i>of it</i>
Dat.	αὐτῷ <i>to or for him or it</i>	αὐτῇ <i>to or for her or it</i>	αὐτῷ <i>to it</i>
Acc.	αὐτόν <i>him or it</i>	αὐτήν <i>her or it</i>	αὐτό <i>it</i>
<b>Plural</b>			
Gen.	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>
Dat.	αὐτοῖς <i>to or for them</i>	αὐταῖς <i>to or for them</i>	αὐτοῖς <i>to or for them</i>
Acc.	αὐτούς <i>them</i>	αὐτάς <i>them</i>	αὐτά <i>them</i>

Note that these words can refer to either persons or things. When they refer to things, the gender of the pronoun depends on the gender of the noun to which it refers, e.g.: ὁ Ξανθίας αἶρει τὸν λίθον. αἶρει αὐτόν (*He lifts it*). The word αὐτόν is translated *it*, but it is masculine because it refers to the masculine noun λίθον. Translate the following examples:

ὀρῶ τὴν οἰκίαν. ὀρᾷς αὐτήν; φέρω τὸ ἄροτρον. σὺ αὐτὸ οὐ φέρεις.

**Exercise 5e**

Look back through story  $\alpha$  in Chapter 3 and story  $\beta$  in Chapter 5 and locate at least eight examples of personal pronouns and forms of αὐτός in each story.

**7. Attributive and Predicate Position****a. Attributive Position**

Note the position of the adjective in the following phrases:

ἡ καλὴ οἰκίᾱ                      ἡ οἰκίᾱ ἡ καλή

Both phrases mean *the beautiful house*. The adjective is said to be in the *attributive* position in these examples, in which it is placed either between the article and the noun or after the repeated article.

**b. Predicate Position**

In the following examples the adjective stands outside the article-noun group. The following examples constitute complete sentences (note that the verb “to be” may be omitted in simple sentences of this sort), and the adjective is said to be in the *predicate* position. Both sentences mean *The house is beautiful*.

καλὴ ἡ οἰκίᾱ.                      ἡ οἰκίᾱ καλή.

**8. Possessives**

The following possessive adjectives correspond to the personal pronouns above:

**1st Person Singular**  
ἐμός, -ή, -όν *my, mine*

**1st Person Plural**  
ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον *our, ours*

**2nd Person Singular**  
σός, -ή, -όν *your, yours*

**2nd Person Plural**  
ὑμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον *your, yours*

Here are some examples:

ὁ μὲν ἐμός κύων τὸν λύκον διώκει, ὁ δὲ κύων ὁ σός πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ καθίζει.  
*My dog is pursuing the wolf, but your dog is sitting by the road.*

ὁ μὲν ἡμέτερος πατὴρ πονεῖ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ, ὁ δὲ ὑμέτερος ἀργός ἐστιν.  
*Our father works in the field, but your (father) is lazy.*

ὁ κύων ἐμός ἐστιν, οὐ σός.  
*The dog is mine, not yours.*

In the first two examples the possessive adjectives occupy the attributive position, while in the third they occupy the predicate position.

There is no possessive adjective for the 3rd person, but instead the genitive of αὐτός is used:

<b>Masculine</b>	αὐτοῦ <i>of him, his; of it, its</i>
<b>Feminine</b>	αὐτῆς <i>of her, her; of it, its</i>
<b>Neuter</b>	αὐτοῦ <i>of it, its</i>
<b>M., F., N. (Plural)</b>	αὐτῶν <i>of them, their</i>

These possessive genitives occupy the predicate position, i.e., they stand outside the article-noun group to which they belong, and they refer to someone other than the subject of the verb (they are not reflexive), e.g.:

ὁ πάππος πρὸς τὸν παῖδα τρέχει, ὁ δὲ τὴν μάχαιραν αὐτοῦ λαμβάνει.  
*Grandfather runs to the boy, and he (the boy) takes his (the grandfather's) knife.*

ἡ κόρη μάλα κάμνει· ἡ οὖν μήτηρ τὴν ὑδρίαν αὐτῆς φέρει.  
*The girl is very tired; and so her mother carries her (i.e., the girl's) water jar.*

οἱ μὲν παῖδες ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ μένουσιν, οἱ δὲ πατέρες τοὺς κύνας αὐτῶν οἴκαδε ἄγουσιν.  
*The boys stay in the field, but the fathers lead their (i.e., the boys') dogs home.*

The genitives of the personal pronouns (see above, Grammar 6, page 65), used to indicate possession, also occupy the predicate position, e.g.:

“σὺ εἶ ὁ υἱός μου ὁ ἀγαπητός.” (Luke 3.22; see page 23)

Note that Greek frequently does not use possessives if the possessor is the same as the subject of the verb, e.g.:

ὁ Φίλιππος τὴν μάχαιραν λαμβάνει καὶ τύπτει τὸν λύκον.  
*Philip takes his knife and strikes the wolf.*

**Exercise 5ζ**

Read aloud and translate:

1. ἐλθε δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ· ὁ γὰρ ἡμέτερος δεσπότης ἡμᾶς καλεῖ.
2. τί ποιεῖτε, ὦ δοῦλοι; ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ ὑμᾶς καλῶ, ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἀκούετε.
3. ἄρ' οὐκ ἀκούετέ μου; φέρετέ μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.
4. ἀλλ', ὦ δέσποτα, νῦν φέρομεν αὐτό σοι.
5. ἡμῖν προσχώραι, ὦ παῖ, καὶ λέγε μοι τί πάσχεις.
6. τὸν ἐμὸν κύνα ζητῶ, ὦ πάτερ· ὁ δὲ φεύγει ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει ἐπανιέναι (*to come back*).

7. θάρρει (*cheer up*), ὦ παῖ· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἀκούω αὐτοῦ ὑλακτοῦντος (*barking*). ζήτηι οὖν αὐτόν.
8. ὁρῶ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ ἄκρῳ τῇ ὄρει μένοντα (*waiting*)· ἰδοῦ, νῦν τρέχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
9. ἄγριος μὲν ὁ λύκος καὶ μέγας, ὁ δὲ παῖς τὴν μάχαιραν λαμβάνει καὶ τύπτει αὐτόν.
10. ὁ μὲν πάππος ἤδη πάρεστιν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος τὴν μάχαιραν αὐτοῦ λαμβάνει καὶ ἀποκτείνει (*kills*) τὸν λύκον.

### 9. The Adjective αὐτός, -ή, -ό

The same word that is used in the genitive, dative, and accusative cases as the 3rd person pronoun (see above, Grammar 6) may be used in any case as an *intensive adjective*, meaning *-self* or *-selves*, e.g.:

μάλα ἀνδρείοι ἐστε αὐτοί. *You yourselves are very brave.*

Here are all of its forms:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Singular</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
<b>Gen.</b>	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
<b>Dat.</b>	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
<b>Acc.</b>	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
<b>Plural</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
<b>Gen.</b>	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

There is no vocative.

This adjective may be used to intensify or emphasize the implied subject of a verb or to intensify or emphasize a noun, e.g.:

ὁ δοῦλος πάρεστιν· αὐτὸς αἶρει τὸν λίθον.

*The slave is present; he **himself** lifts the stone.*

ὁ πάππος τὸν λύκον αὐτὸν ὀρᾷ.

ὁ πάππος αὐτὸν τὸν λύκον ὀρᾷ.

*The grandfather sees the wolf **itself**.*

αἱ μὲν κόραι τὰς ὑδρίας πληροῦσιν, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες αὐταὶ οὐ.

αἱ μὲν κόραι τὰς ὑδρίας πληροῦσιν, αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ γυναῖκες οὐ.

*The girls fill their water jars, but the women **themselves** do not.*

When used to intensify a noun, this adjective occupies the *predicate* position, as in the second and third examples above.

This same adjective when placed in the *attributive* position means *same*, e.g.:

τὸν αὐτὸν λύκον *the **same** wolf*

αἱ αὐταὶ γυναῖκες *the **same** women*

δὺς ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν ποταμὸν οὐκ ἂν ἐμβαίης.

*You couldn't step into the **same** river twice.* —Heraclitus

### Exercise 5η

Read aloud and translate:

1. αὐτὸς ὁ πάππος ἡμᾶς κελεύει (*orders*) σπεύδειν πρὸς τὸ αὐλίον· ὁ γὰρ αὐτὸς λύκος καταβαίνει ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕρου.
2. τὸν κύνα αὐτοῦ καλεῖτε· ἀνδρείος γάρ ἐστι καὶ τὰ πρόβατα εὖ φυλάττει.
3. σπεύδετε, ὦ παῖδες· τὰ γὰρ πρόβατα αὐτὸν τὸν λύκον ὀρᾷ καὶ πολλὸν θόρυβον ποιεῖ.
4. ὁ κύων οὐ διώκει τὸν λύκον ἀλλὰ αὐτὸς ἀποφεύγει· ἄγριος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ λύκος καὶ μέγας.
5. νῦν δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς κύων τὸν λύκον διώκει· ὁ δὲ ἀποφεύγει πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.

## Ο ΑΡΓΟΣ ΤΑ ΠΡΟΒΑΤΑ ΣΩΙΖΕΙ

Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:

ὁ τε Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ πατήρ βραδέως βαδίζουσιν ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδόν· ζητοῦσι γὰρ τὰ πρόβατα. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἤκουσιν, τὰ πρόβατα ὀρῶσιν· μένει γὰρ τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ καὶ πολλὸν θόρυβον ποιεῖ. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις, “τί πάσχει τὰ πρόβατα;” φησὶν· “σπεῦδε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ὦ παῖ, καὶ γίγνωσκε τί τοσοῦτον θόρυβον ποιεῖ.” ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος αὐτὸς σπεύδει κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖς προβάτοις προσχωρεῖ, μέγαν λύκον ὀρᾷ· τὸν οὖν πατέρα καλεῖ καὶ βοᾷ· “ἐλθε δεῦρο, ὦ πάτερ, καὶ βοήθει· μέγας γὰρ λύκος πάρεστι καὶ μέλλει τοῖς προβάτοις ἐμπίπτειν.”

[βοήθει, *come to the rescue! come to (my) aid!*]

1. What are Philip and his father seeking?
2. When do they see the flocks? What are the flocks doing?
3. What does Philip see when he approaches the flocks?
4. What does he urge his father to do?

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τὸν κύνα λύει καί, “ἴθι δὴ, Ἄργε,” φησὶν· “τὸν λύκον δίωκε· σὺ δέ, ὦ παῖ, μένε ἐνταῦθα.” ὁ μὲν οὖν Φίλιππος μένει πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ, ὁ δὲ Ἄργος ὑλακτεῖ καὶ οὕτως ἀγρίως ὀρμᾷ ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον ὥστε ὁ λύκος ἀποφεύγει. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ πατήρ τρέχουσι μετ’ αὐτοὺς καὶ βοῶσι καὶ λίθους βάλλουσιν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὸν κύνα καλοῦσι καὶ τὰ πρόβατα οἴκαδε ἐλαύνουσιν.

[βάλλουσιν, *throw*]

5. What does Dicaeopolis do?
6. Does Philip obey his father?
7. What does Argus do? With what result?
8. What do Philip and his father do at the end of the story?

### Exercise 50

*Translate into Greek:*

1. We no longer see many wolves in the hills, and they rarely (σπανίως) come down (use καταβαίνω) into the fields.
2. So we are amazed that Philip has killed (ἀπέκτονε(v)) a wolf.
3. The same boy guards the flocks well (εὖ), but he does not always speak (say) the truth (τὰ ἀληθῆ).
4. So we ourselves intend to hurry to the hill and look for the body (use ὁ νεκρός).

## Greek Wisdom

### The Seven Wise Men

The Greeks recognized seven “wise men” or “sages” (σοφοί), who lived in the early decades of the sixth century B.C. To each was attached a piece of proverbial wisdom, which is quoted on the page of this book to which reference is made opposite each name in the following list (the names are given in the order in which they were listed in antiquity):

Θαλῆς (of Miletus)	page 111
Σόλων (of Athens)	page 230
Περίανδρος (of Corinth)	page 127
Κλεόβουλος (of Lindos)	page 16
Χεῖλων (of Sparta)	page 61
Βίας (of Priene)	page 211
Πιπτακός (of Mitylene)	page 45

## Classical Greek

### Anacreon

Anacreon of Teos (fl. 535 B.C.) was a lyric poet, whose work included many love poems. Long after his death, a collection of poems was published that were written in his style and called *Anacreontea*, including the following (no. 34), written to a cicada (τέττιξ), a type of Mediterranean grasshopper.

μακαρίζομέν σε, τέττιξ.  
 ὅτε δενδρέων ἐπ’ ἄκρων  
 ὀλίγην δρόσον πεπωκώς  
 βασιλεὺς ὅπως αἰεῖς.  
 σὰ γάρ ἐστι κείνα πάντα,  
 ὅποσα βλέπεις ἐν ἀγροῖς  
 χάποσα φέρουσιν ὕλαι.

[μακαρίζομεν, *we regard X as blessed* ὅτε, *when* δενδρέων = δένδρων ἐπ(ι) + gen., *on* ὀλίγην δρόσον, *a little dew* πεπωκώς, *after drinking* βασιλεὺς ὅπως, *like a king* αἰεῖς, *you sing* κείνα πάντα, / ὅποσα, *all those things, as many as* χάποσα = καὶ ὅποσα, *and as many as* ὕλαι, *the woods*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 4.22 and 24

When Jesus went to his home village of Nazareth and taught in the synagogue, the people were amazed and said:

“οὐχὶ υἱὸς ἐστίν, Ἰωσήφ οὗτος;”

[οὐχὶ, *emphatic* οὐ υἱός, *son* Ἰωσήφ, *of Joseph* οὗτος, *this man*, subject of the sentence]

They told him to perform a miracle in his home village, but he said:

“ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι οὐδεὶς προφήτης δεκτός ἐστιν ἐν τῇ πατρίδι αὐτοῦ.”

[ἀμὴν, *in truth* οὐδεὶς, *no* προφήτης, *prophet* δεκτός, *acceptable* τῇ πατρίδι αὐτοῦ, *his own country*]

## 6 Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (α)



ὁ τε Θησεὺς καὶ οἱ ἑταῖροι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν Κρήτην.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἀποκτείνω, *I kill*  
ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἰκνέομαι],  
*I arrive; + εἰς + acc., I arrive at*  
βασιλεύω, *I rule*  
βοηθέω, *I come to the rescue; + dat., I come to X's aid; I come to rescue / aid X*  
βούλομαι + infin., *I want; I wish*  
γίγνομαι, *I become*  
γίνεται, *he/she/it becomes; it happens*  
δέχομαι, *I receive*  
ἐκφεύγω, *I flee out, escape*  
ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*  
ἀπέρχομαι [= ἀπο- + ἔρχομαι],  
*I go away*  
πείθομαι + dat., *I obey*  
πέμπω, *I send*  
πλέω, *I sail*  
σώζω, *I save*  
φοβέομαι, *intransitive, I am*

frightened, am afraid; transitive, I fear, am afraid of (something or someone)

#### Nouns

ὁ βασιλεύς, *king*  
ὁ ἑταῖρος, *comrade, companion*  
ἡ ἡμέρα, *day*  
ἡ ναὺς (τῆς νεώς, τῇ νηί, τὴν ναὺν), *ship*  
ἡ νῆσος, *island*  
ἡ νύξ, *night*  
ὁ πάππας (ὁ πάππα), *papa*  
Cf. ὁ πάππος, *grandfather*  
ἡ παρθένος, *maiden; girl*

#### Adjective

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *terrible*

#### Preposition

μετά + gen., *with; + acc., after*

#### Adverb

ἐκεῖ, *there*

#### Proper Names

αἱ Ἀθηναί, *Athens*  
ὁ Αἰγεύς, *Aegeus (king of Athens)*

ἡ Ἀριάδνη, *Ariadne (daughter of King Minos)*  
ὁ Θησεύς (τὸν Θησεῖα, ὁ Θησεῦ),  
*Theseus (son of King Aegeus)*  
ἡ Κνωσός, *Knossos*

ἡ Κρήτη, *Crete*  
ὁ Μίνως (τοῦ Μίνω), *Minos*  
(king of Crete)  
ὁ Μινώταυρος, *Minotaur*

“ὁ Μίνως οἰκεῖ ἐν τῇ Κρήτῃ· βασιλεὺς δέ ἐστι τῆς νήσου. καὶ ἐν τῇ τοῦ Μίνω οἰκίᾳ ἐστὶν ὁ λαβύρινθος· ἐκεῖ δ’ οἰκεῖ ὁ Μινώταυρος, θηρίον τι δεινόν, τὸ μὲν ἡμισυ ἄνθρωπος, τὸ δ’ ἡμισυ ταῦρος. ὁ δὲ Μινώταυρος ἐσθίει ἀνθρώπους. ὁ οὖν Μίνως ἀναγκάζει τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἐπτά τε νεανίᾳς πέμπειν καὶ ἐπτά παρθένους κατ’ ἔτος πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην καὶ παρέχει αὐτοὺς τῷ Μινωταύρῳ ἐσθίειν.

[ὁ λαβύρινθος, *the labyrinth* θηρίον τι, *a certain beast* τὸ... ἡμισυ, *half* ταῦρος, *bull* ἐσθίει, *eats* ἀναγκάζει, *compels* ἐπτά, *seven* νεανίᾳς, *youths* κατ’ ἔτος, *each year* παρέχει, *hands over, provides* τῷ Μινωταύρῳ, *to the Minotaur*]

“ἐν δὲ ταῖς Ἀθήναις βασιλεύει ὁ Αἰγεύς· ἔστι δὲ αὐτῷ παῖς τις ὀνόματι Θησεύς. ὁ δὲ ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡβᾷ, τοὺς ἑταίρους οἰκτῖρει καὶ βούλεται βοηθεῖν αὐτοῖς. προσχωρεῖ οὖν τῷ πατρὶ καί, ‘ὦ πάππα φίλε,’ φησὶν, ‘τοὺς ἑταίρους οἰκτῖρω καὶ βούλομαι σφῆξιν. πέμπε με οὖν μετὰ τῶν ἑταίρων πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην.’ ὁ δ’ Αἰγεὺς μάλα φοβεῖται ἄλλ’ ὅμως πείθεται αὐτῷ.

[ἔστι... αὐτῷ, *there is for him, he has* παῖς τις, *a child* ὀνόματι, *by name* ἡβᾷ, *grows up* οἰκτῖρει, *pities* ὅμως, *nevertheless*]

“ὁ οὖν Θησεὺς εἰς ναὺν εἰσβαίνει μετὰ τῶν ἑταίρων καὶ πλεῖ πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἀφικνοῦνται, ὁ τε βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ βασίλεια καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ αὐτῶν, ὀνόματι Ἀριάδνη, δέχονται αὐτοὺς καὶ ἄγουσι πρὸς τὴν Κνωσὸν (οὕτω γὰρ τὴν τοῦ Μίνω πόλιν ὀνομάζουσιν) καὶ φυλάττουσιν ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ.

[ἡ βασίλεια, *the queen* τὴν... πόλιν, *the city* ὀνομάζουσιν, *they call* τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ, *the prison*]

“ἡ δ’ Ἀριάδνη, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ὀρᾷ τὸν Θησεῖα, ἐρᾷ αὐτοῦ καὶ βούλεται σφῆξιν. ἐπεὶ οὖν νύξ γίγνεται, σπεύδει πρὸς τὸ δεσμωτήριον καὶ τὸν Θησεῖα καλεῖ καί, ‘σίγα, ὦ Θησεῦ,’ φησὶν· ‘ἐγώ, Ἀριάδνη, πάρειμι. ἐρῶ σοῦ καὶ βούλομαι σφῆξιν. ἰδοὺ, παρέχω γάρ σοι τοῦτο

τὸ ξίφος καὶ τοῦτο τὸ λίνον. μὴ οὖν φοβοῦ ἀλλὰ ἀνδρείως εἴσβαινε εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον καὶ ἀπόκτεινε τὸν Μινώταυρον. ἔπειτα δὲ ἔκφευγε μετὰ τῶν ἐταίρων καὶ σπεῦδε πρὸς τὴν ναῦν. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐν νῶ ἔχω πρὸς τῇ νηϊ μένειν· βούλομαι γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς Κρήτης ἀποφεύγειν καὶ μετὰ σοῦ πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας πλεῖν. οὕτω λέγει καὶ ταχέως ἀπέρχεται πρὸς τὴν πόλιν. ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς μάλα μὲν θαυμάζει, δέχεται δὲ τὸ ξίφος καὶ μένει τὴν ἡμέραν.”

[ἐρᾷ αὐτοῦ, *loves him* σίγα, *be quiet!* τοῦτο τὸ ξίφος, *this sword* τοῦτο τὸ λίνον, *this thread* μὴ ... φοβοῦ, *don't be afraid!*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. phobia
2. acrophobia
3. agoraphobia
4. entomophobia
5. triskaidekaphobia
6. Anglophobia

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: πλέω

In the two-syllable contract verb πλέω, ε does not contract with ο or ω, thus:

Stem: πλε-, *sail*

Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
Singular			
1st	πλέ-ω > πλέω		πλέ-ειν > πλεῖν
2nd	πλέ-εις > πλεῖς	πλέ-ε > πλεῖ	
3rd	πλέ-ει > πλεῖ		
Plural			
1st	πλέ-ομεν > πλέομεν		
2nd	πλέ-ετε > πλεῖτε	πλέ-ετε > πλεῖτε	
3rd	πλέ-ουσι(ν) > πλέουσι(ν)		

## 2. Verbs: Voice

### a. Active Voice

You have met many verbs that are *active* in voice and take direct objects, e.g.:

ὁ Μινώταυρος ἐσθίει ανθρώπους.  
The Minotaur *eats* men.

### b. Passive Voice

Sentences of this sort can be turned around so that the direct object becomes the subject, e.g.:

Men *are eaten* by the Minotaur.

The verb is now said to be *passive* in voice, and the subject of the sentence is acted on rather than being the actor. The passive voice of Greek verbs will be presented later in this course.

### c. Middle Voice

In Greek, verbs may be in a third voice termed *middle*. The middle voice is often reflexive, denoting that the subject acts *on* or *for* itself, e.g.:

Active: ὁ παῖς τὸν κύνα λούει.  
The boy *washes* the dog.

Middle: ὁ παῖς λούεται.  
The boy *washes himself* or The boy *washes*.

In this case the subject is thought of as acting *on* itself, and the verb in the middle voice implies a reflexive direct object in the accusative case, *himself*. The middle voice verb here can also be translated as *intransitive*, with no direct object, simply, *The boy washes*.

Here is another set of similar examples:

Active: ἡ Μυρρίνη τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγείρει.  
Myrrhine *wakes up* her husband.

Middle: ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐγείρεται.  
Dicaeopolis *wakes himself up/wakes up*.

In the above examples, the middle voice verbs are *reflexive with accusative sense*.

Verbs in the middle voice, however, may also be *transitive* and take direct objects:

Active: ὁ παῖς τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει.  
The boy *carries* the plow.

Middle: ὁ παῖς τὸ ἄθλον φέρεται.  
*The boy carries off the prize for himself.*  
*The boy wins the prize.*

Here the subject is thought of as acting *for itself, in its own interests, to its own advantage*, and the verb, which takes a direct object, is reflexive with an implied dative of reference, *for himself*.

In the above example, the middle voice verb is *reflexive with dative sense*.

Verbs in the middle voice may occasionally have a *causative sense*. Here the subject of the verb causes someone else to do something. Compare the following sentences:

Active: ὁ παῖς λύει τοὺς βοῦς.  
*The boy looses/frees the oxen.*

Middle: ὁ πατήρ τὸν παῖδα λύεται.  
*The father causes his son to be set free.*  
*The father ransoms his son.*

### 3. Verb Forms: Middle Voice

Verbs in the middle voice can easily be recognized from their endings, which are different from the endings of the active voice that you learned in Chapters 1–5. Almost any verb can be used in the middle voice, and as samples of verbs in the middle, we will use our familiar λύω and φιλέω. As shown above, λύω in the middle voice may mean *I ransom*. In the case of the verb φιλέω there is no real difference in meaning between the active and middle voices; they are both transitive, and they both mean *I love* (someone or something). The verb τιμάω is used in the middle voice as a legal term in estimating or proposing a penalty; you may meet it later when reading Plato's *Apology*.

In the following sets of forms note the *thematic* or *variable* vowels (ο or ε) between the verb stem and the endings. In the second person singular indicative and the singular imperative, the σ between the two vowels (*intervocalic sigma*) is lost, and the vowels then contract: ε + αι > ει or η, and ε + ο > ου. The diphthong αι in the endings below is counted as short in determining placement of accents, e.g., λύο-μαι.

#### Middle Voice

##### λύομαι

Stem: λῡ-, *loosen, loose*

##### Indicative

##### Singular

λῡ-ο-μαι  
 λῡ-ε-σαι > λύει\* or λύῃ  
 λῡ-ε-ται

##### Plural

λῡ-ό-μεθα  
 λῡ-ε-σθε  
 λῡ-ο-νται

##### Imperative

λῡ-ε-σο > λύου

λῡ-ε-σθε

##### Infinitive

λῡ-ε-σθαι

##### φιλέομαι

##### Indicative

Stem: φιλε-, *love*

##### Singular

φιλέ-ο-μαι > φιλοῦμαι  
 φιλέ-ε-σαι > φιλεῖ\* or φιλήῃ φιλέ-ε-σο > φιλοῦ  
 φιλέ-ε-ται > φιλεῖται

##### Plural

φιλε-ό-μεθα > φιλούμεθα  
 φιλέ-ε-σθε > φιλεῖσθε φιλέ-ε-σθε > φιλεῖσθε  
 φιλέ-ο-νται > φιλοῦνται

##### Imperative

φιλέ-ε-σθε > φιλεῖσθε

##### Infinitive

φιλέ-ε-σθαι > φιλεῖσθαι

\*The endings in -ει and -εῖ are more common in Attic prose and are used in this book.

##### τιμάομαι

##### Indicative

Stem: τίμα-, *honor*

##### Singular

τιμά-ο-μαι > τιμῶμαι  
 τιμά-ε-σαι > τιμᾷ  
 τιμά-ε-ται > τιμᾶται

##### Imperative

τιμά-ε-σο > τιμῶ

##### Infinitive

τιμά-ε-σθαι > τιμᾶσθαι

**Plural**

τιμα-ό-μεθα > τιμώμεθα

τιμά-ε-σθε > τιμάσθε

τιμά-ε-σθε > τιμάσθε

τιμά-ο-νται > τιμώνται

Remember that when contraction takes place, an acute accent over the first of the vowels to contract becomes a circumflex over the resulting contracted vowel (see Chapter 5, Grammar 2, page 57), and remember that ει and ου represent long vowels (see page xiv); thus in the chart above φιλέ-ο-μαι > φιλοῦμαι. An acute accent over the second of two vowels that contract remains acute in the contracted form, thus in the chart above φιλε-ό-μεθα > φιλούμεθα.

Explain the accents in each of the forms above. Remember that the diphthong αι is counted as short in these forms.

**4. Deponent Verbs**

There are many Greek verbs that have some of their forms *only* in the middle voice; they are said to be *deponent*, as if they had “put aside” (Latin *dēpōnere*) or lost their active forms. In the vocabulary list and the first reading passage in this chapter you have met the following deponent verbs:

ἀφικνέομαι, *I arrive*; + εἰς + acc., *I arrive at*

βούλομαι + infin., *I want; I wish*

γίγνομαι, *I become*

γίγνεται, *he/she/it becomes; it happens*

δέχομαι, *I receive*

έρχομαι, *I come; I go*

ἀπέρχομαι, *I go away*

These verbs have no active forms. The verbs πείθομαι and φοβέομαι, however, which have similar endings, do not belong in this list because they *may* be used in the active voice and therefore are not deponent: πείθω = *I persuade X*, and φοβέω = *I put X to flight; I terrify X*.

**Exercise 6α**

Locate thirteen verbs in the middle voice in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, and translate the sentences in which they occur. Identify the verbs that are deponent.

**Exercise 6β**

Make three photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present indicative, imperative, and infinitive forms of the deponent verbs γίγνομαι and ἀφικνέομαι and the forms of the verb ὀρμάομαι, *I hasten*, which you will meet in the next chapter. Write only the contracted forms. Keep these charts for reference.

**Exercise 6γ**

Read aloud and translate the following sets of sentences containing verbs in the active and middle voices (the middle voice verbs are all reflexive with accusative sense):

1. τὸν κύνα λούω (*wash*).  
ἡμεῖς λουόμεθα.
2. ἡ μήτηρ τὸν παῖδα ἐγείρει (*wakes up*).  
ὁ παῖς ἐγείρεται.
3. ὁ δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον τοῦ πόνου παύει (*stops from + gen.*).  
τοῦ πόνου παύομαι.
4. ὁ δοῦλος τοὺς λίθους αἶρει.  
ὁ δοῦλος ἐγείρεται καὶ ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν (*himself*).
5. οἱ παῖδες τὸν τρόχον (*the wheel, hoop*) τρέπουσιν (*turn*).  
ὁ δοῦλος πρὸς τὸν δεσπότην τρέπεται.

**Exercise 6δ**

Read aloud and translate the following sets of sentences containing verbs in the active and middle voices (the middle voice verbs are all reflexive with dative sense or causative):

1. τί οὐ λῦεις τοὺς βοῦς;  
ὁ ἱερεὺς (*the priest*) τὴν παῖδα λύεται.
2. τὸ ἄροτρον μοι φέρετε.  
ὁ νεανίας τὸ ἄθλον φέρεται.
3. οἱ ναῦται ναῦν μεγάλην ποιοῦσιν.  
οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐορτὴν ποιοῦνται.  
(N.B. Either the active or the middle voice may be used here with little difference in meaning.)
4. ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς νεανίᾳς αἰρεῖ.  
ὁ Θησεὺς τοὺς ἐταίρους αἰρεῖται.  
(αἰρέω = *I take*; αἰροῦμαι = *I take for myself = I choose*)
5. ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐθέλει τοὺς Ἀθηναίους λῦειν.  
ἡ βασίλεια βούλεται τοὺς Ἀθηναίους λῦεσθαι.

**Exercise 6ε**

Change the following forms to their corresponding plurals and translate the plurals:

- |             |             |               |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. λῦομαι   | 3. δέχει    | 5. ἀφικνεῖται |
| 2. βούλεται | 4. φοβοῦμαι | 6. γίγνομαι   |

## Exercise 6ζ

Change the following forms to their corresponding singulars and translate the singulars:

- |                    |                        |                |
|--------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| 1. λύεσθε (2 ways) | 3. βούλονται           | 5. φοβούμεθα   |
| 2. πειθόμεθα       | 4. ἀφικνεῖσθε (2 ways) | 6. ἀφικνοῦνται |

## Exercise 6η

Read aloud and translate the following sentences containing deponent verbs:

1. ὁ τε Θησεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι ἀπὸ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν ἀποπλέουσι καὶ δι' ὀλίγου εἰς τὴν Κρήτην ἀφικνοῦνται.
2. ὁ τε βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ βασίλεια αὐτοὺς δέχονται.
3. αἱ μὲν παρθέναι μάλα φοβοῦνται, ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται.
4. ἄρ' οὐ φοβεῖ τὸν Μινώταυρον; θήριον γὰρ δεινόν ἐστιν.
5. οὐ βουλόμεθα εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον εἰσιέναι (to go into).
6. ἀνδρεῖοι γίνεσθε. ἐγὼ γὰρ βούλομαι ὑμᾶς σφάζειν.
7. ἐπεὶ νῦν γίγνεται, ἡ Ἀριάδνη πρὸς τὸ δεσμοτήριον προσέρχεται.
8. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνεῖται, τὸν Θησέα καλεῖ. βούλεται γὰρ αὐτὸν σφάζειν.
9. "μὴ φοβοῦ," φησὶν. "ἐγὼ γὰρ βούλομαι σε σφάζειν."
10. ὁ Θησεὺς τὸ ξίφος δέχεται καὶ ἀνδρείως εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον εἰσέρχεται.

## Exercise 6θ

Translate into Greek:

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. We want to stay.           | 4. Don't be frightened, friends. |
| 2. I am not afraid of you.    | 5. They are becoming lazy.       |
| 3. They arrive at the island. |                                  |



Theseus slays the Minotaur.

## Myth

The Greek word μῦθος means *story*, and the Greeks were great story-tellers. Many of the stories were of immemorial antiquity, told to all children at their mothers' knees. There were stories about the times before man existed at all, about times when men and gods were on much closer terms than they are today, and about the gods and the heroes of old. The myths included stories of widely differing types. Some, like the creation myths, were concerned exclusively or primarily with the gods. For instance, Hesiod (*Works and Days* 42–105) relates how the demigod Prometheus, in pity for mankind, stole fire from heaven and gave it to man:

Zeus the Cloud-Gatherer, angry with Prometheus, said to him: "Prometheus, wise beyond all others, you are very pleased to have stolen fire and to have deceived me, but it shall be a cause of suffering both to you and to men to come. In return for the theft of fire, I shall give them a great evil, in which they shall all rejoice, hugging to themselves their own trouble." So spoke the Father of men and gods and laughed aloud. He ordered Hephaestus with all speed to mix earth and water, to put in it the speech and strength of a human, and in face to give it the fair, delightful form of a young girl like the immortal goddesses. He told Athena to teach it crafts to enable it to weave the rich web on the loom; he told golden Aphrodite to pour over its head grace and troublesome desire and pains that melt the limbs; but he bade Hermes put in it the mind of a dog and a deceitful character.

The gods and goddesses did as they were told, and Hermes called the woman Pandora, "because all (πάντες) the gods who live on Olympus gave (ἐδώρησαν) her a gift (δῶρον) for men who eat bread."

The Father sent the swift messenger of the gods, who took the gift to Epimetheus (Prometheus's brother). Epimetheus did not reflect on how Prometheus had told him never to accept a gift from Olympian Zeus but to send it back, lest it bring some evil to mortals. After he had received the evil, he remembered.



Athena decks out Pandora before sending her to Epimetheus.

Before this men lived on earth free from troubles and hard toil and the grievous diseases that bring destruction.

But the woman took the lid off the great jar and scattered the contents, and so she brought suffering on the people. Hope alone remained inside in her indestructible home beneath the rim of the jar and did not fly out, for Pandora put the lid back before Hope could escape, through the will of Zeus the Cloud-Gatherer. Countless troubles roam among the people. The earth is full of evils, and full is the sea. Diseases come upon men in the day and others come at night, bringing suffering to mortals, silently, since Zeus has taken from them the power of speech. It is impossible to escape the will of Zeus.

This myth offers an explanation of why men suffer diseases and other troubles. (Why, for instance, should men have to work for their food? In the Golden Age earth produced all manner of food spontaneously.) The story is told in allusive style: Pandora takes the lid off a great jar, from which all troubles fly out, but we are told nothing about this jar or about how it got there and why Pandora took the lid off. Hesiod's audience presumably knew the story, and he had no need to tell them. Nor is it clear why Hope is said to remain in the jar. Is the human condition hopeless?

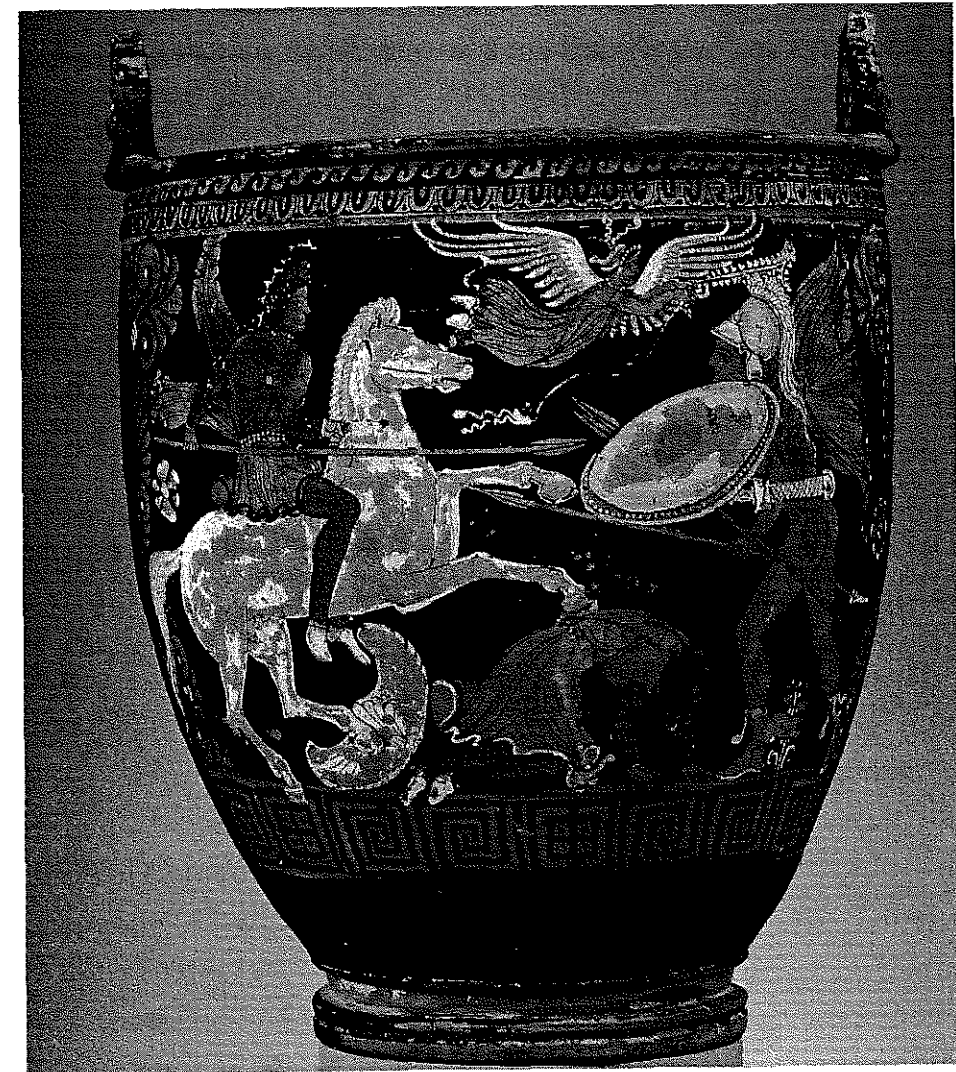
Other myths are based on history or what the Greeks believed to be history. The story of Theseus and the Minotaur falls into this class. Theseus was an early king of Athens, around whom a whole cycle of myths crystalized. He belonged to the generation before the Trojan War and was thought to be responsible for the unification of Attica. Minos, king of Knossos in Crete, was also believed to be a historical figure. Thucydides discusses the extent of his sea-power in the introduction to his history. *Labyrinthos* means in the ancient Cretan language *House of the Double Axe*, which may have been the name of the great palace at Knossos, where the double axe frequently appears as a religious symbol. The large size and complicated plan of this palace may account for the change in meaning of the word *labyrinth* to its later sense of "maze." Bull-jumping played an important part in Cretan ritual and is often portrayed in works of Cretan art. The bull-jumpers may well have been young captives taken from Athens and other places. We thus find in the myth of Theseus historical elements strangely transmuted in the course of time.

In another foreign adventure, Theseus is said to have accompanied Heracles on an expedition to fight the Amazons, a race of female warriors living on the south shore of the Black Sea; according to some accounts, Theseus led the expedition himself. He captured the queen of the Amazons and brought her back to Athens, but the Amazons came in pursuit and laid siege to Athens. They were defeated, but the queen of the Amazons bore Theseus a child, named Hippolytus, who was destined to be the cause of much sorrow for Theseus.

The myth of Odysseus and the Cyclops (Chapter 7) is taken from Homer's *Odyssey*, which is mainly concerned with the adventures of Odysseus during his journey home to Ithaca from Troy. It illustrates a third strand often found

in Greek myth: folk tale. The story of the little man who outwits a one-eyed man-eating giant is found in the folk tales of many other peoples, and the whole structure of the story as told by Homer shows the symmetry common in folk tales.

The making of myths seems to be a universal human activity, and myths are said to enshrine the corporate wisdom of primitive peoples. Their interpretation remains a vexed question, on which no two scholars agree. The strands that go to form the corpus of Greek myth are so many and various that any attempt to form general rules for their interpretation seems doomed to failure. However we look at them, they are stories that have caught the imagination of Western man throughout recorded history.



An Amazon in combat with a Greek warrior

## Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (β)



ὁ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται ἀλλὰ ἀνδρείως μάχεται καὶ τὸν Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνει.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἐξέρχομαι + ἐκ + gen., *I come out of; I go out of*  
 ἡγέομαι + dat., *I lead*  
 μάχομαι, *I fight*  
 παρέχω, *I hand over; I supply, provide*  
 πορεύομαι, *I go; I walk; I march; I journey*  
 προχωρέω, *I go forward; I come forward, advance*  
 Cf. προσχωρέω + dat., *I approach*  
 φασί(ν), postpositive enclitic, *they say*

## Noun

αἱ πύλαι, pl., *double gates*

## Adverbs

οὐδαμῶς, *in no way, no*  
 πολλάκις, *many times, often*  
 ὦς, in exclamations, *how . . . !*

## Particles

γε, postpositive enclitic; restrictive, *at least; intensive, indeed*  
 δή, postpositive; emphasizes that what is said is obvious or true, *indeed, in fact*

“ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρᾱ γίνεται, ὁ Μίνως ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸ δεσμωτήριον καὶ καλεῖ τὸν τε Θησεῖα καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους καὶ ἄγει αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὸν λαβύρινθον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνοῦνται, οἱ δοῦλοι ἀνοίγουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους εἰσελαύνουσιν. ἔπειτα δὲ τὰς πύλας κλείουσι καὶ ἀπέρχονται· οὕτω γὰρ τῷ Μινωτάυρῳ σίτον παρέχουσιν εἰς πολλὰς 5 ἡμέρας. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἐταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται, ὁ δὲ Θησεύς, ‘μὴ φοβεῖσθε, ὦ φίλοι,’ φησὶν· ‘ἐγὼ γὰρ ὑμᾶς σώσω. ἔπεσθέ μοι οὖν ἀνδρείως.’ οὕτω λέγει καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον.

[ἀνοίγουσι, *open* κλείουσι, *they shut* εἰς πολλὰς ἡμέρας, *for many days* σώσω, *I will save* ἔπεσθέ μοι, *follow me!*]

“ὁ μὲν οὖν Θησεὺς ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ ἔχει τὸ λίνον, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ τὸ ξίφος, καὶ προχωρεῖ εἰς τὸν σκότον. οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται, 10 ἀλλ’ ὅμως ἐπονται· ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη αὐτοὺς ἔχει. μακρὰν οὖν ὁδὸν πορεύονται καὶ πολλάκις μὲν τρέπονται, πολλάκις δὲ ψόφους δεινούς ἀκούουσιν· ὁ γὰρ Μινώταυρος διώκει αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ σκότῳ καὶ μάλα δεινῶς βρυχᾶται. ἔνταῦθα δὲ τὸν τῶν ποδῶν ψόφον ἀκούουσι καὶ τὸ τοῦ θηρίου πνεῦμα ὀσφραίνονται, καὶ ἰδοὺ, ἐν τῇ 15 ὁδῷ πάρεστιν ὁ Μινώταυρος. δεινῶς δὲ βρυχᾶται καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Θησεῖα ὀρμάται.

[τῇ ἀριστερᾷ, *the left hand* τῇ δεξιᾷ, *the right hand* τὸν σκότον, *the darkness* ἡ . . . ἀνάγκη, *necessity* τρέπονται, *they turn* ψόφους, *noises* βρυχᾶται, *roars* τῶν ποδῶν, *of feet* τὸ τοῦ θηρίου πνεῦμα, *the breath of the beast* ὀσφραίνονται, *they smell* ὀρμάται, *rushes*]

“ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται, ἀλλὰ μάλα ἀνδρείως μάχεται· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἀριστερᾷ λαμβάνεται τῆς τοῦ θηρίου κεφαλῆς, τῇ δὲ δεξιᾷ τὸ στῆθος τύπτει. ὁ δὲ Μινώταυρος δεινῶς κλάζει καὶ καταπίπτει πρὸς 20 τὴν γῆν. οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι, ἐπεὶ ὀρώσι τὸ θηρίον ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενον, χαίρουσι καί, ‘ὦ Θησεῦ,’ φασίν, ‘ὡς ἀνδρείος εἶ. ὡς θαυμάζομέν σε καὶ τιμῶμεν. ἀλλὰ νῦν γε σῶζε ἡμᾶς ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου καὶ ἡγοῦ ἡμῖν πρὸς τὰς πύλας. μακρὰ γὰρ ἐστὶν ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ πολὺς ὁ σκότος· τὴν δ’ ὁδὸν ἀγνοοῦμεν.’ 25

[λαμβάνεται . . . τῆς κεφαλῆς, *takes hold of the head* τὸ στῆθος, *its breast* κλάζει, *shrieks* κείμενον, *lying* ἀγνοοῦμεν, *we do not know*]

“ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται, ἀλλὰ τὸ λίνον λαμβάνει—οὕτω γὰρ τὴν ὁδὸν γινώσκει—καὶ ἡγεῖται τοῖς ἐταίροις πρὸς τὰς πύλας. ἐπεὶ δ’ ἀφικνοῦνται, τὸν μόχλον διακόπτουσι καὶ μένουσιν ἐκεῖ· ἔτι γὰρ ἡμέρᾱ ἐστίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ νύξ γίνεται, ἐξέρχονται ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου καὶ σπεύδουσι πρὸς τὴν ναῦν. ἐκεῖ δὲ τὴν Ἀριάδνην αὐτὴν ὀρώσιν· μένει 30 γὰρ πρὸς τὴν νηῖ. ταχέως οὖν εἰσβαίνουσι καὶ ἀποπλέουσι πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας. οὕτως οὖν ὁ Θησεὺς τὸν τε Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνει καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους σῶζει εἰς τὰς Ἀθήνας.”

[τὸν μόχλον, *the bolt* διακόπτουσι, *they cut through* σῶζει εἰς, *brings . . . safely to*]

οὕτω <sup>50</sup>περαίνει τὸν μῦθον ἡ Μυρρίνη, ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “καὶ ἡ Ἀριάδνη;” φησὶν· “ἄρα χαίρει; ἄρα φιλεῖ αὐτὴν ὁ Θησεύς;” ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “οὐδαμῶς· οὐ χαίρει ἡ Ἀριάδνη οὐδὲ φιλεῖ αὐτὴν ὁ Θησεύς.” ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “τί οὐ φιλεῖ αὐτὴν ὁ Θησεύς; τί γίνεται;” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “ἐκείνον τὸν μῦθον οὐκ ἐθέλω σοι λέγειν νῦν γε.”

[περαίνει, ends ἐκείνον, that]

## WORD BUILDING

Describe the relationship between the words in the following sets. From your knowledge of the words at the left, deduce the meaning of those on the right:

1. ὁ δοῦλος ἡ δούλη
2. ὁ φίλος ἡ φίλη
3. ὁ θεός ἡ θεά
4. ὁ ἐταῖρος ἡ ἐταίρᾱ
5. ὁ οἶκος ἡ οἰκία

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Middle Voice: Meaning

Note the following verbs in the middle voice in the reading passage above:

φοβοῦνται, etc. (6, 7, 10, 18, 26) = *they are afraid*, etc.

φοβέω, active voice, transitive = *I put X to flight; I terrify X*

φοβέομαι, middle voice, intransitive = *I am frightened, am afraid*

φοβέομαι, middle voice, transitive + acc. = *I fear, am afraid of X*

τρέπονται (12) = *they turn*

τρέπω, active voice, transitive = *I turn X (direct object)*

τρέπομαι, middle voice, intransitive, reflexive with accusative sense = *I turn myself, I turn*

ὁρμᾶται (17) = *rushes*

ὁρμάω, active voice, transitive = *I set X (direct object) in motion*

This verb may also be intransitive in the active voice:

ὁρμάω, active voice, intransitive = *I start; I rush*

ὁρμάομαι, middle voice, intransitive, reflexive with accusative sense = *I set myself in motion; I start; I rush; I hasten*

λαμβάνεται (19) = *takes hold of*

λαμβάνω, active voice, transitive = *I take X (direct object in accusative case); I take hold of X (direct object in accusative case)*

λαμβάνομαι, middle voice, reflexive with dative sense, object in genitive case = *I take hold of X for myself/in my own interests*

Note also the meanings of the following verbs in active and middle voices:

καθίζω, active voice, transitive = *I make X sit down; I set; I place*

This verb may also be intransitive in the active voice:

καθίζω, active voice, intransitive = *I sit*

καθίζομαι, middle voice, intransitive, reflexive with accusative sense = *I seat myself, sit down*

πείθω, active voice, transitive = *I persuade*

πείθομαι, middle voice, reflexive with accusative sense = *I persuade myself for + dat. (someone or something) = I obey someone or something*

πείθομαι αὐτῷ = *I obey him.*

πείθομαι τοῖς νόμοις = *I obey the laws.*

### Exercise 6i

Read aloud and translate the following sentences containing verbs with middle voice forms. Identify deponent verbs, and identify the non-deponent verbs that are used here in the middle voice:

1. οἶκαδε βαδίζειν βουλόμεθα.
2. οἱ νεᾶνῖαι καὶ αἱ παρθέναι ἐν τῷ λαβυρίνθῳ μέγα φοβοῦνται.
3. ἄργος γίγναι, ὦ δοῦλε.
4. εἰς τὴν Κρήτην ἀφικνούμεθα.
5. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς δέχεται.
6. ὁ κύων ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον ὁρμᾶται.
7. αἱ γυναῖκες πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ καθίζονται.
8. ὁ Θησεὺς τοῦ ξίφους λαμβάνεται.
9. ἄρ' οὐκ ἐθέλεις τῷ πατρὶ πείθεσθαι;
10. μὴ φοβεῖσθε τὸν λύκον, ὦ παῖδες.

## 6. Some Uses of the Dative Case

- The *indirect object* of verbs of giving, showing, and telling is in the dative case, e.g., οὕτω γὰρ τῷ Μινωταύρῳ σίτον παρέχουσιν = *In this way they supply food to the Minotaur* or *In this way they supply the Minotaur with food*. Here the word σίτον is the direct object of the verb παρέχουσιν, and the words τῷ Μινωταύρῳ are the indirect object.
- The dative case may be used with linking verbs, such as ἐστί(ν) and γίγνεται, to indicate the person who *possesses* something, e.g., ἔστιν αὐτῷ παῖς τις ὀνόματι Θησεύς, lit., *there is for him a child*. . . . = *he has a child*. . . . This is called the *dative of the possessor*.
- The Greek sentence in b above shows another use of the dative case, the *dative of respect*: ὀνόματι Θησεύς, lit., *Theseus with respect to his name* = *called Theseus*. ὁ Μινώταυρος δεινός ἐστιν ὅψει καὶ φωνῇ = *The Minotaur is terrible with respect to/in appearance and voice*.
- The dative case may be used to indicate the *means* or *instrument* by which an action is carried out, e.g., τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἀριστερᾷ λαμβάνεται τῆς τοῦ θηρίου κεφαλῆς, τῇ δὲ δεξιᾷ τὸ στήθος τύπτει = *with his left hand he takes hold of the head of the beast, and with his right hand he strikes its chest*.
- The dative case may be used to indicate the *time when* an action takes place, e.g., τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ = *on the next day*. Note that the Greek does not use a preposition here.
- The dative case is used after certain prepositions, especially those that indicate the *place where* someone or something is or something happens, e.g., ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ and πρὸς τῇ νηϊ.
- The dative case is used with *certain verbs*, e.g.: οἱ βόες τῷ ἀγρῷ προσχωροῦσιν = *the oxen approach the field*.

Your English translation will use a direct object in the accusative case, e.g., ὁ Αἰγεὺς πείθεται αὐτῷ = *Aegeus obeys him*; ἔπεσθέ μοι ἀνδρείως = *follow me bravely*; and ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον = *he leads them into the labyrinth*.

Verbs that take the dative case:

ἕπομαι, *I follow*

βοηθέω, *I come to (someone's) aid*

ἡγέομαι, *I lead*

πείθομαι, *I obey*

προσχωρέω, *I go toward, approach*

συλλαμβάνω, *I help*

## Exercise 6κ

Locate at least twenty words or phrases in the dative case in reading passages α and β and identify each use of the dative case.

## Exercise 6λ

Read aloud, translate, and identify each use of the dative case:

- ὁ ἀνὴρ ὑμῖν οὐ πείθεται. DC-g
- πείθεσθέ μοι, ὦ παῖδες. DC-g
- πάρεχέ μοι τὸ ἄροτρον. DC-a
- τὸν μῦθον τῷ παιδί λέγω. DC-a
- ἔστι τῷ αὐτουργῷ ἄροτρον. DC-g
- ὁ αὐτουργός, Δικαιοπόλις ὀνόματι, τοῖς βουσί εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἡγεῖται. DC-g
- ὁ παῖς τὸν λύκον λίθοις βάλλει (pelts). DC-a
- ἡ γυνὴ τῷ ἀνδρὶ πολὺν σίτον παρέχει. DC-a
- ὁ δεσπότης τοὺς δούλους τοσαύτη βοή καλεῖ ὥστε φοβοῦνται. DC-a
- ἔστι τῷ παιδί καλὸς κύων. DC-g

## 7. Prepositions

While, as seen above, prepositions that take the dative case usually refer to the *place where* someone or something is or *where* some action takes place, prepositions that take the genitive often express ideas of *place from which*, and prepositions that take the accusative often express ideas of *place to which*. Observe the following examples that have been given in the vocabulary lists so far:

With genitive: ἀπό, *from*; ἐκ/ἐξ, *out of*; μετά, *with* (with this last example there is no sense of motion from a place)

With dative: ἐν, *in*; ἐπὶ, *upon, on*; πρὸς, *at, near, by*; ὑπό, *under*

With accusative: ἀνά, *up*; εἰς, *into*; εἰς, *to*; ἐπί, *at*; ἀντί, *against*; κατά, *down*; μετά, *after*; πρὸς, *to, toward*; ὑπό, *under*

## Exercise 6μ

Write out the following sentences, putting the nouns in the correct case, and then translate the sentences:

- πρὸς (ὁ ἀγρός) ἐρχόμεθα. πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἐρχόμεθα
- πρὸς (ἡ ὁδός) καθίζουσιν. πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ καθίζουσιν
- ἐκ (ἡ οἰκία) σπεύδει. ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας σπεύδει
- ἀπὸ (ἡ νῆσος) πλέουσιν. ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου πλέουσιν
- κατὰ (ἡ ὁδός) πορεύονται. κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν πορεύονται
- μετὰ (οἱ ἐταῖροι) φεύγει. μετὰ τοὺς ἐταῖρους φεύγει
- ἐν (ὁ λαβύρινθος) μένετε. ἐν τῷ λαβύρινθῳ μένετε

8. ἡγεῖσθε ἡμῖν πρὸς (ἡ κρήνη). τὴν κρήνην.  
 9. οἱ παῖδες τρέχουσιν ἀνὰ (ἡ ὁδός). τὴν ὁδόν.  
 10. αἱ παρθένοι καθίζονται ὑπὸ (τὸ δένδρον). τὸ δένδρον.  
 11. ὁ κύων ὀρμάται ἐπὶ (ὁ λύκος). τὸν λύκον.  
 12. οἱ ἐταῖροι εἰς (ὁ λαβύρινθος) εἰσέρχονται. τὸν λαβύρινθον.

## Exercise 6v

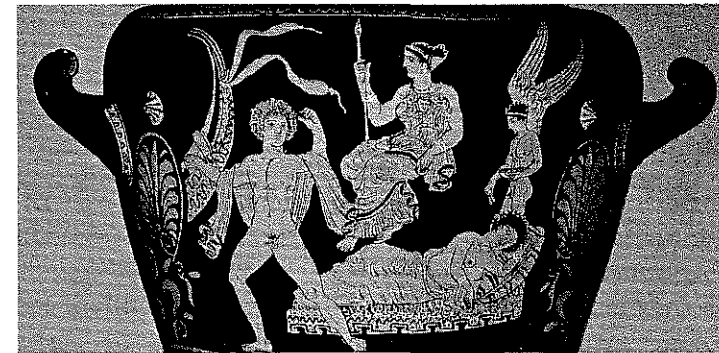
Translate into Greek:

1. Aren't you willing to obey me, boy? (Use ἄρα.)
2. Tell me the story.
3. I hand the plow over to you.
4. The farmer has a big ox. (Use dative of the possessor; see Exercise 6λ, no. 5, for placement and accent of the verb.)
5. The young man (ὁ νεανίας), called Theseus, leads his comrades bravely.
6. The boy strikes (use βάλλω) the wolf with a stone.
7. The girl hands over food to her friend.
8. The slave strikes the oxen with a goad (use τὸ κέντρον).
9. The girl approaches the gates.
10. On the next day the Athenians flee out of the labyrinth.

## Exercise 6ξ

Translate the following pairs of sentences:

1. ὁ Θησεὺς βούλεται τοὺς ἐταίρους σφῆζειν.  
Aegeus is very afraid but obeys him.
2. οἱ μὲν Ἀθηναῖοι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν νῆσον, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς δέχεται αὐτούς.  
The comrades are especially frightened, but Theseus leads them bravely.
3. μὴ μάχεσθε, ὦ φίλοι, μηδὲ (and don't) βοᾶτε ἀλλὰ σιγᾶτε (be quiet).  
Don't fear the Minotaur, friends, but be brave!
4. ἐπεὶ νύξ γίνεται, ἡ παρθένος ἔρχεται πρὸς τὰς πόλᾱς.  
When day comes (becomes), the ship arrives at the island.
5. ἐπεὶ ὁ Θησεὺς ἀποκτείνει τὸν Μινώταυρον, ἐπόμεθα αὐτῷ ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου.  
When we are journeying to Crete, we see many islands.



Theseus deserts Ariadne.

## Ο ΘΗΣΕΥΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΡΙΑΔΗΝΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΛΕΙΠΕΙ

Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:

οὕτως οὖν ὁ Θησεὺς τοὺς ἐταίρους σφῆζει καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Κρήτης ἀποφεύγει. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν πρὸς νῆσόν τινα, Νάξον ὀνόματι, πλέουσιν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφικνοῦνται, ἐκβαίνουσιν ἐκ τῆς νεῶς καὶ ἀναπαύονται. ἐπεὶ δὲ νύξ γίνεται, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι καθεύδουσιν· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Θησεὺς οὐ καθεύδει ἀλλὰ ἥσυχος μένει· οὐ γὰρ φιλεῖ τὴν Ἀριάδνην οὐδὲ βούλεται φέρειν αὐτὴν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας. δι' ὀλίγου οὖν, ἐπεὶ καθεύδει ἡ Ἀριάδνη, ὁ Θησεὺς ἐγείρει τοὺς ἐταίρους καί, “σιγᾶτε, ὦ φίλοι,” φησὶν· “καιρὸς ἐστὶν ἀποπλεῖν. σπεύδετε οὖν πρὸς τὴν ναῦν.” ἐπεὶ οὖν εἰς τὴν ναῦν ἀφικνοῦνται, ταχέως λήουσιν τὰ πείσματα καὶ ἀποπλέουσιν· τὴν δ' Ἀριάδνην λείπουσιν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.

[τινα, a certain Νάξον, Naxos (an island in the middle of the Aegean Sea, north of Crete) ἀναπαύονται, they rest ἥσυχος, quiet(ly) ἐγείρει, wakes up τὰ πείσματα, the cables]

1. Where do Theseus and his comrades sail first?
2. What do they do first when they arrive there?
3. Why does Theseus not sleep?
4. What does Theseus say to his men when he awakens them?

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρᾱ γίνεται, ἀνεγείρεται ἡ Ἀριάδνη καὶ ὁρᾷ ὅτι οὔτε ὁ Θησεὺς οὔτε οἱ ἐταῖροι πάρεσιν. τρέχει οὖν πρὸς τὸν αἰγιαλὸν καὶ βλέπει πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν· τὴν δὲ ναῦν οὐχ ὁρᾷ. μάλα οὖν φοβεῖται καὶ βοᾷ· “ὦ Θησεῦ, ποῦ εἶ; ἄρά με καταλείπεις; ἐπάνελθε καὶ σφῆξέ με.”

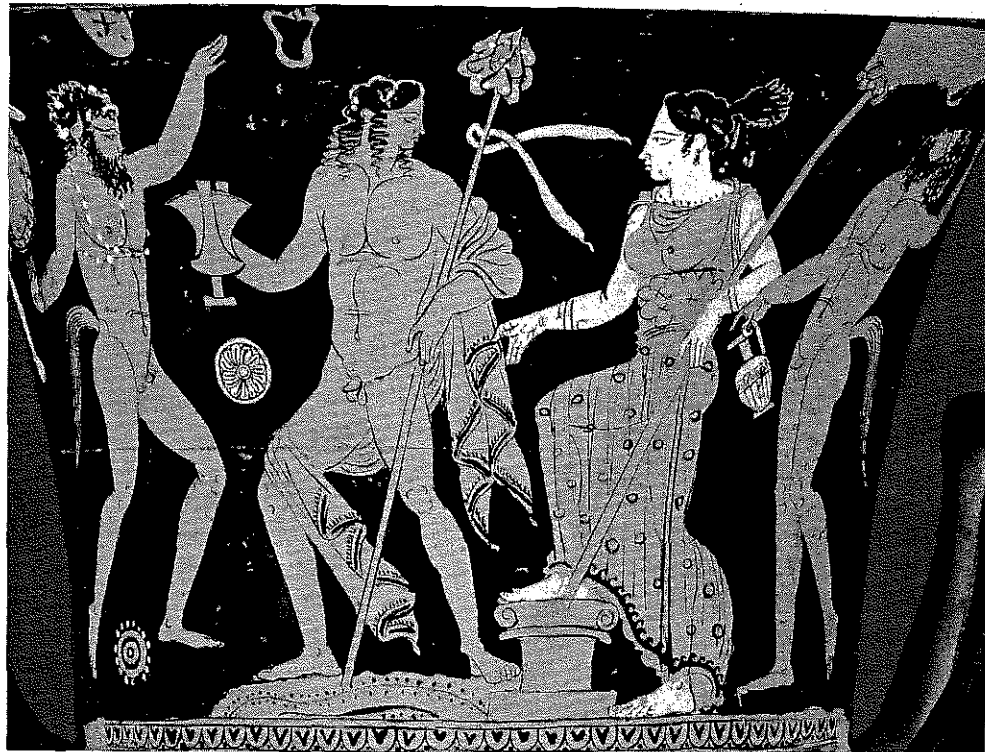
[ἀνεγείρεται, wakes up τὸν αἰγιαλὸν, the shore τὴν θάλατταν, the sea ἐπά-νελθε, come back!]

5. What does Ariadne see when she wakes up?
6. What does she shout?

### Exercise 60

Translate into Greek:

1. While (ἐν ᾧ) Ariadne is calling, the god (ὁ θεός) Dionysus (ὁ Διόνυσος) looks from heaven (use ὁ οὐρανός) toward earth; then he sees Ariadne and loves her.
2. So he flies (πέτεται) from heaven to earth. And when he arrives at the island, he approaches her and says, "Ariadne, don't be afraid. For I, Dionysus, am here. I love you and want to save you. Come with me to heaven."
3. So Ariadne rejoices and goes to him.
4. Then Dionysus carries her up (ἀναφέρει) to heaven; and Ariadne becomes a goddess (θεά) and stays forever (εἰσαί) in heaven.



Dionysus rescues Ariadne.

## Classical Greek

### Marriage

The following lines in praise of marriage are attributed to Hipponax (fragment 182), a sixth century B.C. writer of iambic verse, but are probably from a writer of New Comedy:

γάμος κράτιστός ἐστιν ἀνδρὶ σώφρονι  
 τρόπον γυναικὸς χρηστὸν ἔδνον λαμβάνειν·  
 αὕτη γὰρ ἢ προῖξ οἰκίαν σφάζει μόνη. . . .  
 συνεργὸν οὗτος ἀντὶ δεσποίνης ἔχει  
 εὖνουν, βεβαίαν εἰς ἅπαντα τὸν βίον.

[γάμος, marriage κράτιστος, best (translate, The best marriage . . . is to take. . . )  
 ἀνδρὶ σώφρονι, for the prudent man τρόπον γυναικὸς χρηστὸν, the good character of a woman ἔδνον, (as) a wedding gift αὕτη . . . ἢ προῖξ, this dowry  
 μόνη, alone συνεργὸν, helpmate οὗτος, this man ἀντὶ δεσποίνης, instead of a tyrant εὖνουν, well-disposed βεβαίαν, reliable εἰς ἅπαντα τὸν βίον, for all his life]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 13.10–16

We begin with an English translation of the first verses of the passage:

Jesus was teaching in a synagogue on the sabbath and cured a woman who had been bowed by an infirmity for eighteen years. He laid his hands on her and said, "Woman, you are freed from your infirmity," and immediately she stood up straight. But the ruler of the synagogue, objecting because Jesus had cured her on the sabbath day, said to the crowd:

"Ἐξ ἡμέραι εἰσὶν ἐν αἷς δεῖ ἐργάζεσθαι· ἐν αὐταῖς οὖν ἐρχόμενοι θεραπεύεσθε καὶ μὴ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦ σαββάτου." ἀπεκρίθη δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ κύριος καὶ εἶπεν, "ὑποκρίται, ἕκαστος ὑμῶν τῷ σαββάτῳ οὐ λύει τὸν βοῦν αὐτοῦ ἢ τὸν ὄνον ἀπὸ τῆς φάτνης καὶ ἀπαγαγὼν ποτίζει;"

[Ἐξ, six ἐν αἷς, in which δεῖ ἐργάζεσθαι, (we) should work ἐρχόμενοι, going θεραπεύεσθε, work your cures ἀπεκρίθη, answered ὁ κύριος, the Lord εἶπεν, said ὑποκρίται, hypocrites ἕκαστος, each ἢ, or τὸν ὄνον, his ass τῆς φάτνης, the stall ἀπαγαγὼν, having led (it) away ποτίζει, give (it) water]

Jesus concludes: "And this woman, a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan bound for eighteen years, should she not have been freed from this bond on the sabbath day?"

ἄντρον ἀφικνοῦνται, οὐδένα ἄνθρωπον εὐρίσκουσιν ἔνδον. οἱ οὖν  
 ἑταῖροι, ὃ 'Οδυσσεῦ,' φᾶσιν, 'οὐδεὶς ἄνθρωπός ἐστιν ἔνδον. ἔλαυνε  
 οὖν τά τε πρόβατα καὶ τὰς αἴγας πρὸς τὴν ναῦν καὶ ἀπόπλει ὡς  
 τάχιστα.'

[ἄντρον, *cave* δώδεκα, *twelve* ἐαυτῷ ἔπεσθαι, *to follow him* ἔνδον, *inside*  
 ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*]

“ὁ δ' 'Οδυσσεὺς οὐκ ἐθέλει τοῦτο ποιεῖν· βούλεται γὰρ γινώσκειν  
 τίς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ. οἱ δὲ ἑταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται· ὅμως δὲ τῷ  
 'Οδυσσεὶ πείθονται καὶ μένουσιν ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ.”

[τοῦτο, *this* ὅμως, *nevertheless*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings  
 of the English words:

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. myth                         | 5. monotheist (what does <i>μόνος</i> mean?) |
| 2. mythology                    | 6. atheist (what does <i>ἀ-</i> mean?)       |
| 3. polytheist                   | 7. theology                                  |
| (what does <i>ὁ θεός</i> mean?) |  |
| 4. pantheist                    |  |
| (what does <i>πάν</i> mean?)    |  |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Substantive Use of Adjectives

Adjectives, especially in the plural, are often used as substantives,  
 thus functioning as nouns, and can be translated by supplying words such  
 as “men,” “women,” or “things,” depending on the gender of the adjective,  
 e.g.:

ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πολλοὺς ὁρῶμεν.  
*We see many (men) on the road.*

πρὸς τὴν κρήνην πολλαὶ ὑδρίαις φέρουσιν.  
*Many (women) are carrying water jars to the spring.*

ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πολλὰ καὶ δεινὰ πάσχουσιν.  
*On the journey they suffer many terrible (things).*

Note also that Greek uses the conjunction καί here, while English does not  
 use a connective.

## 2. Nouns: Declensions

As you have seen, Greek nouns are divided into three large groups or  
*declensions*. You have already studied nouns of the *1st* or *alpha declen-*  
*sion* (e.g., ἡ κρήνη, ἡ ὑδρία, ἡ μέλιττα, ἡ μάχαιρα, ὁ δεσπότης, ὁ Ξανθίας, and ὁ  
 νεανίας) and of the *2nd* or *omicron declension* (e.g., ὁ ἀγρός and τὸ  
 δένδρον). Nouns of the 1st declension are feminine, except for those whose  
 nominatives end in -ης or -ας, such as ὁ δεσπότης, ὁ Ξανθίας, and ὁ νεανίας;  
 most nouns of the 2nd declension are masculine (e.g., ὁ ἀγρός), a few are  
 feminine (e.g., ἡ ὁδός, ἡ νῆσος, and ἡ παρθένος), and some are neuter (e.g.,  
 τὸ δένδρον).

The *3rd declension* has many nouns of all three genders, and it is not  
 easy to predict the gender from the ending of the nominative singular, as  
 it is with 1st and 2nd declension nouns. Some 3rd declension nouns can  
 be either masculine or feminine, such as ὁ or ἡ παῖς, *boy; girl; son;*  
*daughter; child*.

The stems of 3rd declension nouns end in a consonant or in vowels or  
 diphthongs. Nouns of the 3rd declension can be recognized by the ending  
 -ος or -ως in the genitive singular, e.g., παῖς, genitive, παιδός and πόλις,  
 genitive, πόλεως. By removing the genitive singular ending, you find  
 the stem, e.g., παιδ-.

To help you identify the declension to which a noun belongs and to  
 help you determine the stem of 3rd declension nouns, we will henceforth  
 list nouns in the vocabulary lists with their nominative and genitive  
 forms, as follows:

### 1st Declension: (stems in -ᾱ or -α)

ἡ κρήνη, τῆς κρήνης, *spring*  
 ἡ ὑδρία, τῆς ὑδρίας, *water jar*  
 ἡ μέλιττα, τῆς μελίττης, *bee*  
 ἡ μάχαιρα, τῆς μαχαίρας, *knife*  
 ὁ δεσπότης, τοῦ δεσπότης, *master*  
 ὁ νεανίας, τοῦ νεανίου, *young man*

### 2nd Declension: (stems in -ο)

ὁ ἀγρός, τοῦ ἀγροῦ, *field*  
 ἡ ὁδός, τῆς ὁδοῦ, *road; way; journey*  
 τὸ δένδρον, τοῦ δένδρου, *tree*

### 3rd Declension:

ὁ or ἡ παῖς, τοῦ or τῆς παιδός, *boy; girl; son;*  
*daughter; child*  
 ἡ πόλις, τῆς πόλεως, *city*

## 3. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Velar and Dental Stems

The stems of many 3rd declension nouns end in consonants. You  
 find the stem by dropping the -ος ending from the genitive singular. The  
 3rd declension endings shown in the chart of forms below are then added  
 to the stem.

## a. Stems ending in a velar (γ, κ, χ)

ὁ φύλαξ, τοῦ φύλακ-ος, *guard*Cf. φυλάττω, *I guard*Stem: φυλακ-, *guard*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ φύλακ-ς > φύλαξ	οἱ φύλακ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ φύλακ-ος	τῶν φυλάκ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ φύλακ-ι	τοῖς φύλακ-σι(ν) > φύλαξι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν φύλακ-α	τοὺς φύλακ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ φύλακ-ς > φύλαξ	ὦ φύλακ-ες

Note that the vocatives are the same as the nominatives. Note that in the nominative and vocative singular and the dative plural the κ of the stem and the ζ/σ of the ending produce the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ (see page xv). And note that, as is the case with most nouns, the accent is persistent; in the genitive plural the accent cannot stand on the third syllable from the end because the final syllable is long (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32).

ὁ or ἡ αἴξ, τοῦ or τῆς αἰγ-ός, *goat*Stem: αἰγ-, *goat*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ αἴγ-ς > αἴξ	οἱ αἴγ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ αἰγ-ός	τῶν αἰγ-ῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ αἰγ-ί	τοῖς αἰγ-σί(ν) > αἰξί(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν αἰγ-α	τοὺς αἰγ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ αἴγ-ς > αἴξ	ὦ αἴγ-ες

Note that monosyllabic nouns of the 3rd declension usually have an accent on the final syllable of the genitive and dative cases, singular and plural. Note that the vocatives are the same as the nominatives. Note that in the nominative and vocative singular and the dative plural the γ and ζ/σ produce the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ. And note the circumflex accent over the diphthong of the stem when it is accented and followed by a short syllable (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32).

PRACTICE: Write the complete set of the forms of ὁ ὄνυξ, τοῦ ὄνυχ-ος, *claw; nail* (note that χ and ζ/σ produce the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ).

## b. Stems ending in a dental (δ, θ, τ)

ὁ or ἡ παῖς, τοῦ or τῆς παιδ-ός, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child*Stem: παιδ-, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ παιδ-ς > παῖς	οἱ παιδ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ παιδ-ός	τῶν παιδ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ παιδ-ί	τοῖς παιδ-σί(ν) > παισί(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν παιδ-α	τοὺς παιδ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ παιδ > παῖ	ὦ παιδ-ες

Remember that all dental stops are lost before σ (see page xv); thus in the nominative singular and the dative plural of παῖς the δ is lost before the σ of the endings. The vocative singular is the stem without the -δ (all stop consonants are lost in word-final position; the only consonants with which Greek words can end are ν, ρ, ζ, or one of the double consonants ξ and ψ). Note that while monosyllabic nouns of the 3rd declension usually have an accent on the final syllable of the genitive and dative cases, singular and plural (see ὁ αἴξ on the opposite page), in this word the accent of the genitive plural is persistent and remains on the first syllable.

PRACTICE: Write the complete set of the forms of ἡ ἐλπίς, τῆς ἐλπίδος, *hope*.

The following is an example of a *neuter* dental-stem noun of the 3rd declension. Note the ways in which it is similar to and different from the masculine/feminine nouns above:

τὸ ὄνομα, τοῦ ὀνόματ-ος, *name*Stem: ὀνοματ-, *name*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	τὸ ὄνοματ > ὄνομα	τὰ ὀνόματ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ ὀνόματ-ος	τῶν ὀνομάτ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ ὀνόματ-ι	τοῖς ὀνόματ-σι(ν) > ὀνόμασι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸ ὄνοματ > ὄνομα	τὰ ὀνόματ-α
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ ὄνοματ > ὄνομα	ὦ ὀνόματ-α

Remember that in neuter nouns the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular forms are identical, as are the corresponding plural forms, which end in ᾱ as do 2nd declension neuters. Third declension neuter nouns do not add ζ to the stem in the nominative singular as do masculine and feminine velar and dental stem nouns. Instead, the τ of the stem is lost (see above), as it also is before the σ of the dative plural ending. The vocative singular is the stem without the -τ (cf. ὦ παῖ).

## Exercise 7α

Locate the following 3rd declension nouns in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter. Identify the case and number of each, and explain why that particular case is being used:

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. ἀνδρός      | 4. χειμῶνας |
| 2. ὀνόματι     | 5. αἰγῶν    |
| 3. Ἀγαμέμνωνος | 6. αἰγας    |

## Exercise 7β

The following 3rd declension nouns have been given in the vocabulary lists in Chapters 2–7, in the following order. Declensions of the nouns marked with asterisks have been given above; declensions of other types of 3rd declension nouns will be given in subsequent grammar sections. Give the meaning of each of the following:

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ὁ βοῦς, τοῦ βοός                  | ὁ βασιλεύς, τοῦ βασιλέως     |
| ὁ οἶς ἡ παῖς, τοῦ οἶς τῆς παιδός* | ἡ ναῦς, τῆς νεώς             |
| ὁ πατήρ, τοῦ πατρός               | ἡ νύξ, τῆς νυκτός            |
| ὁ ἀνὴρ, τοῦ ἀνδρός                | ὁ Αἰγέυς, τοῦ Αἰγέως         |
| ἡ γυνή, τῆς γυναικός              | ὁ Θησεύς, τοῦ Θησέως         |
| ἡ θυγάτηρ, τῆς θυγατρός           | τὸ ὄνομα, τοῦ ὀνόματος*      |
| ἡ μήτηρ, τῆς μητρός               | ἡ πόλις, τῆς πόλεως          |
| ὁ οἶς ἡ κύων, τοῦ οἶς τῆς κυνός   | ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων, τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνωνος |
| τὸ ὄρος, τοῦ ὄρους (< ὄρε-ος)     | ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς, τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως     |

Using the information supplied in the charts and lists above, give the definite article to accompany each of the following 3rd declension nouns:

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. κυνί (2 ways) | 11. νύκτα             |
| 2. πατράσι(v)    | 12. θυγατρί           |
| 3. ἄνδρα         | 13. πόλεσι(v)         |
| 4. Ὀδυσσεῖ       | 14. ἄνδρας            |
| 5. ὀνόματα       | 15. βόες              |
| 6. μητέρες       | 16. ναυσί(v)          |
| 7. θυγατράσι(v)  | 17. Ἀγαμέμνονι        |
| 8. γυναικας      | 18. κύνα (2 ways)     |
| 9. ἀνδρῶν        | 19. γυναιξί(v)        |
| 10. νυκτί        | 20. παισι(i) (2 ways) |

## 4. Reflexive Pronouns

In Chapter 4 Myrrhine says to Dicaeopolis ἔπαιρε σεαυτόν, ὦ ἄνερ = Lift yourself, husband! or Get up, husband! Later ὁ Δικαιοπόλις μόλις ἐπαίρει ἑαυτόν, Dicaeopolis reluctantly lifts himself (= gets up). The

pronouns σεαυτόν, yourself, and ἑαυτόν, himself, are called reflexive since they are used to refer to or reflect the subject of the verb. Usually in English we use a word ending in -self to translate reflexive pronouns, but note the following example in lines 21–22 of the first story in this chapter: δώδεκα οὖν τῶν ἐταίρων κελεύει ἑαυτῷ ἔπεσθαι, and so he orders twelve of his companions to follow him.

Reflexive pronouns combine elements of the personal pronouns (see Chapter 5, Grammar 6, page 65) with the intensive adjective αὐτός (see Chapter 5, Grammar 9, page 68), thus σε, you + αὐτόν, self > σεαυτόν, yourself.

In the 1st and 2nd persons, the reflexive pronouns have masculine and feminine forms only; in the 3rd person there are neuter forms as well. There are no nominatives.

1st Person		2nd Person	
Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
G. ἑμαυτοῦ	ἑμαυτῆς	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
D. ἑμαυτῷ	ἑμαυτῇ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
A. ἑμαυτόν	ἑμαυτήν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
G. ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
D. ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
A. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς
3rd Person			
Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
G. ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ	
D. ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ	
A. ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό	
G. ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	
D. ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	
A. ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά	

Translate each of the forms above, e.g., ἑμαυτοῦ, of myself, ἑμαυτῷ, to/for myself, ἑμαυτόν, myself.

## Exercise 7γ

Read aloud and translate the following sentences:

- ἐγὼ ἑμαυτόν ἐπαίρω. τί σὺ σεαυτόν οὐκ ἐπαίρεις;
- ἡ παῖς ἑαυτήν ἐπαίρει.
- ἑαυτόν ἐπαίρει.
- ἡμᾶς αὐτούς ἐπαίρομεν.

5. σεαυτὴν ἐν τῷ κατόπτρῳ (*mirror*) ὀρᾷς.
6. ἄρα ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ κατόπτρῳ ὀρᾷτε;

### Exercise 7δ

Read aloud and translate (fill in appropriate reflexive pronouns where missing):

1. ὁ παῖς ἑαυτὸν ἐπαίρει καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἄγρὸν σπεύδει.
2. οἱ παῖδες \_\_\_\_\_ ἐπαίρουσι καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἄγρὸν σπεύδουσιν.
3. ἐπαίρει σεαυτὴν, ὃ γύναι, καὶ ἔλθῃ δεῦρο.
4. ἐπαίρετε \_\_\_\_\_, ὃ γυναῖκες, καὶ ἔλθετε δεῦρο.
5. οὐκ ἐθέλω ἑμαυτὴν ἐπαίρειν· μάλα γὰρ κάμνω (*I am tired*).
6. οὐκ ἐθέλομεν \_\_\_\_\_ ἐπαίρειν· μάλα γὰρ κάμνομεν.
7. τίνι (*to whom*) λέγει ἡ παρθένος τὸν μῦθον; ἄρ' ἑαυτῇ λέγει;
8. ὁ πατήρ τὴν θυγατέρα μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καθίζει (*makes . . . sit down*).
9. οἱ πατέρες τὰς θυγατέρας μεθ' \_\_\_\_\_ καθίζουσιν.
10. ὁ παῖς τὸν τοῦ πατρὸς κύνα ὀρᾷ ἄλλ' οὐχ ὀρᾷ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ.
11. μὴ εἴσιτε εἰς τὸ ἄντρον, ὃ φίλοι· αὐτοὶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς εἰς μέγιστον κίνδυνον ἄγετε.
12. βοήθει ἡμῖν, ὃ Ὀδυσσεύ· οὐ γὰρ δυνάμεθα (*we are able*) ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς σφῆξιν.

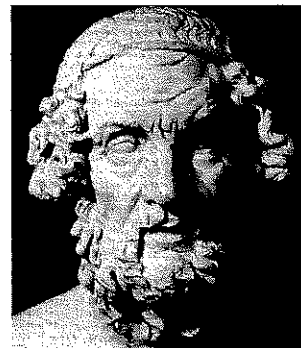
## Homer

The earliest poems in Western literature (and according to some, the greatest) are the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*. These are epics, that is to say, long narrative poems; each of the poems contains twenty-four books, the books varying in length from 450 to 900 lines. They tell stories about the age of the heroes, and both center upon the Trojan War.

The *Iliad* tells the story of the wrath of Achilles, the greatest of the Greek heroes who fought at Troy.

After besieging Troy for nine years, Achilles and Agamemnon, leader of the Greek host, quarrel at an assembly of the army. Agamemnon takes away Achilles' prize, a captive girl whom he loves. Thus insulted, Achilles refuses to fight any longer and stays by his ships, with disastrous consequences for both himself and the rest of the Greeks.

Without his help the Greeks suffer heavy losses and are driven back to their ships. Achilles still refuses to fight but is at last persuaded to allow his closest friend, Patroclus, to lead his men into battle. Only when Patroclus



Homer

has been killed by Hector, the greatest of the Trojan heroes, does Achilles turn his anger from Agamemnon and fight against the Trojans. To avenge the death of Patroclus, he leads his men into battle, causing terrible carnage. He sweeps the Trojans back into the city and kills Hector in single combat before the walls of Troy, even knowing that with Hector's death his own death is imminent. He then ties the corpse of Hector behind his chariot and drags it in front of the walls of Troy before the eyes of Hector's father, Priam, and his mother and wife.

Achilles' anger does not cease until the aged Priam, alone and at night, makes his way through the Greek camp to Achilles' tent and begs him to return the body of Hector for burial. Achilles, overcome by pity for the old man, consents and allows a truce for his burial.

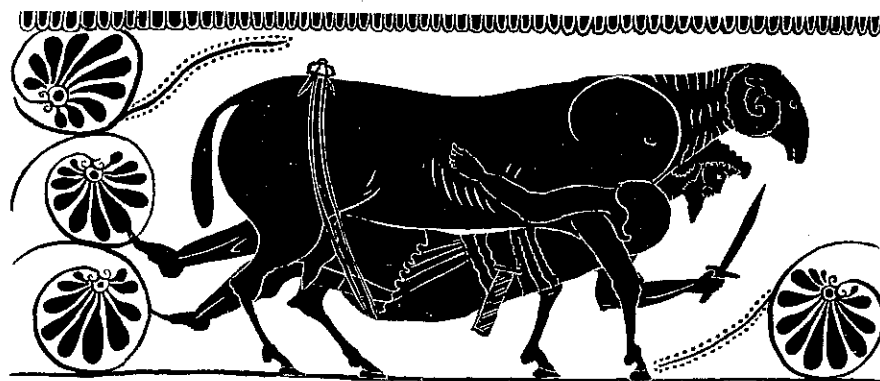
The *Odyssey* tells the story of the return of Odysseus from Troy to his home in Ithaca. The plot is more complex than that of the *Iliad*. It starts in Ithaca, where Penelope, Odysseus's wife, has been waiting for twenty years for her husband's return (Odysseus was fighting before Troy for ten years and spent another ten on the journey home). She is beset by suitors who are competing for her hand and the kingdom. Her son, Telemachus, sets out to look for his father, who, he believes, is still alive.

Odysseus, meanwhile, is held captive by a nymph, Calypso, on a far-off island. She is at last persuaded by the gods to let him go and helps him build a raft. He sails off, only to be wrecked on the island of Phaeacia. Here the king receives him kindly, and at a banquet given in his honor Odysseus recounts the adventures he has undergone since he left Troy. The Phaeacians load him with gifts and take him home to Ithaca, where they leave him sleeping on the shore. The second half of the *Odyssey* tells how he returned to his palace disguised as a beggar and with the help of Telemachus and a faithful servant slew the suitors and was reunited with Penelope.

The Greeks attributed both of these great poems to Homer. Scholars have shown that the poems are in fact the culmination of a long tradition of oral poetry, that is of poetry composed without the aid of writing. The tradition probably originated in the Bronze Age, and in every succeeding generation poets retold and embroidered the stories about the heroes. Finally, Homer composed these two great poems, which are on a far larger scale than oral poetry usually is, in an age when writing had just been reintroduced to Greece.

The internal evidence of the *Iliad* suggests that it was composed between 750 and 700 B.C. in Ionia. Modern scholars are not agreed on whether the *Odyssey* was composed by the same poet; there are considerable differences in style and tone between the two poems. Both poems show characteristics of oral poetry that make them very different from literary poetry. They were composed to be recited or sung aloud to the accompaniment of the lyre. The stories themselves, the recurrent themes, and a large proportion of the actual lines are traditional, but the structure of the poems, the clear and consistent characterization of the leading figures, and the atmosphere of each poem, tragic in the *Iliad*, romantic in the *Odyssey*, are the creation of a single poet.

## Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (β)



ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου τοῦ Κύκλωπος ἐκφεύγει.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἀποκρίνομαι, *I answer*  
 βάλλω, *I throw; I put; I pelt; I hit, strike*  
 μέλλω + infin., *I am about (to); I am destined (to); I intend (to)*  
 ὀρμάω, active, transitive, *I set X in motion; active, intransitive, I start; I rush; middle, intransitive, I set myself in motion; I start; I rush; I hasten*  
 παύω, active, transitive, *I stop X; middle, intransitive, I stop doing X; + gen., I cease from*  
 παῦε, *stop!*

## Nouns

ὁ ξένος, τοῦ ξένου, *foreigner; stranger*  
 ὁ οἶνος, τοῦ οἴνου, *wine*  
 ὁ ὀφθαλμός, τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ, *eye*  
 τὸ πῦρ, τοῦ πυρός, *fire*  
 ὁ χειμῶν, τοῦ χειμῶνος, *storm; winter*

## Adjectives

δύο, *two*  
 εἷς, μία, ἓν (acc. sing. masc., *ένα*), *one*  
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (nom. pl. masc., *πάντες*; gen. pl., *πάντων*; acc. pl. masc. *πάντας*; nom. and acc. pl. neuter, *πάντα*), *all; every; whole*  
 σῶφρων, σῶφρον, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled*

## Adverbs

ἐνθάδε, *here; hither; there; thither*  
 πόθεν; *from where? whence?*  
 πῶς; *how?*

## Proper Names

ὁ Κύκλωψ, τοῦ Κύκλωπος, *Cyclops (one-eyed monster)*

“δι’ ὀλίγου δὲ ψόφον μέγιστον ἀκούουσιν, καὶ εἰσέρχεται γίγας φοβερός· εἷς γὰρ ὀφθαλμός ἐν μέσῳ τῷ μετώπῳ ἔνεστιν. ὃ τ’ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται καὶ εἰς τὸν τοῦ ἄντρου

μυχὸν φεύγουσιν. ὁ δὲ γίγας πρῶτον μὲν τὰ πρόβατα καὶ τὰς αἴγας εἰς τὸ ἄντρον εἰσελαύνει, ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα ἔνδον ἐστίν, λίθον μέγιστον αἶρει καὶ εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἄντρου εἴσοδον βάλλει. (ἐνταῦθα δὴ) πρῶτον μὲν τὰς αἴγας ἀμέλγει, ἔπειτα δὲ πῦρ κᾶει. οὕτω δὴ τὸν τ’ Ὀδυσσεῆα καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους ὀρᾷ καί, ‘ὦ ξένοι,’ βοᾷ, ‘τίνες ἐστέ καὶ πόθεν πλεῖτε;’

[ψόφον, *noise* γίγας *φοβερός, a terrifying giant* μέσῳ τῷ μετώπῳ, *the middle of his forehead* τὸν τοῦ ἄντρου μυχὸν, *the far corner of the cave* τὴν ... εἴσοδον, *the entrance* ἀμέλγει, *milks* κᾶει, *lights*]

“ὁ δ’ Ὀδυσσεύς, ‘ἡμεῖς Ἀχαιοὶ ἐσμεν,’ φησὶν, ‘καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Τροίᾳς οἴκαδε πλέομεν. χειμῶν δὲ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἐλαύνει.’

“ὁ δὲ Κύκλωψ οὐδὲν ἀποκρίνεται ἀλλὰ ὀρμᾶται ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀχαιοὺς· τῶν ἐταίρων δὲ δύο ἀρπάζει καὶ κόπτει πρὸς τὴν γῆν· ὁ δὲ ἐγκέφαλος ἐκρεῖ καὶ δεύει τὴν γῆν.”

[ἀρπάζει, *he seizes* κόπτει, *he strikes, bashes* πρὸς τὴν γῆν, *onto the ground* ὁ ... ἐγκέφαλος ἐκρεῖ, *their brains flow out* δεύει, *wet*]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “παῦε, ὦ Φίλιππε,” φησὶν, “παῦε· δεινὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ μῦθος. ἀλλ’ εἰπέ μοι, πῶς ἐκφεύγει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς; ἄρα πάντας τοὺς ἐταίρους ἀποκτείνει ὁ Κύκλωψ;”

[εἰπέ, *tell*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “οὐδαμῶς” φησὶν· “οὐ πάντας ἀποκτείνει ὁ Κύκλωψ. ὁ γὰρ Ὀδυσσεύς ἐστιν ἀνὴρ πολύμητις. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν πολὺν οἶνον τῷ Κύκλωπι παρέχει, ὥστε δι’ ὀλίγου μάλα μεθύει. ἐπεὶ δὲ καθεύδει ὁ Κύκλωψ, μοχλὸν μέγιστον ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς εὐρίσκει καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους κελεύει θερμαίνειν αὐτὸ ἐν τῷ πυρί. ἐπεὶ δὲ μέλλει ἄψεσθαι ὁ μοχλός, ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς αἶρει αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ πυρός καὶ ἐλαύνει εἰς τὸν ἓνα ὀφθαλμὸν τοῦ Κύκλωπος. σίζει δὲ ὁ ὀφθαλμὸς αὐτοῦ.

[πολύμητις, *cunning* μεθύει, *is drunk* μοχλὸν, *stake* θερμαίνειν, *to heat* ἄψεσθαι, *to catch fire* σίζει, *hisses*]

“ὁ δ’ ἀναπηδᾷ καὶ δεινῶς κλάζει. ὁ δ’ Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι εἰς τὸν τοῦ ἄντρου μυχὸν φεύγουσιν. ὁ δὲ Κύκλωψ οὐ δύναται αὐτοὺς ὀρᾶν. τυφλὸς γάρ ἐστιν.”

[ἀναπηδᾷ, *leaps up* κλάζει, *shrieks* οὐ δύναται, *is not able, cannot* τυφλός, *blind*]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ὡς σοφός ἐστίν ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς. ἀλλὰ πῶς ἐκφεύγουσιν ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου;”

[σοφός, *clever*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἀνατέλλει ὁ ἥλιος, ὁ Κύκλωψ τὸν λίθον ἐξαίρει ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ἄντρου εἰσόδου καὶ πάντα τά τε πρόβατα καὶ τὰς αἰγας ἐκπέμπει. ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεύς τοὺς μὲν ἐταίρους κρύπτει ὑπὸ τῶν προβάτων, ἑαυτὸν δὲ ὑπὸ κρῖοῦ μεγάλου. οὕτω δὲ ὁ Κύκλωψ ἐκπέμπει τοὺς Ἀχαιοὺς μετὰ τῶν προβάτων καὶ τοῦ κρῖοῦ, οἱ δὲ πάντα τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τὴν ναῦν ἐλαύνουσι καὶ ἀποπλέουσιν.”

[τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, *on the next day* ἀνατέλλει, *rises* ἐξαίρει, *lifts out* κρύπτει, *hides* ὑπὸ + gen., *under* κρῖοῦ, *ram*]

## WORD BUILDING

From the meanings of the words in boldface, deduce the meaning of the other word in each pair:

1. ἡ παρασκευή **παρασκευάζω**
2. τὸ ὄνομα **ὀνομάζω**
3. τὸ θαῦμα **θαυμάζω**
4. τὸ ἔργον (*work*) **ἐργάζομαι**

## GRAMMAR

### 5. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Nasal Stems

Review the formation of the nominative and vocative singular and the dative plural of 3rd declension velar and dental stem nouns as presented in Grammar 3, pages 97–99 above.

Note what happens when the stem ends in the nasal consonant ν:

ὁ χειμών, τοῦ χειμῶν-ος, *storm; winter*:

**Stem:** χειμῶν-, *storm; winter*

	Singular		Plural	
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ	χειμών	οἱ	χειμῶν-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ	χειμῶν-ος	τῶν	χειμῶν-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ	χειμῶν-ι	τοῖς	χειμῶν-σι(ν) > χειμῶσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν	χειμῶν-α	τοὺς	χειμῶν-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	χειμών	ὦ	χειμῶνες

Sigma is not added to the stem in the nominative and vocative singular, and the ν is lost before the dative plural ending.

**PRACTICE:** Write the complete set of the forms of ὁ κύων, τοῦ κυνός, *dog*. Remember what happens with the accent in the genitive and dative, singular and plural, when the stem is monosyllabic.

### 6. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Labial and Liquid Stems

Some 3rd declension nouns have stems ending in labials (β, π, and φ), e.g., ὁ κλώψ, τοῦ κλωπ-ός, dative plural, τοῖς κλωπί(ν), *thief*, and in liquids (λ and ρ), e.g., ὁ ῥήτωρ, τοῦ ῥήτορ-ος, dative plural, τοῖς ῥήτορσι(ν), *orator*. See Forms, pages 288 and 289.

### 7. A 3rd Declension Adjective: σώφρων, σῶφρον, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled*

**Stem:** σώφρων-, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled*

The stem ends in -ον-, and ς is not added in the masculine/feminine nominative singular. The ο is lengthened to ω in the masculine/feminine nominative singular, but not in the neuter. As with χειμών, the ν of the stem is lost before the σ of the dative plural ending.

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	σώφρων	σῶφρον	σώφρων-ες	σώφρων-α
<b>Gen.</b>	σώφρον-ος	σώφρον-ος	σωφρόν-ων	σωφρόν-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	σώφρον-ι	σώφρον-ι	σώφρον-σι(ν) > σωφροσι(ν)	σώφρον-σι(ν) > σωφροσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	σώφρον-α	σῶφρον	σώφρον-ας	σώφρον-α
<b>Voc.</b>	σῶφρον	σῶφρον	σώφρον-ες	σώφρον-α

Note that adjectives such as σώφρων, σῶφρον, which have only 3rd declension forms, have one set of forms for masculine and feminine and

one for neuter, thus ὁ σώφρων ἄνθρωπος and ἡ σώφρων κόρη, but τὸ σώφρων τέκνον (*child*).

### Exercise 7ε

Translate into English (1–5) and into Greek (6–10):

1. ἔλθε δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ, καὶ τὰς αἴγας πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἔλαυνε.
2. οἴκαδε σπεύδετε, ὦ δοῦλοι, καὶ σίτον ταῖς αἰξὶ παρέχετε.
3. κέλευε τοὺς φύλακας τοῖς παισὶ βοηθεῖν.
4. ἄρ' οὐ τὸν χειμῶνα φοβεῖσθε, ὦ φίλοι;
5. ὁ αὐτουργὸς τοῖς κυσὶν ἡγεῖται πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν.
6. We are leading the goats up the road.
7. The boys are not willing to obey the guards.
8. The guards want to help the boys.
9. The prudent girls fear the storm.
10. We wish to tell the names of the girls to the boy.

## 8. The Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

When the Cyclops asks Odysseus and his men *τίνας* ἐστὲ καὶ πόθεν πλεῖτε; he uses a form of the interrogative pronoun *τίς; τί;* *who? what?* The same word may be used as an interrogative adjective, e.g.:

εἰς *τίνα* νῆσον πλέομεν;  
To *what* island are we sailing?

This pronoun/adjective has 3rd declension endings, and its masculine and feminine forms are the same. It always receives an acute accent on the first syllable (the acute on *τίς* and *τί* does not change to grave when another word follows). Its forms are as follows (note in particular the dative plural):

Stems: *τιν-/τι*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	τίς	τί	τίν-ες	τίν-α
<b>Gen.</b>	τίν-ος	τίν-ος	τίν-ων	τίν-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τίν-ι	τίν-ι	τίν-σι(ν) > τίσι(ν)	τίν-σι(ν) > τίσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τίν-α	τί	τίν-ας	τίν-α

Locate two occurrences of the interrogative pronoun in the reading passage 7α at the beginning of this chapter.

Remember that *τί* may mean either *what?* or *why?*

## 9. The Indefinite Pronoun and Adjective

In the sentence *πλέουσί ποτε εἰς νῆσόν τινα μικράν*, the word *τινα* is an indefinite adjective meaning *a certain, some, or simply a, an*. This word may also be used as an indefinite pronoun meaning *someone, something, anyone, anything*, e.g.:

ἄρ' ὁρᾷς *τινα* ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ;  
Do you see anyone in the cave?

In all of its forms this word is spelled the same as the interrogative pronoun *τίς* given above, but it is enclitic (see Enclitics and Proclitics, pages 285–286).

Locate two occurrences of the indefinite adjective in the first two paragraphs of the first reading passage in Chapter 6. Explain their agreement with the nouns they modify and explain the accents.

### Exercise 7ζ

Read aloud and translate. Identify any interrogative pronouns or adjectives and any indefinite pronouns or adjectives.

1. τί ποιοῦσιν οἱ ἄνδρες;
2. ὁ ἀνὴρ μῦθόν τινα τῇ παιδί λέγει.
3. παῖδες τινες τοὺς κύνας εἰς τοὺς ἀγροὺς εἰσάγουσιν.
4. βούλομαι γινώσκειν τίς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ.
5. τίνα μῦθον βούλεσθε ἀκούειν, ὦ παῖδες;
6. μῦθόν τινα βουλόμεθα ἀκούειν περὶ γίγαντός τινος.
7. τίσιν ἡγεῖσθε πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν, ὦ παῖδες;
8. ξένοις τισὶν ἡγοῦμεθα, ὦ πάτερ.
9. τίνος πρόβατα τοσοῦτον ψόφον ποιεῖ;
10. τίνι μέλλεις παρέχειν τὸ ἄροτρον;

### Exercise 7η

Read aloud and translate:

1. τίς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ; γίγας τις φοβερός ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ.
2. τίνα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ὁρᾷς; γυναῖκά τινα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ὁρᾷ.
3. τίσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγεῖ; δούλοις τισὶν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγοῦμαι.
4. τίνος ἄροτρον πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν φέρεις; τὸ φίλου τινὸς ἄροτρον φέρω.
5. τίνι ἐστὶν οὗτος (*this*) ὁ κύων; ἔστι τῷ ἐμῷ πατρί.

## Ο ΤΟΥ ΘΗΣΕΩΣ ΠΑΤΗΡ ΑΠΟΘΝΗΣΚΕΙ

Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:

The story of Theseus, concluded. This part of the story begins with a flashback to the time when Theseus left Athens to sail to Crete with the victims to be fed to the Minotaur.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Θησεὺς πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην μέλλει ἀποπλεῖν, ὁ πατὴρ αὐτῷ λέγει· “ἐγὼ μάλα φοβοῦμαι ὑπὲρ σοῦ, ὦ παῖ· ὅμως δὲ ἴθι εἰς τὴν Κρήτην καὶ τὸν τε Μινώταυρον ἀπόκτεινε καὶ σῶζε τοὺς ἐταίρους· ἔπειτα δὲ οἴκαδε σπεῦδε. ἐγὼ δέ, ἕως ἄν ἀπῆς, καθ’ ἡμέραν ἀναβήσομαι ἐπὶ ἄκρᾱν τὴν ἀκτὴν, βουλόμενος ὁρᾶν τὴν σὴν ναῦν. ἀλλ’ ἄκουέ μου· ἡ γὰρ ναὺς ἔχει τὰ ἱστία μέλανα· σὺ δέ, ἐὰν τὸν τε Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνῃς καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους σώσῃς, οἴκαδε σπεῦδε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν ταῖς Ἀθήναις προσχωρῇς, στέλλε μὲν τὰ μέλανα ἱστία, αἶρε δὲ τὰ ἱστία λευκά. οὕτω γὰρ γνώσομαι ὅτι σῶοί ἐστε.”

[ὑπὲρ, on behalf of, for ὅμως, nevertheless ἕως ἄν ἀπῆς, as long as you are away καθ’ ἡμέραν, every day ἀναβήσομαι, I will go up ἐπὶ + acc., onto ἄκρᾱν τὴν ἀκτὴν, the top of the promontory βουλόμενος, wishing τὰ ἱστία μέλανα, sails (that are) black ἐὰν, if ἀποκτείνῃς, you kill σώσῃς, you save ἐπειδὴν... προσχωρῇς, when you are approaching στέλλε, take down λευκά, white γνώσομαι, I will learn σῶοί, safe]

1. Where does Aegeus say he will go every day while Theseus is away?
2. What will he watch for?
3. What does Aegeus tell Theseus to do with the sails of his ship on the return voyage?

ὁ οὖν Θησεὺς λέγει ὅτι τῷ πατρὶ μέλλει πείθεσθαι καὶ πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην ἀποπλεῖ. ὁ δ’ Αἰγεὺς καθ’ ἡμέραν ἐπὶ ἄκρᾱν τὴν ἀκτὴν ἀναβαίνει καὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν βλέπει.

4. What does Theseus promise Aegeus?
5. What does Aegeus do in Theseus’ absence?

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Θησεὺς τὴν Ἀριάδην ἐν τῇ Νάξῳ λείπει καὶ οἴκαδε σπεύδει, ἐπιλανθάνεται τῶν τοῦ πατρὸς λόγων, καὶ οὐ στέλλει τὰ μέλανα ἱστία. ὁ οὖν Αἰγεὺς τὴν μὲν ναῦν γινώσκει, ὁρᾷ δὲ ὅτι ἔχει τὰ μέλανα ἱστία. μάλιστα οὖν φοβεῖται ὑπὲρ τοῦ Θησεῦς. μέγα μὲν βοᾷ, ρίπτει δὲ ἑαυτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀκτῆς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καὶ οὕτως ἀποθνήσκει. διὰ τοῦτο οὖν τῇ θαλάττῃ τὸ ὄνομά ἐστιν Αἰγαῖος πόντος.

[τῇ Νάξῳ, *Naxos* (an island in the middle of the Aegean Sea, north of Crete) ἐπιλανθάνεται τῶν... λόγων, he forgets the words μέγα, loudly ρίπτει, he throws ἀποθνήσκει, he dies διὰ τοῦτο, for this reason πόντος, sea]

6. What does Theseus forget to do after abandoning Ariadne?
7. What does Aegeus see when he spots Theseus’ ship?
8. What is his emotional reaction?
9. What three things does he do?
10. How did the Aegean Sea get its name?

### Exercise 70

Translate into Greek:

1. When Theseus arrives at Athens, he learns that his father is dead (τέθνηκεν).
2. His mother says to the young man (use ὁ νεανίας), “You are to blame; for you always forget (use ἐπιλανθάνομαι + gen.) your father’s words.”
3. Theseus is very sad (use λυπέομαι) and says, “I myself am to blame; and so I intend to flee from home.”
4. But his mother tells (orders) him not (μή) to go away (ἀπιέναι).
5. Soon he becomes king, and all the Athenians love and honor him.

### Classical Greek

Sophocles

King Oedipus, old, blind, and in exile, addresses Theseus, son of Aegeus and king of Athens, who has offered him protection (Sophocles, *Oedipus at Colonus*, 607–609):

ὦ φίλτατ’ Αἰγέως παῖ, μόνοις οὐ γίγνεται  
θεοῖσι γῆρας οὐδὲ κατθανεῖν ποτε,  
τὰ δ’ ἄλλα συγχεῖ πάνθ’ ὁ παγκρατὴς χρόνος.

[φίλτατ(ε), *dearest* μόνοις, *alone* θεοῖσι = θεοῖς γῆρας, *old age* οὐδέ... ποτε, *and never* κατθανεῖν, *to die* συγχεῖ, *destroys* (lit., *pours together, confounds*) πάνθ’ = πάντα, *all things* (take with ἄλλα) παγκρατὴς, *all-powerful*]

### Greek Wisdom

γνώθι σεαυτόν.

Θαλῆς (of Miletus)

# 8 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (α)



αἱ γυναῖκες διαλεγόμεναι ἀλλήλαις πέπλον ὑφαίνουσιν.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

διαλέγομαι + dat., I talk to, converse with

ἔπομαι + dat., I follow

Cf. ἡγέομαι + dat., I lead

ἐργάζομαι, I work; I accomplish

θεάομαι, I see, watch, look at

### Nouns

τὸ ἄστυ, τοῦ ἄστεως, city

τὸ ἔργον, τοῦ ἔργου, work; deed

ἡ ἐσπέρα, τῆς ἐσπέρας, evening

ὁ θεός, τοῦ θεοῦ, god

ἡ θύρα, τῆς θύρας, door

ὁ ποιητής, τοῦ ποιητοῦ, poet

### Adverbs

ἐκεῖσε, to that place, thither

εὖ, well

οἶκοι, note the accent, at home

ὥσπερ, note the accent, just as

### Conjunctions

ὅμως, nevertheless

### Expressions

εὖ γε, good! well done!

ἐν ᾧ, while

### Proper Name

ὁ Διόνυσος, τοῦ Διονύσου,

Dionysus

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὃ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλος οὐ παύονται ἐργαζόμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐσπέρα γίνεται, ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις τοὺς βοῦς λύει καὶ οἶκαδε ἐλαύνει, ὁ δὲ δοῦλος τῷ δεσπότῃ ἐπόμενος τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ οἰκίᾳ προσχωροῦσιν, τὸν πάππον ὁρῶσιν

ἐν τῷ κήπῳ ἐργαζόμενον. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καί, 5  
“ἐσπέρα ἤδη γίνεται, ὦ πάπα,” φησὶν. “παύε οὖν ἐργαζόμενος καὶ ἡσύχαζε.” ὁ δέ, “εὖ λέγεις, ὦ παῖ,” φησὶν. “μάλα γὰρ κάμνω.” παύεται οὖν ἐργαζόμενος καὶ πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν σπεύδει.

[ἐν ... τούτῳ, meanwhile τῷ κήπῳ, the garden ἡσύχαζε, rest! κάμνω, I am tired]

οἶκοι δὲ ἢ τε Μυρρίνη καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ πέπλον ὑφαίνουσιν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ 10  
ὑφαίνουσιν, διαλέγονται ἀλλήλαις. δι’ ὀλίγου δὲ ἡ μήτηρ τὸν τε ἄνδρα καὶ τὸν δοῦλον καὶ τὸν πάππον ὁρᾷ εἰς τὴν αὐλήν ἀφικνουμένους. παύεται οὖν ἐργαζομένη καὶ σπεύδει πρὸς τὴν θύραν καί, “χαῖρε, ὦ ἄνερ,” φησὶν, “καὶ ἄκουε. ὃ τε γὰρ Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ Ἄργος λύκον ἀπεκτόνῃσιν.” ὁ δέ, “ἄρα τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγεις; εἰπέ μοι 15  
τί ἐγένετο.” ἡ μὲν οὖν Μυρρίνη πάντα ἐξηγεῖται, ὁ δὲ θαυμάζει καὶ λέγει. “εὖ γε· ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν ὁ παῖς καὶ ἰσχυρός. ἀλλ’ εἰπέ μοι, ποῦ ἐστιν; βουλόμενος γὰρ τιμᾶν τὸν λυκοκτόνον μέλλω ζητεῖν αὐτόν.” καὶ ἐν νῷ ἔχει ζητεῖν τὸν παῖδα. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “ἀλλὰ μένε, ὦ φίλε,” φησὶν, “καὶ αὖθις ἄκουε. ἄγγελος γὰρ ἦκει ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄστεως· λέγει δὲ 20  
ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὰ Διονύσια ποιοῦνται. ἄρα ἐθέλεις ἐμέ τε καὶ τοὺς παῖδας πρὸς τὴν ἑορτὴν ἄγειν;” ὁ δέ, “ἀλλ’ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν, ὦ γύναι· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἐστὶν ἐργάζεσθαι. ὁ γὰρ λιμὸς τῷ ἄργῳ ἀνδρὶ ἔπεται, ὥσπερ λέγει ὁ ποιητής· ἐξ ἔργων ἄνδρες πολύμηλοί τ’ ἀφνειοὶ τε γίνονται.”

[πέπλον, cloth, robe ὑφαίνουσιν, are weaving ἀλλήλαις, with one another τὴν αὐλήν, the courtyard ἀπεκτόνῃσιν, have killed τὰ ἀληθῆ, the true things, the truth εἰπέ, tell ἐγένετο, happened ἐξηγεῖται, relates τὸν λυκοκτόνον, the wolf-slayer ἀνάγκη ... ἐστὶν, it is necessary ὁ ... λιμὸς, hunger πολύμηλοί τ’ ἀφνειοὶ τε, rich in flocks and wealthy (Hesiod, Works and Days 308)]

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη ἀποκρίναμένη, “ἀλλ’ ὅμως,” φησὶν, “ἡμᾶς ἐκεῖσε 25  
ἄγε, ὦ φίλε ἄνερ. σπανίως γὰρ πορευόμεθα πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ· καὶ πάντες δὴ ἔρχονται.” ὁ δέ, “ἀλλ’ ἀδύνατον· ἄργος γὰρ ἐστὶν ὁ δοῦλος· ὅταν γὰρ ἀπῶ, παύεται ἐργαζόμενος.”

[ἀποκρίναμένη, replying σπανίως, rarely ἀδύνατον, (it's) impossible ὅταν ... ἀπῶ, whenever I'm away]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ἀλλὰ μὴ χαλεπὸς ἴσθι, ὦ πάτερ, ἀλλὰ πείθου ἡμῖν.  
 ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλεις καὶ σὺ τὴν ἐορτὴν θεᾶσθαι καὶ τὸν θεὸν τιμᾶν; ὁ  
 γὰρ Διόνῦσος σφάζει ἡμῖν τὰς ἀμπέλους. καὶ τὸν Φίλιππον—ἄρ’ οὐ  
 βούλει τιμᾶν τὸν παῖδα, διότι τὸν λύκον(ἀπέκτονεν;) βούλεται γὰρ  
 τοὺς τε ἀγῶνας θεᾶσθαι καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς καὶ τὰ δράματα. ἄγε οὖν  
 ἡμᾶς πάντα πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.”

[τὰς ἀμπέλους, the vines διότι, because τοὺς . . . ἀγῶνας, the contests τὰ  
 δράματα, the plays]

ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἔστω οὖν, ἐπεὶ οὕτω βούλεσθε. ἀλλὰ λέγω ὑμῖν  
 ὅτι ὁ λιμὸς ἔπεσθαι ἡμῖν μέλλει—ἀλλ’ οὐκ αἴτιος ἔγωγε.”

[ἔστω, let it be! very well! ἐπεὶ, here, since ἔγωγε, an emphatic ἐγώ]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. politics
2. politburo
3. metropolis (*metr-* is not from μέτρον)
4. necropolis (ὁ νεκρός = *corpse*)
5. cosmopolitan

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Middle Voice

In addition to the indicative mood, the imperative, and the infinitive, which you have studied so far in this course, verbs have adjectival forms known as *participles* (verbal adjectives). These may be used in several ways:

- a. Participles may describe some circumstance that accompanies the main action of the sentence, e.g.:

ὁ δοῦλος τῷ δεσπότη ἐπόμενος τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει.

*The slave, following his master, carries the plow.*

τὸν πάππον ὁρῶσιν ἐν τῷ κήπῳ ἐργαζόμενον.

*They see the grandfather as/while he is working in the garden.*

This use is called *circumstantial*; the participle is in the predicate position (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7b, page 66), and it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.

- b. Participles in the attributive position (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7a, page 66) may simply modify nouns or pronouns like any other adjective, agreeing in gender, number, and case. When so used, they are called *attributive*, e.g.:

οἱ αὐτουργοὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἐργαζόμενοι μάλα κάμνουσιν.

*The farmers working in the field are very tired.*

- c. Participles may be used to complete the meaning of a verb, e.g.:

ὁ δοῦλος οὐ παύεται ἐργαζόμενος.

*The slave does not stop working.*

This use is called *supplementary*, since the participle fills out or completes the meaning of the verb. The participle agrees with the stated or implied subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Present participles do not refer to time as such but describe the action as in process, ongoing, or progressive.

The sentences above contain participles of deponent verbs, which have their forms in the middle voice. The following charts give the full sets of forms of *present/progressive middle participles*. Each form has a stem, a thematic vowel (ο), the suffix -μεν-, and an ending. The endings, which indicate gender, number, and case, are the same as those of 1st and 2nd declension adjectives such as καλός, -ή, -όν (see page 48).

λῶ-ό-μεν-ος

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Nom.</b>	λῶόμενος	λῶομένη	λῶόμενον
<b>Gen.</b>	λῶομένου	λῶομένης	λῶομένου
<b>Dat.</b>	λῶομένῳ	λῶομένῃ	λῶομένῳ
<b>Acc.</b>	λῶόμενον	λῶομένην	λῶόμενον
<b>Voc.</b>	λῶόμενε	λῶομένη	λῶόμενον
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λῶόμενοι	λῶομέναι	λῶόμενα
<b>Gen.</b>	λῶομένων	λῶομένων	λῶομένων
<b>Dat.</b>	λῶομένοις	λῶομέναις	λῶομένοις
<b>Acc.</b>	λῶομένους	λῶομένας	λῶόμενα

Recite all the forms of the present participle of ἔπομαι.

φιλε-ό-μεν-ος > φιλούμενος

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Nom.</b>	φιλούμενος	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλούμενου	φιλουμένης	φιλούμενου
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλουμένῳ	φιλουμένῃ	φιλουμένῳ
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλούμενον	φιλουμένην	φιλούμενον
<b>Voc.</b>	φιλούμενε	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	φιλούμενοι	φιλούμεναι	φιλούμενα
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλουμένοις	φιλουμέναις	φιλουμένοις
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλουμένους	φιλουμένᾱς	φιλούμενα

τιμα-ό-μεν-ος > τιμώμενος

<b>Nom.</b>	τιμώμενος	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
	etc.		

When the accent is on the second of two vowels that contract, the diphthong that results from contraction receives an acute accent, thus φιλε-ό-μενος > φιλούμενος (see Chapter 6, Grammar 3, page 78).

Recite all the forms of the present participle of ἡγέομαι and all the forms of τιμώμενος.

### Exercise 8α

Fill in the present participles on the three Verb Charts on which you entered forms for Exercise 6β. Keep these charts for reference.

### Exercise 8β

Read aloud and translate the following sentences. Identify and explain the gender, number, and case of each participle:

- αἱ γυναῖκες παύονται ἐργαζόμεναι.
- ὁ Φίλιππος τὸν πατέρα ὀρθῶς εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν ἀφικνούμενον.
- βουλόμενοι τὴν ἐορτὴν θεᾶσθαι, πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ σπεύδουσι.
- ἄρ' ὀρᾶτε τοὺς παῖδας ταῖς καλαῖς παρθένοις ἐπομένους;
- αἱ παρθένοι μάλα φοβούμεναι ὡς τάχιστα (as quickly as possible) οἴκαδε τρέχουσιν.
- ἄρ' ἀκούεις τῶν γυναικῶν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἀλλήλαις διαλεγομένων;
- οἱ παῖδες τῷ πατρὶ ἔπονται πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ πορευομένων.
- ἡ κύων τὸν λύκον φοβουμένη ἀποφεύγει.
- ἡ κύων ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον ὀρμωμένη ἀγρίως ὕλακτεῖ (barks).
- ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὰ πρόβατα εὕρισκει ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι πλανώμενα (wandering).

### Exercise 8γ

Translate into Greek:

- Do you see the boys fighting in the road?
- Dicaeopolis stops working and drives the oxen home.
- Stop following me and go away (ἄπελθε)!
- Obeying Myrrhine, Melissa stays at home.
- Bravely leading his comrades, Theseus escapes out of the labyrinth.
- The men rejoice, journeying to the island.

## Athens: A Historical Outline

### 1. The Bronze Age

Athens grew around the Acropolis, the rocky hill that rises precipitously in the middle of the later city. Archaeologists have shown that in the Bronze Age the Acropolis was fortified and was crowned by a palace, which was no doubt the administrative center of the surrounding district, like the palaces at Mycenae and Pylos. Tradition says that Theseus united Attica in the generation before the Trojan War, but in the *Iliad* there is scant mention of Athenian heroes, and this suggests that Athens was not an important center in the Bronze Age.

### 2. The Dark Age

Bronze Age civilization collapsed soon after the end of the Trojan War, about 1200 B.C. In the troubles that ensued, the so-called Dorian invasions, Athens, according to tradition, was the only city not sacked. Certainly, in this period Athens grew in size, and we are told that the emigration (ca. 1050 B.C.) that peopled the islands and coast of Asia Minor with Greeks was from Athens, which later claimed to be the mother city of all Ionian settlements.

### 3. The Renaissance of Greece (ca. 850 B.C.)

As Greece slowly recovered from the Dark Age, population increased, and other states sent out colonies that peopled much of the Mediterranean coast from southern France to the Black Sea (750–500 B.C.). Athens played no part in this movement and seems not to have experienced those problems that led to emigration from other parts of Greece.



The Acropolis of Athens

#### 4. The Reforms of Solon

Monarchy had been succeeded by the rule of the nobles, who oppressed the farmers until revolution threatened. In this crisis the Athenians chose an arbitrator named Solon (chief archon in 594/593 B.C., but his reforms may date to twenty years later), who worked out a compromise between the conflicting interests of the nobles and farmers. Solon was not only a statesman but a poet, and in a surviving fragment (5) of his poetry he defends his settlement:

To the people I gave as much power as was sufficient,  
Neither taking from their honor nor giving them excess;  
As for those who held power and were envied for their wealth,  
I saw that they too should have nothing improper.  
I stood there casting my sturdy shield over both sides  
And allowed neither to conquer unjustly.

His settlement included important economic reforms, which gave the farmer a new start, and constitutional reforms, which paved the way for the later democracy. It was he who divided the citizens into four classes according to property qualifications and gave appropriate rights and functions to each; in this way, wealth, not birth, became the criterion for political privilege, and the aristocratic monopoly of power was weakened.

#### 5. Tyranny—Pisistratus

Solon's settlement pleased neither side, and within half a generation, a tyrant, Pisistratus, seized power and ruled off and on for 33 years (561–528 B.C.). Under his rule Athens flourished; the economy improved, the city was adorned with public buildings, and Athens became a greater power in the Greek world. His son, Hippias, succeeded him but was driven out in 510 B.C.

#### 6. Cleisthenes and Democracy

Three years later Cleisthenes put through reforms that made Athens a democracy, in which the Assembly of all male citizens was sovereign. The infant democracy immediately faced a crisis. Hippias had taken refuge with the King of Persia, whose empire now reached the shores of the Aegean and included the Greek cities of Ionia. In 499 the Ionians revolted and asked the mainland cities for help. Athens sent a force, which was highly successful for a short time, but the revolt was finally crushed in 494 B.C.

#### 7. The Persian Wars

In 490 B.C. the Persian king Darius sent an expedition by sea to conquer and punish Athens. It landed on the east coast of Attica at Marathon. After an anxious debate, the Athenians sent their army to meet the Persians and won a spectacular victory, driving the Persians back to their ships. Athens alone defeated this Persian expedition; it was a day the Athenians never forgot, and it filled the new democracy with confidence. (See map, page 230.)

Ten years later Darius's son, Xerxes, assembled a vast fleet and army with the intention of conquering all Greece and adding it to his empire. The Greeks mounted a holding operation at Thermopylae (August, 480 B.C.), before abandoning all Greece north of the Peloponnesus, including Attica. Athens was evacuated and sacked by the Persians, but in September the combined Greek fleet, inspired by the Athenian general Themistocles, defeated the Persian fleet off the island of Salamis. Xerxes, unable to supply his army without the fleet, led a retreat to Asia, but he left a force of 100,000 men in the north of Greece under the command of Mardonius with orders to subdue Greece the following year. In spring, 479 B.C., the Greek army marched north and met and defeated the Persians at Plataea; on the same day, according to tradition, the Greek fleet attacked and destroyed the remains of the Persian navy at Mycale in Asia Minor.



Persian soldiers

#### 8. The Delian League and the Athenian Empire

These victories at the time seemed to the Greeks to offer no more than a respite in their struggle against the might of the Persian Empire. Many outlying Greek cities, including the islands and the coasts of the Aegean, were still held by the Persians. In 478 B.C. a league was formed at the island of Delos of cities that pledged themselves to continue the fight against Persia under Athenian leadership.

The Delian League under the Athenian general Cimon won a series of victories and only ceased fighting when the Persians accepted humiliating peace terms in 449 B.C. Meanwhile what had started as a league of free and independent states had gradually developed into an Athenian empire in which the allies had become subjects. Sparta was alarmed by the growing power of Athens, and these fears led to an intermittent war in which Sparta and her allies (the Peloponnesian League) fought Athens in a series of indecisive actions. This first Peloponnesian war ended in 446 B.C., when Athens and Sparta made a thirty years' peace.

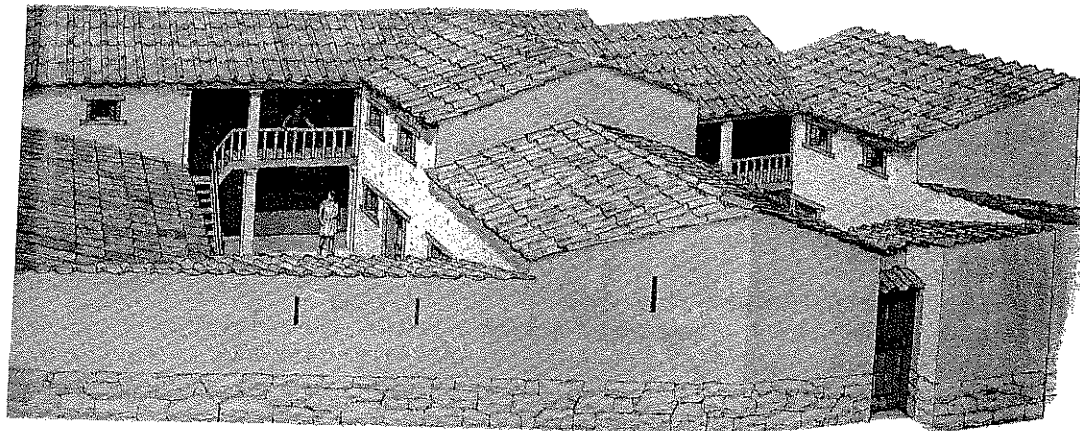
### 9. Pericles and Radical Democracy

In this period Pericles dominated Athens; from 443 until he died in 429 he was elected general every year. At home he was responsible for the measures that made Athens a radical democracy. In foreign policy he was an avowed imperialist, who reckoned that the Athenian Empire brought positive benefits to its subjects that outweighed their loss of independence.

After the Thirty Years' Peace, Athens embarked on no more imperial ventures. She controlled the seas, kept a tight hand on her empire, and expanded her economic influence westwards. Sparta and its allies had good reason to fear Athenian ambitions, and Corinth, whose prosperity and very existence depended on her trade, was especially alarmed by Athenian expansion into the western Mediterranean. There were dangerous incidents, as when Corfu, a colony of Corinth, made a defensive alliance with Athens and an Athenian naval squadron routed a Corinthian fleet (434 B.C.). In the autumn of 432 B.C. (when our story of Dicaeopolis and his family begins) there was frantic diplomatic activity, as both sides prepared for war.



Pericles



A reconstruction of two semi-detached houses in Athens

### Classical Greek

#### Archilochus

Archilochus (fl., 650 B.C.), the earliest lyric poet of whom anything survives, proudly claims to be both a warrior and a poet (poem no. 1):

εἰμὶ δ' ἐγὼ θεράπων μὲν Ἐνυαλίου ἀνακτος  
καὶ Μουσέων ἐρατὸν δῶρον ἐπιστάμενος.

[θεράπων, *servant* Ἐνυαλίου ἀνακτος, *of lord Enyalios (the god of war)*  
ἐρατὸν δῶρον, *the lovely gift* ἐπιστάμενος, *knowing, skilled in*]

### New Testament Greek

#### Luke 5.20–21

When Jesus was teaching, some men wanted to carry a paralyzed man to him to be cured; when they could not get near, they let him down through the roof. Jesus is the subject of the clause with which our quotation begins.

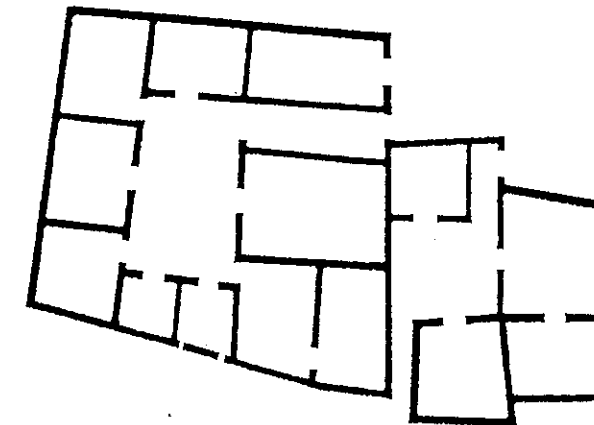
καὶ ἰδὼν τὴν πίστιν αὐτῶν εἶπεν, “ἄνθρωπε, ἀφέωνταί σοι αἱ ἁμαρτίαι σου.”

[ἰδὼν, *seeing* τὴν πίστιν, *the faith* εἶπεν, *said* ἀφέωνταί σοι αἱ ἁμαρτίαι σου, *your sins have been (= are) forgiven you*]

The scribes and Pharisees began to debate, saying:

“τίς ἐστὶν οὗτος ὃς λαλεῖ βλασφημίας; τίς δύναται ἁμαρτίας ἀφεῖναι εἰ μὴ ὁ μόνος ὁ θεός;”

[οὗτος ὃς, *this (man) who* λαλεῖ, *speaks* δύναται, *is able, can* ἀφεῖναι, *to forgive* εἰ μὴ, *unless, except* μόνος, *only, alone*]



Floor plan of houses on the opposite page

## ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις σπονδὴν ποιοῦμενος  
τὸν Δία εὐχεται σφῆζειν πάντας.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἀναβαίνω, *I go up, get up*; + ἐπί  
+ acc., *I climb, go up onto*  
ἐγείρω, active, transitive,  
*I wake X up*; middle, intransi-  
tive, *I wake up*  
εὐχομαι, *I pray*; + dat., *I pray to*;  
+ acc. and infin., *I pray (that)*  
καθίζω, active, transitive,  
*I make X sit down*; *I set*;  
*I place*; active, intransitive,  
*I sit*; middle, intransitive,  
*I seat myself, sit down*

## Nouns

ἡ ἀγορά, τῆς ἀγορᾶς, *agora*,  
*city center, market place*  
ὁ βωμός, τοῦ βωμοῦ, *altar*  
ὁ νεανίας, τοῦ νεανίου, *young*  
*man*

ὁ πολίτης, τοῦ πολίτου, *citizen*  
ἡ χεὶρ, τῆς χειρός, *hand*

## Preposition

ὕπερ + gen., *on behalf of, for*  
Adverb

τέλος, *in the end, finally*

## Expressions

ἐν . . . τούτῳ, *meanwhile*  
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, *on the next day*

## Proper Names

ἡ Ἀκρόπολις, τῆς  
Ἀκροπόλεως, *the Acropolis*  
(the citadel of Athens)  
ὁ Ζεὺς, τοῦ Διός, τῷ Δίῃ, τὸν Δία,  
ὁ Ζεῦ, *Zeus* (king of the gods)  
ὁ Παρθενών, τοῦ Παρθενῶνος,  
the Parthenon (the temple of  
Athena on the Acropolis in  
Athens)

τῇ οὖν ὑστεραίᾳ, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾳ γίνεται, ἐγείρεται τε ἡ  
Μυρρίνη καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγείρει καί, “ἔπαιρε σεαυτόν, ὦ ἄνερ,” φησὶν.  
“οὐ γὰρ δυνατόν ἐστὶν ἔτι καθεύδειν· καιρὸς γάρ ἐστι πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ  
πορεύεσθαι.” ὁ οὖν ἀνὴρ ἐπαίρει ἑαυτόν· καὶ πρῶτον τὸν Ξανθίαν  
καλεῖ καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν μὴ ἄργον εἶναι μηδὲ παύεσθαι ἐργαζόμενον. 5

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἡ Μυρρίνη τὸν τε σῖτον φέρει καὶ τὸν τε πάππον ἐγείρει  
καὶ τοὺς παῖδας. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις εἰς τὴν αὐλὴν εἰσέρχεται  
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεῖται πρὸς τὸν βωμόν· σπονδὴν δὲ ποιοῦμενος τὸν  
Δία εὐχεται σφῆζειν πάντας πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ πορευομένους. τέλος δὲ τὸν  
ἡμίονον ἐξάγει, ὁ δὲ πάππος ἀναβαίνει ἐπ’ αὐτόν. οὕτως οὖν 10  
πορεύονται πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.

[μηδὲ, *and not* τὴν αὐλὴν, *the courtyard* σπονδὴν, *a libation* (drink offering)  
τὸν ἡμίονον, *the mule* ἐπ(ι), *onto*]

μακρὰ δ’ ἐστὶν ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ χαλεπή. δι’ ὀλίγου δὲ κάμνει ἡ  
Μυρρίνη καὶ βούλεται καθίζεσθαι· κάμνει δὲ καὶ ὁ ἡμίονος καὶ οὐκ  
ἐθέλει προχωρεῖν. καθιζόμενοι οὖν πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαύονται. δι’  
ὀλίγου δ’ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “καιρὸς ἐστὶ πορεύεσθαι,” φησὶν. “θάρρει, ὦ 15  
γύναι· μακρὰ γὰρ ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ χαλεπή τὸ πρῶτον, ‘ἐπὴν δ’ εἰς ἄκρον  
ἵκηται,’ ὥσπερ λέγει ὁ ποιητής, ῥαδίᾳ δὲ ἔπειτα γίγνεται.”

[κάμνει, *is tired* ἀναπαύονται, *they rest* θάρρει, *cheer up!* μακρὰ . . . γίγνεται  
(Dicaeopolis is again alluding to Hesiod, *Works and Days* 290–292.) ἐπὴν . . . ἵκηται,  
*when(ever) you arrive/get*]

προχωροῦσιν οὖν ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος καὶ, ἐπεὶ εἰς ἄκρον ἀφικνοῦνται,  
τὰς Ἀθήνας ὁρῶσι κάτω κειμέναις. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος τὴν πόλιν θεώμενος,  
“ἰδοῦ,” φησὶν, “ὡς καλὴ ἐστὶν ἡ πόλις. ἄρ’ ὁρᾶτε τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν;” ἡ 20  
δὲ Μέλιττα, “ὁρῶ δὴ. ἄρ’ ὁρᾶτε καὶ τὸν Παρθενῶνα; ὡς καλὸς ἐστὶ  
καὶ μέγας.” ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἀλλὰ σπεῦδε, ὦ πάππα· καταβαίνομεν  
γὰρ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν.”

[κάτω κειμέναις, *lying below*]

ταχέως οὖν καταβαίνουσι καὶ εἰς τὰς πύλας ἀφικόμενοι τὸν  
ἡμίονον προσάπτουσι δένδρῳ τινὶ καὶ εἰσέρχονται. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἄστει 25  
πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὁρῶσιν ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς βαδίζοντας· ἄνδρες γάρ,  
γυναῖκες, νεᾶνιαι, παῖδες, πολῖταί τε καὶ ξένοι, σπεύδουσι πρὸς τὴν  
ἀγορᾶν. ἡ οὖν Μυρρίνη φοβουμένη ὑπὲρ τῶν παίδων, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ  
Φίλιππε,” φησὶν, “καὶ λαμβάνου τῆς χειρός. σὺ δέ—Μέλιτταν λέγω—  
μὴ λείπέ με ἀλλ’ ἔπου ἅμα ἐμοί· τοσοῦτοι γὰρ εἰσὶν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὥστε 30  
φοβοῦμαι ὑπὲρ σοῦ.”

[ἀφικόμενοι, *having arrived* προσάπτουσι, *they tie* X (acc.) to Y (dat.) βαδίζοντας, *walking* ἅμα ἐμοί, *with me*]

## WORD BUILDING

The following sets contain words expressing ideas of place where, place to which, and place from which. You already know the meanings of the words in boldface; deduce the meanings of the others. Copy the chart carefully onto a sheet of paper and write the meanings of the words in the appropriate slots (note that sometimes the same word can express ideas of place where and place to which, depending on the context):

Place Where	Place to Which	Place from Which
1. ποῦ <i>where?</i>	ποῖ or πόσε <i>to where?</i>	πόθεν <i>from where?</i>
2. <b>δεῦρο</b>		
3. ἐνθα <i>there</i>	ἐνθα	
4. ἐνθάδε <i>hence, thither</i>	ἐνθάδε <i>thence, thither</i>	
5. ἐνταῦθα <i>then, here</i>	ἐνταῦθα <i>hither, thither</i>	
6. ἐκεῖ <i>there</i>	ἐκεῖσε <i>thither</i>	ἐκεῖθεν
7. οἴκοι	οἴκαδε	οἴκοθεν
8. ἄλλοθι	ἄλλοσε	ἄλλοθεν
9. πανταχοῦ	πανταχόσε	πανταχόθεν
10. Ἀθήνησι(v) <i>at Athens</i>	Ἀθήναζε(v) <i>to Athens</i>	Ἀθήνηθεν <i>from Athens</i>

## GRAMMAR

### 2. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Stems in -ρ-

The endings of these nouns are the same as those you learned for 3rd declension nouns in Chapter 7, but each of these nouns has four stems, as follows:

πατηρ-	μητηρ-	θυγατηρ-	άνηρ-
πατερ-	μητερ-	θυγατερ-	άνερ-
πατρ-	μητρ-	θυγατρ-	άνδρ-
πατρα-	μητρα-	θυγατρα-	άνδρα-

In the following chart, locate the forms with each of these stems:

ὁ	πατήρ	ἡ	μήτηρ	ἡ	θυγάτηρ	ὁ	άνήρ
τοῦ	πατρ-ός	τῆς	μητρ-ός	τῆς	θυγατρ-ός	τοῦ	άνδρ-ός
τῷ	πατρ-ί	τῇ	μητρ-ί	τῇ	θυγατρ-ί	τῷ	άνδρ-ί
τὸν	πατέρ-α	τὴν	μητέρ-α	τὴν	θυγατέρ-α	τὸν	άνδρ-α
ὦ	πάτερ	ὦ	μήτερ	ὦ	θύγατερ	ὦ	άνερ
οἱ	πατέρ-ες	αἱ	μητέρ-ες	αἱ	θυγατέρ-ες	οἱ	άνδρ-ες
τῶν	πατέρ-ων	τῶν	μητέρ-ων	τῶν	θυγατέρ-ων	τῶν	άνδρ-ων
τοῖς	πατρά-σι(v)	ταῖς	μητρά-σι(v)	ταῖς	θυγατρά-σι(v)	τοῖς	άνδρά-σι(v)
τοῦς	πατέρ-ας	ταῖς	μητέρ-ας	ταῖς	θυγατέρ-ας	τοῦς	άνδρ-ας
ὦ	πατέρ-ες	ὦ	μητέρ-ες	ὦ	θυγατέρ-ες	ὦ	άνδρ-ες

Note that these nouns do not add *ς* in the nominative singular. Note also the accents on the final syllables in the genitive and dative singulars (regular with monosyllabic stems) and the recessive accent in the vocative singulars. The nominative and vocative plurals all have accents on the next to the last syllable.

### 3. Two Important Irregular Nouns: ἡ γυνή, τῆς γυναικός, *woman*; ἡ χεῖρ, τῆς χειρός, *hand*

For ἡ γυνή, note that the nominative is not formed from the stem plus *-ς*, as is usual with velar stem nouns such as φύλακ-ς > φύλαξ; the accent in the genitive and dative, singular and plural, falls on the final syllable; and the vocative singular consists of the stem minus the final *κ*, since all stop consonants are lost in word-final position. For ἡ χεῖρ, note the shortened stem in the dative plural.

#### Singular:

**Stem:** γυναικ-, *woman*; *wife*

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ γυνή
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς γυναικ-ός
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ γυναικ-ί
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν γυναῖκ-α

**Voc.** ὦ γύναικ > γύναι

**Stem:** χεῖρ-, *hand*

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ χεῖρ
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς χειρ-ός
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ χειρ-ί
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν χεῖρ-α

#### Plural:

<b>Nom.</b>	αἱ γυναῖκ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τῶν γυναικ-ῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	ταῖς γυναικ-σί(v) > γυναιξί(v)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὰς γυναῖκ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ γυναῖκ-ες

<b>Nom.</b>	αἱ χεῖρ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τῶν χειρ-ῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	ταῖς χειρ-σί(v)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὰς χεῖρ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ χεῖρες

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of forms of ὁ δεινὸς άνήρ, *the terrible man*; ἡ φίλη μήτηρ, *the dear mother*; and ἡ σώφρων γυνή, *the prudent woman*.

#### 4. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective *πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, all; every; whole*

You have met a number of forms of this adjective in the readings. Here are all of its forms. Note that in the masculine and neuter it has 3rd declension endings and that in the feminine it has endings like those of the 1st declension noun *μέλιττα* (including the circumflex on the final syllable of the genitive plural; see Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 41).

**Stems:** παντ- for masculine and neuter; πᾶσ- for feminine

**Singular:**

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	πάντ-ς > πᾶς	πᾶσ-α	πάντ > πᾶν
<b>Gen.</b>	παντ-ός	πᾶσ-ης	παντ-ός
<b>Dat.</b>	παντ-ί	πᾶσ-ῃ	παντ-ί
<b>Acc.</b>	πάντ-α	πᾶσ-αν	πάντ > πᾶν
<b>Voc.</b>	πάντ-ς > πᾶς	πᾶσ-α	πάντ > πᾶν

**Plural:**

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	πάντ-ες	πᾶσ-αι	πάντ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	πάντ-ων	πᾶσ-ῶν	πάντ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	πάντ-σι(ν) > πᾶσι(ν)	πᾶσ-αις	πάντ-σι(ν) > πᾶσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	πάντ-ας	πᾶσ-ᾶς	πάντ-α
<b>Voc.</b>	πάντ-ες	πᾶσ-αι	πάντ-α

For the nominative and vocative masculine singular forms, the -ντ at the end of the stem is lost because of the σ, and the stem vowel lengthens. Remember that all stop consonants in word-final position are lost; thus the stem παντ- gives πᾶν in the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative singulars with loss of the τ; the stem vowel was probably lengthened because of the masculine πᾶς and the feminine πᾶσα. In the dative plural the -ντ is lost before the σ of the ending -σι(ν), and the stem vowel lengthens. Note the following uses of this adjective:

Predicate position: πάντες οἱ θεοί or οἱ θεοὶ πάντες = *all the gods*

πᾶσα ἡ ναὺς or ἡ ναὺς πᾶσα = *the whole ship*, i.e., all of its parts

Attributive position (rare): ἡ πᾶσα πόλις = *the whole city* (regarded collectively as the sum total of its parts)

Without definite article: πᾶς ἀνὴρ = *every man*

Used as a substantive:\* πάντες = *all people, everyone*

πάντα (n. pl.) = *all things, everything*

\*See Chapter 7, Grammar 1, page 96.

Locate occurrences of this adjective in the stories in Chapters 7β, 8α, and 8β.

#### Exercise 8δ

Read aloud and translate:

1. πᾶσαι αἱ γυναῖκες πρὸς τὴν κρήνην σπεύδουσιν.
2. αἱ γὰρ μητέρες τὰς θυγατέρας ζητοῦσιν.
3. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν κρήνην ἀφικνοῦνται, οὐκ ἐκεῖ πάρεισιν αἱ θυγατέρες.
4. οἴκαδε οὖν τρέχουσιν αἱ γυναῖκες καὶ τοῖς ἀνδράσι πάντα λέγουσιν.
5. οἱ οὖν ἄνδρες πρὸς τοὺς ἀγροὺς ὁρμῶνται· μέλλουσι γὰρ τὰς θυγατέρας ζητεῖν.
6. ἀφικόμενοι (*having arrived*) δὲ εἰς τοὺς ἀγρούς, οἱ πατέρες τὰς θυγατέρας ὁρῶσι νεανίαις τισὶ διαλεγομένᾳς.
7. τὰς οὖν θυγατέρας καλοῦσι καί, “ἔλθετε δεῦρο, ὦ θυγατέρες,” φασίν· “μὴ διαλέγεσθε νεανίαις.”
8. αἱ οὖν θυγατέρες τοῖς πατράσι πειθόμεναι οἴκαδε αὐτοῖς ἔπονται.
9. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἴκαδε ἀφικνοῦνται, οἱ ἄνδρες πάντα ταῖς γυναιξὶ λέγουσιν.
10. αἱ δὲ μητέρες ταῖς θυγατράσι μάλα ὀργίζονται (*grow angry at + dat.*).

#### Exercise 8ε

Translate into Greek:

1. The mother tells (orders) her daughter to hurry to the spring.
2. But the daughter walks to the field and looks for her father.
3. And she finds her father working in the field with other men.
4. And she says to her father, “Father, mother tells me to bring water (ὕδωρ) from the spring.
5. “But all the other girls are playing (*use παίζω*).”
6. And her father says, “Obey your mother, daughter. Fetch (*use φέρω*) the water.”
7. And at the spring the daughter sees many women; they are all carrying water jars.
8. So she says to the women, “Greetings, friends,” and she fills (πληροῖ) her water jar.
9. And when she arrives home, she tells her mother everything.
10. And her mother says, “Well done (εὖ γε); go now and play with the other girls.”

### Greek Wisdom

μελέτη τὸ πᾶν.

Περίανδρος (of Corinth)

## 5. Numbers

The cardinal adjectives in Greek from one to ten are:

1	εἷς, μία, ἓν	4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	7	ἐπτά	10	δέκα
2	δύο	5	πέντε	8	ὀκτώ		
3	τρεῖς, τρία	6	ἕξ	9	ἐννέα		

The numbers from five to ten are indeclinable adjectives; that is, they appear only in the forms given above no matter what gender, case, or number the noun is that they modify. For the number *one*, there is a full set of forms in the singular, given at the left below, with the masculine and neuter showing 3rd declension endings, and the feminine showing 1st declension endings similar to those of μάχαιρα (see Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 42). Compare the declension of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν above. The word οὐδεῖς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν or μηδεῖς, μηδεμία, μηδέν means *no one*; *nothing* as a pronoun and *no* as an adjective.

**Stems:** ἐν- for masculine and neuter; μι- for feminine

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	ἐν-ς > εἷς	μί-α	ἓν	οὐδεῖς	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν
<b>Gen.</b>	ἐν-ός	μι-ᾶς	ἐν-ός	οὐδενός	οὐδεμιᾶς	οὐδενός
<b>Dat.</b>	ἐν-ί	μι-ᾷ	ἐν-ί	οὐδενί	οὐδεμιᾷ	οὐδενί
<b>Acc.</b>	ἐν-α	μί-αν	ἓν	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν

Note the accents of the genitives and datives.

The declensions of δύο, τρεῖς, and τέτταρες are as follows:

M. F. N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)
δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

The ordinal adjectives (*first, second, third, etc.*) are as follows:

πρῶτος, -η, -ον	ἕκτος, -η, -ον
δεύτερος, -ᾱ, -ον	ἕβδομος, -η, -ον
τρίτος, -η, -ον	ὄγδοος, -η, -ον
τέταρτος, -η, -ον	ἕνατος, -η, -ον
πέμπτος, -η, -ον	δέκατος, -η, -ον

## 6. Expressions of Time When, Duration of Time, and Time within Which

Ordinal adjectives are used in expressions of *time when* with the dative case (see Chapter 6, Grammar 6e, page 88), and cardinal adjectives are used in expressions of *duration of time* with the accusative case, e.g.:

Time when: τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ = *on the first day*

Duration of time: δύο ἡμέρας = *for two days*

Cardinal adjectives are also used in phrases expressing *time within which* with the genitive case, e.g.:

Time within which: πέντε ἡμερῶν = *within five days*.

Compare the genitives ἡμέρας, *by day*, and νυκτός, *at/by night*.

## ✓ Exercise 8ζ

Read aloud and translate:

- αὐτουργῶ τινί εἰσι τρεῖς παῖδες, δύο μὲν υἱεῖς (*sons*), μία δὲ θυγάτηρ.
- οἱ μὲν παῖδες πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ πονουσιν, ἡ δὲ θυγάτηρ οἴκοι μένει καὶ τῇ μητρὶ συλλαμβάνει. νυκτὸς δὲ πάντες ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ καθεύδουσιν.
- τῇ δ' ὕστεραία ἡ μήτηρ τῇ θυγατρὶ, "οὐ πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐστὶν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ· δυοῖν ἡμερῶν οὐδὲν ὕδωρ ἔξομεν (*we will have*). ἴθι οὖν καὶ φέρε μοι ὕδωρ."
- ἀφικομένη (*having arrived*) δ' εἰς τὴν κρήνην, ἡ παῖς τέτταρας γυναικας ὁρᾷ τὰς ὑδρίας πληρούσας (*filling*).
- ἡ πρώτη γυνή, "χαῖρε, ὦ φίλη," φησὶν· "ἐλθὲ δεῦρο καὶ τὴν ὑδρίαν πλήρου (*fill!*)."
- ἡ δὲ δευτέρᾳ, "τί σὺ ἤκεις εἰς τὴν κρήνην; τί ποιεῖ ἡ σὴ μήτηρ;"
- ἡ δὲ παῖς ἀποκρίναμένη· "ἡ μήτηρ," φησὶν, "περίεργός (*busy*) ἐστὶν· πέντε γὰρ πέπλους ὑφαίνει (*is weaving*)."
- ἡ δὲ τρίτη γυνή, "σπεῦδε, ὦ ἄργε καί," φησὶν· "ἡ γὰρ μήτηρ σε μένει."
- ἡ δὲ τετάρτη γυνή, "μὴ οὕτω χαλεπὴ ἴσθι," φησὶν· "ἡ γὰρ παῖς ἤδη σπεύδει."
- ἡ οὖν παῖς τὴν πᾶσαν ὑδρίαν ταχέως πληροῖ (*fills*) καὶ οἴκαδε σπεύδει.

## ✓ Exercise 8η

Read aloud and translate:

- αἱ θυγατέρες τῇ μητρὶ πειθόμεναι τὸν πατέρα ἐγείρουσι καὶ πείθουσιν αὐτὸν Ἀθήναζε πορεύεσθαι.
- ὁ πατήρ τοὺς μὲν παῖδας οἴκοι λείπει, ταῖς δὲ θυγατράσιν Ἀθήναζε ἡγεῖται.
- μακρὰ ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ χαλεπὴ· τῇ δὲ δευτέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκεῖσε ἀφικνοῦνται.
- πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὁρῶσιν διὰ (*through*) τῶν ὁδῶν πανταχόσε σπεύδοντας (*hurrying*).
- ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφικνοῦνται, πολλὸν χρόνον μένουσι πάντα θεώμενοι.
- δύο μὲν ἡμέρας τὰ (*the things*) ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ θεῶνται, τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβαίνουντι.
- ἐννέα μὲν ἡμέρας Ἀθήνησι μένουσιν, τῇ δὲ δεκάτῃ οἴκαδε ὁρμῶνται.

8. τέτταρας μὲν ἡμέρας ὁδὸν ποιοῦνται, βραδέως πορευόμενοι, τῇ δὲ πέμπτῃ οἴκαδε ἀφικνοῦνται.

## Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Ο ΑΙΟΛΟΣ

Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:

Odysseus tells how he sailed on to the island of Aeolus, king of the winds, and almost reached home:

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου τοῦ Κύκλωπος ἐκφεύγομεν, ἐπανερχόμεθα ταχέως πρὸς τοὺς ἐταίρους. οἱ δέ, ἐπεὶ ἡμᾶς ὀρώσιν, χαίρουσιν. τῇ δ' ὕστεραίᾳ κελεύω αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν ναῦν αὖθις εἰσβαίνειν. οὕτως οὖν ἀποπλέομεν.

[τοῦ ἄντρου, the cave ἐπανερχόμεθα, we return]

1. What do Odysseus and his men do when they escape from the cave of the Cyclops?
2. What does Odysseus order his men to do the next day?

δι' ὀλίγου δὲ εἰς νῆσον Αἰολίαν ἀφικνούμεθα. ἐκεῖ δὲ οἰκεῖ ὁ Αἴολος, βασιλεὺς τῶν ἀνέμων. ἡμᾶς δὲ εὐμενῶς δεχόμενος πολὺν χρόνον ξενίζει. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγὼ κελεύω αὐτὸν ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμπειν, παρέχει μοι ἄσκόν τινα, εἰς ὃν πάντας τοὺς ἀνέμους καταδεῖ πλὴν ἐνός, Ζεφύρου πρᾶου.

[Αἰολίαν, of Aeolus (king of the winds) τῶν ἀνέμων, of the winds εὐμενῶς, kindly ξενίζει, entertains ἄσκόν, bag ὃν, which καταδεῖ, he ties up πλὴν + gen., except Ζεφύρου, Zephyr (the west wind) πρᾶου, gentle]

3. Where do Odysseus and his men arrive next?
4. How long do Odysseus and his men stay with Aeolus?
5. What does Aeolus give Odysseus at his departure?
6. What wind was not in the bag?

ἐννέα μὲν οὖν ἡμέρας πλέομεν, τῇ δὲ δεκάτῃ ὀρώμεν τὴν πατρίδα γῆν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγὼ καθεύδω· οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι, ἐπεὶ ὀρώσί με καθεύδοντα, οὕτω λέγουσιν· “τί ἐν τῷ ἄσκῳ ἔνεστιν; πολλὺς δῆπου χρῦσός ἐνεστιν, πολὺ τε ἀργύριον, δῶρα τοῦ Αἰόλου. ἄγετε δὴ, λύετε τὸν ἄσκον καὶ τὸν χρῦσὸν αἰρεῖτε.”

[τὴν πατρίδα γῆν, our fatherland καθεύδοντα, sleeping δῆπου, surely χρῦσός, gold ἀργύριον, silver δῶρα, gifts ἄγετε δὴ, come on!]

7. How long do Odysseus and his men sail?
8. When they come within sight of their fatherland, what does Odysseus do?
9. What do his comrades think is in the bag?

ἐπεὶ δὲ λύουσιν τὸν ἄσκον, εὐθὺς ἐκπέτονται πάντες οἱ ἄνεμοι καὶ χειμῶνα δεινὸν ποιοῦσι καὶ τὴν ναῦν ἀπὸ τῆς πατρίδος γῆς ἀπελαύνουσιν. ἐγὼ δὲ ἐγείρομαι καὶ γινώσκω τί γίνεται. ἀθῦμῳ οὖν καὶ βούλομαι ῥίπτειν ἐμαυτὸν εἰς τὴν

θάλατταν· οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι σφύζουσίν με. οὕτως οὖν οἱ ἄνεμοι ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν τοῦ Αἰόλου νῆσον πάλιν φέρουσιν.

[εὐθὺς, at once ἐκπέτονται, fly out ἀθῦμῳ, I despair ῥίπτειν, to throw πάλιν, again]

10. What happens when the men open the bag?
11. How does Odysseus react when he wakes up?
12. Where do the winds carry the ship?

### Exercise 80

Translate into Greek:

1. When we arrive at the island, I go to the house of Aeolus.
2. And he, when he sees me, is very amazed and says: “What is the matter (= what are you suffering)? Why are you here again?”
3. And I answer: “My comrades are to blame. For they loosed (ἔλυσαν) the winds. But come to our aid, friend.”
4. But Aeolus says: “Go away (ἄπιτε) from the island quickly. It is not possible to come to your aid. For the gods surely (δήπου) hate (use μισέω) you.”

## Classical Greek

### Sappho: The Deserted Lover: A Girl's Lament

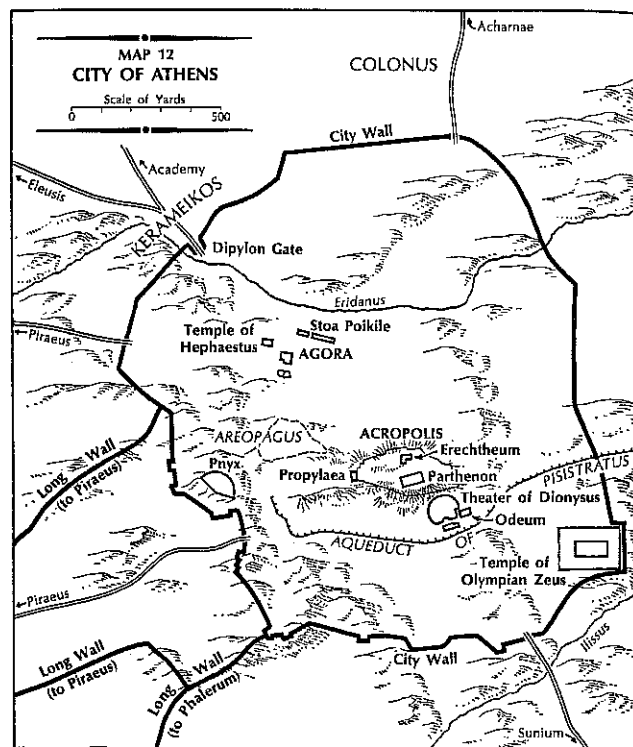
These lines are quoted by a writer on Greek meter (Hephaestion, 2nd century A.D.) without giving the author. Some scholars ascribe them to Sappho of Lesbos (seventh century B.C.), the greatest female poet of Greek literature. The passage (D. A. Campbell, *Greek Lyric Poetry*, page 52) is given at the left as it is quoted by Hephaestion in the Attic dialect and then at the right with Sappho's Aeolic forms restored.

δέδωκε μὲν ἡ σελήνη  
καὶ Πληϊάδες, μέσαι δὲ  
νύκτες, παρὰ δ' ἔρχεθ' ὥρᾱ,  
ἐγὼ δὲ μόνη καθεύδω.

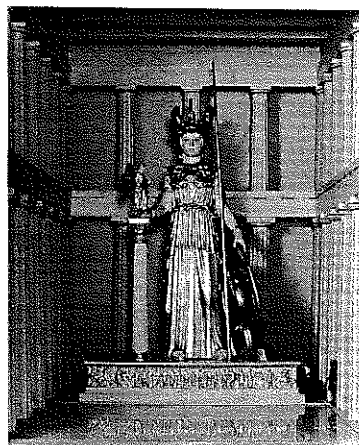
δέδωκε μὲν ἃ σελάννᾱ  
καὶ Πληϊάδες, μέσαι δὲ  
νύκτες, παρὰ δ' ἔρχεθ' ὥρᾱ,  
ἐγὼ δὲ μόνη κατεύδω.

[δέδωκε, has set ἡ σελήνη, the moon Πληϊάδες, the Pleiades (seven mythical daughters of Atlas and Pleione, changed into a cluster of stars) μέσαι, middle μέσαι δὲ νύκτες: supply a form of the verb to be in your translation παρὰ . . . ἔρχεθ' = παρέρχεται, passes ὥρᾱ, time μόνη, alone]

# 9 Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (α)



αὶ Ἀθῆναι



ὁρῶσι τὴν εἰκόνα τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς,  
ἐνοπλίου οὐσῆς καὶ Νίκην τῇ δεξιᾷ φερούσης.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἄγε; pl., ἄγετε, *come on!*  
ἐπανερχομαι [= ἐπι- + ἀνα-  
+ ἔρχομαι], infinitive, ἐπανι-  
έναι, *I come back, return*; + εἰς  
or πρὸς + acc., *I return to*  
ἐσθίω, *I eat*  
κάμνω, *I am sick; I am tired*  
πίνω, *I drink*

### Nouns

ἡ ἀριστερά, τῆς ἀριστερᾶς, *left hand*  
ἡ δεξιᾶ, τῆς δεξιᾶς, *right hand*  
ἡ θεός, τῆς θεοῦ, *goddess*  
τὸ ἱερόν, τοῦ ἱεροῦ, *temple*  
ὁ κίνδυνος, τοῦ κινδύνου, *danger*

### Adjective

κάλλιστος, -η, -ον, *most beautiful; very beautiful*

### Preposition

διά + gen., *through*  
ἐπὶ + dat., *upon, on*; + acc., *at; against; onto, upon*

### Proper Names

ἡ Ἀθηνᾶ, τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς, τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ, τὴν Ἀθηνᾶν, ᾧ Ἀθηνᾶ, *Athena* (daughter of Zeus)  
ἡ Νίκη, τῆς Νίκης, *Nike* (the goddess of victory)  
ἡ Παρθένος, τῆς Παρθένου, *the Maiden* (= the goddess Athena)  
ὁ Φειδίας, τοῦ Φειδίου, *Pheidias* (the great Athenian sculptor)

οὕτως οὖν πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. ἐκεῖ δὲ τοσοῦτός ἐστιν ὁ ὄμιλος ὥστε μόλις προχωροῦσι πρὸς τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν. τέλος δὲ τῷ Δικαιοπόλιδι ἐπόμενοι εἰς στοᾶν τινα ἀφικνοῦνται, καὶ καθιζόμενοι θεῶνται τοὺς ἀνθρώπους σπεύδοντας καὶ βοῶντας καὶ θόρυβον ποιοῦντας.

[ὁ ὄμιλος, *the crowd* στοᾶν, *portico, colonnade* θόρυβον, *an uproar*]

ἤδη δὲ μάλα πεινώσιν οἱ παῖδες. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος ἀλλαντοπώλην ὀρᾷ διὰ τοῦ ὀμίλου ὠθιζόμενον καὶ τὰ ὦνια βοῶντα. τὸν οὖν πατέρα καλεῖ καί, “ὦ πάππα φίλε,” φησὶν, “ἰδοῦ, ἀλλαντοπώλης προσχωρεῖ. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλεις σίτον ὠνεῖσθαι; μάλα γὰρ πεινώμεν.” ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τὸν ἀλλαντοπώλην καλεῖ καὶ σίτον ὠνεῖται. οὕτως οὖν ἐν τῇ στοᾷ καθίζονται ἀλλαντας ἐσθίοντες καὶ οἶνον πίνοντες.

[πεινώσιν, *are hungry* ἀλλαντοπώλην, *a sausage-seller* ὠθιζόμενον, *pushing* τὰ ὦνια, *his wares* ὠνεῖσθαι, *to buy* ἀλλαντας, *sausages*]

μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἄγετε,” φησὶν, “ἄρ’ οὐ βούλεσθε ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβαίνειν καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ θεᾶσθαι;” ὁ μὲν πάππος μάλα κάμνει καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει ἀναβαίνειν, οἱ δ’ ἄλλοι

λείπουν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ στοᾷ καθιζόμενον καὶ διὰ τοῦ ὁμίλου ὠθιζόμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβαίνουν. 15

ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἄκρᾱν τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ τὰ προπύλαια διαπερῶσιν, τὸ τῆς Παρθένου ἱερὸν ὁρῶσιν ἐναντίον καὶ τὴν τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς εἰκόνα, μεγίστην οὖσαν, ἐνόπλιον καὶ δόρυ δεξιᾷ φέρουσαν. 20  
πολὺν οὖν χρόνον ἡσυχάζουσιν οἱ παῖδες τὴν θεὸν θεώμενοι, τέλος δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἄγετε,” φησὶν, “ἄρ’ οὐ βούλεσθε τὸ ἱερὸν θεᾶσθαι;” καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς πόρρω.

[τὰ προπύλαια, *the gateway, the Propylaea* διαπερῶσιν, *they pass through* ἐναντίον, *opposite* τὴν . . . εἰκόνα, *the statue* οὖσαν, *being* ἐνόπλιον, *fully armed* δόρυ, *spear* ἡσυχάζουσιν, *stay quiet* πόρρω, *forward*]

μέγιστόν ἐστι τὸ ἱερὸν καὶ κάλλιστον. πολὺν χρόνον τὰ ἀγάλματα θεῶνται, ἃ τὸ πᾶν ἱερὸν κοσμεῖ. (ἀνεωγμέναι) εἰσὶν αἱ πύλαι· ἀναβαίνουν οὖν οἱ παῖδες καὶ εἰσέρχονται. πάντα τὰ εἴσω 25  
σκοτεινὰ ἐστίν, ἀλλ’ ἐναντίαν μόλις ὁρῶσι τὴν τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς εἰκόνα, τὸ κάλλιστον ἔργον τοῦ Φειδίου. ἡ θεὸς λάμπεται χρυσῷ, τῇ μὲν δεξιᾷ Νίκη φέρουσα τῇ δὲ ἀριστερᾷ τὴν Ἀσπίδα. ἅμα τ’ οὖν φοβοῦνται οἱ παῖδες θεώμενοι καὶ χαίρουσιν. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος προχωρεῖ καὶ τὰς χεῖρας ἀνέχων τῇ θεῷ εὐχεται· “ὦ Ἀθηνᾶ Παρθένε, 30  
παῖ Διός, πολιοῦχε, ἴλεως ἴσθι καὶ ἄκουέ μου εὐχομένου· σῶζε τὴν πόλιν καὶ σῶζε ἡμᾶς ἐκ πάντων κινδύνων.” ἐνταῦθα δὲ πρὸς τὴν Μέλιτταν ἐπανέρχεται καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτῇ ἐκ τοῦ ἱεροῦ.

[τὰ ἀγάλματα, *the carvings* ἃ, *which* κοσμεῖ, *decorate* ἀνεωγμέναι, *open* τὰ εἴσω, *the things inside, the inside* σκοτεινὰ, *dark* λάμπεται, *gleams* χρυσῷ, *with gold* τὴν Ἀσπίδα, *her shield* ἅμα, *at the same time* ἀνέχων, *holding up* πολιοῦχε, *holder/protectress of our city* ἴλεως, *gracious*]

πολὺν τινα χρόνον τοὺς τεκόντας ζητοῦσιν, τέλος δὲ εὐρίσκουσιν αὐτοὺς ὀπισθεν τοῦ ἱεροῦ καθορῶντας τὸ τοῦ Διονύσου τέμενος. ὁ 35  
δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἰδοὺ, ὦ παῖδες,” φησὶν, “ἤδη συλλέγονται οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἰς τὸ τέμενος. καιρὸς ἐστὶ καταβαίνειν καὶ ζητεῖν τὸν πάππον.”

[τοὺς τεκόντας, *their parents* ὀπισθεν + gen., *behind* καθορῶντας, *looking down on* τὸ . . . τέμενος, *the sanctuary* συλλέγονται, *are gathering*]

καταβαίνουν οὖν καὶ σπεύδουσι πρὸς τὴν στοᾶν· ἐκεῖ δὲ εὐρίσκουσι τὸν πάππον ὀργίλως ἔχοντα· “ὦ τέκνον,” φησὶν, “τί ποιεῖς; 40  
τί με λείπεις τοσοῦτον χρόνον; τί τὴν πομπὴν οὐ θεώμεθα;” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “θάρρει, ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν· “νῦν γὰρ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Διονύσου τέμενος πορευόμεθα· δι’ ὀλίγου γὰρ γίγνεται ἡ πομπή. ἄγε δὴ.” οὕτω λέγει καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς πρὸς τὸ τέμενος.

[ὀργίλως ἔχοντα, *being angry, in a bad temper* τέκνον, *child* τὴν πομπήν, *the procession* θάρρει, *cheer up!*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words (ὁ δῆμος = the people):

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. democracy (what does τὸ κράτος mean?) | 4. endemic  |
| 2. demagogue                             | 5. epidemic |
| 3. demography                            | 6. pandemic |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Active Voice

In the last chapter you learned the forms of the present, progressive participle in the middle voice, e.g., λυόμενος, λυομένη, λυόμενον, which has the same endings for case, number, and gender as the adjective καλός, καλή, καλόν.

In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter you have met many forms of the *present active participle*, e.g., σπεύδοντας, *hurrying*, βοῶντας, *shouting*, and ποιοῦντας, *making*. Present active participles, like present middle participles, do not refer to time as such but describe the action as in process, ongoing, or progressive.

Present active participles, like the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (Chapter 8, Grammar 4, page 126) have 3rd declension endings in the masculine and neuter and 1st declension endings in the feminine. They have the suffix -οντ- in the masculine and neuter and the suffix -ουσ- in the feminine. There is no -ς in the nominative masculine singular. The τ is lost in the masculine and neuter nominative and vocative singulars, since all stop consonants are lost in word-final position, and in the masculine the ο is lengthened to ω; thus for the verb εἰμί the masculine participle (stem, ὄντ-) is ὦν and the neuter is ὄν. In the masculine and neuter dative plurals, the ντ is lost before the σ, with a resulting spelling of οῖσι(ν). Present active participles are declined as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
The verb εἰμί:			
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	ὄντ > ὄν	οὔσ-α	ὄντ > ὄν
<b>Gen.</b>	ὄντ-ος	οὔσ-ης	ὄντ-ος
<b>Dat.</b>	ὄντ-ι	οὔσ-ῃ	ὄντ-ι
<b>Acc.</b>	ὄντ-α	οὔσ-αν	ὄντ > ὄν
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	ὄντ-ες	οὔσ-αι	ὄντ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	ὄντ-ων	οὔσ-ῶν	ὄντ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	ὄντ-σι(ν) > οὔσι(ν)	οὔσ-αις	ὄντ-σι(ν) > οὔσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	ὄντ-ας	οὔσ-ᾶς	ὄντ-α
The verb λύω:			
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λύ-ων	λύ-ουσα	λύ-ον
<b>Gen.</b>	λύ-οντος	λύ-ούσης	λύ-οντος
<b>Dat.</b>	λύ-οντι	λύ-ούσῃ	λύ-οντι
<b>Acc.</b>	λύ-οντα	λύ-ουσαν	λύ-ον
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λύ-οντες	λύ-ουσαι	λύ-οντα
<b>Gen.</b>	λύ-όντων	λύ-ουσῶν	λύ-όντων
<b>Dat.</b>	λύ-ουσι(ν)	λύ-ούσαις	λύ-ουσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	λύ-οντας	λύ-ούσᾶς	λύ-οντα

For the participles of contract verbs, we show how the contractions work in the nominative singular but then give only contracted forms:

The verb φιλέω:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	φιλέ-ων > φιλῶν	φιλέ-ουσα > φιλοῦσα	φιλέ-ον > φιλοῦν
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλοῦντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλοῦντων
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσᾶς	φιλοῦντα

The verb τιμάω:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	τιμά-ων > τιμῶν	τιμά-ουσα > τιμῶσα	τιμά-ον > τιμῶν
<b>Gen.</b>	τιμῶντος	τιμώσης	τιμῶντος
<b>Dat.</b>	τιμῶντι	τιμώσῃ	τιμῶντι
<b>Acc.</b>	τιμῶντα	τιμῶσαν	τιμῶν

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	τιμῶντες	τιμῶσαι	τιμῶντα
<b>Gen.</b>	τιμῶντων	τιμῶσων	τιμῶντων
<b>Dat.</b>	τιμῶσι(ν)	τιμῶσαις	τιμῶσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τιμῶντας	τιμῶσᾶς	τιμῶντα

### Exercise 9α

1. Locate twelve present active participles in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, identify the gender, case, and number of each, and locate the noun, pronoun, or subject of a verb that each participle modifies.
2. Fill in the present participles on the four Verb Charts on which you entered forms for Exercises 4α and 5α.

### Exercise 9β

Write the correct form of the present participle of the verb given in parentheses to agree with the following article-noun groups:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. οἱ παῖδες (τρέχω)                       | 6. τὰς γυναῖκας (λέγω) <i>λεγούσας</i>  |
| 2. τῷ ἀνδρί (βαδίζω)                       | 7. τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν (εὐχομαι)            |
| 3. τοὺς νεανίᾳς (τιμάω)                    | 8. τοῦ δούλου (πονέω) <i>πονύουτος</i>  |
| 4. τοῖς παισὶ(ν) (εἰμί)                    | 9. αἱ παρθένοι (ἀκούω) <i>ἀκοῦσάσαι</i> |
| 5. τῶν νεανιδῶν (μάχομαι) <i>μαχομένων</i> | 10. τοῦ ἀγγέλου (βοάω) <i>βοῶντος</i>   |

### Exercise 9γ

Complete each of the following sentences by adding the correct form of a participle to translate the verb in parentheses, and then translate the sentence:

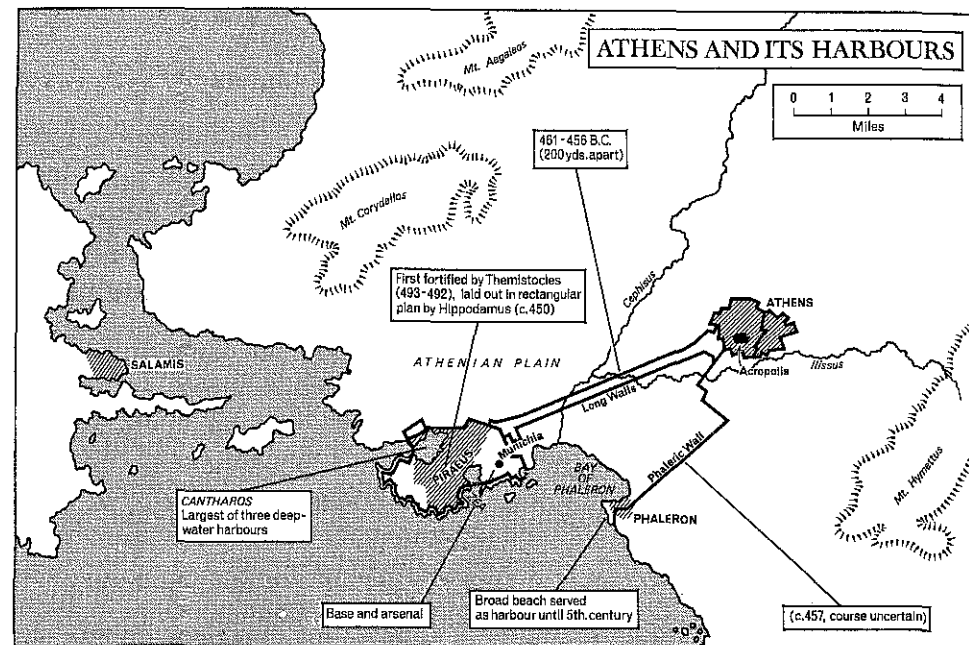
1. οἱ δοῦλοι ἤκουσι τοὺς βοῦς (leading). *ἤχοντες*
2. ὁ πολίτης ξένον τινὰ ὁρᾷ πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ (waiting). *μένοντα*
3. αἱ γυναῖκες ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καθίζονται τοὺς παῖδας (watching). *θεώμεναι, or θεωροῦσας*
4. οἱ παῖδες οὐ παύονται λίθους (throwing). *παλλόντες*
5. οἱ ἄνδρες θεῶνται τὴν παρθένον πρὸς τὴν πόλιν (running). *τρέχουσα*

### Exercise 9δ

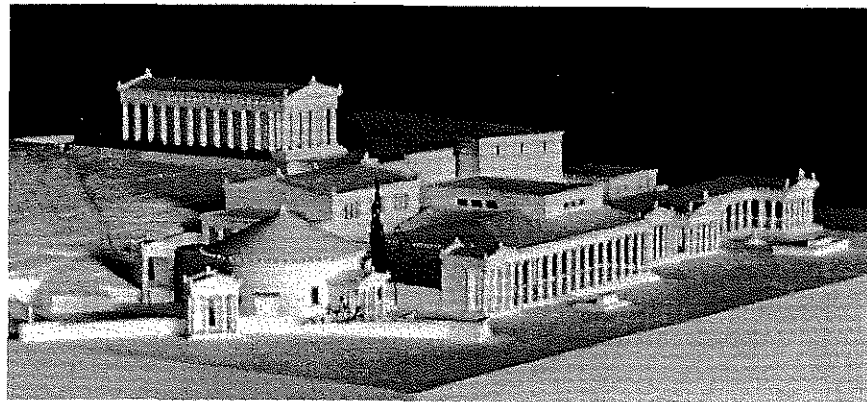
Translate the following pairs of sentences:

1. οἱ παῖδες ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ καθίζονται οἶνον πίνοντες.  
The slaves hurry home, driving the oxen. *οἱ δούλοι*
2. ἄρ' ὁρᾷς τὴν παρθένον εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν σπεύδουσαν;  
The foreigner sees the boys running into the agora.
3. πάντες ἀκούουσι τοῦ ἀλλαντοπώλου τὰ ὄνια βοῶντος.  
No one hears the girl calling her mother.

4. οἱ ἄνδρες τὰς γυναῖκας λείπουσιν ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τὸ δεῖπνον παρασκευαζούσας.  
The boy finds his father waiting in the agora.
5. ὁ νεανίας τὴν παρθένον φιλεῖ μάλα καλὴν οὔσαν.  
The father honors the boy who is (= *being*) very brave.



The Piraeus and Athens in the time of Pericles



Reconstruction of the agora at Athens as seen from the southeast, about 400 B.C.

## The City of Athens

The city to which Dicaeopolis and his family journeyed was largely built after the battle of Salamis, since the earlier city and its temples were destroyed when the Persians occupied and sacked Athens. A visitor coming by sea would arrive at the Piraeus, the greatest port in Greece and perhaps its finest natural harbor. The fortification of the Piraeus was begun by Themistocles in 493–492 B.C. It was completed after the Greek victory at Plataea, when the city of Athens was rebuilt and connected to the Piraeus by the Long Walls, making Athens virtually impregnable as long as she controlled the seas.

Leaving the harbor quarter, visitors would have made their way through the marketplace and town of Piraeus to the road that led between the Long Walls, and then they would have walked the seven miles or ten kilometers to Athens through continuous traffic of mules and ox-carts carrying goods to and from the city. From a distance they would have seen the Parthenon dominating the Acropolis and perhaps the spear of the great statue of Athena in full armor, which stood outside the Parthenon.

Entering the city, they would see on their left close to the city wall the Pnyx, a large open slope where the Assembly met (see map, page 132). They would then pass between the Areopagus (Hill of Ares), a bare outcrop of rock of immemorial sanctity, and the Acropolis into the agora. This was the center of Athens. On the left stood the Strategion or Generals' Headquarters (to the left of and not shown in the model on the facing page) and then (see model) the Tholos (the round magistrates' clubhouse), the Metroon (Archive), the temple of Apollo Patroos, and the stoa of Zeus; behind the Metroon stood the Bouleuterion (Council Chamber); on the right (not shown in the model) were the law courts. On the hill behind the Bouleuterion there still stands the temple of Hephaestus, the best preserved of all Greek temples. In the agora itself were great altars to Zeus and to the ten eponymous heroes of Athens, and there were also fine marble colonnades (stoas), where people could rest and talk in the shade.

The agora was not only the seat of government but also the market and mercantile center of Athens. Here you could buy anything, as a comic poet of this time wrote:

You will find everything sold together in the same place at Athens: figs, witnesses to summonses, bunches of grapes, turnips, pears, apples, givers of evidence, roses, medlars, porridge, honeycombs, chickpeas, lawsuits, puddings, myrtle, allotment-machines, irises, lambs, waterclocks, laws, indictments.

Pushing their way eastwards through the crowds of people conducting business or strolling in conversation, our visitors would reach the Panathenaic Way, which led to the Acropolis (see map, page 132, and illustrations, page 141). As they climbed to the top of the steep road, they would see on their right the little temple of Athena Nike, built to commemorate victory over the

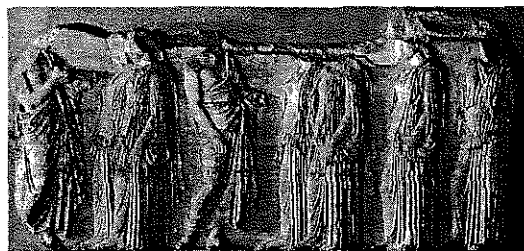
Persians (see model, page 141, and photograph, page 280). They would then enter the great monumental gateway, the Propylaea, designed by Mnesicles to balance the Parthenon but never completed, since work was interrupted by the outbreak of war in 431 B.C. Even so, it was a beautiful and impressive building, which included a picture gallery.

On leaving the Propylaea, our visitors face the Parthenon and in front of it the great bronze statue of Athena Promachos. The temple takes the traditional form of a cella, in which stood the statue of the goddess, surrounded by a peristyle of Doric columns. The architect, Ictinus, incorporated many subtleties in the basically simple design, and these give the temple a unique grace and lightness, despite its great size. The sculptures that adorned the two pediments, the 92 metopes, and the frieze running around the cella were designed by Pericles' friend Pheidias. On the frieze was depicted the great Panathenaic procession, in which every fourth year representatives of the whole people of Athens brought the offering of a new robe to their patron goddess. Inside the cella was the great statue of Athena, standing in full armor, made of ivory and gold, so awe-inspiring that none could look on it without fear and admiration (see reconstruction, page 132).

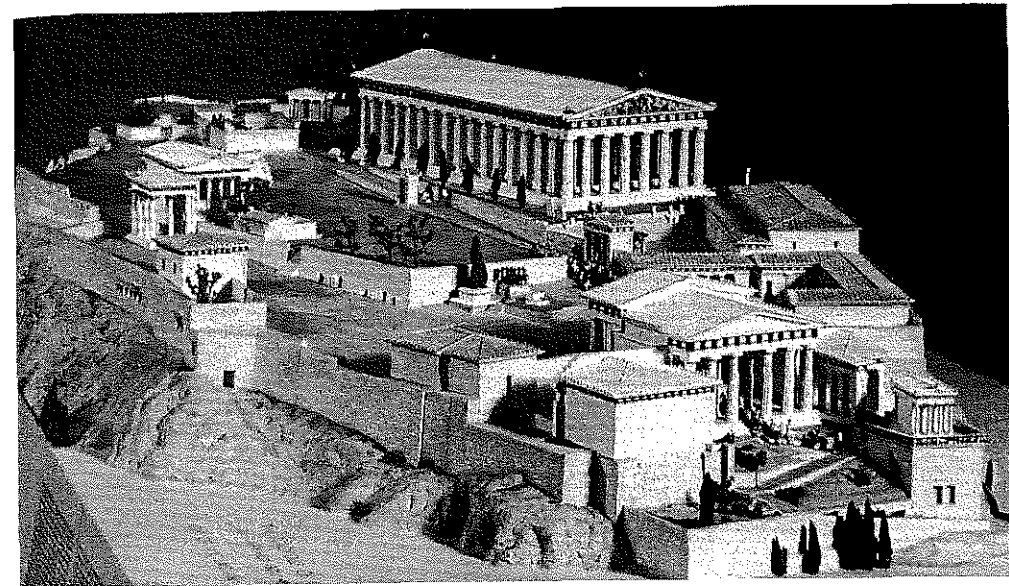
To the north of the Parthenon stood the Erechtheum, sacred to Erechtheus, the founder-king of Athens, and to Poseidon and Athena. The temple is irregular in plan, having three porticoes, each in a different style; it stood on the site of the most ancient shrine on the Acropolis. Here could be seen the sacred olive tree that Athena had given to the people of Athens and the sacred serpent, which embodied the spirit of Erechtheus.

Crossing to the southern edge of the Acropolis, behind the Parthenon, our visitors would look down on the precinct of Dionysus (see photograph, page 144). There was the theater (not built in stone until the following century) and the temple of Dionysus.

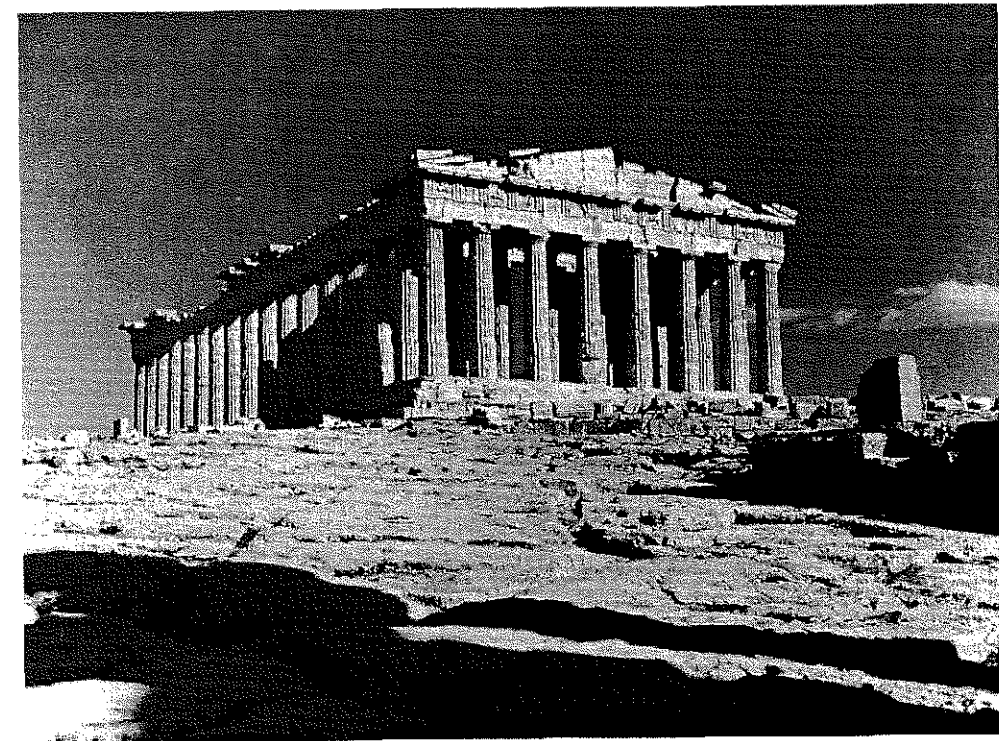
All these buildings, and others, were part of Pericles' master program. They were paid for by the tribute of the subject allies. His political opponents said, "The treasure contributed for the necessity of war was being squandered on the city, to gild her all over and adorn her like a harlot, with precious stones and statues and temples." Pericles answered that the people were not obliged to give any account of the money to the allies, provided that Athens maintained their defense and kept off the Persians. His program gave employment to an army of workmen and artists and made Athens a worthy center of her empire, "an education to Greece."



Maidens from the frieze of the Parthenon



Model of the Athenian Acropolis



The Parthenon seen from the Propylaea



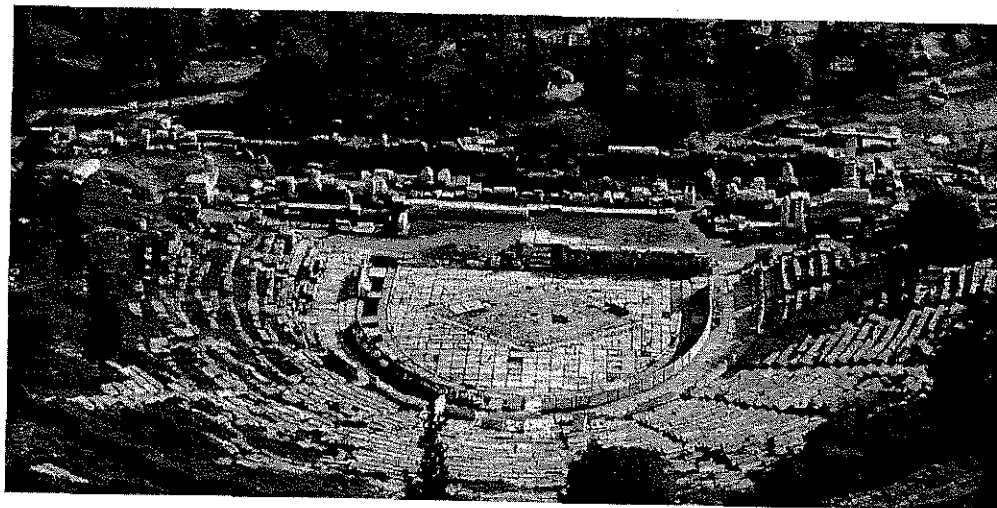
κωμάζουσιν. ἡ οὖν Μυρρίνη, φοβουμένη ὑπὲρ τῶν παίδων, “ἄγε δὴ, ὦ ἄνερ,” φησὶν, “ὁ πάππος μάλα κάμνει. καιρός ἐστὶν ἐπανιέναι πρὸς τὰς πύλας καὶ καθεύδειν.” ὁ δὲ πάππος, “τί λέγεις;” φησὶν, “οὐ κάμνω ἐγώ. βούλομαι κωμάζειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “γέρων εἶ, ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν· “οὐ προσήκει σοι κωμάζειν. ἐλθέ.” οὕτω λέγει καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς πρὸς τὰς πύλας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνοῦνται, τὸν ἡμίονον εὕρισκουσιν, καὶ πάντες χαμαὶ καθεύδουσιν.

[μεθύοντες, *being drunk* κωμάζουσιν, *are reveling* οὐ προσήκει σοι, *it is not suitable for you* τὸν ἡμίονον, *the mule* χαμαὶ *on the ground*]

## WORD BUILDING

Describe the relationship between the words in the following sets. From your knowledge of the words at the left, deduce the meaning of those to the right:

1. ἡ πόλις      ὁ πολίτης      πολιτικός, -ή, -όν
2. ἡ ναῦς      ὁ ναύτης      ναυτικός, -ή, -όν
3. ποιέω      ὁ ποιητής      ποιητικός, -ή, -όν



The theater of Dionysus

## GRAMMAR

### 2. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in -ντ-

In Vocabulary 9β you had the noun ὁ γέρων, τοῦ γέροντος, *old man*; as adjective, *old*. Nouns and adjectives such as this with stems ending in -ντ- decline the same as present active participles such as λῶν, λύοντος (see Grammar 1, pages 135–136). PRACTICE: Write all the forms of ὁ γέρων, τοῦ γέροντος.

### 3. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in a Vowel: ἡ πόλις and τὸ ἄστυ

Stems: πολι-/πολε-, *city*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ πόλι-ς	αἱ πόλε-ες > πόλεις
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς πόλε-ως	τῶν πόλε-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ πόλε-ι	ταῖς πόλε-σι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν πόλι-ν	τὰς πόλεις
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ πόλι	ὦ πόλε-ες > πόλεις

Stems: ἄστυ-/αστε-, *city*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστε-α > ἄστη
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ ἄστε-ως	τῶν ἄστε-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ ἄστε-ι	τοῖς ἄστε-σι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστε-α > ἄστη
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ ἄστυ	ὦ ἄστε-α > ἄστη

Note that the stems appear as πολι- and αστυ- in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singulars and as πολε- and ἄστε- in the other cases. Note the -ως ending instead of -ος in the genitive singular and ν instead of α in the accusative singular of πόλις. Contraction takes place in five of the forms.

Note that nouns of this type, as well as a few other words such as ἔλεως, *propitious*, accent the third syllable from the end in the genitive singular and plural even though the final syllable is long. Originally the genitive singular was πόληος, and this became πόλεως by *quantitative metathesis*, with the original accent retained. The genitive plural πόλεων accents its first syllable in imitation of the singular.

PRACTICE: Write the complete sets of the forms of ὁ μάντις, τοῦ μάντεως, *seer*, and of ὁ πῆχυς, τοῦ πῆχεως, *forearm*.

#### 4. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in Diphthongs or Vowels: ὁ βασιλεύς and the Irregular Nouns ἡ ναῦς and ὁ βοῦς

**Stems:** βασιλευ-/βασιλε-, *king*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ βασιλεύς	οἱ βασιλεῖς
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ βασιλέως	τῶν βασιλέων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ βασιλεῖ > βασιλεῖ	τοῖς βασιλεῦσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν βασιλέα	τούς βασιλέας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ βασιλεῦ	ὦ βασιλεῖς

The stem βασιλευ- is used before consonants, and the stem βασιλε-, before vowels. The words ὁ Θεσεύς and ὁ ἱερεύς are declined the same as ὁ βασιλεύς.

The stems of ναῦς and βοῦς were originally ναϝ- and βοϝ-. The letter ϝ (digamma) represented a *w* sound (compare Latin *navis* and *bovis*). This sound and letter were lost in the development of the Greek language.

**Stems:** ναυ-/νε-/νη-, *ship*

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ ναῦς	αἱ νῆες		ὁ βοῦς	οἱ βόες
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς νεώς	τῶν νεῶν		τοῦ βοός	τῶν βοῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ νηϊ	ταῖς ναυσί(ν)		τῷ βοϊ	τοῖς βουσί(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν ναῦν	τὰς ναῦς		τὸν βοῦν	τούς βοῦς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ ναῦ	ὦ νῆες		ὦ βοῦ	ὦ βόες

**Stems:** βου-/βο-, *ox*

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of ὁ μέγας βασιλεύς, *the great king*, ἡ καλὴ ναῦς, *the beautiful ship*, and ὁ ἰσχυρὸς βοῦς, *the strong ox*.

#### Exercise 9ε

In each of the following phrases put the noun and adjective into the correct forms to agree with the article:

- αἱ (μακρός) (ναῦς)
- τοῦ (καλός) (ἄστρ)
- τῶν (μέγας) (βασιλεύς)
- τῷ (μέγας) (βοῦς)
- τῆς (μέγας) (πόλις)
- τοῖς (μέγας) (ἄστρ)
- (πᾶς) τῶν (ναῦς)
- τὴν (πᾶς) (πόλις)
- τοῖς (ἰσχυρός) (βοῦς)
- τῇ (μικρός) (πόλις)
- τοῦ (μέγας) (βασιλεύς)
- τᾶς (μέγιστος) (ναῦς)
- οἱ (μέγας) (βοῦς)
- τὸν (σοφός) (βασιλεύς)

#### 5. Uses of the Genitive Case

- The genitive is frequently used to show *possession*, e.g., ὁ τοῦ παιδὸς κύων = *the boy's dog, the dog of the boy*. Note that the genitive is usually placed in the *attributive position* between the article and the noun (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7a, page 66) or after the repeated article: ὁ κύων ὁ τοῦ παιδός. Exception: the possessive genitives αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, and αὐτῶν, *of him / of it, of her, and of them* occupy the predicate position (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7b, page 66), e.g., ὁ κύων αὐτοῦ, *his dog*.
- The genitive is used to express the whole of which some part is mentioned; this is the *genitive of the whole* or the *partitive genitive*, e.g., τῶν παρόντων πολλοί = *many of those present*.
- The genitive case is used after certain prepositions, often (but by no means always) expressing ideas of *place from which*, e.g., ἀπό, *from*; διά, *through*; ἐκ, ἐξ, *out of*; μετά, *with*; and ὑπέρ, *on behalf of, for*.
- The genitive is used with certain verbs, e.g.:  
 ἡ Ἀριάδνη, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ὄρᾳ τὸν Θεσεῖα, ἔρᾳ αὐτοῦ.  
*Ariadne, when she first sees Theseus, loves him.*  
 ὁ Θεσεύς τῇ ἀριστερᾷ λαμβάνεται τῆς τοῦ θηρίου κεφαλῆς.  
*Theseus takes hold of the head of the beast with his left hand.*
- For the genitive of time within which, see Chapter 8, Grammar 6, page 129.

#### Exercise 9ζ

Translate the following:

- τί ἐστι τὸ τοῦ ξένου ὄνομα;
- ὁ βασιλεὺς δέχεται τὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἄγγελον.
- ἀφικνούμεθα εἰς τὸν τοῦ πατρὸς ἀγρόν.
- ὁ παῖς κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν βαδίζων τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς χειρὸς ἔχεται.
- οἱ πολῖται τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀκούουσι βουλόμενοι γινώσκειν τοὺς τοῦ βασιλέως λόγους (*words/proposals*).
- We hear the messenger's words.
- I am going to the house of the poet.
- They are looking for the girl's father.
- The mother hears the girl crying (*use δακρύω*) and hurries out of the house.
- The citizens take hold of the messenger and lead him to the king.
- Many of the women want to go to the city with their husbands.

## 6. Some Uses of the Article

- a. You have already met the following uses of the article (see Chapter 5, Grammar 3, page 58):

ὁ δέ = <i>and/but he</i>	ἡ δέ = <i>and/but she</i>
οἱ δέ = <i>and/but they</i>	αἱ δέ = <i>and/but they</i>
ὁ/ἡ/τὸ μὲν ... ὁ/ἡ/τὸ δέ = <i>the one ... the other</i>	
οἱ/αἱ/τὰ μὲν ... οἱ/αἱ/τὰ δέ = <i>some ... others</i>	

- b. The article + an adjective can form a noun phrase, e.g.:

Adjectives:	Noun Phrases:
ἀνδρείος, -ᾶ, -ον = <i>brave</i>	οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι = <i>the brave men</i>
σώφρων, σώφρον = <i>prudent</i>	αἱ σώφρονες = <i>the prudent women</i>
φίλος, -η, -ον = <i>dear</i>	οἱ φίλοι or αἱ φίλαι = <i>the friends</i>
πολέμιος, -ᾶ, -ον = <i>hostile</i>	οἱ πολέμιοι = <i>the enemy</i>

- c. The article + an adverb, prepositional phrase, or genitive can form a noun phrase, e.g.:

οἱ νῦν = <i>the now men = the men of today = the present generation</i>
οἱ πάλαι = <i>the men of old</i>
αἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ = <i>the women in the agora</i>
αἱ πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ = <i>the women at the spring</i>
ὁ βασιλέως = <i>the (son) of the king = the king's son</i>
τὰ εἶσω = <i>the things inside = the inside</i>
τὰ τῆς πόλεως = <i>the things (i.e., the affairs) of the city = politics</i>

- d. The neuter of an adjective + the article is often used as an abstract noun, e.g.:

τὸ καλόν = <i>beauty; virtue; honor</i>
τὸ αἰσχρόν = <i>dishonor; disgrace; vice</i>
τὸ ἀληθές or τὰ ἀληθῆ = <i>the truth</i>
τὸ δίκαιον = <i>justice</i>
τὸ ἓν = <i>the one = unity</i>

- e. The article + a participle forms a noun phrase that may be translated by a relative clause in English, e.g.:

οἱ παρόντες = <i>the ones being present = those who are present</i>
οἱ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἐργαζόμενοι = <i>the in the field working (men) = the men who are working in the field</i>
ὁ ἱερεὺς ὁ τὴν θυσίαν ποιούμενος = <i>the priest who is making the sacrifice</i>

These participles are said to be *attributive*, serving as simple adjectives; see Chapter 8, Grammar 1b, page 115.

## Exercise 9η

Read aloud and translate:

- ὁ πατὴρ τὸν παῖδα κελεύει ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν· ὁ δὲ οὐ πείθεται αὐτῷ.
- τῶν πολιτῶν οἱ μὲν οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχονται, οἱ δὲ μένουσι τὴν πομπὴν θεώμενοι.
- τῶν παρθένων αἱ μὲν πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ μένουσιν, αἱ δὲ μετὰ τῶν μητέρων ἤδη οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχονται.
- αἱ παρθένοι αἱ τὰ κανᾶ φέρουσαι κάλλισταί εἰσιν.
- οἱ τοὺς χοροὺς θεώμενοι μάλα χαίρουσιν.
- ἄρ' ὄρῳ τοὺς ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ πονοῦντας;
- οἱ σοὶ φίλοι βούλονται τὰ τῆς πόλεως γινώσκειν.
- οἱ νεᾶνιαι οἱ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν σπεύδοντες μέλλουσι τῷ πατρὶ συλλαμβάνειν.
- μὴ ταῦτά (*this*) μοι λέγε· ἀγνοεῖς (*you do not know*) γὰρ τὰ τῆς πόλεως.
- πάντες οἱ νῦν τῖμῳσι τοὺς τὴν πόλιν φιλοῦντας.
- οἱ σοὶ φίλοι βούλονται γινώσκειν τί ἐστὶ τὸ δίκαιον.
- αἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ διαλέγονται ἀλλήλαις περὶ τοῦ καλοῦ.
- σῶζε τοὺς ἐν τῇ νηί· ἐν μεγίστῳ γὰρ κινδύνῳ εἰσίν.

## Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Η ΚΙΡΚΗ

Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:

Odysseus comes to the island of Aea, where the witch Circe lives:

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμπει ὁ Αἴολος, ἀποπλέομεν λυπούμενοι καὶ δι' ὀλίγου ἀφικνούμεθα εἰς τὴν νῆσον Αἰαίαν· ἐκεῖ δὲ οἰκεῖ ἡ Κίρκη, θεὸς οὖσα δεινὴ. ἐγὼ δὲ τοὺς ἐταίρους πρὸς τῇ νηὶ λείπων ἐπὶ ὄρος τι ἀναβαίνω, βουλόμενος γινώσκειν εἴ τις ἄνθρωπος ἐν τῇ νήσῳ οἰκεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἀφικνοῦμαι, καπνὸν ὄρω πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν φερόμενον. πρὸς τὴν ναῦν οὖν ἐπανέρχομαι καὶ τῶν ἐταίρων τοὺς μὲν κελεύω πρὸς τῇ νηὶ μένειν, τοὺς δὲ κελεύω πρὸς μέσσην τὴν νῆσον πορευομένους γινώσκειν τίς ἐκεῖ οἰκεῖ. ὁ δὲ Εὐρύλοχος αὐτοῖς ἡγείται.

[λυπούμενοι, *grieving* εἴ τις, *if any* καπνὸν, *smoke* φερόμενον, *rising* Εὐρύλοχος, *Eurylochus*]

- With what feelings do Odysseus and his men set sail?
- How is Circe described?
- Why does Odysseus climb the hill?
- What does he see from the top of the hill?
- With what purpose in mind does Odysseus send some of his men to the middle of the island?
- Who leads them?

οἱ δὲ τὴν τῆς Κίρκης οἰκίαν εὐρίσκουσιν ἐν μέσῃ ὕλῃ οὖσαν· ἐγγὺς δὲ τῆς οἰκίας πολλοὺς τε λύκους ὁρῶσι καὶ πολλοὺς λέοντας. τούτους δὲ ὁρῶντες μάλα φοβοῦνται καὶ πρὸς τῇ θύρᾳ μένουσιν. ἔπειτα δὲ τῆς Κίρκης ἀκούουσιν ἔνδον ᾄδούσης. καλοῦσιν οὖν αὐτήν· ἡ δὲ ἐκ τῆς θύρᾳ ἐκβαίνει καὶ εἰσκαλεῖ αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ πάντες ἔπονται αὐτῇ· μόνος δὲ ὁ Εὐρύλοχος ἔξω μένει, φοβούμενος κίνδυνόν τινα. ἡ δὲ Κίρκη τοὺς ἄλλους εἰσάγει καὶ καθίζεσθαι κελεύει καὶ σίτον τε αὐτοῖς παρέχει καὶ οἶνον· φάρμακα δὲ κακὰ τῷ σίτῳ κυκᾷ.

[ὕλη, *woods* ἐγγὺς + gen., *near* λέοντας, *lions* τούτους, *them* ἔνδον, *inside* ᾄδούσης, *singing* μόνος, *only* ἔξω, *outside* φάρμακα . . . κακὰ, *evil drugs* κυκᾷ, *she mixes*]

7. What do the men see around Circe's house?
8. What feeling prompts the men to wait at Circe's door rather than going in?
9. What do they hear?
10. Why does Circe come out of the door?
11. Who follow her in?
12. Why does Eurylochus not go in?
13. What three things does Circe hand over to the men to eat and drink?

ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἑταῖροι ἐσθίουσι τὸν σίτον, ἡ Κίρκη ῥάβδῳ αὐτοὺς πλήττει καὶ εἰς τοὺς συφεοὺς ἐλαύνει· οἱ δὲ εὐθὺς σῦες γίνονται. ἔπειτα δὲ ἡ Κίρκη βαλάνους αὐτοῖς βάλλει ἐσθίειν καὶ λείπει αὐτοὺς ἐν τοῖς συφεοῖς.

[ῥάβδῳ, *with her wand* πλήττει, *strikes* τοὺς συφεοὺς, *the pigsties* εὐθὺς, *immediately* σῦες, *pigs* βαλάνους, *acorns*]

14. How does Circe change the men into pigs?
15. What does she now hand over to them to eat and where does she leave them?

### Exercise 90

Translate into Greek:

1. When Eurylochus sees what is happening, he flees and runs to the ship.
2. But I, when I hear everything, go to Circe's house, wishing to save my comrades.
3. And Circe hands over to me food and wine; then, striking (*use πλήττω*) me with her wand (*use ἡ ῥάβδος*), she orders (*use οἱ συφεοί*).
4. But I do not become a pig (ὁ σῦς); and she, being very afraid, is willing to free (λύειν) my comrades.

## Classical Greek

Simonides

The following is an epigram (no. LXXVI, Campbell) written by Simonides of Ceos (late sixth to early fifth century B.C.) on sailors lost at sea; they were taking spoils of war (ἀκροθίνια) from Sparta to Delphi as an offering to Apollo (ὁ Φοῖβος). Since the men were lost at sea and the hull of their ship was their tomb, the verb ἐκτέρισεν is used ironically.

τούσδε ποτ' ἐκ Σπάρτης ἀκροθίνια Φοῖβῳ ἄγοντας

ἐν πέλαγος, μία νύξ, ἐν σκάφος ἐκτέρισεν.

[τούσδε, *these men* ποτ(ε), *once* πέλαγος (τό), *sea* σκάφος, *hull of a ship* ἐκτέρισεν, *buried with due honors* (τὰ κτέρεα, *funeral gifts, honors*)]

## New Testament Greek

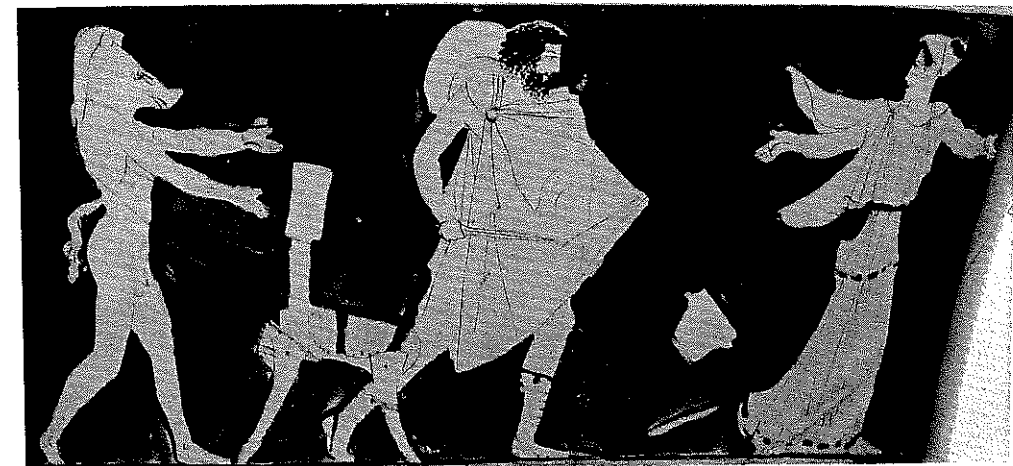
Luke 6.31–33

The Sermon on the Mount

“καὶ καθὼς θέλετε ἵνα ποιῶσιν ὑμῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ποιεῖτε αὐτοῖς ὁμοίως. καὶ εἰ ἀγαπᾶτε τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας ὑμᾶς, ποῖα ὑμῖν χάρις ἐστίν; καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἁμαρτωλοὶ τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας αὐτοὺς ἀγαπῶσιν. καὶ ἐὰν ἀγαθοποιήτε τοὺς ἀγαθοποιούντας ὑμᾶς, ποῖα ὑμῖν χάρις ἐστίν; καὶ οἱ ἁμαρτωλοὶ τὸ αὐτὸ ποιοῦσιν.”

[καθὼς, *as* θέλετε = ἐθέλετε ἵνα ποιῶσιν ὑμῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, *that men should do to you* ὁμοίως, *likewise* εἰ, *if* ἀγαπᾶτε, *you love* τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας, *those who love* (those loving) ποῖα . . . χάρις, *what thanks?* ἁμαρτωλοὶ, *sinners* ἐὰν, *if*]

Concluded in Chapter 10a



Odysseus threatens Circe.

# REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

The following are full sets of the forms of λύω, φιλέω, τιμάω, and εἰμί that you have met so far in this course:

## λύω: Active Voice

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
λύω		λύειν	λύων,
λύεις	λύε		λύουσα,
λύει			λύον,
λύομεν			gen., λύοντος, etc.
λύετε	λύετε		
λύουσι(ν)			

## λύω: Middle Voice

λύομαι		λύεσθαι	λύόμενος, -η, -ον
λύει or λύῃ	λύου		
λύεται			
λύόμεθα			
λύεσθε	λύεσθε		
λύονται			

## φιλέω: Active Voice

φιλῶ		φιλεῖν	φιλῶν,
φιλεῖς	φίλει		φιλοῦσα,
φιλεῖ			φιλοῦν,
φιλοῦμεν			gen., φιλοῦντος, etc.
φιλεῖτε	φιλεῖτε		
φιλοῦσι(ν)			

## φιλέω: Middle Voice

φιλοῦμαι		φιλεῖσθαι	φιλούμενος, -η, -ον
φιλεῖ or φιλῇ	φιλοῦ		
φιλεῖται			
φιλούμεθα			
φιλεῖσθε	φιλεῖσθε		
φιλοῦνται			

## τιμάω: Active Voice

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
τιμῶ		τιμᾶν	τιμῶν,
τιμᾷς	τίμᾱ		τιμῶσα,
τιμᾷ			τιμῶν,
τιμῶμεν			gen., τιμῶντος, etc.
τιμᾶτε	τιμᾶτε		
τιμῶσι(ν)			

## τιμάω: Middle Voice

τιμῶμαι		τιμᾶσθαι	τιμώμενος, -η, -ον
τιμᾷ	τιμῶ		
τιμᾶται			
τιμώμεθα			
τιμᾶσθε	τιμᾶσθε		
τιμῶνται			

## εἰμί: Active Voice Only

εἰμί		εἶναι	ὄν,
εἶ	ἔσθι		οὐσα,
ἐστί(ν)			ὄν,
ἐσμέν			gen., ὄντος, etc.
ἐστέ	ἔστε		
εἰσί(ν)			



Odysseus threatens Circe  
(a grotesque representation in the Boeotian Cabiran style)

# PREVIEW OF NEW VERB FORMS

Most of the verbs in the stories up to now have been in the present tense. In the stories in the remainder of this course you will also meet verbs in the imperfect, future, aorist, perfect, and pluperfect tenses.

The following is a brief overview of the Greek verbal system. It will give you a framework within which you will be able to place the various new verb forms. Note that only active voice forms are shown in the lists below.

First we give sample forms of λύω, which is typical of many Greek verbs that have past tense formations called *sigmatic 1st aorists*:

Present: λύ-ω = *I loosen, am loosening, do loosen*

Imperfect or Past Progressive: ἔ-λυ-ον = *I was loosening*

Sigmatic Future: λύ-σ-ω = *I will loosen, will be loosening*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist: ἔ-λυ-σα = *I loosened, did loosen*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist Imperative: λῦ-σον = *loosen!*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist Infinitive: λῦ-σαι = *to loosen*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist Participle: λύ-σας = *having loosened, after loosening, sometimes, loosening*

-κα 1st Perfect: λέ-λυ-κα = *I have loosened*

-κη 1st Pluperfect: ἔ-λε-λύ-κη = *I had loosened*

Some verbs have past tense formations without a σ as in the aorists above but with a thematic vowel (ο or ε) between the stem and the endings. These are called *thematic 2nd aorists*; here are the present and aorist tenses of such a verb (note the different stem in the 2nd aorist; see Chapter 11, Grammar 1, page 176):

Present:λείπ-ω = *I leave, am leaving, do leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist: ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν = *I left, did leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist Imperative: λίπ-ε = *leave!*

Thematic 2nd Aorist Infinitive: λιπ-εῖν = *to leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist Participle: λιπ-ών = *having left, after leaving, sometimes, leaving*

Notes on the lists above:

1. The imperfect or past progressive (e.g., ἔ-λυ-ον) is formed from the present stem, which is augmented by adding the prefix ἐ- or by lengthening the initial vowel, e.g., ᾄγ-ω > ᾗγ-ο-ν. Augmenting in one of these two ways signals past time. (For the imperfect or past progressive tense, see Chapter 13.)
2. The future tense is usually formed by adding -σ- to the stem and adding the same endings as for the present: e.g., λύ-σ-ω. (See Chapter 10.)

3. The sigmatic 1st aorist (e.g., ἔ-λυ-σα) is formed with the suffix -σα and with augment, which shows past time and appears only in the indicative mood. (See Chapter 12.) Augment is absent from the aorist imperative (λῦ-σον), which does not refer to past time, from the infinitive (λῦ-σαι), which usually does not refer to past time, and from the participle (λύ-σας), which usually describes an action that was completed prior to the action of the main verb but may describe an action without reference to time (further details in Chapters 11 and 12).
4. In thematic 2nd aorists (e.g., ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν) there is a change in the stem of the verb, a thematic vowel (ο or ε), and no -σα suffix. (See Chapter 11.)

## Aspect

Aspect or the way an action is looked upon is very important in Greek. There are three aspects: (1) *progressive*, of action in process or ongoing, e.g., "John runs/is running/was running"; (2) *aorist*, of simple action, sometimes in past time, e.g., "John ran," and sometimes not, e.g., "Run, John!"; and (3) *perfective*, with emphasis on the enduring result of a completed action, e.g., "John has won the race" = "John won the race and is now the winner."

## Voice

In Chapter 6 you learned that there are three voices in Greek, *active*, *middle*, and *passive*. In the present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect tenses, middle and passive forms are spelled the same and are distinguishable only by the context in which they are used (see Chapter 16). In the future and aorist there are different forms for the passive (see Chapter 17, Book II).

## Verb Stems and Principal Parts

In many verbs the stem of the present tense is different from the stem or stems from which the other tenses are formed, as in the verb φέρω, *I carry*:

Present tense, φέρ-ω: stem, φερ-

Future tense, οἴ-σ-ω: stem, οἴ-

Aorist, ἤνεγκ-ο-ν: stem, ἐνεγκ-

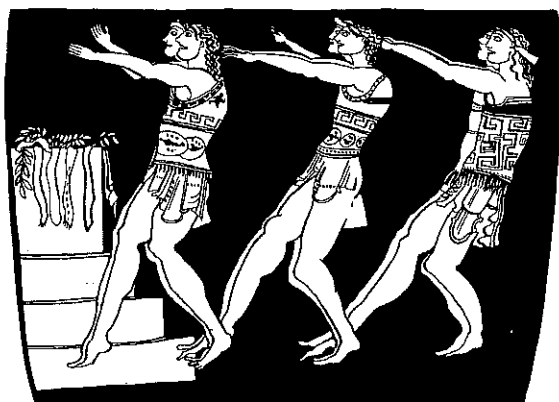
In order to make it easier for you to learn the *principal parts* of Greek verbs, i.e., the forms that you need to know in order to make the various tenses, we will give in subsequent vocabulary lists the stem or stems when they are different from what is seen in the present tense, e.g.:

φέρω, [οἴ-] οἴσω, [ἐνεγκ-] ἤνεγκον, *I carry*

We will not give stems when they are the same in the other tenses as they are in the present.

Greek verbs normally have six principal parts, but in the vocabulary lists in the remainder of Book I we will give only the first three, as above. They should be memorized carefully.

# 10 Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (α)



ὁ πρῶτος χορὸς προχωρεῖ· τὰ τοῦ Διονύσου ἔργα ὑμνήσει.

## VOCABULARY

### Verb

ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἰκνέομαι],  
[ἰκ-] ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, *I arrive*; + εἰς + acc., *I arrive at*  
γίγνομαι, [γενε-] γενήσομαι,  
[γεν-] ἐγενόμην, *I become*  
εὕρισκω, [εὔρε-] εὕρήσω, [εὕρ-]  
ἤϊρον or εὔρον, *I find*  
θεάομαι, θεάσομαι (note that  
because of the ε the α lengthens

to ᾱ instead of η), ἐθεασάμην,  
*I see, watch, look at*  
νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα, *I de-*  
*feat; I win*

### Adverb

καλῶς, *well*

### Interjection

φεῦ, often used with gen. of  
cause, *alas!*

τῇ δ' ὕστεραίᾳ, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἀνατέλλει ὁ ἥλιος, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὴν  
τε γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας ἐγείρει· “ἐγείρεσθε,” φησὶν· “δὶ ὀλίγου γὰρ  
θεᾶσόμεθα τοὺς χοροὺς. σπεύδετε. εἰ γὰρ μὴ σπεύσετε, ὥσπερ  
ἀφιξόμεθα.” ὁ δὲ πάππος ἔτι καθεύδει. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις, “ἐγείρου,  
ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν. “εἰ γὰρ μὴ σπεύσεις, ὥσπερ ἀφίξει. ἄγε, ἡγήσομαί σοι  
πρὸς τὸ θέατρον.” ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος ἐγείρεται, ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις πᾶσι  
πρὸς τὸ θέατρον ἡγεῖται. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφικνοῦνται, πλείστοι ἤδη ἄνθρωποι  
τὸ θέατρον πληροῦσιν.

[ἀνατέλλει, *is rising* ὥσπερ, (*too*) late τὸ θέατρον, *the theater* πλείστοι, *very many* πληροῦσιν, *are filling*]

ὁ οὖν πάππος στενάζει καί, “φεῦ, φεῦ,” φησὶν, “μεστὸν ἐστὶ τὸ πᾶν  
θέατρον] τοὺς οὖν χοροὺς οὐ θεᾶσομαι. τί ποιήσομεν;” ὁ δὲ  
Δικαιοπόλις, “θάρρει, ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν. “ἔπου μοι. θρᾶνον  
εὕρήσομεν.” καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς ἄνω καὶ θρᾶνον εὕρίσκει ἐν ἄκρῳ τῷ  
θεάτρῳ. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “καθίζεσθε, ὦ παῖδες,” φησὶν. “ἐντεῦθεν  
πάντα εὖ θεᾶσόμεθα.”

[μεστὸν, *full* θάρρει, *cheer up!* θρᾶνον, *bench, seat* ἄνω, *upwards* ἐντεῦθεν,  
*from here*]

ἐπεὶ πρῶτον καθίζονται, προχωρεῖ ὁ κῆρυξ εἰς μέσην τὴν  
ὀρχήστρᾱν καί, “εὐφημεῖτε, ὦ πολῖται,” φησὶν· “νῦν γὰρ γενήσονται οἱ  
χοροί.” (ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ πρῶτος χορὸς προχωρεῖ εἰς τὴν ὀρχήστρᾱν,  
καὶ τὰ τοῦ Διονύσου ἔργα ὑμνεῖ. θαυμάζει οὖν ἡ Μέλιττα θεωμένη  
καὶ χαίρει ἀκούουσα. “ὥς καλῶς χορεύουσιν οἱ νεᾶνῖαι,” φησὶν·  
“νικήσουσι τοὺς ἄλλους καὶ δέξονται τοὺς στεφάνους.”

[τὴν ὀρχήστρᾱν, *the dancing circle* εὐφημεῖτε, *keep holy silence!* ὑμνεῖ, *praises*  
χορεύουσιν, *dance* τοὺς στεφάνους, *the garlands*]

πέντε χοροὶ παίδων καὶ πέντε ἀνδρῶν ἐφεξῆς ἀγωνίζονται, καὶ  
πάντες ἄριστα χορεύουσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ παύεται ὁ δέκατος χορὸς, οἱ  
νικῶντες τοὺς στεφάνους δέχονται, καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες  
σπεύδουσιν ἐκ τοῦ θεάτρου.

[ἐφεξῆς, *in order* ἀγωνίζονται, *compete* ἄριστα, *very well*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the italicized words below and give the meanings  
of the English words:

1. He found fulfillment in an *agonistic* way of life.
2. She is studying *macroeconomics*.
3. He suffers from *xenophobia*.
4. He is a dangerous *pyromaniac*. What does ἡ μανία mean?
5. She is an *ophthalmic* surgeon.

## GRAMMAR

## 1. Verb Forms: Verbs with Sigmatic Futures

Most verbs form the future tense by adding the suffix -σ- and adding the same endings as in the present tense, e.g.:

## Future Active

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
λύ-σ-ω, <i>I will loosen</i>	λύ-σ-ειν, <i>to be</i>	λύ-σ-ων,
λύ-σ-εις, <i>you will loosen</i>	about to loosen	λύ-σ-ουσα,
λύ-σ-ει, <i>he/she will loosen</i>		λύ-σ-ον,
λύ-σ-ομεν, <i>we will loosen</i>		gen., λύ-σ-οντ-ος, etc.,
λύ-σ-ετε, <i>you will loosen</i>		being about to loosen
λύ-σ-ουσι(ν), <i>they will loosen</i>		
Future Middle		
λύ-σ-ο-μαι, <i>I will ransom</i>	λύ-σ-ε-σθαι,	λύ-σ-ό-μεν-ος, -η, -ον,
λύ-σ-ει or λύ-σ-η, <i>you will ransom</i>	to be about to	being about to
λύ-σ-ε-ται, <i>he/she will ransom</i>	ransom	ransom
λύ-σ-ό-μεθα, <i>we will ransom</i>		
λύ-σ-ε-σθε, <i>you will ransom</i>		
λύ-σ-ο-νται, <i>they will ransom</i>		

There is no future imperative.

The diphthong αι in the endings is counted as short for purposes of accentuation.

In the following, note what happens when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant instead of a vowel, as does λύ-ω above:

- a. If the stem ends in a *labial* (β, π, φ), the labial + the future suffix -σ- produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ψ, e.g.:

βλέπ-ω, *I look; I see*, βλέψομαι

πέμπ-ω, *I send*, πέμψω

γράφ-ω, *I write*, γράψω

- b. If the stem ends in a *velar* (γ, κ, χ), the velar + the future suffix -σ- produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ, e.g.:

λέγ-ω, *I say; I tell; I speak*, λέξω

διώκ-ω, *I pursue*, διώξω

φυλάττω, *I guard*, [φυλακ-] φυλάξω

δέχ-ομαι, *I receive*, δέξομαι

Note: ἔχ-ω, *I have; I hold*, has two future forms: ἔξω (irregular), *I will have*, and [σχε-] σχήσω, *I will get*.

- c. If the stem ends in a *dental* (δ, θ, τ) or ζ (= σ + δ), the dental or ζ is lost before the -σ- of the future, e.g.:

σπεύδ-ω, *I hurry*, σπεύσω

πείθ-ω, *I persuade*, πείσω

πάττω, *I sprinkle*, [πατ-] πάσω

παρασκευάζ-ω, *I prepare*, παρασκευάσω

## 2. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs in -ίζω

If the present tense form of a verb ends in -ίζω, its future stem ends in -ιε-, e.g., κομίζω, future stem, κομιε-. The future suffix -σ- is lost between the vowel at the end of the stem and the vowels of the personal endings. The vowels then contract as in the present tense of -ε- contract verbs such as φιλέω. We call futures formed this way *asigmatic contract futures*, e.g.:

κομίζ-ω, *I bring; I take*, κομιέ-(σ)-ω > κομιῶ, κομιεῖς, κομιεῖ, etc.

κομίζ-ο-μαι, *I get for myself, acquire*, κομιέ-(σ)-ο-μαι > κομιοῦμαι, κομιεῖ/κομιῇ, κομίζεται, etc.

## 3. Verb Forms: The Sigmatic Future of Contract Verbs

Contract verbs lengthen the final stem vowel and then add -σ-, e.g.:

φιλέ-ω, *I love*, φιλήσω, φιλήσεις, φιλήσει, etc.

Exception: καλέ-ω, *I call*, καλῶ, καλεῖς, καλεῖ, etc. (an asigmatic contract future with no difference in spelling between the present and the future)

ἡγέ-ο-μαι, *I lead*, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγήσει/ἡγήσῃ, ἡγήσεται, etc.

τιμά-ω, *I honor*, τιμήσω, τιμήσεις, τιμήσει, etc.

Note: θεάομαι, *I see, watch, look at*, θεᾶσομαι (note that because of the ε the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η)

A few verbs lengthen the ε of one form of their stem and add -σ-, e.g.:

γίγνομαι, *I become*, [γενε-] γενήσομαι, γενήσῃ/ῃ, γενήσεται, etc.

ἐθέλω, *I am willing; I wish*, [ἐθελε-] ἐθελήσω, ἐθελήσεις, ἐθελήσει, etc.

## 4. Verb Forms: Verbs with Deponent Futures

Some verbs, active in the present tense, have futures that are middle in form but active in meaning (i.e., deponent), often with a different stem, e.g.:

ἀκούω, *I hear*, ἀκούσομαι

βαδίζω, *I walk; I go*, [βαδιε-] βαδιοῦμαι

- \* βαίνω, *I step; I walk; I go*, [βη-] βήσομαι  
 βλέπω, *I look; I see*, βλέψομαι  
 βοάω, *I shout*, βοήσομαι
- \* γινώσκω, *I come to know; I perceive; I learn*, [γνω-] γνώσομαι  
 διώκω, *I pursue, chase*, διώξομαι  
 θαυμάζω, intransitive, *I am amazed*; transitive, *I wonder at, admire*, θαυμάσομαι
- \* ὁράω, *I see*, [ὀπ-] ὄψομαι
- \* πάσχω, *I suffer; I experience*, [πενθ-] πείσομαι  
 Note: πενθ-σ- > πενσ- > πεισ-
- \* πίνω, *I drink*, [πι-] πίομαι (note absence of -σ-)  
 \* πίπτω, *I fall*, πεσοῦμαι (irregular)  
 πλέω, *I sail*, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι
- \* τρέχω, *I run*, [δραμε-] δραμοῦμαι  
 φεύγω, *I flee; I escape*, φεύξομαι

The future of εἰμί, *I am*, is deponent:

**Stem:** ἐσ-

**Indicative**

ἔσομαι  
 ἔσει or ἔση  
 ἔσται (no thematic vowel)  
 ἐσόμεθα  
 ἔσεσθε  
 ἔσονται

**Infinitive**

ἔσεσθαι

**Participle**

ἐσόμενος, -η, -ον

Remember these compounds of εἰμί:

ἄπειμι, *I am away*, ἀπέσομαι  
 πάρεμι, *I am present; I am here; I am there*, παρέσομαι

### Exercise 10α

1. Make four photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the forms of βλέπω, φυλάττω, σπεύδω, and κομίζω that you have learned to date.
2. Make seven copies of the Verb Chart on page 283 and fill in the future indicatives, infinitives, and participles of the verbs for which you entered forms for Exercises 4α, 5α, and 6β. Keep all charts for reference.

make  
xeroxes

### Exercise 10β

Give the 1st person singular of the future of the following verbs:

1. νικάω νικήσω
2. τέρπομαι τέρψομαι
3. παύω παύσω
4. παρασκευάζω παρασκευάσω
5. πέμπω πέμψω
6. ἡγέομαι ἡγήσομαι
7. βοάω βοήσομαι
8. πείθω πείψω
9. δέχομαι δεξομαι
10. πάσχω πείσομαι

### Exercise 10γ

Give the corresponding future form of the following:

1. πέμπει πέμψει
2. λυόμενοι λυσόμενοι
3. τιμῶμεν τιμήσμεθα
4. φιλεῖτε φιλήσετε
5. σπεύδουσι(ν) σπεύδουσιν
6. ζητεῖν ζητήσῃ
7. βλέπουσα βλέψουσα
8. φυλάττομεν φυλάττομεθα
9. βαδίζει βαδίσει
10. ἐσμέν ἐσμεν

### Exercise 10δ

Read aloud and translate:

1. ἡγήσομαί σοι πρὸς τὸ θέατρον.
2. τὸν πάππον πείσομεν οἴκαδε σπεύδῃν.
3. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἄγγελον πέμψει πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.
4. τοὺς νεανίᾳς φυλάξομεν ἐν τῷ δεσμοτηρίῳ (prison).
5. ἡ Ἀριάδνη τῷ Θησεῖ βοηθήσει.
6. δι' ὀλίγου ἐσπερᾶ γενήσεται, ἀλλ' οὐ παυσόμεθα ἐργαζόμενοι.
7. πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ σπεύσομεν καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς θεᾶσόμεθα.
8. τίς ἡμῖν βοηθήσει; δι' ὀλίγου γὰρ ἐν κινδύνῳ ἐσόμεθα.
9. τὸν πατέρα οὐ πείσεις ἡμῖν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἡγεῖσθαι.
10. αἱ παρθέναι τέρψονται τοὺς χοροὺς θεώμεναι.

### Exercise 10ε

Translate into Greek:

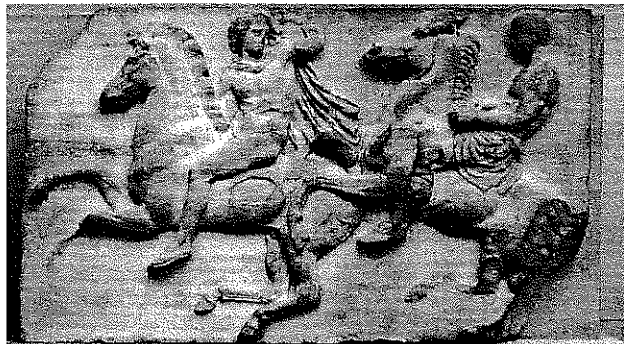
1. We will send a messenger to the king.
2. The king will hear the messenger and will come to our aid.
3. What will you do, boys? You will soon be in danger.
4. We will obey father and hurry home.
5. The young men will lead us, and we will follow them.

## Festivals

In the course of his praise of the democracy, Pericles says in his funeral oration: "We provide more recreations for the mind from toil than any other state, with competitions and sacrifices throughout the year." There were in fact over sixty days in the year that were holidays in Athens, when festivals were held in honor of the gods. These involved all members of the population, citizens and metics, men and women, children and slaves. Many festivals entailed processions, and most culminated in public sacrifice, followed by a feast in which all present joined.

The greatest of all the processions is represented on the Parthenon frieze. Here we see all classes of Athenians playing a part. The knights are shown, at first preparing for parade, then moving off, and later entering the procession at a canter. Stewards are portrayed, marshaling the procession. Next comes a group of elders, led by lyre players and flutists. Ahead of them are young men bearing jugs of holy water and others with trays of offerings. Girls carry wine jars, bowls for pouring libations, and incense burners. The victims are led toward the central scene on the east side, where in the middle stand the priestess and a magistrate with the robe that has been offered to Athena. On either side of them are seated larger figures, looking outward toward the procession; these are the twelve Olympian gods, watching and enjoying the procession.

Sacrifice was performed at the altar, which stood outside every shrine, in accordance with a set ritual. Priest and victims wore garlands. There was a call for holy silence. The altar and participants were sprinkled with water. Then the priest scattered sacred grain over the victim's head and cut a lock of hair from it, which he burnt in the altar fire. The victim was lifted up by attendants and stunned with a blow from a club. Then, while music played, the priest cut the victim's throat and caught the blood in a dish; this was poured as an offering over the altar. Next the victim was skinned and cut up. The inedible parts (the thigh bones wrapped in fat) were burned on the altar for the gods, and the rest was cooked and divided among the people to eat. Thus, gods and men shared the sacrificial banquet.



Knights in the Panathenaic procession on the Parthenon frieze

Every festival had its own ritual. Many, perhaps all, were celebrated with music and dancing. At some there were athletic competitions, notably at the Panathenaea. At the most important festival of Dionysus, the Greater Dionysia, the ten tribes into which the Athenian people were divided each put on a chorus, five of men and five of boys, which sang and danced in competition. Later in the festival, which lasted six days in all, there were three days of drama. On each of these days, three tragedies were performed in the morning, followed in the afternoon by a satyr play (an old form of drama in which the chorus consisted of satyrs, half-man, half-goat) and a comedy. The theater held between 17,000 and 20,000 people, so that a large proportion of the citizens could be present.

## Classical Greek

### Theognis

Theognis (fl., 550 B.C.) was a noble of Megara; he was exiled when there was a democratic revolution. Several of Theognis's poems, such as the following (lines 567–570) lament the transience of youth and the imminence of death. Indeed, such thoughts are characteristic of much Greek literature.

ἦβη τερπόμενος παίζω· δηρὸν γὰρ ἔνερθεν  
γῆς ὀλέσας ψυχὴν κείσομαι ὥστε λίθος  
ἄφθογγος, λείψω δ' ἐρατὸν φάος ἡελίοιο·  
ἔμψης δ' ἐσθλὸς ἐὼν ὄψομαι οὐδὲν ἔτι.

[ἦβη, in youth παίζω, I play δηρὸν, for long ἔνερθεν γῆς, beneath the earth ὀλέσας ψυχὴν, after losing my life κείσομαι, I will lie ὥστε, as ἄφθογγος, mute, dumb ἐρατὸν φάος ἡελίοιο (= ἡλίου), the lovely light of the sun ἔμψης . . . ἐσθλὸς ἐὼν (= ὦν), although being noble ὄψομαι, I will see ἔτι, any more]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 6.35–36

#### The Sermon on the Mount

“πλὴν ἀγαπάτε τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ὑμῶν καὶ ἀγαθοποιεῖτε καὶ δανίζετε μηδὲν ἀπελπίζοντες· καὶ ἔσται ὁ μισθὸς ὑμῶν πολὺς, καὶ ἔσεσθε υἱοὶ ὑψίστου, ὅτι αὐτὸς χρηστός ἐστιν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀχαρίστους καὶ πονηροὺς. γίνεσθε οἰκτίρμονες καθὼς ὁ πατὴρ ὑμῶν οἰκτίρμων ἐστίν.”

[πλὴν, but ἀγαπάτε, love τοὺς ἐχθροὺς, the enemies δανίζετε, lend μηδὲν ἀπελπίζοντες, expecting nothing in return μισθός, reward υἱοὶ, sons ὑψίστου, (the) Highest (i.e., God) ὅτι, because χρηστός, good, kind ἐπὶ, toward ἀχαρίστους, unthankful πονηροὺς, evil γίνεσθε = γίνεσθε οἰκτίρμονες, merciful καθὼς, just as]

# 



ὁ Φίλιππος νεανίας τινὰς ὁρᾷ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μαχομένους.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

αἴρω, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ, [ἄρ-] ἦρα,  
I lift; with reflexive pronoun,  
I get up

ἀποκτείνω, [κτενε-] ἀποκ-  
τενῶ, [κτειν-] ἀπέκτεινα,  
I kill

ἀποφεύγω, ἀποφεύξομαι,  
[φυγ-] ἀπέφυγον, I flee away,  
escape

★ δεῖ, impersonal + acc. and in-  
fin., it is necessary

δεῖ ἡμᾶς παρεῖναι, we  
must be there

ἔξεστι(ν), impersonal + dat.  
and infin., it is allowed/  
possible

ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν μένειν, we  
are allowed to stay, we  
may stay; we can stay

καταλείπω, καταλείψω,  
[λιπ-] κατέλιπον, I leave be-  
hind, desert

μένω, [μενε-] μενῶ, [μειν-]  
ἔμεινα, intransitive, I stay

(in one place); wait; transi-  
tive, I wait for

τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, active,  
transitive, I turn X; middle,  
intransitive, I turn myself,  
turn

τύπτω, [τυπτε-] τυπτήσω, no  
other principal parts of this  
verb in Attic, I strike, hit

### Nouns

ἡ βοή, τῆς βοῆς, shout

Cf. βοάω, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα,  
I shout

ἡ κεφαλή, τῆς κεφαλῆς, head  
οἱ τεκόντες, τῶν τεκόντων,  
pl., parents

τὸ ὕδωρ, τοῦ ὕδατος, water

### Preposition

πρό + gen., of time or place, be-  
fore

### Adverbs

εὐθύς, straightway, immedi-  
ately, at once

ποτέ, enclitic, at some time, at  
one time, once, ever

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη τοῖς παισὶν ἐκ τοῦ θεατρῶν ἡγουμένη τῷ ἀνδρί, “τί  
νυν ποιήσομεν;” φησὶν. “ἄρ’ ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν; αὔριον  
γὰρ γενήσονται αἱ τραγωδίαί. τὴν οὖν νύκτα ἐν τῷ ἄστει μενοῦμεν.  
ἀλλὰ ποῦ καθευδήσομεν; ἄρα δέξεται ἡμᾶς ὁ σὸς ἀδελφός;” ὁ δὲ  
Δικαιοπόλις, “ἀλλ’ οὐ μενοῦμεν ἐν τῷ ἄστει ἀλλ’ εὐθύς οἴκαδε  
πορευσόμεθα. πολὺν γὰρ χρόνον (ἀπὸ τοῦ κλήρου) ἄπεσμεν. ὁ δὲ  
Ξανθίᾱς, ἄργος ὢν, οὐδὲν ποιήσει. οἱ οὖν βόες πεινήσουσιν, τὰ δὲ  
πρόβατα ἀποφεύξεται, ὁ δὲ οἶκος (κατ’ εἰκὸς) ἤδη κῶεται. σπεύσομεν  
οὖν πρὸς τὰς πύλας καὶ οἴκαδε πορευσόμεθα. δεῖ γὰρ ἡμᾶς (πρὸ τῆς  
νυκτός) ἐκεῖσε παρεῖναι.”

[αὔριον, tomorrow αἱ τραγωδίαί, the tragedies ἀδελφός, brother τοῦ  
κλήρου, the farm πεινήσουσιν (from πεινάω), will be hungry κατ(ὰ) εἰκός,  
probably]

οἱ μὲν οὖν παῖδες (τῷ πατρὶ πειθόμενοι) πρὸς τὰς πύλας  
σπεύδουσιν. ὁ δὲ πάππος, “φεῦ, φεῦ,” φησὶν, “βούλομαι τὰς  
τραγωδίας θεᾶσθαι. ὑμεῖς μὲν οὖν οἴκαδε σπεύδετε, ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν τῷ  
ἄστει μενῶ (ὥς τὰς τραγωδίας θεᾶσόμενος.)” ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “μὴ φλυ-  
ᾶρει,” φησὶν. “οὐ γὰρ καταλείψομέν σε ἐν τῷ ἄστει. ἐλθὲ μεθ’ ἡμῶν.”  
καὶ ἡγείται αὐτῷ δεινολογουμένῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας.

[ὥς ... θεᾶσόμενος, to see φλυᾶρει, talk nonsense δεινολογουμένῳ, complain-  
ing loudly]

(ἐν ᾧ) δὲ σπεύδουσι διὰ τῶν ὁδῶν, ὁ Φίλιππος νεανίας τινὰς ὁρᾷ ἐν  
τῇ ὁδῷ μαχομένους. πολὺν γὰρ οἶνον πεπώκασι καὶ μεθούσιν. μένει  
οὖν ὁ Φίλιππος (τὴν μάχην θεώμενος) τέλος δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι νεανῖαι (ἕνα  
τινὰ) καταβάλλουσι καὶ οὐ παύονται τύπτοντες αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ  
Φίλιππος (φοβούμενος ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ) προστρέχει καί, “τί ποιήσετε, ὦ  
ἄνθρωποι;” φησὶν. “παύετε τύπτοντες αὐτόν. ἀποκτενεῖτε γὰρ τὸν  
τλήμονα.” (τῶν δὲ νεανιῶν τις ἀγρίως βοῶν πρὸς τὸν Φίλιππον  
τρέπεται καί, “τίς ὦν σύ,” φησὶν, “οὕτω πολυπράγμονεῖς;” καὶ τύπτει  
αὐτόν.) ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὴν γῆν καταπίπτει καὶ ἀκίνητος μένει.

[πεπώκασι (from πίνω), they have drunk μεθούσιν, they are drunk τὴν μάχην,  
the fight τὸν τλήμονα, the poor man πολυπράγμονεῖς, do you interfere? ἀκί-  
νητος, motionless]

οἱ δὲ τεκόντες τὰς βοᾶς ἀκούοντες τρέχουσι πρὸς τὸν παῖδα καὶ ὀρῶσιν αὐτόν (ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενον) αἴρουσιν οὖν αὐτόν, ὁ δὲ ἔτι ἀκίνητος μένει. ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” φησὶν, “τί ποτε πάσχει ὁ τλήμων;” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “φέρετε αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν κρήνην.” φέρουσιν οὖν αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν κρήνην καὶ ὕδωρ καταχέουσι τῆς κεφαλῆς. δι’ ὀλίγου οὖν κινεῖται καὶ ἀναπνεῖ. ἐπαίρει οὖν ἑαυτὸν καὶ τῆς μητρὸς ἀκούει λεγούσης. βλέπων δὲ πρὸς αὐτήν, “ποῦ εἶ σύ, ὦ μήτηρ;” φησὶν. “τί σκότος ἐστίν;” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “ἀλλ’ οὐ σκότος ἐστίν, ὦ παῖ· βλέπε δεῦρο.” ἀλλ’ οὐδὲν ὄρᾳ ὁ παῖς· τυφλὸς γὰρ γέγονεν.

[κείμενον, *lying* καταχέουσι, *they pour* X (acc.) *over* Y (gen.) κινεῖται, *he moves* ἀναπνεῖ, *he breathes again, recovers* σκότος, *darkness* τυφλός, *blind* γέγονεν, *he has become, he is*]

## WORD BUILDING

Study the relationships between the words in the following sets, and give definitions of each word:

- |                    |          |                        |           |
|--------------------|----------|------------------------|-----------|
| 1. μάχομαι         | ἡ μάχη   | ἡ νόσος                | νοσέω     |
| εὐχομαι            | ἡ εὐχή   | ( <i>sickness</i> )    |           |
| βούλομαι           | ἡ βουλή  | ὁ φόβος                | φοβέομαι  |
| λέγω               | ὁ λόγος  | 4. ὁ βασιλεύς          | βασιλεύω  |
| πέμπω              | ἡ πομπή  | ὁ πολίτης              | πολιτεύω  |
| σπεύδω             | ἡ σπουδή | ὁ κίνδυνος             | κινδυνεύω |
| 2. ἡ θέα           | θεάομαι  | ὁ παῖς                 | παιδεύω   |
| ἡ βοή              | βοάω     | ( <i>παιδ-</i> )       |           |
| ἡ νίκη             | νικάω    | 5. ὁ χρόνος            | χρονίζω   |
| ἡ σιγή             | σιγάω    | ὁ λόγος                | λογίζομαι |
| 3. σώφρων          | σωφρονέω | ( <i>calculation</i> ) |           |
| ( <i>σωφρον-</i> ) |          | ἡ ὀργή                 | ὀργίζομαι |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems

If the stem ends in a *liquid* (λ, ρ) or a *nasal* (μ, ν), an ε is added to the stem, the future suffix -σ- is lost between this vowel and the vowel of the endings, and contraction takes place, e.g., μεν-έ-(σ)-ω > μενῶ. This is an asigmatic contract future like the future of verbs in -ίζω (page 159).

Here are the present and the future active forms of μένω.

### Present Active

**Stem:** μεν-, *stay; wait; wait for*

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
μένω μένεις μένει μένομεν μένετε μένουσι(ν)	μένε    μένετε	μένειν	μένων, μένουσα, μένον, gen., μένοντος, etc.

### Future Active

**Stem:** μενε-

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
μενέ-(σ)-ω > μενῶ μενέ-(σ)-εις > μενεῖς μενέ-(σ)-ει > μενεῖ μενέ-(σ)-ομεν > μενοῦμεν μενέ-(σ)-ετε > μενεῖτε μενέ-(σ)-ουσι(ν) > μενοῦσι(ν)	μενέ-(σ)-ειν > μενεῖν	μενῶν, μενοῦσα, μενοῦν, gen., μενούντος, etc.

The present and future of liquid and nasal verbs are thus distinguished only by the circumflex accent in the future, except in the 1st and 2nd persons plural and most forms of the participle, where contraction produces a different spelling as well. The future middle forms of liquid and nasal verbs are also contract forms; see κόμνω below.

In most liquid and nasal verbs, however, the stem not only has an ε but is spelled differently in the future, e.g.:

αἴρω, *I lift*, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ

ἀποκρίνομαι, *I answer*, [κρινε-] ἀποκρινοῦμαι

ἀποκτείνω, *I kill*, [κτενε-] ἀποκτενῶ

βάλλω, *I throw*, [βαλε-] βαλῶ

ἐγείρω, *I wake X up; middle, I wake up*, [ἐγερε-] ἐγερῶ

κάμνω, *I am sick; I am tired*, [καμε-] καμοῦμαι

The verb μάχομαι, although not a liquid or nasal stem verb, also has an asigmatic contract future: μάχομαι, *I fight*, [μαχε-] μαχοῦμαι, μαχεῖ/ῃ, μαχεῖται, etc.

The verb ἐλαύνω, *I drive*, is a nasal stem verb but is irregular in the future: ἐλῶ, ἐλᾶς, ἐλᾷ, etc. Compare the present of -α- contract verbs.

**Exercise 10ζ**

Make two photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the forms of ἀποκτείνω and of ἀποκρίνομαι that you have learned to date.

**Exercise 10η**

Read aloud and translate:

- ἄρα μενοῦμεν ἐν τῷ ἄστει ἢ (or) οἴκαδε πορευσόμεθα;
- οἱ παῖδες τὸν πάππον ἐγεροῦσιν· δι' ὀλίγου γὰρ ὀρμησόμεθα.
- ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὸν λύκον λίθοις βαλεῖ.
- ἐσπέρᾳ δι' ὀλίγου γενήσεται· ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὸ ἄροτρον ἀρεῖ καὶ οἴκαδε οἴσει (future of φέρω).
- οἱ δοῦλοι τοὺς βοῦς λύσουσι καὶ οἴκαδε ἄξουσιν. *will reach*
- ὁ Θησεύς, ἀνδρείος ὢν, τὸν Μίνωταυρον ἀποκτενεῖ. *will kill*
- οἱ μὲν παῖδες οἴκοι μενοῦσιν, ἐγὼ δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ σπεύσω.
- ἄρ' οὐκ ἐγερεῖς τὸν πάππον; ὅψε γὰρ εἰς τὸ θεᾶτρον ἀφιξόμεθα.

**6. The Irregular Verb εἶμι**

The verb εἶμι in the *indicative* refers to future time and means *I will go*. In Attic Greek it is used as the future of ἔρχομαι. Thus: ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*; future, εἶμι, *I will come; I will go*

Here are the forms of εἶμι. Note that the verb has a long-vowel stem εἰ- (compare Latin *īre*) and a short-vowel stem ἰ-:

**Stems:** εἰ-/ἰ-, *come; go*

Compare the verb *to be*:

εἶμι, *I will come; I will go*

εἰμί, *I am*

εἶ

εἶ

εἶσι(v)

ἐστί(v)

ἴμεν

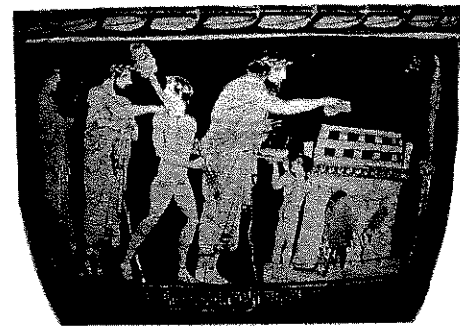
ἐσμέν

ἴτε

ἐστέ

ἴασι(v)

εἰσί(v)



Sacrifice to Apollo

Here is the verb εἶμι in the indicative, imperative, infinitive, and participle:

**Stems:** εἰ-/ἰ-, *come; go*

Future	Present	Usually Present	Usually Present
Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
εἶμι		ἰέναι	ιὼν,
εἶ	ἴθι		ιοῦσα,
εἶσι(v)			ιόν,
ἴμεν			gen., ιόντος, etc.
ἴτε	ἴτε		
ἴασι(v)			

As noted above, the indicative forms of εἶμι refer to future time. The imperative, infinitive, and participle, however, are used in Attic Greek in place of the corresponding present forms of ἔρχομαι; the infinitive and participle usually refer to present time, the imperative always. The imperative, infinitive, and participle of ἔρχομαι are not used in Attic Greek.

Here are six common compounds of the verb ἔρχομαι:

ἀπέρχομαι, *I go away*, ἀπειμι

εἰσέρχομαι + εἰς + acc., *I come in(to); I go in(to)*, εἴσειμι

ἐξέρχομαι + ἐκ + gen., *I come out of; I go out of*, ἐξειμι

ἐπανέρχομαι, *I come back, return*; + εἰς or πρὸς + acc., *I return to*,

ἐπάνειμι

προσέρχομαι + dat. or πρὸς + acc., *I approach*, πρόσσειμι

**Exercise 10θ**

- ἴθι δὴ, ὦ παῖ, καὶ τῇ μητρὶ εἰπὲ ὅτι πρὸς τῇ θύρᾳ μενῶ.
- πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἴμεν καὶ τὸν κύνα ζητήσομεν. *dog*
- τὸν κύνα ὀρώμεν πρὸς τὰ πρόβατα προσιόντα. *going*
- ὁ πατήρ ἡμᾶς κελεύει οἴκαδε ἐπανιέναι. *will go - return*
- αἱ παρθένοι εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἴασι.
- ἴτε, ὦ παρθένοι· ὁ πατήρ ὑμῖν εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἡγήσεται.
- ἡ μήτηρ πρὸς τὴν κρήνην εἰσιν· τὰς δὲ παρθένους κελεύει ἑαυτῇ συλλαμβάνειν.
- αἱ παρθένοι πρὸς τὴν κρήνην ἰοῦσαι μεγάλᾳς ὑδρίας φέρουσιν.
- αἱ γυναῖκες αἱ πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ ὀρώσιν αὐτὰς προσιούσας. *The women near the spring*
- “χαίρετε, ὦ παρθένοι,” φασίν. “πότε (when) πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἴτε;” *see THEM approaching*

## 7. Future Participle to Express Purpose

The future participle may be used to express purpose, often preceded by *ὥς*. In English we use a simple infinitive, e.g.:

ἐν τῷ ἄστει μενῶ ὥς τὰς τραγωδίας θεᾶσόμενος.  
lit., *I will remain in the city as being about to watch the tragedies.*  
*I will remain in the city to watch the tragedies.*

### Exercise 10ι

Read aloud and translate:

1. ἄγγελον πέμψομεν ὥς τοῖς πολίταις πάντα λέξοντα.
2. οἱ πολῖται πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν σπεύδουσιν ὥς τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀκουσόμενοι.
3. εἰς τὸ ἄστυ πορεύονται ὥς τῇ ἑορτῇ παρᾶσόμενοι.
4. παρασκευάζονται ὥς μαχούμενοι.
5. ὁ Θησεὺς πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην πλεῖ ὥς σώσων τοὺς ἐταίρους.

## 8. Impersonal Verbs

Greek has a number of verbs that are used in the 3rd person singular with an impersonal subject, often an infinitive or infinitive phrase. They are often translated into English with *it* as subject. You have met the following in the reading passage above:

Impersonal verb with infinitive phrase as subject:

ἄρ' ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν;  
*Is to stay in the city allowed/possible for us?*  
*Is it allowed/possible for us to stay in the city?*  
*May/Can we stay in the city?*

Impersonal verb with accusative and infinitive phrase as subject:

δεῖ ἡμᾶς πρὸ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκεῖσε παρῆναι.  
*Us to be there before night is necessary.*  
*It is necessary for us to be there before night.*  
*We must be there before night.*

### Exercise 10κ

Translate the following pairs of sentences:

1. καιρὸς ἐστὶν ἐπανιέναι· δεῖ ἡμᾶς εὐθὺς ὀρμᾶσθαι.  
Don't wait; we must hurry.
2. ἄρ' οὐκ ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν τὰς τραγωδίας θεᾶσθαι;  
Can't I stay in the city?
3. οὐ δεῖ σε τύπτειν τὸν νεανίαν.  
We must carry the boy to the spring.

4. δεῖ τὸν Φίλιππον τῷ πατρὶ πείθεσθαι.  
Melissa must stay at home.
5. ἄρ' ἔξεστί μοι γινώσκειν τί πάσχει ὁ παῖς;  
We are allowed to/We may go to the city; we must start immediately.

## 9. Review of Questions

ἄρα; introduces a question	πῶς; how?
ποῖ; where to? whither?	τί; why?
πόθεν; where from? whence?	τί; what?
πότε; when?	τίς; who?
ποῦ; where?	

### Exercise 10λ

Read aloud and translate:

1. τί βούλεται ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς εἰς τὴν νῆσον πλεῖν;
2. βούλεται γινώσκειν τίνες ἐν τῇ νήσῳ οἰκοῦσιν.
3. ὁ Κύκλωψ τὸν Ὀδυσσεῆα ἐρωτᾷ (*asks*) πόθεν ἦκει.
4. πῶς ἐκφεύγουσιν ὃ τε Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι;
5. ἄρα πάντας τοὺς ἐταίρους σφάζει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς;
6. ἐπεὶ ἐκφεύγει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς, ποῖ πλεῖ;
7. ὁ Αἴολος τὸν Ὀδυσσεῆα ἐρωτᾷ τίς ἐστί καὶ πόθεν ἦκει.
8. ὁ Αἴολος τὸν Ὀδυσσεῆα ἐρωτᾷ πότε ἐν νῷ ἔχει ἀποπλεῖν.

## Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΕΤΑΙΡΟΥΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΥΣΙΝ

Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:

ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεὺς πολλὰ ἔτι καὶ δεινὰ πάσχει σπεύδων εἰς τὴν πατρίδα γῆν νοστεῖν. τὰς γὰρ Σειρήνας μόλις φεύγει, καὶ παρὰ τὴν Σικελίαν πλέων εἰς τὸν μέγιστον κίνδυνον ἐμπίπτει. ἔνθεν μὲν γάρ ἐστιν ἡ Σκύλλη, τέρας δεινόν, ἔξ κεφαλᾶς ἔχουσα, ἣ ἐξ ἄντρου τινὸς ὀρμωμένη τοὺς παραπλέοντας ἀρπάζει καὶ ἐσθίει· ἔνθεν δ' ἐστὶν ἡ Χάρυβδις, δίνη μάλα φοβερὰ, ἣ πάντα καταπίνει. ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεὺς τὴν Χάρυβδιν φεύγων παρὰ τὴν Σκύλλην παραπλεῖ· ἣ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου ὀρμωμένη ἔξ τῶν ἐταίρων ἀρπάζει· τοὺς δ' ἄλλους σφάζει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς.

[τὴν πατρίδα γῆν, *his fatherland* νοστεῖν, *to return home* τὰς . . . Σειρήνας, *the Sirens* παρὰ τὴν Σικελίαν, *along/past Sicily* ἐμπίπτει = ἐν + πίπτει ἔνθεν . . . ἔνθεν, *on one side . . . on the other side* ἡ Σκύλλη, *Scylla* (a monster formed of a woman and six dogs) τέρας, *a monster* ἣ, *which* ἄντρου, *cave* ἀρπάζει, *snatches* ἡ Χάρυβδις, *Charybdis* δίνη, *a whirlpool* φοβερὰ, *frightening* ἣ, *which* καταπίνει, *drinks/gulps down*]

1. What does Odysseus continue to experience as he hastens to return home?
2. Where does he fall into the greatest danger?
3. How is Scylla described?
4. How is Charybdis described?
5. What does Scylla do as Odysseus sails by?
6. Why did Odysseus have to sail so close to Scylla?

δι' ὀλίγου εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ νήσον ἀφικνοῦνται· ἐκεῖ δὲ πολλοὺς βοῦς εὐρίσκουσιν. οἱ οὖν ἑταῖροι, "τί," φασίν, "οὐκ ἀποκτενοῦμεν τοὺς βοῦς; πεινώμεν γάρ." ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεύς, "μὴ βλάπτετε τοὺς βοῦς· τῷ γὰρ Ἥλιῳ εἰσίν. εἰ δὲ βλάψετε αὐτούς, ὁ Ἥλιος ὑμᾶς τιμωρήσει." οἱ δὲ οὐ πείθονται αὐτῷ ἀλλ' ἀποκτείνουσι τοὺς βοῦς. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἥλιος τῷ πατρὶ Διὶ εὐχόμενος, "ὦ Ζεῦ πάτερ," φησίν, "οἱ τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως ἑταῖροι τοὺς ἐμοὺς βοῦς ἀποκτείνουσιν. τιμώρει οὖν αὐτούς. εἰ δὲ μὴ τιμωρήσεις αὐτούς, οὐδέποτε αἰθις ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις λάμψω."

[πεινώμεν, *we are hungry* βλάπτετε, *harm* τῷ... Ἥλιῳ, *Helios* (the god of the sun) τιμωρήσει, *will punish* εἰ... μὴ, *if... not* οὐδέποτε, *never* λάμψω, *I will shine*]

7. What do Odysseus' comrades find on the island, and what do they want to do?
8. Why does Odysseus tell them not to do this?
9. Do they obey?
10. What does the Sun God ask Zeus to do?
11. What threat does the Sun God make?

ὁ δὲ Ζεὺς ἀκούει αὐτοῦ εὐχομένου· ἐπεὶ γὰρ ὃ τε Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἑταῖροι ἀποπλέοντες τὴν νήσον λείπουσιν, χειμῶνα δεινὸν πέμπει καὶ τὴν ναῦν κεραυνῷ βάλλει. πάντες οὖν οἱ ἑταῖροι ἐκ τῆς νεῶς ἐκπίπτουσι καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν· μόνος δὲ ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐκφεύγει, τοῦ ἱστοῦ λαμβανόμενος.

[κεραυνῷ, *with a thunderbolt* ἀποθνήσκουσιν, *die* μόνος, *only* τοῦ ἱστοῦ, *the mast*]

12. What three things does Zeus do?
13. What happens to Odysseus' comrades? How does Odysseus escape?

### Exercise 10μ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. For nine days the wind (ὁ ἄνεμος) carries Odysseus (τὸν Ὀδυσσεῆα) through the sea, but on the tenth he arrives at another island.
2. The nymph (ἡ νύμφη) Calypso (ἡ Καλυψώ) lives there; she receives him kindly (εὖμενῶς).
3. Loving him, she says: "Stay with me always on the island." But

- Odysseus wants to return home and to see his wife and child.
4. Finally Zeus sends a messenger and orders the nymph to release (*use λύω*) Odysseus.
5. Calypso tells him to make a raft (*use σχεδιά*) and helps him.
6. When the raft is ready, Odysseus sails away rejoicing.

## Classical Greek

Menander

From *The Shield* (417–418)

ἐν μιᾷ γὰρ ἡμέρᾳ  
τὸν εὐτυχῇ τίθῃσι δυστυχῇ θεός.  
[τὸν εὐτυχῇ, *the fortunate man* τίθῃσι, *makes* δυστυχῇ, *unfortunate*]

Archilochus

For Archilochus, see page 121. In the following poem he says that his whole life depends on his spear (poem no. 2):

ἐν δορὶ μέν μοι μᾶζα μεμαγμένη, ἐν δορὶ δ' οἶνος  
Ἴσμαρικός, πίνω δ' ἐν δορὶ κεκλιμένος.  
[ἐν δορὶ: *supply* ἐστὶ, *is*, and translate it, *depends* μοι: *take as possessive with* δορὶ μᾶζα μεμαγμένη, *my kneaded bread* Ἴσμαρικός, *Ismaric* (from Ismarus, in Thrace) κεκλιμένος, *leaning*]

## New Testament Greek

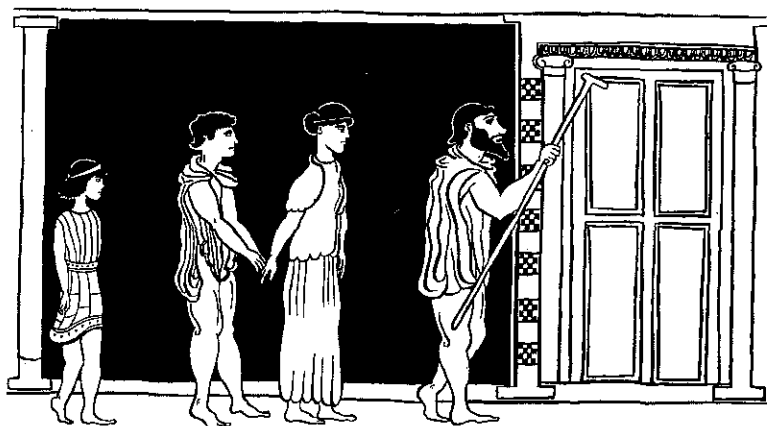
Luke 5.30–32

Jesus had called Levi, a tax collector (τελώνης), to follow him, and Levi had entertained Jesus, his disciples, many tax collectors, and others in his house. The scribes and Pharisees then murmured against Jesus' disciples.

καὶ ἐγόγγυζον οἱ Φαρισαῖοι καὶ οἱ γραμματεῖς αὐτῶν πρὸς τοὺς μαθητὰς αὐτοῦ λέγοντες, "διὰ τί μετὰ τῶν τελωνῶν καὶ ἁμαρτωλῶν ἐσθίετε καὶ πίνετε;" καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτούς, "οὐ χρειᾶν ἔχουσιν οἱ ὑγιαίνοντες ἰατροῦ ἀλλὰ οἱ κακῶς ἔχοντες· οὐκ ἐλήλυθα καλέσαι δικαίους ἀλλὰ ἁμαρτωλοὺς εἰς μετάνοιαν."

[ἐγόγγυζον, *were murmuring* οἱ γραμματεῖς, *the scribes* τοὺς μαθητὰς, *the disciples* διὰ τί, *why* ἁμαρτωλῶν, *sinner* ἀποκριθεὶς, *answering* εἶπεν, *he said* χρειᾶν, *need* οἱ ὑγιαίνοντες, *the healthy* ἰατροῦ, *of/for a doctor* οἱ κακῶς ἔχοντες, *those who are sick* ἐλήλυθα, *I have come* καλέσαι, *to call* δικαίους, *righteous (people)* ἁμαρτωλοὺς, *sinner* μετάνοιαν, *repentance*]

# 11 Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (α)



ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἔκοψε τὴν θύραν.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ἤτησα, *I ask; I ask for*

ἀποθνήσκω, [θανε-] ἀποθανοῦμαι, [θαν-] ἀπέθανον, *I die*

δακρύω, δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσα, *I cry, weep*

δοκεῖ, impersonal, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), impersonal, *it seems (good); + dat., e.g., δοκεῖ μοι, it seems good to me; I think it best*

εἰσάγω, εἰσάξω, [ἀγαγ-] εἰσ-ἡγαγον, *I lead in; I take in*  
ἔφη, *he/she said*

κομίζω, [κομιε-] κομιῶ, [κομι-] ἐκόμισα, *I bring; I take*

κόπτω, [κοπ-] κόψω, ἔκοψα, *I strike; I knock on (a door)*

λαμβάνω, [ληβ-] λήψομαι, [λαβ-] ἔλαβον, *I take; middle + gen., I seize, take hold of*

λείπω, λείψω, [λιπ-] ἔλιπον, *I leave*

μανθάνω, [μαθε-] μαθήσομαι, [μαθ-] ἔμαθον, *I learn; I understand*

πάσχω, [πενθ-] πείσομαι, [παθ-] ἔπαθον, *I suffer; I experience*

σκοπέω, [σκεπ-] σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, *I look at, examine; I consider*

### Nouns

ὁ ἀδελφός, τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ, ὦ ἀδελφε, *brother*

ὁ ἱατρός, τοῦ ἱατροῦ, *doctor*

ὁ λόγος, τοῦ λόγου, *word; story*

### Adjective

σοφός, -ή, -όν, *skilled; wise; clever*

τυφλός, -ή, -όν, *blind*

### Preposition

παρά + acc., *of persons only, to*

### Adverb

αὔριον, *tomorrow*

### Conjunction

εἰ, *if; in indirect questions, whether*

### Expressions

καλῶς ἔχω, *I am well*  
πῶς ἔχεις; *How are you?*

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν ὅτι τυφλός ἐστίν ὁ παῖς, δακρύσασα τῷ ἀνδρί, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” ἔφη, “τί δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιεῖν; ὦ ἄνερ, τοῖς θεοῖς εὐχου βοηθεῖν ἡμῖν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἡμᾶς τὸν παῖδα φέρειν <sup>do it</sup> παρὰ ἱατρὸν τινα,” ἔφη. “ἀλλὰ νῦν δι’ ὀλίγου γενήσεται. νῦν οὖν δεῖ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν σπεύδειν καὶ αἰτεῖν αὐτὸν ἡμᾶς δέχεσθαι. αὔριον δὲ ζητήσομεν ἱατρὸν.”

[δακρύσασα, *bursting into tears*]

βραδέως οὖν τῷ παιδὶ ἡγούμενοι βαδίζουσι πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν. ἐπεὶ δ’ ἀφίκοντο, ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἔκοψε τὴν θύραν. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφός (πρὸς τὴν θύραν ἐλθὼν καὶ τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν καὶ τὸν πατέρα ἰδὼν) “χαίρετε, ὦ πάππα καὶ ἀδελφε,” ἔφη. “πῶς ἔχετε; <sup>How are you?</sup> σὺ δέ, ὦ Μυρρίνη, χαίρε καὶ σύ. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Φίλιππε καὶ Μέλιττα, χαίρετε καὶ ὑμεῖς. ἀλλ’ εἵπατέ μοι, τί πάσχετε; τί οὐκ ἐπανέρχεσθε εἰς τοὺς ἀγροὺς ἀλλ’ ἔτι μένετε ἐν τῷ ἄστει; ἐσπερὰ γὰρ ἤδη γίγνεται.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἐγὼ μὲν καλῶς ἔχω, ὁ δὲ παῖς, ἰδοῦ, τυφλός γὰρ γέγονεν οὐδὲν ὁρᾷ. <sup>fortunate</sup> πάρεσμεν οὖν αἰτοῦντές σε ἡμᾶς δέχεσθαι.” ὁ δὲ ἀδελφός ἰδὼν τὸν παῖδα τυφλὸν ὄντα, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” ἔφη, “τί ποτε ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς; εἰσέλθετε καὶ εἵπατέ μοι τί ἐγένετο.”

[ἐλθὼν, *having come, after coming, coming* ἰδὼν, *having seen, after seeing, seeing* εἵπατέ, *tell* γέγονεν, *has become, is*]

οὕτως εἰπὼν εἰσήγαγεν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν. οἱ δὲ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα εἶπον αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ τὴν γυναῖκα καλέσας, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ γύναι,” ἔφη. “πάρεισι γὰρ ὁ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ἡ Μυρρίνη. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος δεινὸν ἔπαθεν. τυφλός γὰρ γέγονεν. <sup>fortunate</sup> κόμιζε οὖν αὐτὸν τε καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας εἰς τὸν γυναικῶνα. ἡσυχάσουσι γὰρ ἐκεῖ. σὺ δέ, ὦ πάππα καὶ ἀδελφε, ἔλθετε δεῦρο.” ὁ τε οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ ἀδελφός καὶ ὁ πατήρ εἰς τὸν ἀνδρῶνα εἰσελθόντες πολλὰ διαλέγονται σκοποῦντες τί δεῖ ποιεῖν. τέλος δὲ ὁ ἀδελφός, “ἄλις

λόγων," ἔφη· "ἐγὼ σοφὸν ἰατρὸν ἔγνωκα καὶ αὖριον, εἴ σοι δοκεῖ, κομιῶ ὑμᾶς παρὰ αὐτόν. νῦν δέ—ὄψέ γάρ ἐστιν—δεῖ ἡμᾶς καθεύδειν."

[εἰπὼν, *having said, after saying, saying* τὰ γενόμενα, *the things that (had) happened* εἶπον, *told* καλέσας, *calling* τὸν γυναικῶνα, *the women's quarters* ἡσυχάσουσι (from ἡσυχάζω), *they will rest* τὸν ἀνδρῶνα, *the men's quarters* εἰσελθόντες, *entering, having entered* ἅλις + gen., *enough* ἔγνωκα, *I know* ὄψέ, *late*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. logic 2. dialogue 3. monologue 4. prologue 5. eulogy

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Aorist

Both English and Greek have several different past tenses, e.g., "I was coming," "I came," "I have come," "I had come." The term *aorist* (= ἄ-, *without* + ὁ ὅρος, *boundary*) means *without boundaries, without limits* and is used to describe forms of verbs that express *simple action*, in contrast, for example, with the present tense, which expresses *progressive, ongoing action*. In the indicative mood, aorist forms usually express simple action in *past time*, e.g., ἦλθον, *I came* or *I went* = the simple past tense in English.

There are two ways of forming the aorist in Greek, corresponding to two ways of forming the simple past tense in English:

1. A suffix is added to the verb stem, e.g.:

Present: λύ-ω, *I loosen*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist: ἔ-λυ-σα, *I loosened*

2. The verb stem is changed, e.g.:

Present: λείπ-ω, *I leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist: ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, *I left*

Most Greek verbs have sigmatic 1st aorists, some have thematic 2nd aorists, and a few have both.

In the aorist indicative an ε is placed before the stem of verbs that begin with consonants. This is called an *augment*, and it indicates past time. If the stem of the verb begins with a vowel, the stem is augmented by lengthening the vowel, e.g., the aorist stem of ἄγω, namely ἄγαγ-, is augmented to ἤγαγ- (see Grammar 8, pages 190–191). Note in the lists of forms below that the augment is not present in the forms of the imperative, infinitive, and participle.

### 2. Verb Forms: The Thematic 2nd Aorist

Thematic 2nd aorists have thematic vowels (ο or ε) between the stem and the ending in the indicative. The personal endings for the thematic 2nd aorist indicative active are slightly different from those for the present indicative. The present endings are called *primary*, and the thematic 2nd aorist endings are called *secondary*. The latter should be memorized as follows:

Secondary: -ν, -ς, —, -μεν, -τε, -ν

The endings for the active and middle thematic 2nd aorist imperative, infinitive, and participle are similar to those you have learned for the present tense.

The aorist middle indicative has secondary endings, four of which are different from the primary ones you have learned for the present middle indicative. Memorize both the primary and the secondary middle endings as follows:

Primary: -μαι, -σαι, -ται, -μεθα, -σθε, -νται

Secondary: -μην, -σο, -το, -μεθα, -σθε, -ντο

#### Thematic 2nd Aorist Active

Present: λείπω, *I leave*; Aorist Stem: λιπ-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, <i>I left</i>		λιπ-εῖν,	λιπ-ών,
ἔ-λιπ-ε-ς	λίπ-ε,	<i>to leave</i>	λιπ-ούσα,
ἔ-λιπ-ε(ν)	<i>leave!</i>		λιπ-όν,
ἔ-λίπ-ο-μεν			gen., λιπ-όντ-ος, etc.
ἔ-λίπ-ε-τε	λίπ-ετε,		<i>having left,</i>
ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν	<i>leave!</i>		<i>after leaving,</i>
			sometimes, <i>leaving</i>

#### Thematic 2nd Aorist Middle

Present: γίγνομαι, *I become*; Aorist Stem: γεν-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔ-γεν-ό-μην, <i>I became</i>		γεν-έ-σθαι,	γεν-ό-μεν-ος,
ἔ-γέν-ε-σο > ἐγένου	γενοῦ,	<i>to become</i>	γεν-ο-μέν-η,
ἔ-γέν-ε-το	<i>become!</i>		γεν-ό-μεν-ον,
ἔ-γεν-ό-μεθα			<i>having become,</i>
ἔ-γέν-ε-σθε	γέν-ε-σθε,		<i>after becoming,</i>
ἔ-γέν-ο-ντο	<i>become!</i>		sometimes, <i>becoming</i>

## Note:

1. Thematic vowels come between the stems and the endings in many of these forms, just as in the present middle forms (see Chapter 6, Grammar 3, pages 76–77).
2. Note the accents of the active infinitive and participles. Compare the accents of the present active infinitive and participles (see page 152).
3. The accent of the singular aorist middle imperative is irregular: γενοῦ.
4. Note that thematic 2nd aorist middle infinitives are always accented on the next to the last syllable, e.g., γενέσθαι. Compare the present and future middle infinitives, λῦεσθαι and λύσεσθαι.

## Exercise 11α

In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, locate two examples of an aorist of the verb πάσχω and two aorist forms of the verb γίγνομαι.

## Exercise 11β

1. Make photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and copy the aorist active forms of λείπω given above on the second chart. Then fill in the present active and future active forms of this verb that you have learned to date.
2. On the chart that you filled out with the future forms of γίγνομαι (Exercise 10α.2), fill in the aorist indicative, imperative, infinitive, and participle of this verb. Be sure to keep all of your charts for reference.

## Exercise 11γ

1. Make two photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the present, future, and aorist active forms of πάσχω (aorist ἔπαθ-ο-ν) that you have learned to date on one set of charts.
2. On your second set of charts fill in the present and aorist middle forms of λαμβάνομαι, I take hold of, aorist, ἐλαβ-ό-μην, that you have learned to date. Keep these charts for reference.

## 3. Aspect

## a. Indicatives

Notice that the indicatives in the charts on the previous page are translated *I left, you left*, etc. In the indicative mood the aorist usually designates *simple action in past time*.

Occasionally the aorist indicative is used to express general truths and is translated with a present tense. This is called the *gnomic aorist* (cf. αἱ γνώμαι, *maxims, aphorisms*), e.g.:

παθὼν νήπιος ἔμαθεν. *A fool learns by experience.*

## b. Imperatives

Notice, however, that with the imperatives, which have no augment, the translations are the same as those for the present tense. This is because the aorist imperative differs from the present not in *time* but in *aspect*, that is, in the way in which the action of the verb is conceived in the mind. The present tense is *progressive* and is used of an *ongoing process*; the aorist is used of *simple action*, e.g.:

Present, progressive imperative:

ἄκουε τὸν μῦθον. *Listen to the story!*

(The listening is conceived of as a process that will take place over a period of time.)

Aorist imperative:

λαβοῦ τῆς ἐμῆς χειρός. *Take my hand!*

(The reference is to the simple action itself.)

## c. Infinitives

Present infinitives express *progressive, ongoing action*, e.g.:

νῦν δέ—ὁπὲ γάρ ἐστιν—δεῖ ἡμᾶς καθεύδειν.

*But now—for it is late—it is necessary for us to be sleeping.*

Aorist infinitives usually express *simple action* without reference to time, e.g.:

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὸν πάππον ἔπεισεν οἴκαδε ἐπανελθεῖν.

*Dicaeopolis persuaded grandfather to return home.*

## d. Participles

Present participles express *progressive, ongoing action*, e.g.:

ἡ Μέλιττα φέρουσα τὴν ὑδρίαν ἔπαισε καὶ αὐτὴν κατέβαλεν.

*Melissa, carrying her water jar, stumbled and dropped it.*

Usually the aorist participle describes a simple action that preceded or was finished before the action of the main verb, e.g.:

οἱ δὲ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα αὐτῷ εἶπον.

*They told him all the things that had happened.*

Aorist participles sometimes designate *simple action* without reference to time (the following example uses an asigmatic 1st aorist participle, to be introduced in the next chapter):

ἀποκρινάμενος εἶπεν. Not *Having answered*, he said, but *Answering*, he said or *He said in reply*.

Here are further examples of aorist participles:

ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς πρὸς τὴν θύρην ἔλθων καὶ τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν ἰδὼν, "χαῖρε, ὦ ἀδελφε," ἔφη.

And his brother, *having come/after coming/coming to the door and having seen/after seeing/seeing* Dicaeopolis, said, "Greetings, brother."

Here the actions described by the aorist participles clearly took place before the brother greeted Dicaeopolis, and so we may translate them *having come/after coming* and *having seen/after seeing*. But they are simple actions and so may also be translated simply *coming* and *seeing*. Present, progressive participles would be inappropriate here because the actions are not continuous or ongoing.

#### 4. Thematic 2nd Aorist Active and Middle Participles

The thematic 2nd aorist active participle has the same endings as the present active participle (see Chapter 9, Grammar 1, page 136, but it differs in accent:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λιπ-ών	λιπ-ούσα	λιπ-όν
<b>Gen.</b>	λιπ-όντος	λιπ-ούσης	λιπ-όντος
<b>Dat.</b>	λιπ-όντι	λιπ-ούσῃ	λιπ-όντι
<b>Acc.</b>	λιπ-όντα	λιπ-ούσαν	λιπ-όν
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λιπ-όντες	λιπ-ούσαι	λιπ-όντα
<b>Gen.</b>	λιπ-όντων	λιπ-ουσῶν	λιπ-όντων
<b>Dat.</b>	λιπ-ούσι(ν)	λιπ-ούσαις	λιπ-ούσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	λιπ-όντας	λιπ-ούσας	λιπ-όντα

The thematic 2nd aorist middle participle has the same endings as the present middle participle (see Chapter 8, Grammar 1, page 115):

<b>Nom.</b>	γεν-ό-μεν-ος	γεν-ο-μέν-η	γεν-ό-μεν-ον
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

etc.

#### 5. Verb Forms: Common Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists

Learn the following verbs, paying particular attention to the difference between the verb stems in the present tense and those in the future and aorist. Remember that some verbs that have active forms in the present tense are deponent in the future (see Chapter 10, Grammar 4, pages 159–160). We give the aorist participles here and in the vocabulary lists in the remainder of Book I in order to remind you that the augment occurs only in the indicative forms. Remember that stems beginning with vowels or diphthongs augment in the aorist indicative by lengthening the initial vowel (see Grammar 8, pages 190–191).

ἄγ-ω, *I lead, take*, ἄξω, [ἀγαγ-] ἤγαγ-ο-ν, ἀγαγ-ών

ἀπο-θνήσκ-ω, *I die*, [θανε-] ἀποθανοῦμαι, [θαν-] ἀπ-έ-θαν-ο-ν, ἀπο-θαν-ών

ἀφ-ικνέ-ο-μαι, *I arrive*, [ικ-] ἀφίξομαι, [ικ-] ἀφ-ἱκ-ό-μην, ἀφ-ικ-ό-μενος

βάλλ-ω, *I throw*, [βαλε-] βαλῶ, [βαλ-] ἔ-βαλ-ο-ν, βαλ-ών

γί-γν-ο-μαι, *I become*, [γενε-] γενήσομαι, [γεν-] ἐ-γεν-ό-μην, γεν-ό-μενος

εὐρίσκ-ω, *I find*, [εὔρε-] εὔρήσω, [εὔρ-] ηὔρ-ο-ν or εὔρ-ο-ν, εὔρ-ών

ἔχ-ω, *I have; I hold*, ἔξω (irregular) (*I will have*) and [σχε-] σχήσω, (*I will get*), [σχ-] ἔ-σχ-ο-ν, σχ-ών

λαμβάν-ω, *I take*, [ληβ-] λήψομαι, [λαβ-] ἔ-λαβ-ο-ν, λαβ-ών

λείπ-ω, *I leave*, λείψω, [λιπ-] ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, λιπ-ών

μανθάν-ω, *I learn*, [μαθε-] μαθήσομαι, [μαθ-] ἔ-μαθ-ο-ν, μαθ-ών

πάσχ-ω, *I suffer*, [πενθ-] πείσομαι, [παθ-] ἔ-παθ-ο-ν, παθ-ών

πίνω, *I drink*, [πι-] πίομαι (note absence of -σ-), [πι-] ἔπιον, πι-ών

πί-πτ-ω, *I fall*, πεσοῦμαι (irregular), ἔ-πεσ-ο-ν (irregular), πεσ-ών

φεύγ-ω, *I flee*, φεύξομαι, [φυγ-] ἔ-φυγ-ον, φυγ-ών

Give the forms of the future indicatives, aorist indicative, and aorist participle of the compound verb παρέχω. Note that the aorist imperative singular of ἔχω [aorist stem σχ-] is σχέε and that the aorist imperative of παρέχω is παράσχεε.

#### Exercise 11δ

Give the 2nd person singular and the 2nd person plural of the future and the aorist of the following verbs:

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. πίπτω      | 8. εὐρίσκω    |
| 2. βάλλω      | 9. ἔχω        |
| 3. λείπω      | 10. γίγνομαι  |
| 4. ἀφικνέομαι | 11. πάσχω     |
| 5. λαμβάνω    | 12. φεύγω     |
| 6. μανθάνω    | 13. ἀποθνήσκω |
| 7. ἄγω        | 14. παρέχω    |

**Exercise 11ε**

Give the corresponding future and aorist forms of the following:

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. ἀποθνήσκων             | 8. ἄγειν                  |
| 2. εὐρίσκομεν             | 9. γίγνομαι               |
| 3. πίπτειν                | 10. ἔχομεν                |
| 4. μανθάνουσι(ν) (2 ways) | 11. πάσχω                 |
| 5. βάλλειν                | 12. λαμβάνω               |
| 6. φεύγει                 | 13. παρέχουσι(ν) (2 ways) |
| 7. ἀφικνούμενος           | 14. λείπειν               |

**Exercise 11ζ**

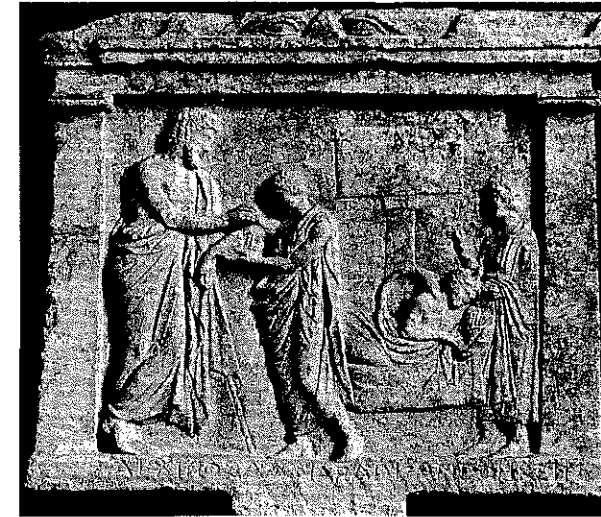
Read aloud and translate. Identify all aorist indicatives, aorist participles, and present participles. For each participle, explain why the aorist or the present is being used in the sentence.

1. ἡ γυνή, μαθοῦσα ὅτι τυφλὸς ἐγένετο ὁ παῖς, τῷ ἀνδρί, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” ἔφη, “τί δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιεῖν;”
2. ἀφικόμενοι εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν εἶπον αὐτῷ τί ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς.
3. οἱ ἄνδρες τὰς γυναῖκας ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ λιπόντες τὸν παῖδα πρὸς τὸν ἱατρὸν ἤγαγον.
4. ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὸν κύνα πρὸς τὸ ὄρος ἀγαγὼν τὸν λύκον ἠῦρε τοῖς προβάτοις ἐμπεσοῦμενον (ἐν + πίπτω).
5. ἡ μήτηρ τὸν σῖτον τῷ παιδί παρασχούσα κελεύει αὐτὸν σπεύδειν πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν. *future*
6. εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἀφικόμενος τῷ πατρὶ τὸ δεῖπνον παρέσχε.
7. ὁ πατήρ τὸ ἄροτρον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ λιπὼν τὸ δεῖπνον ἔλαβεν.
8. ὁ μὲν παῖς τὸν λύκον ἔβαλεν, ὁ δὲ φοβούμενος ἔφυγεν.
9. οἱ νεᾶνιαι ἀπέθανον ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως μαχόμενοι.
10. δεινὰ παθόντες οὐκ ἔφυγον ἀλλὰ ἔπεσον ἀνδρείως μαχόμενοι.

**Exercise 11η**

Translate into Greek:

1. We left grandfather sitting in the agora.
2. The boys pelted the wolf with stones.
3. Did you learn what happened?
4. The doctor soon arrived at the city.
5. Having left the plow in the field, the farmer led the oxen home.
6. The women, having learned what had happened, fled.
7. The boy fell from the tree and suffered terribly (= terrible things).



Healing: divine and secular

The inscription at the bottom of this relief says that it was dedicated by Aeschinus to the hero healer Amphiaraus. On the right, the patient sleeps in the sanctuary and is visited by Amphiaraus and his divine serpent, which licks his wound. On the left a doctor (or the god himself?) operates on the wound.

**Greek Science and Medicine**

The beginnings of Greek science are to be found in the speculations of the philosophers who lived in the Ionian city of Miletus in the sixth century B.C. The first of these thinkers was Thales, one of the seven wise men or sages of archaic Greece, whose floruit can be dated confidently, since he predicted an eclipse of the sun that took place on 25 May 585 B.C. He and his successors were primarily interested in questions of physics. They all sought for a unifying principle underlying the multifarious appearances of the physical world; in simple terms, they asked, “What is the ultimate constituent of matter?” Thales answered that this was water. He conceived of the earth as a flat disc floating on water (the ocean), with water above (rain falling from the sky). Water, when rarefied, becomes steam or mist. He speculated that air, when rarefied, becomes fire. Water condensed takes on a solid form, ice or mud; further condensed it becomes earth and stone. The interest in Thales’ theory lies not in its truth or falsehood but in the boldness with which he sought for an answer in terms of natural causation to questions that had been traditionally answered in terms of myth.

The speculations of the Ionian philosophers had no practical end in view, and here they differed from Greek medicine, which had developed from early time as an art; the doctor (ἱατρός = *healer*) was a craftsman. There were already famous doctors before we hear of any theory of medicine. The best known is Democedes, whose story as told by the historian Herodotus is given at the end of this chapter.

The man whom the Greeks looked upon as the founder of medical science belonged to the next century. This was Hippocrates (fl. 430 B.C.), who founded a famous medical school on the little island of Cos (see map, page 272). To him is ascribed a large collection of writings that cover all aspects of medicine including anatomy, physiology, prognostics, dietetics, surgery, and pharmacology. They include a book of precepts on how doctors should behave toward their patients and the famous Hippocratic oath, which was taken by all students of medicine:

I will pay the same respect to my master in the science as to my parents and share my life with him and pay all my debts to him. I will regard his sons as my brothers and teach them the science, if they desire to learn it, without fee or contract. . . . I will give treatment to help the sick to the best of my ability and judgment. . . . I will not give lethal drugs to anyone if I am asked . . . nor will I give a woman means to procure an abortion. . . . Whatever I see or hear that should not be spoken to any person outside, I will never divulge. . . .

The oath both gives an insight into how the medical schools were organized (a system of apprenticeship) and also shows the ethical principles to which ancient Greek doctors subscribed.

None of the writings can be confidently ascribed to Hippocrates himself, but many, perhaps most, were written in the fifth century and contain some strikingly enlightened features. The case histories recorded in the Hippocratic writings are particularly interesting, showing the close observation and careful recording on which all sound diagnosis must depend. For instance:

At Thasos, Pythion had a violent rigor and high fever as the result of strain, exhaustion, and insufficient attention to his diet. Tongue parched, he was thirsty and bilious and did not sleep. Urine rather dark, containing suspended matter, which did not settle. Second day: about midday, chilling of the extremities. . . . (*Epidemics* 3.2, case 3)

The patient's condition and symptoms continued to be recorded until the tenth day, when he died.

Greek doctors did not claim to be able to effect cures in many cases. Their remedies were simple. Drugs, usually purgatives, were used sparingly. Surgery made steady advances, although anatomy was held back by reluctance to perform dissection of the human body. Bloodletting was a common remedy, and great importance was attached to diet and exercise. Despite its limitations, Greek medicine was rational in all aspects and rejected the belief that sickness was caused by evil spirits, still current in the Palestine of New Testament times. If a Greek doctor could not cure a patient, the only recourse for the patient was to visit one of the healing sanctuaries, where a combination of medical care and faith healing resulted in some remarkable cures, if the tablets put up by patients are to be believed.

## Classical Greek

### Theognis

Theognis (see page 163) traveled to Sicily, Euboea, and Sparta during his exile but always longed for his native Megara. The following are lines 783–788:

ἦλθον μὲν γὰρ ἔγωγε καὶ εἰς Σικελίην ποτε γαίαν,  
ἦλθον δ' Εὐβοίης ἀμπελόεν πεδίον,  
Σπάρτην τ' Εὐρώτᾳ δονακοτρόφου ἀγλαὸν ἄστυ,  
καὶ μ' ἐφίλουν προφρόνως πάντες ἐπερχόμενον·  
ἄλλ' οὐτίς μοι τέρψις ἐπὶ φρένας ἦλθεν ἐκείνων·  
οὕτως οὐδὲν ἄρ' ἦν φίλτερον ἄλλο πάτρης.

[ἦλθον, *I went* ἔγωγε (a strengthened form of ἐγώ), *I indeed* Σικελίην . . . γαίαν, *the land of Sicily* ἀμπελόεν πεδίον, *the vine-clad plain* Εὐρώτᾳ δονακοτρόφου, *of the Eurotas (Sparta's river), which nourishes reeds* ἀγλαὸν, *glorious* ἐφίλουν = ἐφίλουν (imperfect of φιλέω), *here, were welcoming* προφρόνως, *graciously* ἐπερχόμενον, *(when) coming to (them)* οὐτίς . . . τέρψις, *no joy* φρένας, *my heart* ἐκείνων, *from those things* οὕτως . . . ἄρ(α), *so true is it that* οὐδὲν . . . ἦν . . . ἄλλο, *translate, no other thing is (was)* φίλτερον . . . πάτρης, *dearer (to a man) than his fatherland*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 6.20–21

#### The Beatitudes

The following comes from the beginning of the Sermon on the Mount:

καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπάρᾳς τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτοῦ εἰς τοὺς μαθητὰς αὐτοῦ ἔλεγεν,  
“μακάριοι οἱ πτωχοί,  
ὅτι ὑμετέρᾳ ἐστὶν ἡ βασιλεία τοῦ θεοῦ.  
μακάριοι οἱ πεινῶντες νῦν,  
ὅτι χορτασθήσεσθε.  
μακάριοι οἱ κλαίοντες νῦν,  
ὅτι γελάσετε.”

[αὐτὸς: i.e., Jesus ἐπάρᾳς, *lifting up* τοὺς μαθητὰς, *the disciples* ἔλεγεν, *he was saying* μακάριοι, *blessed* οἱ πτωχοί, *the beggars* ὅτι, *because, for* ἡ βασιλεία, *the kingdom* οἱ πεινῶντες, *those who are hungry* χορτασθήσεσθε, *you will be filled* οἱ κλαίοντες, *those who weep* γελάσετε, *you will laugh*]

## Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (β)



ὁ ἰατρός, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ,” ἔφη. “τί ἔπαθες; πῶς τυφλὸς ἐγένου;”

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

Participles of thematic 2nd aorist verbs are given to remind you that the augment regularly occurs only in the indicative.

αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, [ἐλ-] εἶλον (irregular augment), ἐλών, I take

δοκεῖ, impersonal, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), δόξαν, it seems (good); + dat., e.g., δοκεῖ μοι, it seems good to me; I think it best; + dat. and infin., e.g., δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς σπεύδειν, it seems good to them to hurry, they decide to hurry

ἔρχομαι, [εἰ-/ι-] εἶμι (irregular), [ἐλθ-] ἦλθον, ἐλθών, I come; I go

προσέρχομαι + dat. or πρὸς + acc., I approach

λέγω, λέξω or [ἐρε-] ἐρῶ, ἔλεξα or [ἐπ-] εἶπον (irregular augment), εἰπών (augment retained), I say; I tell; I speak

νοσέω, νοσήσω, ἐνόσησα, I am sick, ill

ὁράω, [ὄπ-] ὄψομαι, [ιδ-] εἶδον (irregular augment), ἰδών, I see

ὠφελέω, ὠφελήσω, ὠφέλησα, I help; I benefit

## Nouns

τὸ ἀργύριον, τοῦ ἀργυρίου, silver; money

ἡ δραχμή, τῆς δραχμῆς, drachma (a silver coin worth six obols)

ὁ μισθός, τοῦ μισθοῦ, reward; pay

ὁ ὀβολός, τοῦ ὀβολου, obol (a silver coin of slight worth)

## Preposition

πρὸς + dat., at, near, by; + acc., to, toward; against

## Interjection

οἶμοι, note the accent, alas!

## Expression

κατὰ θάλατταν, by sea

## Proper Names

ὁ Ἀσκληπιός, τοῦ Ἀσκληπιοῦ, Asclepius (the god of healing)

ἡ Ἐπίδauρος, τῆς Ἐπιδάουρου, Epidaurus

ὁ Πειραιεύς, τοῦ Πειραιῶς, τῷ Πειραιεῖ, τὸν Πειραιᾶ, the Piraeus (the port of Athens)

τῇ οὖν ὑστεραία, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο, τὰς γυναῖκας ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ λιπόντες ὃ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τὸν Φίλιππον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἤγαγον. ὁ δὲ τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς χειρὸς ἐλάβετο ἄλλ' ὅμως πρὸς τοὺς λίθους πταίων πρὸς τὴν γῆν κατέπεσεν. ὁ οὖν πατὴρ αἶρει αὐτὸν καὶ φέρει. οὕτως οὖν πορευόμενοι δι' ὀλίγου ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἰατροῦ οἰκίαν. ὁ δ' ἀδελφός, “ἰδοῦ,” ἔφη. “εἰς τοῦ ἰατροῦ ἦκομεν. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο καὶ κόψον τὴν θύραν.” τοῦτο εἰπὼν ὁ ἀδελφὸς οἴκαδε ἐπανῆλθεν.

[πταίων, stumbling εἰς τοῦ ἰατροῦ, to (the house) of the doctor κόψον, knock on τοῦτο, this ἐπανῆλθεν, returned]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις προσελθὼν ἔκοψε τὴν θύραν, ἀλλ' οὐδεὶς ἦλθεν. ἐπεὶ δ' αὐθις ἔκοψεν, δοῦλός τις ἐξελθὼν, “βάλλ' ἐς κόρακας,” ἔφη. “τίς ὢν σὺ κόπτεις τὴν θύραν;” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις. “ἀλλ', ὦ δαιμόνιε, ἐγὼ εἰμι Δικαιοπόλις. τὸν δὲ παῖδα κομίζω παρὰ τὸν σὸν δεσπότην. τυφλὸς γὰρ γέγονεν.” ὁ δὲ δοῦλος. “ἀλλ' οὐ σχολὴ αὐτῷ.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις. “ἀλλ' ὅμως κάλει αὐτόν. δεινὰ γὰρ ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς. ἀλλὰ μένε, ὦ φίλε.” καὶ οὕτως εἰπὼν δύο ὀβολοὺς τῷ δούλῳ παρέσχεν. ὁ δέ. “μένετε οὖν ἐνταῦθα. ἐγὼ γὰρ τὸν δεσπότην καλῶ, εἴ πως ἐθελήσει ὑμᾶς δέχεσθαι.”

[βάλλ' ἐς κόρακας, go to the crows! (= go to hell!) ὦ δαιμόνιε, my dear fellow οὐ σχολὴ αὐτῷ, he doesn't have leisure (= he's busy) εἴ πως, if somehow, if perhaps]

ὃ τε οὖν πατὴρ καὶ ὁ παῖς ὀλίγον τινὰ χρόνον μένουσιν ἐπὶ τῇ θύρᾳ. ἔπειτα δ' ὁ δοῦλος ἐξελθὼν, “εἰσέλθετε,” ἔφη. “ὁ γὰρ δεσπότης ὑμᾶς δέξεται.” ὁ οὖν πατὴρ τῷ παιδὶ εἰσηγούμενος τὸν ἰατρὸν εἶδεν ἐν τῇ αὐλῇ καθιζόμενον. προσελθὼν οὖν, “χαῖρε,” ἔφη. “ἐγὼ μὲν εἰμι Δικαιοπόλις Χολλείδης, κομίζω δὲ παρὰ σὲ τὸν ἐμὸν παῖδα. δεινὰ γὰρ ἔπαθεν. τυφλὸς γέγονεν.” ὁ δὲ ἰατρός, “δεῦρο ἐλθέ, ὦ παῖ. τί ἔπαθες; πῶς τυφλὸς ἐγένου;” ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις πάντα τῷ ἰατρῷ εἶπεν, ὁ δὲ τοὺς τοῦ παιδὸς ὀφθαλμοὺς πολὺν χρόνον σκοπεῖ. τέλος δέ. “ἐγὼ μὲν οὐ δυνήσομαι αὐτὸν ὠφελεῖν. οὐδὲν γὰρ νοσοῦσιν οἱ ὀφθαλμοί. οὐκ οὖν δυνήσονται ὠφελεῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, ἀλλὰ τοῖς γε

θεοῖς πάντα δυνατά. δεῖ οὖν σε κομίζειν τὸν παῖδα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον καὶ τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ εὐχέσθαι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσει αὐτὸν ἰᾶσθαι.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιόπολις, “οἴμοι, πῶς γὰρ ἔξεσταί μοι (πένητι ὄντι) πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον ἰέναι;” ὁ δὲ ἰατρός, “σὸν ἔργον, ὦ ἄνθρωπε,” ἔφη· “χαίρετε.”

[ὀλίγον, *small, short* τῇ αὐλῇ, *the courtyard* Χολλείδης, *from Cholleidae* (Dicaeopolis's home village or deme) δυνήσομαι, *will be able* ἰᾶσθαι, *to heal* πένητι, *a poor man* σὸν ἔργον, *(that's) your business*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιόπολις μάλα λυπούμενος βαδίζει πρὸς τὴν θύραν καὶ τῷ παιδὶ οἴκαδε ἡγεῖται. ἀφικόμενος δὲ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα τῷ ἀδελφῷ εἶπεν. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη πάντα μαθοῦσα, “ἔστω· οὐ δυνάμεθα τῇ ἀνάγκῃ μάχεσθαι. δεῖ σε οὖν τὸν παῖδα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον κομίζειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιόπολις, “ἀλλὰ πῶς ἔξεσταί μοι, ὦ γύναι,” ἔφη, “τὸν παῖδα ἐκεῖσε ἄγειν; δεῖ γὰρ κατὰ θάλατταν ἰέναι· οὐ γὰρ δυνήσεται πεζῇ ἰέναι ὁ παῖς τυφλὸς ὢν. πῶς οὖν ἔξεσται τὸν μισθὸν παρασχεῖν τῷ ναυκλήρῳ; οὐ γὰρ ἐστὶ μοι τὸ ἀργύριον.”

[λυπούμενος, *grieving* ἔστω, *all right!* τῇ ἀνάγκῃ, *necessity* πεζῇ, *on foot* τῷ ναυκλήρῳ, *to the ship's captain*]

ὁ δὲ ἀδελφός, “μὴ φρόντιζε, ὦ φίλε,” ἔφη. καὶ πρὸς κυψέλην τινὰ ἐλθὼν πέντε δραχμὰς ἐξεῖλε καὶ τῷ Δικαιοπόλιδι παρέσχεν. ὁ δὲ τὸ ἀργύριον δέχεται καὶ μεγάλην χάριν ἔχων, “ὦ φίλτατ' ἀνδρῶν,” ἔφη, “τοὺς θεοὺς εὐχομαι πάντα ἀγαθὰ σοι παρέχειν οὕτως εὐφροني ὄντι.” οὕτως οὖν δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ σπεύδειν καὶ ναῦν τινα ζητεῖν πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον πλευσομένην.

[μὴ φρόντιζε, *don't worry!* κυψέλην, *chest* χάριν ἔχων, *giving* (lit., *having*) thanks φίλτατ(ε), *dearest* εὐφροني, *kind*]

## WORD BUILDING

Three types of nouns are commonly formed from verb stems:

1. First declension masculine nouns ending in -της express the doer of the action, e.g., ποιε-, *make* > ὁ ποιη-τής, *the maker; the poet*.
2. Third declension feminine nouns ending in -σις express the action of the verb, e.g., ἡ ποίη-σις, *the making; the creation; the composition*.

3. Third declension neuter nouns ending in -μα express the result of the action, e.g., τὸ ποίη-μα, *the thing made; the work; the poem*.

Give the meanings of the following:

1. οἰκέω                      ὁ οἰκητής                      ἡ οἴκησις                      τὸ οἶκημα
2. μανθάνω (μαθ-)                      ὁ μαθητής                      ἡ μάθησις                      τὸ μάθημα

## GRAMMAR

### 6. Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists from Unrelated Stems

The thematic 2nd aorists you have studied so far use stems that are related etymologically to the stem seen in the present tense, e.g. λαμβάνω and ἔλαβον, like English *take* and *took*. A few Greek verbs form their aorists from a completely different root, etymologically unrelated to that seen in the stem used for the present tense, as does English with, for example, *I go* (present) and *I went* (past). The following are the most common such verbs in Greek, and you have already seen some of their aorist imperatives and participles in the readings:

αἰρέω, *I take*, αἰρήσω, [ἐλ-] εἶλον (irregular augment), ἐλών

ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*, [εἰ-/ῖ-] εἶμι (irregular), [ἐλθ-] ἦλθον, ἐλθών

λέγω, *I say; I tell; I speak*, λέξω, [ἐπ-] εἶπον (irregular augment), εἰπών (augment retained)

ὁράω, *I see*, [ὁπ-] ὄψομαι, [ιδ-] εἶδον (irregular augment), ἰδών

τρέχω, *I run*, [δραμε-] δραμοῦμαι, [δραμ-] ἔδραμον, δραμών

φέρω, *I carry*; of roads, *lead*, [οἰ-] οἶσω, [ἐνεγκ-] ἤνεγκον, ἐνεγκών

Note that the accent of compound verbs never recedes beyond the augment; thus the aorist of ἐπανερχομαι is ἐπανῆλθον.

### Exercise 11θ

1. Make photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the forms of ἔρχομαι, future, εἶμι, and aorist, ἦλθον, that you have learned to date.
2. On your charts with the future of ἔχω and ὁράω (Exercise 10α.2), fill in the aorist forms that you have learned to date.

### 7. Accents on Thematic 2nd Aorist Active Imperatives

The aorist imperatives of most verbs with thematic 2nd aorists have regular recessive accents, e.g., λίπε, λίπετε (see Grammar 2, page 177). The accents of the aorist imperatives of ἔρχομαι, λέγω, ὁράω, εὐρίσκω, and λαμβάνω, however, are irregular in the singular in that they are not recessive. In the plural the accents of all five of these words are recessive:

Singular:	έλθέ	εἰπέ	ιδέ	εὐρέ	λαβέ
Plural:	ἔλθετε	εἴπετε	ἴδετε	εὕρετε	λάβετε

Note that in the singular the accent of the *compound* forms of these imperatives is recessive, e.g., ἐπάνελθε (from ἐπανέρχομαι).

### Exercise 11i

Read aloud and translate:

1. "ἐλθέ δεῦρο, ὃ ἄδελφε, καὶ μοι σύλλαβε.
2. "χθές (yesterday) λύκον εἶδον πρὸς τὸ αὐλῖον (sheepfold) προσιόντα.
3. "ἴσως (perhaps) αὐτὸν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ὀψόμεθα καὶ αἰρήσομεν."
4. οἱ οὖν παῖδες εἰς τὸ αὐλῖον ἀφικόμενοι λύκον εἶδον ἐκ τῶν ὁρῶν κατιόντα.
5. τὸν λύκον ἰδόντες λίθους αἶρουσι καὶ διώκουσιν αὐτόν.
6. ὁ δὲ πάππος τοὺς παῖδας ἰδὼν τὴν βακτηρίαν (his stick) εἶλε καὶ ἦλθεν ὡς συλληψόμενος.
7. οἱ παῖδες τὸν πάππον εἶδον προσιόντα καὶ εἶπον· "ἐλθέ δεῦρο, ὃ πάππε· ἡμεῖς σε μενοῦμεν.
8. "σπεῦδε. πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἵμεν καὶ τὸν λύκον αἰρήσομεν."
9. ὁ δὲ πάππος εἶπεν· "ἐπανέλθετε, ὃ παῖδες· μὴ ἴτε πρὸς τὰ ὄρη· τὸν γὰρ λύκον οὐχ εὕρήσετε."
10. οὕτως εἰπὼν τοὺς παῖδας οἴκαδε ἤγαγεν.

## 8. Augment

To indicate past time in the aorist indicative, as we saw in Grammar 1 above, Greek puts an ε before the stem of verbs beginning with consonants. This is called a *syllabic augment*. If the stem begins with a vowel or diphthong, the initial vowel is lengthened in spelling or sound. This is called *temporal augment*, because long vowels are held for a longer time. The following list compares present and aorist indicatives and shows how the stems of verbs beginning with vowels and diphthongs are augmented. A number of these verbs are sigmatic or asigmatic 1st aorists (to be introduced in the next chapter) and are cited merely as examples of temporal augment.

Present	Aorist	
Single vowels:		
ἀκούω	ἤκουσα	(α lengthens to η)
ἐγείρω	ἤγειρα	(ε also lengthens to η)
ἡγέομαι	ἡγησάμην	(no change)
ἰκνέομαι	ἰκόμην	(ι lengthens to ῑ)
ὁρμάω	ὤρμησα	(ο lengthens to ω)

ὑβρίζω	ὑβρισα	(υ lengthens to ῡ)
ὠφελέω	ὠφέλησα	(no change)
Diphthongs:		
αἰτέω	ἤτησα	(α lengthens to η, and ι goes subscript)
αὐξάνω	ἠύξησα	(αυ lengthens to ηυ)
εὐχομαι	ἠυξάμην	(ευ lengthens to ηυ)
οἰκέω	ὤκησα	(ο lengthens to ω, and ι goes subscript)

Remember that the thematic 2nd aorist stems of αἰρέω, λέγω, and ὁράω, namely, ἐλ-, ἐπ-, and ἰδ- augment irregularly to εἰ, giving εἶλον, εἶπον, and εἶδον and that εἶπον retains its augment in its imperative, εἰπέ/εἴπετε, infinitive, εἰπεῖν, and participle, εἰπών (see Grammar 6, page 189). Some other verbs may also augment ε to εἰ, e.g., ἐργάζομαι, *I work*, aorist, ἤργασάμην or εἰργασάμην.

### Exercise 11k

Augment the following stems:

1. κελευ-	4. ἰᾱτρευ-	7. ἡγε-	10. ὀνομαζ-
2. ἐθελ-	5. ἀρχ-	8. ἀμυν-	11. ἐλθ-
3. ὀτρυν-	6. λαβ-	9. εὐχ-	12. μαθ-

### Exercise 11λ

Turn the following forms into corresponding forms of the aorist and translate both forms:

1. λαμβάνομεν	7. λέγε	13. λέγειν
2. μανθάνει	8. ἔχω	14. ἔρχομαι
3. πάσχουσι(ν) (2 ways)	9. ἀφικνεῖσθαι	15. ὁρᾶν
4. λείπω	10. λείπειν	16. λέγομεν
5. πίπτων	11. λαμβάνουσα	17. ὀρᾷ
6. γιγνόμεθα	12. λείπετε (2 ways)	18. αἰρούσι(ν) (2 ways)

### Exercise 11μ

Read aloud and translate:

1. ὁ αὐτουργὸς εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσελθὼν τὴν θυγατέρα εἶδεν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ καθιζομένην.
2. προσῆλθεν οὖν καὶ εἶπεν· "τί καθίζει ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ δακρύουσα, ὦ θυγατερ;"

3. ἡ δὲ εἶπεν· “τὸ δεῖπνόν σοι φέρουσα, ὦ πάτερ, ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κατέπεσον καὶ τὸν πόδα (foot) ἔβλαψα (I hurt).”
4. ὁ δέ, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο,” φησὶν, “δεῖ με τὸν σὸν πόδα σκοπεῖν.”
5. τὸν οὖν πόδα αὐτῆς σκοπεῖ καὶ ἰδὼν ὅτι οὐδὲν νοσεῖ, “θάρρει (cheer up), ὦ θύγατερ,” ἔφη· “οὐδὲν κακὸν (bad) ἔπαθες. παράσχεες οὖν μοι τὸ δεῖπνον καὶ οἴκαδε ἐπάνελθε.”
6. ἡ οὖν παρθένος τὸ δεῖπνον τῷ πατρὶ παρασχούσα οἴκαδε βραδέως ἀπῆλθεν.

### Exercise 11v

Translate into Greek:

1. How did you become blind, boy? Tell me what happened.
2. Where did you see the oxen? Did you leave them in the field?
3. After suffering much (= many things: use neuter plural adjective) by sea, they finally arrived at the land.
4. After seeing the dances, the boys went home and told their father (dative case) what happened.
5. Falling (use aorist participle) into the sea, the girls suffered terribly (= terrible things).

## Ο ΔΗΜΟΚΛΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΑ ΙΑΤΡΕΥΕΙ

Read the following passage (based on Herodotus 3.129–130) and answer the comprehension questions:

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπέθανεν ὁ Πολυκράτης, οἱ Πέρσαι τούς τε ἄλλους θεράποντας τοῦ Πολυκράτους λαβόντες καὶ τὸν Δημοκλῆ εἰς τὰ Σοῦσα ἐκόμισαν. δι' ὀλίγου δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς κακόν τι ἔπαθεν· ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου γὰρ πεσὼν τὸν πόδα ἔβλαψεν. οἱ δὲ ἰατροὶ οὐκ ἐδύναντο αὐτὸν ὠφελεῖν. μαθὼν δὲ ὅτι ἰατρός τις Ἑλληνικὸς πάρεστιν ἐν τοῖς δούλοις, τοὺς θεράποντας ἐκέλευσε τὸν Δημοκλῆ παρ' ἑαυτὸν ἀγαγεῖν. ὁ οὖν Δημοκλῆς εἰς μέσον ἦλθεν, πέδᾱς τε ἔλκων καὶ ράκεσιν ἐσθημένος. ὁ οὖν βασιλεὺς ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἐθαύμασε καὶ ἤρετο εἰ δύναται τὸν πόδα ἰατρεύειν. ὁ δὲ Δημοκλῆς φοβούμενος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἰατρός σοφὸς ἄλλ' ἐθέλει πειρᾶσθαι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ Ἑλληνικῇ ἰατρείᾳ χρώμενος τὸν πόδα ταχέως ἰάτρευσε. οὕτως οὖν φίλος ἐγένετο τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὁ δὲ πολὺ ἀργύριον αὐτῷ παρέσχε καὶ μέγα ἐτίμα.

[ὁ Πολυκράτης, τοῦ Πολυκράτους, Polycrates (tyrant of Samos, sixth century B.C.; he was captured and put to death by the Persians) οἱ Πέρσαι, the Persians θεράποντας, servants ὁ Δημοκλῆς, τὸν Δημοκλῆ, Democedes τὰ Σοῦσα, neuter acc. pl., Susa ἐκόμισαν, brought κακόν τι, something bad τοῦ ἵππου, his horse τὸν πόδα, his foot ἔβλαψεν, he hurt ἐδύναντο, were able Ἑλληνικὸς, Greek ἐκέλευσε, he ordered πέδᾱς ... ἔλκων, dragging his shackles ράκεσιν

ἐσθημένος, clothed in rags ἐθαύμασε, was amazed ἤρετο, asked ἰατρεύειν, to heal πειρᾶσθαι, to try ἰατρεία, healing, medicine χρώμενος + dat., using ἐτίμα, was honoring]

1. What happened to the Persian king? Of what help were his doctors?
2. What did the king learn? What did he order his servants to do?
3. In what two ways could Democedes be recognized as a slave?
4. How does the Persian king react to the sight of Democedes?
5. What did Democedes say to the king? How did he heal the king's foot?
6. In what three ways did Democedes benefit?

### Exercise 11ξ

Translate into Greek:

1. The king, falling (use aorist participle) from his horse, suffered something bad, but the doctors said that they could not (οὐ δύνανται; use this present tense form) help him.
2. Having learned that there was (use present tense) another doctor among the slaves, the servants said: “It is necessary to bring this doctor (τοῦτον τὸν ἰατρόν) to you.”
3. And when the doctor arrived, the king said, “Is it possible to heal my foot?”
4. The doctor said that he was willing (use present tense) to try (πειρᾶσθαι).
5. And when the doctor cured (ἰάτρευσε) his foot, the king became very friendly to him.

## New Testament Greek

Luke 6.27–29

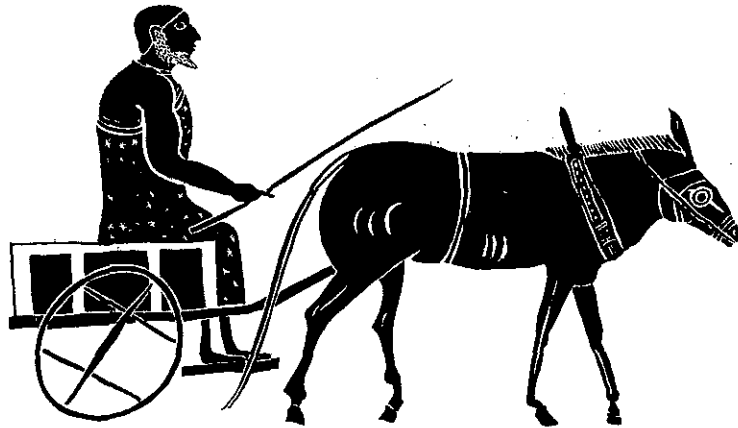
The Sermon on the Mount

Jesus is speaking:

“ἀλλὰ ὑμῖν λέγω τοῖς ἀκούουσιν, ἀγαπᾶτε τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ὑμῶν, καλῶς ποιεῖτε τοῖς μισοῦσιν ὑμᾶς, εὐλογεῖτε τοὺς καταρωμένους ὑμᾶς, προσεύχεσθε περὶ τῶν ἐπηρεαζόντων ὑμᾶς. τῷ τύποντί σε ἐπὶ τὴν σιαγόνα πάρεχε καὶ τὴν ἄλλην.”

[ἀγαπᾶτε, love! τοὺς ἐχθροὺς, the enemies τοῖς μισοῦσιν, those hating εὐλογεῖτε, bless! τοὺς καταρωμένους, those cursing περὶ τῶν ἐπηρεαζόντων, for those mistreating/insulting ἐπὶ τὴν σιαγόνα, on the cheek]

# 12 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (α)



προσεχώρησεν ἀνὴρ τις ἄμαξαν ἐλαύνων.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

All aorist participles are now given.

ἀπορέω, ἀπορήσω, ἠπόρησα, ἀπορήσας, *I am at a loss*  
φροντίζω, [φροντιε-] φροντιῶ, [φροντι-] ἐφρόντισα, φροντίσας, *I worry; I care*

### Nouns

ὁ ἡμίονος, τοῦ ἡμιόνου, *mule*  
ὁ λιμήν, τοῦ λιμένος, *harbor*  
ὁ ὄμιλος, τοῦ ὀμίλου, *crowd*  
τὸ τεῖχος, τοῦ τείχους, *wall*

### Adjectives

γεραιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *old*

κακός, -ή, -όν, *bad; evil*  
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν, *straight; right, correct*

### Adverbs

τάχιστα, *most quickly; most swiftly*  
ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*

### Conjunction

ἢ, *or*  
ἢ . . . ἢ, *either . . . or*  
καίπερ + participle, *although*

### Expression

χαίρειν κελεύω + acc., *I bid X farewell, I bid farewell to X*

τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις πάντας ἐκέλευσε παρασκευάζεσθαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι εὐθὺς παρεσκευάσαντο βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι καὶ δι' ὀλίγου ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ πάππος οὐκ ἠθέλησε πορεύεσθαι· οὕτω γὰρ γεραιὸς ἦν ὥστε οὐκ ἐδύνατο μακρὰν βαδίζειν· ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα οὕτω

μακρὰν τῇ προτεραίᾳ βαδίσασα ὑπέρκοπος ἦν· ἔδοξεν οὖν τῇ μητρὶ καταλιπεῖν αὐτὴν οἴκοι μετὰ τοῦ πάππου. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρήσαν οἱ ἄλλοι, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἡγησάμενος αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν αὐλὴν τῷ βωμῷ προσεχώρησε καὶ σπονδὴν ποιησάμενος τὸν Δία ἠϋξάτο σφῆζειν πάντας τοσαύτην ὁδὸν ποιουμένους.

[ἐκέλευσε, *ordered* παρεσκευάσαντο, *prepared themselves* ἦσαν (imperfect), *they were* ἠθέλησε, *wished* ἦν (imperfect), *he was* ἐδύνατο (imperfect), *he was able* μακρὰν, *a long (way)* τῇ προτεραίᾳ, *the day before* βαδίσασα, *having walked* ὑπέρκοπος, *exhausted* ἡγησάμενος, *having led* τὴν αὐλὴν, *the courtyard* προσεχώρησε, *he approached* σπονδὴν, *a libation* ποιησάμενος, *after making* ἠϋξάτο (from εὔχομαι), *he prayed*]

τόν τ' οὖν πάππον καὶ τὴν Μέλιτταν χαίρειν κελεύσαντες ὥρμησαν, καὶ δι' ὀλίγου, εἰς τὰς τῆς πόλεως πύλας ἀφικόμενοι, τὴν πρὸς τὸν λιμένα ὁδὸν εἴλοντο. ὀρθὴ δ' ἦν ἡ ὁδός· (διὰ τῶν μακρῶν τειχῶν) φέρουσα· πολλοὶ δὲ ἄνθρωποι ἐνήσαν, πολλὰ δὲ ἄμαξαι, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἡμίονοι φορτία φέροντες ἢ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἢ ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως πρὸς τὸν λιμένα. ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις σπεύδει διὰ τοῦ ὀμίλου βουλόμενος ὡς τάχιστα ἀφικέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος καίπερ τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς χειρὸς ἐχόμενος ἔπταισε καὶ πρὸς τὴν γῆν κατέπεσεν. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ βοήσασα, “ὦ τλήμον παῖ,” ἔφη, “τί ἔπαθες;” καὶ προσδραμοῦσα ἦρεν αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ ρῦδεν κακὸν παθὼν, “μὴ φρόντιζε, ὦ μήτερ,” ἔφη· “καίπερ γὰρ πεσὼν ἐγὼ καλῶς ἔχω.” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἔτι φροντίζει καὶ τὸν παῖδα σκοπεῖ.

[ὥρμησαν, *they set out* εἴλοντο, *they chose* ἄμαξαι, *wagons* τὰ φορτία, *burdens, cargoes* ἐχόμενος + gen., *holding* ἔπταισε, *stumbled* βοήσασα, *shouting, i.e., in a loud voice* τλήμον, *wretched, poor* προσδραμοῦσα, *having run toward (him)*]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ πάντες περιμένουσιν ἀποροῦντες τί δεῖ ποιεῖν, προσεχώρησεν ἀνὴρ τις ἄμαξαν ἐλαύνων. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ περιμένοντας καὶ ἀποροῦντας, τὸν ἡμίονον ἔστησε καί, “εἵπετέ μοι, τί πάσχετε, ὦ φίλοι;” ἔφη, “τί οὕτω περιμένετε; ἄρα κακὸν τι ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς;” οἱ μὲν οὖν πάντα ἐξηγήσαντο, ὁ δὲ, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ,” ἔφη, “καὶ ἀνάβηθι ἐπὶ τὴν ἄμαξαν. καὶ σύ, ὦ γύναι, εἰ τῷ ἀνδρὶ δοκεῖ, ἀνάβηθι. καὶ ἐγὼ γὰρ πρὸς τὸν λιμένα πορεύομαι.” οἱ δὲ ἐδέξαντο

τὸν λόγον καὶ οὕτω πορευόμενοι δι' ὀλίγου ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν λιμένα.

[περιμένουσιν, *are waiting around* ἔστησε, *he stopped* ἐξηγήσαντο, *related*  
ἀνάβηθι, *get up* ἐδέξαντο, *received, accepted*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. mathematics
2. polymath
3. orthodoxy (what must ἡ δόξα mean?)
4. orthodontist (what must ὁ ὀδούς, τοῦ ὀδόντος mean?)
5. orthopedics or orthopaedics

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Sigmatic 1st Aorist

Most Greek verbs have *sigmatic 1st aorists*, rather than the thematic 2nd aorist formations studied in the last chapter. Sigmatic 1st aorists are formed by adding the suffix -σα to the verb stem, e.g., ἔλῳ-σα. (In certain types of verbs the σ is lost and one finds only -α and not -σα; these *asigmatic 1st aorist* formations will be studied in the second half of this chapter.) As with the thematic 2nd aorists, the verb stem is augmented only in the indicative. Compare the forms below with those of the thematic 2nd aorist (see Chapter 11, Grammar 2, page 177).

#### Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active

**Present:** λῳω, *I loosen*; **Aorist Stem:** λῳ-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔλῳ-σα, <i>I loosened</i>		λῳ-σαι,	λῳ-σᾶς,
ἔλῳ-σα-ς	λῳ-σον,	to loosen	λῳ-σᾶσα,
ἔλῳ-σ-ε(ν)	loosen!		λῳ-σαν,
ἔλῳ-σα-μεν			gen., λῳ-σαντι-ος, etc.
ἔλῳ-σα-τε	λῳ-σα-τε,		having loosened,
ἔλῳ-σα-ν	loosen!		after loosening,
			sometimes, loosening

### Sigmatic 1st Aorist Middle

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἐ-λῳ-σά-μην, <i>I ransomed</i>		λῳ-σα-σθαι,	λῳ-σά-μεν-ος,
ἐ-λῳ-σα-σο > ἐλῳσω	λῳ-σαι,	to ransom	λῳ-σα-μέν-η,
ἐ-λῳ-σα-το	ransom!		λῳ-σά-μεν-ον,
ἐ-λῳ-σά-μεθα			having ransomed,
ἐ-λῳ-σα-σθε	λῳ-σα-σθε		after ransoming,
ἐ-λῳ-σα-ντο	ransom!		sometimes, ransoming

Note:

1. The letter α is characteristic of sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorists, and it occurs in all forms except the 3rd person singular of the active indicative (ἔλῳσε(ν)) and the singular imperative (λῳσον).
2. Sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorist active infinitives are always accented on the next to the last syllable, e.g., λῳσαι and κελεύσαι (the diphthong -αι is short here for purposes of accentuation).
3. The -αι of sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorist middle infinitives is also counted as short, and the accent may thus stand on the third syllable from the end, e.g., λῳσασθαι (compare γενέσθαι, Chapter 11, Grammar 2, page 177, λῳεσθαι, Review of Verbs, page 152, and λῳσεσθαι, Chapter 10, Grammar 1, page 158).

When the stem ends in a consonant, the same rules apply as in the formation of the sigmatic future (see Chapter 10, Grammar 1, pages 158–159). Here are the present, future, and aorist of the same verbs given as examples of the future in Chapter 10, Grammar 1, pages 158–159:

- a. If the stem ends in a *labial* (β, π, φ), the labial + -σ- produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ψ in the future and aorist, e.g.:

βλέπω, *I look; I see*, βλέψομαι, ἔβλεψα  
πέμπω, *I send*, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα  
γράφω, *I write*, γράψω, ἔγραψα

- b. If the stem ends in a *velar* (γ, κ, χ), the velar + -σ- produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ in the future and aorist, e.g.:

λέγω, *I say; I tell; I speak*, λέξω, ἔλεξα  
διώκω, *I pursue*, διώξω, ἐδίωξα  
φυλάττω, *I guard*, [φυλακ-] φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα  
δέχομαι, *I receive*, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην

- c. If the stem ends in a *dental* (δ, θ, τ) or ζ, the dental or ζ is lost before the -σ- of the future and aorist, e.g.:

σπεύδω, *I hurry*, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα

πείθ-ω, *I persuade*, πείσω, ἔπεισα

πάττω, *I sprinkle*, [πατ-] πάσω, ἔπασα

παρασκευάζ-ω, *I prepare*, παρασκευάσω, παρεσκεύασα

Note: κομίζ-ω, *I bring; I take*, [κομιε-] κομιῶ, [κομι-] ἐκόμισα

Contract verbs lengthen the final stem vowel and then add σ for the future and the aorist, e.g.:

φιλέ-ω, *I love*, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα

Exception: καλέ-ω, *I call*, καλῶ (no difference in spelling between the present and the future tense for this verb), ἐκάλεσα (the ε of the stem does not lengthen in the aorist).

ἡγέ-ο-μαι, *I lead*, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην

τιμά-ω, *I honor*, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα

Note: θεά-ο-μαι, *I see, watch, look at*, θεᾶσομαι, ἐθεᾶσάμην (note that because of the ε the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η)

Here are the verbs listed in Chapter 10, Grammar 4, pages 159–160, with deponent futures that have sigmatic 1st aorists:

ἀκούω, *I hear*, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκούσᾱς

βαδίζω, *I walk; I go*, [βαδιε-] βαδιοῦμαι, [βαδι-] ἐβάδισα, βαδίσᾱς

βλέπω, *I look; I see*, βλέπομαι, ἔβλεψα, βλέψᾱς

βοάω, *I shout*, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα, βοήσᾱς

διώκω, *I pursue, chase*, διώξομαι, ἐδίωξα, διώξᾱς

θαυμάζω, intransitive, *I am amazed*; transitive, *I wonder at, admire*, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, θαυμάσᾱς

πλέω, *I sail*, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι, [πλευ-] ἔπλευσα, πλεύσᾱς

Remember that the following verb may have an irregular augment: ἐργάζομαι, *I work; I accomplish*, aorist, ἡργασάμην or εἰργασάμην (see Chapter 11, Grammar 8, page 191).

### Exercise 12α

In the second and third paragraphs of the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, locate eight sigmatic 1st aorist verb forms. Identify each form (mood, person, and number for finite verbs; gender, case, and number for participles).

### Exercise 12β

- On the second pages of the sets of Verb Charts that you filled out for Exercise 10α.1, fill in the aorist forms that you have learned to date of the four verbs, βλέπω, φυλάττω, σπεύδω, and κομίζω.

- On your charts for θεωρέω, βοάω, ἀφικνέομαι, and ὁρμάομαι, fill in the aorist forms that you have learned to date.

### Exercise 12γ

Give the future indicative and the aorist indicative, 1st person singular, of the following verbs:

- |            |             |             |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. δακρύω  | 6. διώκω    | 11. βοηθέω  |
| 2. βλέπω   | 7. νικάω    | 12. ἐθέλω   |
| 3. θαυμάζω | 8. σπεύδω   | 13. παύω    |
| 4. ἀκούω   | 9. κομίζω   | 14. φυλάττω |
| 5. δέχομαι | 10. ἡγέομαι | 15. πέμπω   |

## 2. Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active and Middle Participles

The sigmatic 1st aorist active participle is declined like the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (see Chapter 8, Grammar 4, page 126), except for the accent:

Stems: λῦσαντ- for masculine and neuter; λῦσᾱσ- for feminine

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Singular:</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	λύσαντ-ς > λύσᾱς	λύσᾱσα	λύσαντ- > λῦσαν
<b>Gen.</b>	λύσαντ-ος	λύσᾱσης	λύσαντ-ος
<b>Dat.</b>	λύσαντ-ι	λύσᾱσῃ	λύσαντ-ι
<b>Acc.</b>	λύσαντ-α	λύσᾱσαν	λύσαντ- > λῦσαν
<b>Plural:</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	λύσαντ-ες	λύσᾱσαι	λύσαντ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	λῦσάντ-ων	λῦσᾱσῶν	λῦσάντ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	λύσαντ-σι(ν) > λῦσᾱσι(ν)	λῦσᾱσαις	λύσαντ-σι(ν) > λῦσᾱσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	λύσαντ-ας	λῦσᾱσᾱς	λύσαντ-α

The sigmatic 1st aorist middle participle has the same endings as the present middle participle (see Chapter 8, Grammar 1, page 115):

<b>Nom.</b>	λῦ-σά-μεν-ος	λῦ-σα-μέν-η	λῦ-σά-μεν-ον
etc.			

### Exercise 12δ

Write the forms of the aorist active participles of βλέπω and ποιέω.

## Exercise 12ε

Change the following present forms into corresponding forms of the aorist:

- |                         |               |                             |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. κελεύομεν            | 6. οικούμεν   | 11. βοηθεῖν                 |
| 2. πέμπουσι(ν) (2 ways) | 7. τιμᾶ       | 12. νικῶμεν                 |
| 3. ἀκούετε              | 8. δακρύων    | 13. ἡγούμενος               |
| 4. λύεται               | 9. κομίζω     | 14. δέχου                   |
| 5. εὐχόμενοι            | 10. βαδίζομεν | 15. προσχωροῦσι(ν) (2 ways) |

## Exercise 12ζ

Translate into English. Identify present and aorist participles and explain why the present or the aorist is used in each case.

- aorist part*
1. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ ἠθέλησε τῇ γυναικὶ πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἡγήσασθαι. *inf?*
  2. ὁ ξένος εἰσελθὼν εὐθὺς οἶνον ἤτησεν.
  3. ὁ ἱερεὺς σπονδὴν ποιησάμενος τοῖς θεοῖς ἤϋξατο.
  4. αἱ γυναῖκες, καίπερ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἰδοῦσαι, οὐκ ἐπαύσαντο βοᾶσαι.
  5. εἰσελθε, ὦ παῖ, καὶ τὸν πατέρα κάλεσον. *inf.*
  6. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ, καὶ εἰπέ μοι τί ἐποίησας. *aorist mid. part.*
  7. ἡ παρθένος τοὺς χοροὺς θεᾶσαμένη οἴκαδε ἔσπευσεν.
  8. ὁ μὲν δεσπότης τοὺς δούλους ἐκέλευσε σιγῆσαι, οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐπαύσαντο δι-  
αλεγόμενοι.
  9. οἱ ναῦται, τὴν ναὺν λύσαντες, ἔπλευσαν ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος.
  10. ὁ κῆρυξ τοὺς πολίτας ἐκέλευσε σιγήσαντας ἀκοῦσαι.

## Exercise 12η

Translate into Greek (note that to render the correct aspect of the actions, all verb forms in this exercise—indicatives, imperatives, infinitives, and participles—should be in the aorist):

1. After making a libation (use ἡ σπονδή) and praying to the gods, we walked to the city.
2. The father told the boy to send the dog home.
3. I came to your aid, but you led (use ἡγέομαι) me into danger.
4. Call your mother, boy, and ask her to receive us.
5. The young man, after winning, received a crown (use ὁ στέφανος).
6. Having arrived at the city, we saw many men in the roads.

## Trade and Travel

In the late Bronze Age the Achaeans traded extensively throughout the eastern Mediterranean. The Dark Age that followed (ca. 1100–800) was generally a period of isolation, in which there was little overseas trade and dur-

ing which contacts with the East were broken. Early in the eighth century B.C., two Greek settlements were being made specifically for trade, the first in the East at Al Mina at the mouth of the Orontes River in Syria, the second in the West on the island of Ischia outside the Bay of Naples about 775 B.C. Both were probably made for trade in metals, essential for manufacturing arms (copper and tin from the East; copper, tin, and iron from Etruria in the West).

Al Mina was strategically placed to tap trade both inland up the Orontes to Mesopotamia and down the coast to Phoenician cities and Egypt. Its foundation was followed by a flood of Eastern imports into Greece, not only metals and artefacts, but also craftsmen and ideas, notably the alphabet, adapted by Greeks from Phoenician script about 750 B.C. The period was one of rapid change and development in Greece, a kind of renaissance. The *polis* (city-state) developed from unions of villages. Aristocracy replaced monarchy in most states. There was a revolution in warfare: hoplites (heavy armed infantry fighting in close line) replaced cavalry as the main fighting force. Growth in population led to emigrations; cities sent out colonies that peopled the coasts of the Mediterranean wherever there was no strong power to keep them out. These colonies, though founded primarily to provide land for surplus population, soon grew into prosperous, independent cities (e.g., Syracuse, founded in 733 B.C. by Corinth) and further stimulated trade, especially in grain, to supply the increasing population of the mainland. Italy from the Bay of Naples south and almost the entire coast of Sicily were studded with Greek colonies, and the area became known as Greater Greece. The leading states in this movement were Chalcis and Eretria in Euboea, Aegina, and Corinth. Miletus and other East Greek states were active in the north of the Aegean and the Black Sea.

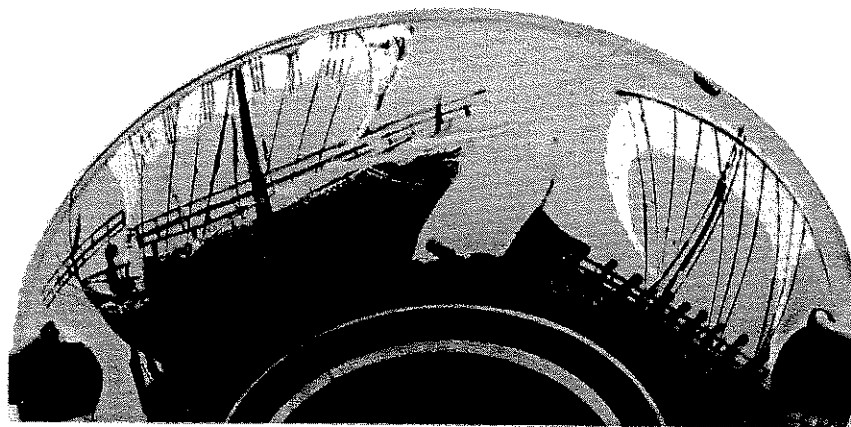
The story of Colaeus of Samos, who voyaged out through the Straits of Gibraltar and landed at Tartessus in the Bay of Cadiz, was told by Herodotus and is given at the end of this chapter; it shows the enterprise of these traders. The new market in the West opened up by Colaeus was developed by another Ionian state, Phocaea, located on the western coast of Asia Minor (see map, page 272). Phocaeans founded Massilia (Marseilles) about 600 B.C. and soon after entered into profitable trade with the king of Tartessus. This western expansion of Greek trade was curtailed by the Carthaginians, who succeeded in pushing back the Greeks and monopolizing the route through the Straits of Gibraltar to Spain, Brittany, and Britain.

Trade with Egypt developed in the seventh century, encouraged by a friendly pharaoh, Psammetichus I (664–610 B.C.). From Egypt the Greeks imported grain; their exports were olive oil, wine, perhaps silver, and certainly mercenary soldiers. Psammetichus employed a regular force of Greek hoplites, and two reigns later his grandson, Psammetichus II still used Greek mercenaries. A Greek settlement was made at the mouth of the Nile and was named Naucratis. It was given a charter by the pharaoh Amasis (570–526 B.C.). Naucratis developed into the largest port in Egypt, a flourishing center of trade and tourism. Egypt, with a culture of immemorial antiquity, fascinated the Greeks, and many visited it out of curiosity as well as for

trade. When the family members of the poet Sappho were exiled from their native Lesbos, she went to Sicily, but her brother went to Egypt, where he fell in love with the most famous courtesan of the day and spent his fortune on her. Sappho's contemporary, the poet Alcaeus, also went to Egypt during his exile, but his brother Antimenidas served as a mercenary in the army of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, and took part in the campaign that culminated in the capture of Jerusalem (587 B.C.) and the exile of the Jews. Antimenidas became the army's champion and slew the enemy's Goliath.

At the time of our story, the Piraeus was the greatest port in Greece and, indeed, in the whole Mediterranean. In Chapter 14 we will explain how Athens came to take the lead from Corinth as a naval and mercantile power. The harbor must have been always crowded with ships both Athenian and foreign, both Greek and barbarian. The most important single item of import was grain, which came from the great grain producing areas of the ancient world: Egypt, Sicily, and the steppes of south Russia (Scythia). Athens had treaties with the princes of Scythia that gave her a monopoly of this trade. Shipbuilding timber was imported in large quantities both for building merchantmen and for the great Athenian navy (300 triremes). Attica did not produce any metals except for silver from the mines at Laurium. She exported olive oil, silver, and fine pottery (her black and red figure vases had driven out all competitors by 550 B.C.).

Although commerce and far-flung trade thrived, we should not forget that only a minority of the people were involved in it. The farmers stuck to their farms, and the attitude of Dicaeopolis to seafaring may have been not unlike that of Hesiod three centuries before. The only voyage he ever made was to cross the straits between Boeotia and Euboea to take part in a poetry competition. You can only sail safely, he says, in the fifty days following the summer solstice (21 June). You might also, he says, risk a voyage in spring:



The perils of seafaring

A pirate ship bears down on an unsuspecting merchant ship; it is about to ram the merchant ship with its bronze beak.

I don't recommend it. It has no attraction for me—it must be snatched, and you are unlikely to avoid trouble. But men will do it in the foolishness of their hearts; for money is life to unhappy mortals. But it is a terrible thing to die in the waves. (Hesiod, *Works and Days* 682–687)

## Classical Greek

### Scolion

#### The Four Best Things in Life

The following is an example of a type of Greek poetry called *scolia*, songs sung during the drinking after dinner parties. The author is unknown. The lines (Campbell, no. 890) incorporate traditional Greek sentiments.

ὕγιαίνειν μὲν ἄριστον ἀνδρὶ θνητῷ,  
δεύτερον δὲ καλὸν φῶς γενέσθαι,  
τὸ τρίτον δὲ πλουτεῖν ἀδόλως,  
καὶ τὸ τέταρτον ἡβᾶν μετὰ τῶν φίλων.

[ὕγιαίνειν, *to be healthy*: this and the infinitive in the second line are the subjects of their clauses; supply ἐστὶ in each clause θνητῷ, *mortal* φῶς, accusative of respect, *in physique* τὸ τρίτον, *the third (best) thing*; subject, supply ἐστὶ πλουτεῖν, *to be rich* ἀδόλως, *without tricks, without treachery, honestly* ἡβᾶν, *to be young*]

## New Testament Greek

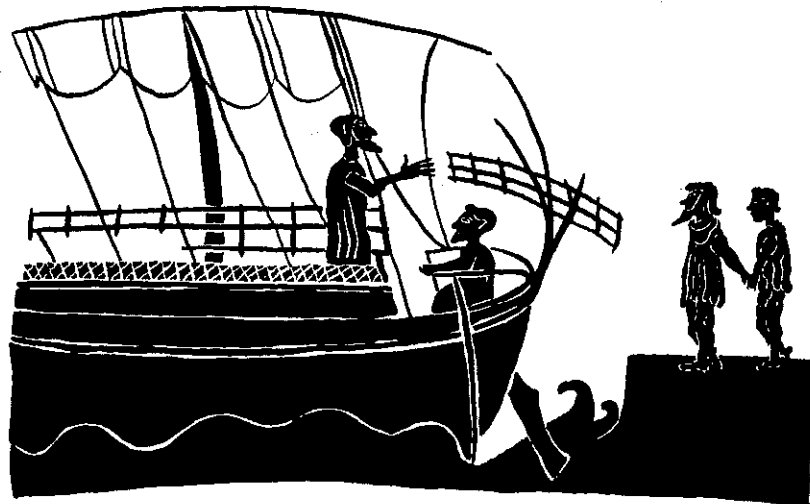
### Luke 15.3–7

#### The Parable of the Lost Sheep

εἶπεν δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς τὴν παραβολὴν ταύτην λέγων, “τίς ἄνθρωπος ἐξ ὑμῶν ἔχων ἑκατὸν πρόβατα καὶ ἀπολέσας ἐξ αὐτῶν ἓν οὐ καταλείπει τὰ ἐνενήκοντα ἑννέα ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ καὶ πορεύεται ἐπὶ τὸ ἀπολωλὸς ἕως εὕρῃ αὐτό; καὶ εὕρων ἐπιτίθῃσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς ὤμους αὐτοῦ χαίρων καὶ ἐλθὼν εἰς τὸν οἶκον συγκαλεῖ τοὺς φίλους καὶ τοὺς γείτονας λέγων αὐτοῖς, ‘συγχάρετέ μοι, ὅτι εὑρον τὸ πρόβατόν μου τὸ ἀπολωλός.’ λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι οὕτως χαρὰ ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ ἔσται ἐπὶ ἐνὶ ἁμαρτωλῷ μετανοοῦντι ἢ ἐπὶ ἐνενήκοντα ἑννέα δικαίοις οἵτινες οὐ χρειᾶν ἔχουσιν μετανοῖας.”

[εἶπεν: Jesus is the subject πρὸς αὐτοὺς, i.e., to the Pharisees and scribes who complained that Jesus was associating with tax collectors and sinners ταύτην, *this* ἑκατὸν, *a hundred* ἀπολέσας (from ἀπόλλυμι), *having lost* ἐνενήκοντα ἑννέα, *ninety-nine* τῇ ἐρήμῳ, *the desert* ἐπὶ + acc., *after* τὸ ἀπολωλός, *the lost (one)* ἕως, *until* εὕρῃ, subjunctive, *he finds* ἐπιτίθῃσιν, *he puts (it) on* τοὺς ὤμους, *shoulders* αὐτοῦ = ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς γείτονας, *his neighbors* συγχάρετέ (from συγχαίρω) + dat., *rejoice with* ὅτι, *because* χαρὰ, *joy* ἐπὶ, *over, at* ἁμαρτωλῷ, *sinner* μετανοοῦντι, *repenting* ἢ, *than, (more) than* δικαίοις, *just/righteous (men)* οἵτινες, *who* χρειᾶν, *need* μετανοῖας, *of/for repentance*]

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (β)



ὁ Δικαιόπολις τὴν γυναῖκα χαίρειν κελεύσας, τῷ Φιλίππῳ πρὸς τὴν ναὺν ἡγήσατο.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἐξηγέομαι [ἐκ- + ἡγέομαι].  
ἐξηγήσομαι, ἐξηγησάμην,  
ἐξηγησάμενος, *I relate*  
ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα,  
ἐρωτήσας or [ἐρ-] ἠρόμην,  
ἐρώμενος, *I ask*  
φαίνομαι, [φανε-] φανοῦμαι,  
(aorist to be presented later),  
*I appear*

### Nouns

ὁ ἔμπορος, τοῦ ἐμπόρου, *mer-*  
*chant*  
ὁ ναύκληρος, τοῦ ναυκλήρου,  
*ship's captain*

ὁ ναύτης, τοῦ ναύτου, *sailor*  
**Adjectives**  
πλείων/πλέον, alternative  
forms for either masculine or  
feminine, πλέον, neuter,  
*more*  
πλείστος, -η, -ον, *most; very*  
*great; pl., very many*

### Adverbs

Ἀθήναζε, *to Athens*  
μέγα, *greatly; loudly*  
τότε, *then*

### Expression

μάλιστά γε, *certainly, indeed*

ἐν δὲ τῷ λιμένι πλείστος μὲν ἦν ὄμιλος, πλείστος δὲ θόρυβος.  
πανταχόσε γὰρ ἔσπευδον οἱ ἄνθρωποι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ναύκληροι τοὺς  
ναύτας ἐκάλουν, κελεύοντες αὐτοὺς τὰ φορτία ἐκ τῶν νεῶν ἐκφέρειν,  
οἱ δὲ ἔμποροι μέγα ἐβόων τὰ φορτία δεχόμενοι καὶ εἰς ἀμάξας  
εἰσφέροντες· ἄλλοι δὲ τὰ πρόβατα ἐξελάσαντες διὰ τῶν ὁδῶν ἦγον. ὁ  
δὲ Δικαιόπολις πάντα θεώμενος ἠπόρει τί δεῖ ποιῆσαι καὶ ποῦ δεῖ

ζητεῖν ναὺν τινα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαυρον πλευσομένην· πλείστας γὰρ  
ναῦς εἶδε πρὸς τῷ χώματι ὁρμούσας. τέλος δὲ πάντες ἐν οἰνοπωλίῳ  
τινὶ καθισάμενοι οἶνον ἤτησαν.

[θόρυβος, *uproar* πανταχόσε, *in all directions* ἔσπευδον, *were hurrying*  
ἐκάλουν, *were calling* ἐβόων, *were shouting* ἐξελάσαντες, *having driven out*  
ἦγον, *were leading* ἠπόρει, *was at a loss* τῷ χώματι, *the pier* ὁρμούσας, *lying*  
*at anchor* οἰνοπωλίῳ, *wine-shop, inn*]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸν οἶνον ἔπινον, προσεχώρησε ναύτης τις γεραίος καί, 10  
“τίνες ἐστέ, ὦ φίλοι,” ἔφη, “καὶ τί βουλόμενοι πάρεστε; ἄγροικοι γὰρ  
ὄντες φαίνεσθε ἄπορεῖν. εἵπετέ μοι τί πάσχετε.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιόπολις  
πάντα ἐξηγησάμενος, “ἄρ’ οἶσθα,” ἔφη, “εἴ τις ναῦς πάρεστι  
μέλλουσα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαυρον πλεύσεσθαι;” ὁ δὲ, “μάλιστά γε,”  
ἔφη. “ἡ γὰρ ἐμὴ ναῦς μέλλει ἐκεῖσε πλεύσεσθαι. ἔπεσθέ μοι οὖν παρὰ 15  
τὸν ναύκληρον. ἀλλ’ ἰδοῦ, πάρεστιν αὐτὸς ὁ ναύκληρος εἰς καιρὸν  
προσχωρῶν.” καὶ οὕτως εἰπὼν ἡγήσατο αὐτοῖς παρὰ νεανίαν τινὰ ἐκ  
νεῶς τινος τότε ἐκβαίνοντα.

[ἔπινον, *they were drinking* ἄγροικοι, *countrymen, rustics* ἄρ’ οἶσθα, *do you*  
*know?* εἰς καιρὸν, *at just the right time*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιόπολις προσχωρήσας ἦρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ἐθέλει κομίζειν  
αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαυρον. ὁ δὲ, “μάλιστά γε,” ἔφη, “ἐθέλω ὑμᾶς 20  
ἐκεῖσε κομίζειν. ἀλλὰ εἴσβητε ταχέως· εὐθύς γὰρ πλευσόμεθα.” ὁ δὲ  
Δικαιόπολις, “ἐπὶ πόσῳ;” ὁ δὲ ναύκληρος, “ἐπὶ πέντε δραχμαῖς,” ἔφη.  
ὁ δὲ Δικαιόπολις, “ἀλλ’ ἄγαν αἰτεῖς. ἐγὼ δύο δραχμὰς ἐθέλω  
παρασχεῖν.” ὁ δὲ· “οὐδαμῶς· τέτταρας αἰτῶ.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιόπολις,  
“ἰδοῦ, τρεῖς δραχμὰς· οὐ γὰρ δύναμαι πλέον παρασχεῖν.” ὁ δὲ, 25  
“ἔστω· παράσχες μοι τὸ ἀργύριον· καὶ εἴσβητε ταχέως.”

[εἴσβητε, *get on board* ἐπὶ πόσῳ; *for how much?* ἄγαν, *too much* ἔστω, *all right!*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιόπολις τὸ ἀργύριον τῷ ναυκλήρῳ παρέσχε καὶ τὴν τε  
γυναῖκα καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν χαίρειν ἐκέλευσεν. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη  
δακρύσασα, “τὸν παῖδα,” ἔφη, “εὖ φύλαττε, ὦ φίλε ἄνερ, καὶ σπεῦδε  
ὡς τάχιστα οἴκαδε ἐπανιέναι. σὺ δέ, ὦ φίλτατε παῖ, θάρρει καὶ σὺν 30  
θεῷ δι’ ὀλίγου νόστησον ὑγιεῖς ἔχων τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.” οὕτως

pl. imp. προσ-  
εποιεῖν  
σφαιρῶν

εἰποῦσα ἀπετρέψατο· ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς αὐτῇ ἡγήσατο Ἀθηναζε  
δακρυόουση.

[δακρύσῃσα, *bursting into tears* φίλτατε, *dearest* θάρρει, *cheer up!* σὸν θεῶ,  
*with god's help* νόστησον, *return home* ὑγιεῖς, *sound, healthy* ἀπετρέψατο,  
*she turned herself away*]

## WORD BUILDING

The prefix ἀ- (ἀ-privative) may be attached to the beginning of many verbs, nouns, and adjectives (ἀν- is prefixed to words beginning with vowels) to negate or reverse their meaning or to express a lack or absence, e.g., δυνατός, *possible*, ἀδύνατος, *impossible*. Compare *moral* and *amoral* ("without morals"; compare *immoral*) in English.

From the words at the left, deduce the meaning of those to the right:

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| 1. αἷτιος, -ᾱ, -ον                             | ἀναίτιος, -ον |
| 2. ἄξιος, -ᾱ, -ον ( <i>worthy</i> )            | ἀνάξιος, -ον  |
| 3. δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον ( <i>just</i> )            | ἄδικος, -ον   |
| 4. ἀνδρείος, -ᾱ, -ον (from ὁ ἀνὴρ, τοῦ ἀνδρός) | ἄνανδρος, -ον |

Note that adjectives compounded with ἀ-privative have no separate feminine forms; the masculine forms are used with either masculine or feminine nouns.



The Piraeus, from the southeast

The large landlocked harbor to the northwest was Cantharus, the main commercial port; the smaller harbors to the south, Zea (left) and Munychia (right), were for warships.

## GRAMMAR

### 3. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic 1st Aorist of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems

You will recall that verbs with stems ending in a *liquid* (λ, ρ) or a *nasal* (μ, ν) have asigmatic contract futures with stems often different from the stem seen in the present tense (see Chapter 10, Grammar 6, pages 166–167). In the aorist of these verbs ε is not added to the stem as it is in the future, and the σ of the -σα aorist suffix is lost; this causes the stem vowel (seen in the future) to lengthen (if it is not long already). Because of the loss of the σ, we call these *asigmatic 1st aorists*.

αἶρω, *I lift*, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ, [ἄρ-] ἦρ-α (ᾱ of the stem does not change)  
ἀποκρίνομαι, *I answer*, [κρίνε-] ἀποκρινούμαι, [κρίν-] ἀπεκρίν-ᾱ-μην  
(ῖ lengthens to ι)  
ἀποκτείνω, *I kill*, [κτενε-] ἀποκτενῶ, [κτειν-] ἀπέκτειν-α  
(ε lengthens to ει)  
ἐγείρω, *I wake (someone) up; middle, I wake up*, [έγερε-] ἐγερῶ,  
[έγειρ-] ἦγειρα (ε lengthens to ει)  
μένω, *I stay; I wait*, [μενε-] μενῶ, [μειν-] ἔμειν-α (ε lengthens to ει)  
φαίνομαι, *I appear*, [φανε-] φανοῦμαι, [φην-] ἐφην-ᾱ-μην (α lengthens to η)

As an example, we give the verb αἶρω, *I lift*, which in the middle voice may mean *I carry off for myself; I win* (e.g., a prize).

#### Asigmatic 1st Aorist Active

Present: αἶρω, *I lift*; Aorist Stem: ἄρ-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἦρ-α, <i>I lifted</i>		ἄρ-αι, <i>to lift</i>	ἄρ-ᾱς, ἄρ-ᾱσα, ἄρ-αν, gen., ἄρ-αντ-ος, etc., <i>having lifted,</i> <i>after lifting,</i> <i>sometimes, lifting</i>
ἦρ-α-ς	ἄρ-ον, <i>lift!</i>		
ἦρ-ε(ν)			
ἦρ-α-μεν			
ἦρ-α-τε	ἄρ-α-τε, <i>lift!</i>		
ἦρ-α-ν			

#### Asigmatic 1st Aorist Middle

ἦρ-ᾱ-μην, <i>I carried off</i>		ἄρ-α-σθαι, <i>to carry off</i>	ἄρ-ᾱ-μεν-ος, ἄρ-ᾱ-μέν-η, ἄρ-ᾱ-μεν-ον, <i>having carried off,</i> <i>after carrying off,</i> <i>sometimes, carrying off</i>
ἦρ-α-σο > ἦρω	ἄρ-αι, <i>carry off!</i>		
ἦρ-α-το			
ἦρ-ᾱ-μεθα			
ἦρ-α-σθε	ἄρ-α-σθε <i>carry off!</i>		
ἦρ-α-ντο			

**Exercise 12θ**

Fill in the aorist forms of the verbs ἀποκτείνω and ἀποκρίνομαι that you have learned to date on the Verb Charts on which you entered forms for Exercise 10ζ.

**Exercise 12ι**

Change the following present forms into corresponding forms of the aorist:

- |                |                |                                 |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. αἶρειν      | 6. μένε        | 11. ἐγείρων                     |
| 2. ἐγείρει     | 7. ἀποκτείνειν | 12. ἀποκρίνου                   |
| 3. μένουσα     | 8. αἶρων       | 13. φαίνεται                    |
| 4. ἀποκρίνεται | 9. μένειν      | 14. ἀποκρίνεσθαι                |
| 5. φαινόμενος  | 10. αἶρομεν    | 15. ἀποκτείνουσι(ν)<br>(2 ways) |

**4. Irregular Sigmatic 1st Aorists**

Learn the future and aorist of the following verbs, which are irregular:

δοκεῖ, impersonal, *it seems (good)*, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), δόξαν  
 ἐθέλω, *I am willing; I wish*, [ἐθελε-], ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἐθελήσῃς  
 ἐλαύνω, *I drive*, [ἐλα-] ἐλῶ, ἐλᾶς, ἐλᾶ, etc., ἤλασα, ἐλάσῃς  
 καίω or κάω, *I kindle, burn*; middle, intransitive, *I burn, am on fire*,  
 [καυ-] καύσω, ἔκαυσα, καύσῃς  
 καλέω, *I call*, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, καλέσῃς  
 μάχομαι, *I fight*, [μαχε-] μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μαχεσάμενος  
 πλέω, *I sail*, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι, [πλευ-]  
 ἔπλευσα, πλεύσῃς

**Exercise 12κ**

Read aloud and translate. Identify liquid, nasal, and irregular aorists:

- ὁ πάππος ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενος (*lying*) ἠθέλησε καθεύδειν.
- ἄλλ' ὁ Φίλιππος προσδραμὼν ἡγειρεν αὐτόν.
- ὁ δέ, "τί με ἡγειρας, ὦ παῖ," ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος ἔφη· "λύκος τις ἐπὶ τὰ πρόβατα ὀρμᾶται."
- ὁ δὲ πάππος, "κάλεσον τὸν Ἄργον," ἔφη, "καὶ ἄμυνον τὸν λύκον τοῖς προβάτοις." ἄμύνω, [ἀμυνε-], ἀμυνῶ, ἤμυνά, *I ward off X (acc.) from Y (dat.)*
- ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος τὸν Ἄργον καλέσῃς ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος ἔσπευσεν.

- ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἄργος ἀγρίως ὑλακτῶν (*barking*) τὸν λύκον ἐδίωξεν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος λίθους ἄρᾳς αὐτὸν ἔβαλεν.
- δι' ὀλίγου δὲ ὁ Ἄργος τὸν λύκον ὁδᾶξ (*with his teeth*) ἔσχεν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος τῇ μαχαίρᾳ αὐτὸν ἀπέκτεινεν.
- ὁ δὲ πάππος εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἀφικόμενος, "εὖ γε," ἔφη, "τοῖς προβάτοις τὸν λύκον ἀνδρείως ἡμύνετε."
- "νῦν δὲ σὺ μὲν ἐνθάδε μέινον, ἐγὼ δὲ οἴκαδε ἐπάνειμι· βούλομαι γὰρ τῇ μητρὶ ἀγγεῖλαι τί ἐγένετο." ἀγγέλλω, [ἀγγελε-] ἀγγελῶ, [ἀγγειλ-] ἡγγεῖλα, *I announce; I tell*
- τῷ οὖν Φίλιππῳ ἔδοξε τὰ πρόβατα εἰς τὸ αὐλίον (*sheepfold*) εἰσελάσαι.

**5. Verb Forms: Augment of Compound Verbs**

Verbs with prepositional prefixes attach the syllabic augment to the stem of the simple verb. Observe βάλλω (aorist ἔβαλον) with the following prefixes, and note the changes in the spelling of some of the prefixes in the combined forms:

εἰς- <i>into</i>	εἰσβάλλω, εἰσέβαλον
ἐκ- <i>out</i>	ἐκβάλλω, ἐξέβαλον
προς- <i>to, toward</i>	προσβάλλω, προσέβαλον
ἀπο- <i>away</i>	ἀποβάλλω, ἀπέβαλον
κατα- <i>down</i>	καταβάλλω, κατέβαλον
συν- <i>together</i>	συνβάλλω, συνέβαλον

**Exercise 12λ**

Give the aorist indicative, 1st person singular, of the following verbs:

- |              |                |                      |
|--------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. προσχωρέω | 4. ἀποκρίνομαι | 7. εἰσκομίζω         |
| 2. ἐκπέμπω   | 5. εἰσπέμπω    | 8. συνέρχομαι*       |
| 3. ἀποφεύγω  | 6. ἀποκτείνω   | 9. συλλαμβάνω (συν-) |

\*N.B. The accent of compound verbs never recedes beyond the augment.

**Exercise 12μ**

Read aloud and translate:

- οἱ δοῦλοι τοὺς λίθους ἄραντες ἐξέβαλον ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
- ὁ δεσπότης τοὺς βοῦς εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσελάσῃς τοὺς δούλους ἐκάλεσεν.
- ὁ δεσπότης τοὺς μὲν δούλους ἀπέπεμψεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἔμεινεν.
- οἱ δοῦλοι τὸ ἄροτρον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καταλιπόντες ταχέως οἴκαδε ἐπανήλθον.
- ἡ παρθένος τὸν πατέρα ἰδοῦσα ταχέως προσεχώρησε καὶ ἤρετο τί οὐκ οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχεται.
- ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι δεῖ τὸν ἀγρὸν ἀροῦν (*to plow*).

7. οἱ νεανῖαι οὐκ ἀπέφυγον ἀλλὰ ἀνδρείως ἐμαχέσαντο.
8. ὁ ἄγγελος ἡγγεilen ὅτι πολλοὶ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ (*battle*) ἀπέθανον.
9. οἱ ναῦται τὴν ναὺν παρασκευασάμενοι ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος ἐξέπλευσαν.
10. τῷ ναυκλήρῳ τὸν χειμῶνα φοβουμένῳ ἔδοξε πρὸς τὸν λιμένα ἐπανελθεῖν.

## Ο ΚΩΛΑΙΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΤΑΡΤΗΣΣΟΝ ΕΥΡΙΣΚΕΙ

Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 1.163 and 4.152) and answer the comprehension questions:

πρῶτοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τὸν Τάρτησσον ἀφίκοντο οἱ Σάμιοι. ἔμπορος γάρ τις, Κωλαῖος ὀνόματι, ἀπὸ τῆς Σάμου ὁρμώμενος πρὸς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἔπλει, ἀλλὰ χειμῶν μέγιστος ἐγένετο, καὶ πολλὰς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐπαύσατο ὁ ἄνεμος αἰεὶ φέρων τὴν ναὺν πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέρᾱν. τέλος δὲ ὁ Κωλαῖος καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι Ἡρακλείδης στήλᾱς διεκπεράσαντες εἰς Ὠκεανὸν εἰσέπλευσαν καὶ οὕτως εἰς τὸν Τάρτησσον ἀφίκοντο.

[τῶν Ἑλλήνων, of the Greeks Τάρτησσον, Tartessus οἱ Σάμιοι, the Samians Κωλαῖος, Colaeus τῆς Σάμου, Samos τὴν Αἴγυπτον, Egypt ἔπλει, was sailing ὁ ἄνεμος, the wind τὴν ἐσπέρᾱν, the evening, the west Ἡρακλείδης στήλᾱς, the Pillars of Hercules διεκπεράσαντες, having passed through Ὠκεανὸν, the Ocean]

1. Who were the first Greeks to arrive at Tartessus?
2. To what country did Colaeus set out to sail?
3. What happened that made him sail westward?
4. What did he sail through before arriving at Tartessus?

οἱ δὲ ἐπιχώριοι λαβόντες αὐτοὺς ἐκόμισαν παρὰ τὸν βασιλέᾱ, γέροντά τινα, Ἀργαθώνιον ὀνόματι. ὁ δὲ ἤρετο αὐτοὺς τίνας εἰσὶ καὶ πόθεν ἤκουσιν. ὁ δὲ Κωλαῖος ἀπεκρίνατο· “Ἕλληνές ἐσμεν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν Αἴγυπτον πλέοντας χειμῶν ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν σὴν γῆν ἤλασεν.” ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς πάντα ἀκούσας ἐθαύμασεν, εὐμενῶς δὲ δεξάμενος αὐτοὺς πλεῖστον τε ἀργύριον καὶ πλεῖστον καττίτερον αὐτοῖς παρέσχεν. οἱ δὲ πολὺν τινα χρόνον ἐν τῷ Ταρτήσσῳ μένοντες ἐμπορίᾱν ἐποιοῦντο. τέλος δὲ τὸν Ἀργαθώνιον χαίρειν κελεύσαντες ἀπέπλευσαν καὶ εἰς τὴν Σάμον ἐπανῆλθον οὐδὲν κακὸν παθόντες.

[οἱ... ἐπιχώριοι, the natives Ἀργαθώνιον, Argathonius εὐμενῶς, kindly καττίτερον, tin ἐμπορίᾱν ἐποιοῦντο, were carrying on trade]

5. Where did the natives take Colaeus?
6. What did Argathonius ask Colaeus and his men?
7. What did Colaeus answer?
8. How did Argathonius receive Colaeus and his men and what did he give them?

9. What did Colaeus and his men do in Tartessus?
10. Did Colaeus and his men arrive home safely?

### Exercise 12v

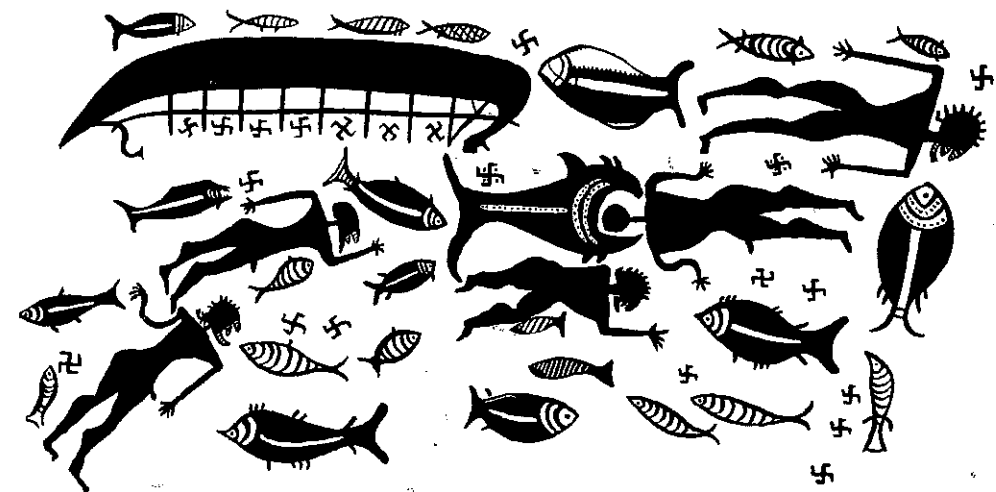
Translate into Greek:

1. When Colaeus returned home, he told the Greeks (τοῖς Ἑλλησι(ν)) what happened.
2. All were amazed, and many, having heard that Argathonius was (*use present tense*) very wealthy (ὀλβιος), wanted (ἐβούλοντο) to sail to Tartessus.
3. They decided to set out immediately; and having prepared four ships they sailed away.
4. After suffering many terrible things, they finally arrived at Tartessus.
5. The king received them kindly and handed over to them much silver and tin (*use ὁ καττίτερος*).
6. Then the Greeks for a long time were carrying on trade with (πρὸς) the citizens of Tartessus.

### Greek Wisdom

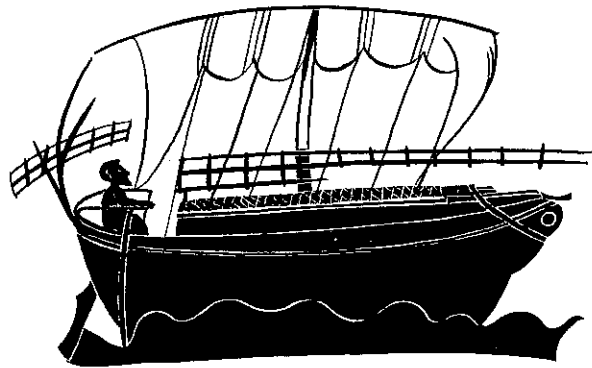
οἱ πλεῖστοι κακοί.

Βίας (of Priene)



An ancient shipwreck; an overturned ship and men in the sea, one being eaten by a fish

# 13 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (α)



στρογγύλη ἦν ἡ ναῦς, ἥ σῖτόν τε καὶ οἶνον ἔφερε πρὸς τὰς νήσους.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἑρέσσω, no future, [ἔρετ-]  
ἤρεσα, ἐρέσας, I row  
ἡσυχάζω, ἡσυχάσω, ἡσύχασα,  
ἡσυχάσας, I keep quiet; I rest

### Nouns

ὁ ἄνεμος, τοῦ ἀνέμου, wind  
τὰ ἱστία, τῶν ἱστιῶν, sails

### Pronoun

ἀλλήλων, of one another  
meanwhile

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ ναύτης ὁ γεραιὸς (τόν τε Δικαιοπόλιν καὶ τὸν παῖδα  
εἰς τὴν ναῦν ἀγαγὼν) ἐκέλευσε καθίζεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ καταστρώματι.  
(ἐνταῦθα δὴ) ὁ μὲν ναύκληρος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ναύτας λῦσαι τὰ  
πείσματα, οἱ δὲ ναῦται τὰ πείσματα λύσαντες τὴν ναῦν βραδέως  
ἤρεσσον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν. ἔπειτα δὲ τὴν γῆν καταλιπόντες τὰ  
ἱστία ἐπέτασαν.

[τῷ καταστρώματι, the deck τὰ πείσματα, the cables ἤρεσσον, were rowing  
ἐπέτασαν (from πετάννυμι), they spread]

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ μὲν ναῦς βεβαίως ἐπλεῖ, οἱ δὲ ναῦται (τῶν ἔργων  
παυσάμενοι) ἡσύχαζον, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις πᾶσαν τὴν ναῦν ἐσκόπει.

στρογγύλη ἦν ἡ ναῦς, οὐ μεγάλη οὐδὲ ταχεῖα ἀλλὰ βεβαία, ἥ φορτία  
ἔφερε πρὸς τὰς νήσους· σῖτός τε γὰρ ἐνῆν καὶ οἶνος καὶ ὕλη καὶ  
πρόβατα. πολλοὶ δ' ἐνήσαν ἄνθρωποι, ἄγροικοι ὄντες, οἱ τὰ φορτία  
ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις πωλήσαντες οἴκαδε ἐπανῆσαν· ἄλλοι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς  
οἰκείους ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ ἐν ταῖς νήσοις ὄκουν πάντες δὲ ἐτέρποντο  
πλέοντες—οὕριος γὰρ ἦν ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ λαμπρὸς ὁ ἥλιος—καὶ ἡ  
διελέγοντο ἀλλήλοις ἡ μέλη ᾗδον.

[ἐσκόπει, began to examine στρογγύλη, round ἦν, was ἡ, which φορτία,  
cargo ἐνῆν, was in (it) ὕλη, timber ἐνήσαν, were in (it) ἄγροικοι, rustic οἱ,  
who πωλήσαντες, having sold ἐπανῆσαν, were going back, returning τοὺς  
οἰκείους, their relatives οὕριος, favorable μέλη, songs ᾗδον (from ᾄδω), they  
were singing]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words. Give the meanings of the Greek words in parentheses:

1. nautical
2. cosmonaut (ὁ κόσμος, τοῦ κόσμου)
3. aeronaut (ὁ or ἡ ἀήρ, τοῦ or τῆς ἀέρος)
4. astronaut (τὸ ἄστρον, τοῦ ἄστρου)
5. cosmology
6. astrology

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: The Imperfect or Past Progressive Tense

#### a. Regular and Contract Verbs:

For regular and contract verbs, the *imperfect* or *past progressive* tense is formed by augmenting the verb stem as found in the present tense and adding the thematic vowels and the secondary personal endings. Compare the formation and endings of the thematic 2nd aorist, which is similar except that it is based on a different stem. The imperfect tense has forms only in the indicative; there are no imperfect imperatives, infinitives, or participles.

## Regular Verbs

## Imperfect Active

ἔ-λῦ-ο-ν	<i>I was loosening, I used to loosen</i>
ἔ-λῦ-ε-ς	<i>you were loosening, you used to loosen</i>
ἔ-λῦ-ε(ν)	<i>he/she was loosening, he/she used to loosen</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ο-μεν	<i>we were loosening, we used to loosen</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ε-τε	<i>you were loosening, you used to loosen</i>
ἔ-λῦ-ο-ν	<i>they were loosening, they used to loosen</i>

## Imperfect Middle

ἐ-λῦ-ό-μην	<i>I was ransoming, I used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ε-σο > ἐλύου	<i>you were ransoming, you used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ε-το	<i>he/she was ransoming, he/she used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ό-μεθα	<i>we were ransoming, we used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ε-σθε	<i>you were ransoming, you used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῦ-ο-ντο	<i>they were ransoming, they used to ransom</i>

## Contract Verbs

Contract verbs follow the rules given above for the formation of the imperfect tense and the rules for contraction given on pages 39 and 56:

## Active

ἐ-φίλε-ο-ν >	ἐφίλουν	ἐ-τίμα-ο-ν >	ἐτίμων
ἐ-φίλε-ε-ς >	ἐφίλεις	ἐ-τίμα-ε-ς >	ἐτίμας
ἐ-φίλε-ε >	ἐφίλει	ἐ-τίμα-ε >	ἐτίμα
ἐ-φιλέ-ο-μεν >	ἐφιλοῦμεν	ἐ-τιμά-ο-μεν >	ἐτιμῶμεν
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-τε >	ἐφιλεῖτε	ἐ-τιμά-ε-τε >	ἐτιμᾶτε
ἐ-φίλε-ο-ν >	ἐφίλουν	ἐ-τίμα-ο-ν >	ἐτίμων

## Middle

ἐ-φιλε-ό-μην >	ἐφιλούμην	ἐ-τιμα-ό-μην >	ἐτιμώνμην
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-σο >	ἐφιλοῦ	ἐ-τιμά-ε-σο >	ἐτιμῶ
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-το >	ἐφιλείτο	ἐ-τιμά-ε-το >	ἐτιμᾶτο
ἐ-φιλε-ό-μεθα >	ἐφιλούμεθα	ἐ-τιμα-ό-μεθα >	ἐτιμώμεθα
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-σθε >	ἐφιλείσθε	ἐ-τιμά-ε-σθε >	ἐτιμᾶσθε
ἐ-φιλέ-ο-ντο >	ἐφιλοῦντο	ἐ-τιμά-ο-ντο >	ἐτιμώντο

Here is the imperfect active of πλέω (for the present, see Chapter 6, Grammar 1, page 74): ἔπλεον, ἔπλεις, ἔπλει, ἐπλέομεν, ἐπλείτε, ἔπλεον. Only the forms of this verb with ε + ε are contracted in Attic Greek.

## b. Irregular Verbs:

Imperfect of εἰμί, *I am*:

ἦ or ἦν	<i>I was</i>
ἦσθα	<i>you were</i>
ἦν	<i>he/she/it was</i>
ἦμεν	<i>we were</i>
ἦτε	<i>you were</i>
ἦσαν	<i>they were</i>

Imperfect of εἶμι [εἰ-/ι-], which serves as the future of ἔρχομαι in Attic Greek (see Chapter 10, Grammar 6, pages 168–169) and means *I will go*:

ἦα or ἦειν	<i>I was going</i>
ἦισθα or ἦεις	<i>you were going</i>
ἦειν or ἦει	<i>he/she/it was going</i>
ἦμεν	<i>we were going</i>
ἦτε	<i>you were going</i>
ἦσαν or ἦεσαν	<i>they were going</i>

Note that in the imperfect the ε of the long vowel stem (εἰ-) is augmented to η and that the ι becomes subscript. Note that the iota subscript occurs in all the forms of the imperfect of εἶμι but in none of the forms of the imperfect of εἰμί.

Note:

Present, ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*

Imperfect, ἦα or ἦειν, *I was coming; I was going*

Future: εἶμι, *I will come; I will go*

Aorist: ἦλθον, *I came; I went*

For the compounds of ἔρχομαι, see Chapter 10, Grammar 6, page 169.

## c. Irregular Augment:

ἔλκω, *I drag*, becomes εἶλκον in the imperfect.

ἔπομαι, *I follow*, becomes εἰπόμην in the imperfect.

ἐργάζομαι, *I work; I accomplish*, becomes ἡργαζόμην or εἰργαζόμην in the imperfect.

ἔχω, *I have; I hold*, becomes εἶχον in the imperfect.

ὁράω, *I see*, becomes ἑώρων in the imperfect, with double augment.

## Exercise 13a

In the first two paragraphs of the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter locate:

1. Seven imperfects of regular verbs
2. Three imperfects of contract verbs
3. Four imperfects of εἰμί (including compound verbs)
4. One imperfect of εἶμι (compound)

## Exercise 13β

Fill in the imperfect forms on all of the Verb Charts on which you have entered forms to date. Keep these charts for reference.

## 2. Aspect

The imperfect or past progressive indicative usually looks on the action of the verb as an ongoing process in past time, just as the present tense looks on the action as an ongoing process in present time; note that these two tenses use the same stem. The aorist indicative, on the other hand, usually looks on the action as a simple action or event in past time. Note the following uses of the imperfect or past progressive:

- a. The imperfect tense usually indicates *continuous or incomplete action in past time*. When so used it can be translated by the English imperfect, e.g.:

ἐπεὶ προσεχωροῦμεν, οἱ φύλακες τὰς πύλας ἐκλείον.

When *we were approaching*, the guards *were shutting* the gates.

Compare the aorist:

ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθομεν, οἱ φύλακες τὰς πύλας ἐκλείσαν.

When *we went in*, the guards *shut* the gates.

The imperfect can also be translated with phrases such as *used to . . . , was/were accustomed to . . .* of repeated or habitual action, e.g.:

οἱ βόες ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ.

The oxen *used to stay/were accustomed to staying* in the field.

- b. The imperfect may also be used to indicate *the beginning of an action in past time*, e.g.:

εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσελθόντες ἐπόνουν.

Entering the field, *they began to work*.

This is called the *inchoative imperfect*, from the Latin verb *inchoō*, "I begin."

The aorist may also be used with certain verbs to indicate the entrance into a state or the beginning of an action, e.g., ἡ Μυρρίνη ἐδάκρυσε, *Myrrhine burst* into tears. This is called the *ingressive aorist*, from the Latin verb *ingredior*, "I begin."

- c. The imperfect may also be used to indicate *an attempt to do something in past time*, e.g.:

τὸν πατέρα ἐπειθόμεν οἴκαδε ἐπανελθεῖν· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἠθέλησεν.

*We tried to persuade* father to return home, but he did not want to.

This use is called the *conative imperfect* from the Latin verb *cōnor*, "I try, attempt."

Contrast the aorist:

τὸν πατέρα ἐπείσαμεν.

*We persuaded* father.

## Exercise 13γ

Identify the tense and form (indicative, participle, infinitive, imperative) of the underlined verbs, translate the verb, and explain why each tense is used (use the information given in the discussions of aspect in Chapter 11, Grammar 3, pages 178–180, and in Grammar 2 above. Then translate the sentences.

- ὁ παῖς τοὺς βούς οἴκαδε ἤγεν, καταπεσὼν δὲ τὸν πόδα ἔβλαψεν (from βλάπτω, *I harm, hurt*).
- πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐν τῷ ἄστει ἐμένομεν, τέλος δὲ οἴκαδε ὤρμησάμεθα.
- αἱ παρθέναι πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ ἔμενον διαλεγόμεναι, τοὺς δὲ παῖδας ἰδοῦσαι προσχωροῦντας ἀπῆλθον.
- ὁ ἀνὴρ πολὺν χρόνον τὴν γυναῖκα πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἔμενε, τέλος δὲ εἶδεν αὐτὴν προσχωροῦσαν.
- αἱ γυναῖκες αἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ μύθους ἔλεγον, τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ἰδοῦσαι ἐπαύσαντο λέγουσαι καὶ ἐκάλεσαν αὐτούς.
- ὁ Φίλιππος τὸν κύνα καθ' ἡμέραν (every day) πρὸς τὸ αὐλῖον (the sheep-fold) ἤγεν. *Tried to persuade*
- ἡ παρθένος τὸν πατέρα ἐπειθεν αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἀγαγεῖν, ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἠθέληεν. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ῥαδίως ἐπεισεν αὐτόν. *easily persuaded*
- σῖγῆσατε, ὦ παῖδες, καὶ ἀκούετε μου.
- ἡ παρθένος τὴν ὑδρίαν καταβαλοῦσα δακρύσασα τὴν μητέρα ἐκάλεσεν.
- ἡ μήτηρ τὴν παρθένον ἐκέλευσεν ἄλλην ὑδρίαν ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου κομίσαι· ἡ δὲ δακρύουσα οἴκαδε ἔσπευδεν.

## Exercise 13δ

Change the following forms first into the corresponding forms of the imperfect, then of the future, and then of the aorist. Watch out for verbs that have deponent futures and ones that have sigmatic 1st aorists or thematic 2nd aorists.

- |               |              |                |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. λῶμεν      | 6. ἀκούετε   | 11. ἀφικνείται |
| 2. λύονται    | 7. ἡγεῖ      | 12. νικῶμεν    |
| 3. ποιοῦσι(ν) | 8. γιγνόμεθα | 13. βοᾷ        |
| 4. φιλεῖ      | 9. πέμπομεν  | 14. πίπτει     |
| 5. λαμβάνει   | 10. εὐχονται | 15. λείπω      |

**Exercise 13c**

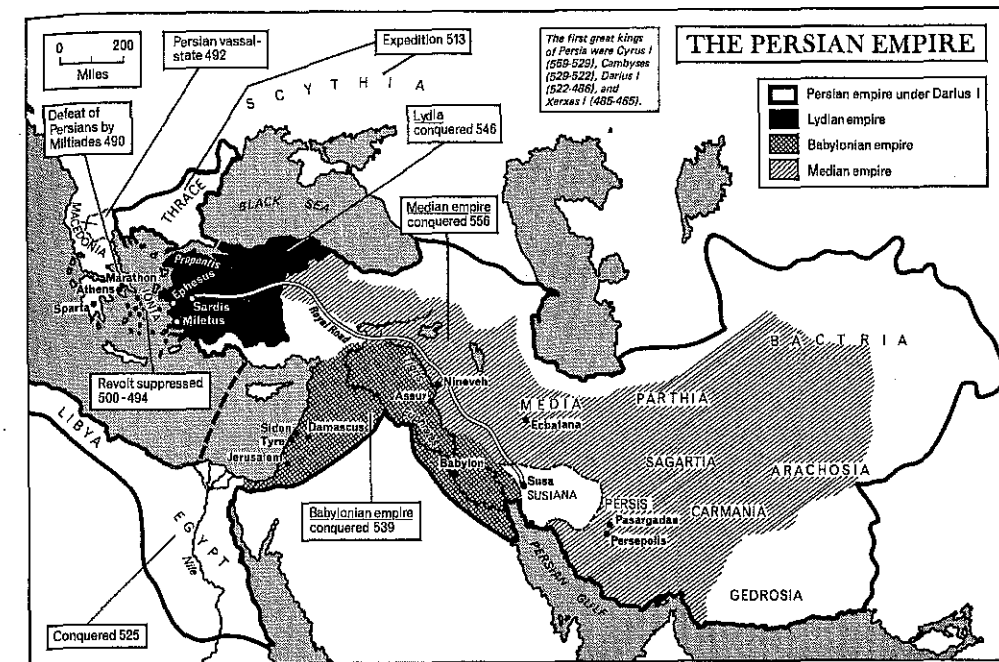
Translate into Greek:

1. The young men were running very quickly to the agora.
2. When the boy returned home, the girl was waiting by the door.
3. He was already sailing through the straits (τὰ στενὰ) to the harbor.
4. I was staying at home, but you were journeying to the city.
5. When we arrived at the island, no one was willing to come to our aid (use βοηθέω + dat.).
6. What were you doing, boy, when I saw you in the harbor?
7. Were you watching the ship sailing out (use ἐκπλέω) to sea?
8. The captain was shouting loudly, but we were not afraid of him.

## The Rise of Persia

The events that led to the sudden emergence of Persia as a world power are complex, involving the fall of three ancient empires in quick succession. Until the sixth century, the Persians were a wandering mountain tribe, the name of which occasionally crops up in contemporary records as the tribe gradually worked its way southeast from Russia down the mountains of western Iran. By 550 B.C. the Persians were settled east of the mouth of the Tigris as a vassal kingdom of Media. To understand their rapid rise to power it is necessary to go back to the middle of the seventh century, a turning point in the history of the ancient world.

By 650 B.C. the Assyrian Empire, which had ruled Mesopotamia, Egypt, and Syria, began to crumble. In Egypt Psammetichus led a national revival and threw off the Assyrian yoke with the help of Greek mercenaries (ca. 650 B.C.). The Medes, united under King Phraortes (675–653 B.C.), became a formidable power, extending their kingdom on all sides. In Lydia, Gyges (685–657 B.C.) founded a new dynasty and expanded westward to Ionia, where he defeated some of the Ionian Greeks, and eastward to the river Halys (the northeastern border of the Lydian Empire as marked on the map). Babylon, which a thousand years earlier had ruled all of Mesopotamia, revolted from Assyria about 625 B.C. and made an alliance with the Medes. In 612 B.C. the Babylonians and Medes took the Assyrian capital Nineveh and proceeded to divide up their empire. Babylon took the south; their king, Nebuchadnezzar, controlled all of Mesopotamia. He defeated the Egyptians at the great battle of Carchemish (605 B.C.) and drove them from Syria. When the Jews revolted, he took and destroyed Jerusalem (587 B.C.) and carried the tribes of Judah into captivity in Babylon. Assyria itself and the lands to the west up to the borders of Lydia fell to the Medes. On these borders the Medes fought several battles with Lydians, the last of which (28 May 585 B.C.) was broken off when the eclipse of the sun predicted by Thales occurred.



The Persian Empire

The stage was now set for the rise of Persia. In 556 B.C. Cyrus, king of the Persians, defeated the Medes and became king of the Medes and Persians, founding the dynasty of the Achaemenids, who were to rule the greatest empire the world had ever seen, until they were overthrown by Alexander the Great two hundred years later.

Croesus, king of Lydia, alarmed by the growing power of Cyrus, decided to make a pre-emptive strike. He consulted the oracle of Apollo at Delphi, which answered that if he crossed the river Halys, he would destroy a great empire. Thus encouraged, he led his army over the river and was met by Cyrus near the city of Pteria, about 60 miles or 100 kilometers east of the Halys. A bloody but indecisive battle followed, after which Croesus led his troops back to Sardis, intending to invade again the following year with larger forces. Cyrus, however, pursued him hotfoot, defeated him, and took the city of Sardis (546 B.C.). Many of the Greek cities of Asia Minor submitted at once. Those that did not were reduced the following year by the general whom Cyrus left behind when he returned to Persia.

When Cyrus had consolidated his empire in Iran, he was ready to move against Babylon, which was suffering from discord. He came as a liberator, for example, of the Jews: "Comfort ye, comfort ye, my people, saith God. . . . Comfort Jerusalem, for her time of humiliation is ended"—so prophesied Isaiah (xl), welcoming the coming of Cyrus as the savior sent by God. Babylon fell in 539 B.C., and there followed a peaceful and orderly occupation. Cyrus was proclaimed king of Babylon the following year: "I am Cyrus, king of the

world, the Great King, the legitimate king, king of Babylon, king of Sumer and Akkad, king of the four corners of the earth" reads an inscription found on a cylinder at Babylon. One of his first decrees allowed the Jews to return to Jerusalem and rebuild the Temple. He died in 530 B.C., much lamented; he had been no mere conqueror but the father of his people.

His son Cambyses consolidated Persian power in the Levant and invaded and defeated Egypt (525 B.C.). In March of 522 B.C., shortly before he died, there was a rebellion led by a Persian who called himself Bardiya, son of Cyrus. By July most of the empire acknowledged him, but in September a conspiracy was formed by seven great Persian nobles, who maintained that Bardiya was a pretender. They murdered him and set on the throne one of their number: Darius. Darius had to put down revolts all over the empire before his position was secure. He consolidated the empire and extended it in the East from Afghanistan into India (the Punjab) and opened up a sea route from the mouth of the Indus to the Persian Gulf and Egypt.

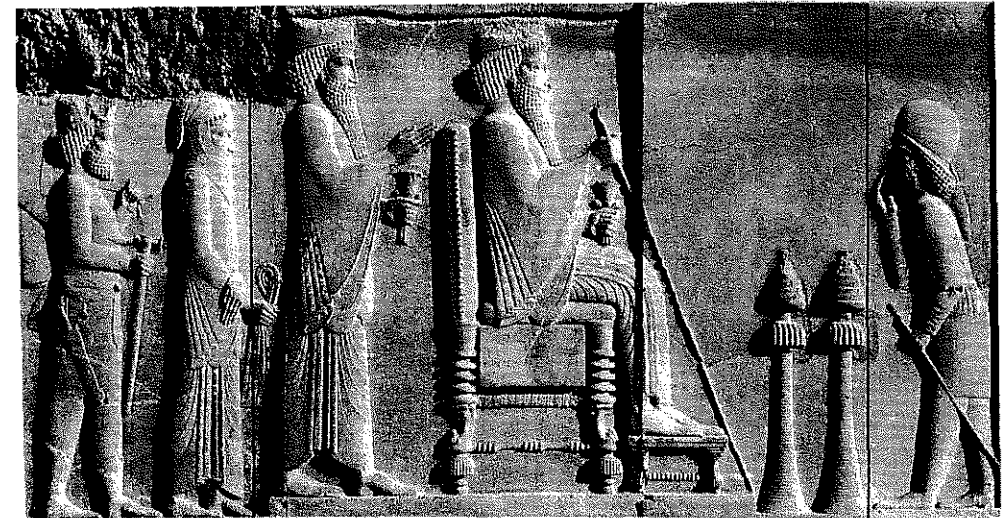
Darius then turned his attention northwest. In 513 B.C. he led his army into Europe across the Hellespont, subdued most of Thrace, and marched north to the mouth of the Danube. He crossed the river by a bridge of boats, built by his Greek engineers, and he disappeared into the steppes of Russia, to deal with the nomad Scythians, who were harassing the northern borders of his empire. He was gone for over sixty days, and the Greeks who were guarding the bridge discussed whether they should break up the bridge and leave him to his fate but decided it was wiser to remain at their post. Eventually he returned with the survivors of his army, having accomplished little against the hit-and-run tactics of the Scythians. He returned to Persia, leaving a general to complete the conquest of Thrace. This was accomplished in one campaign, which brought the Persians up to the borders of Macedonia. By now most of the islands of the Aegean Sea were held by the Persians. The threat to mainland Greece was uncomfortably close.

In 499 B.C. the Ionian Greeks revolted, expelling the tyrants whom the Persians had installed to control them. The revolt was led by Aristagoras, tyrant of Miletus, who was in trouble with the Persian authorities. Aristagoras visited the mainland to beg for support. At Sparta, King Cleomenes refused, but at Athens the assembly of the newly founded democracy was won over by his appeal and voted to send an expedition of twenty ships. These joined the Ionian forces at Ephesus, and the allies marched up country and took and destroyed Sardis, the capital of the satrapy. When a Persian relief force arrived, they retreated rapidly to the coast. The Athenian contingent, satisfied with their exploit, returned to Athens. The Ionians kept up the struggle for four more years with varying success until the Persians eventually crushed all resistance and took Miletus (494 B.C.).

Darius is said to have ordered one of his officials to say to him every day: "Remember the Athenians." Retribution was assured. In 492 B.C. a large force was dispatched by land and sea. Thrace and Macedonia submitted, but, when the fleet was wrecked off Mount Athos, the expedition against Greece was called off. Two years later a second expedition sailed straight across the

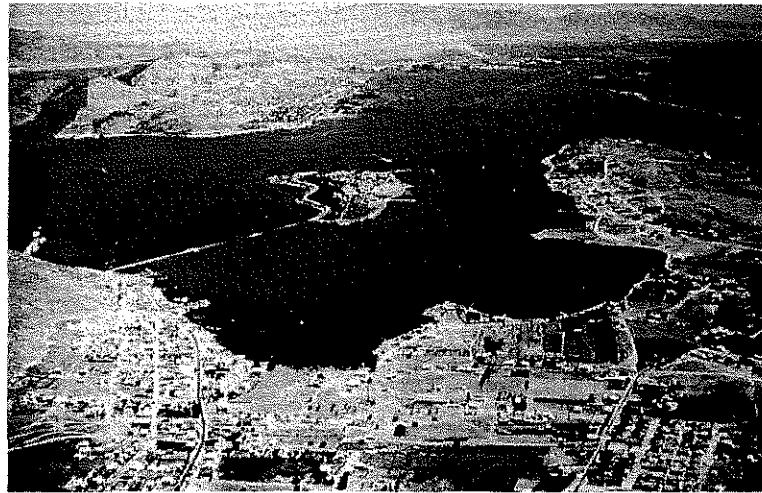
Aegean, landed near Eretria in Euboea (Eretria had sent five ships to help the Ionians), and took and destroyed the city. They then landed on the coast of Attica at Marathon. After heated debate, the Athenian Assembly at the urging of Miltiades decided to send their army out to meet the Persians at Marathon rather than to shut themselves up in the city. The Athenians, though greatly outnumbered, faced the Persians alone (apart from a small contingent sent by their ally Plataea). Sparta sent a force to help, but it arrived too late for the battle. By brilliant tactics, the Athenians routed the Persian force and pursued them to the sea, inflicting heavy casualties for small losses (490 B.C.). This day was never forgotten. To have fought at Marathon was an Athenian's proudest boast. Aeschylus, the great tragic poet, makes no mention of his poetry in his epitaph; he simply says: "Of his glorious courage the groves of Marathon could speak, and the long-haired Mede, who knew it well." The dead were buried beneath a great mound still to be seen on the site of the battle.

Darius' preparations to take revenge on the Greeks were thwarted first by a revolt in Egypt and then by his death. It was not until 483 B.C. that his successor, Xerxes, began to assemble the vast force that was intended finally to settle Persia's score with Greece.



Darius, the Persian king, holds an audience.  
His son and successor, Xerxes, stands behind his throne.

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (β)



ιδού, τὰ στενὰ ἐν οἷς πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐμαχόμεθα.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀμύνω, [ἀμυνε-] ἀμυνῶ, [ἀμυν-]  
ἡμύνα, ἀμύνῃς, active, transi-  
tive, *I ward off X (acc.) from Y*  
(dat.); middle, transitive,  
*I ward off X (acc.); I defend*  
*myself against X (acc.)*  
ὀργίζομαι, [ὀργιε-] ὀργισοῦμαι,  
no aorist middle, *I grow an-*  
*gry; I am angry; + dat., I grow*  
*angry at; I am angry at*

### Nouns

ἡ ἀρχή, τῆς ἀρχῆς, *beginning*  
ὁ βάρβαρος, τοῦ βαρβάρου,  
*barbarian*  
ἡ ἐλευθερία, τῆς ἐλευθερίας,  
*freedom*  
τὸ κῶμα, τοῦ κύματος, *wave*  
ἡ μάχη, τῆς μάχης, *fight; battle*  
τὸ ναυτικόν, τοῦ ναυτικοῦ,  
*fleet*  
τὰ στενὰ, τῶν στενῶν, pl.,  
*narrows, straits; mountain*  
*pass*

ἡ τριήρης, τῆς τριήρους,  
*trireme (a warship)*

### Pronoun and Adjective

μηδεῖς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, used  
instead of οὐδεῖς with impera-  
tives and infinitives, *no one,*  
*nothing; no*

### Relative Pronouns

ὃς, ἡ, ὅ, *who, whose, whom,*  
*which, that*  
ὅσπερ, ἥπερ (note the ac-  
cent), ὅπερ, *emphatic*  
*forms, who, whose, whom,*  
*which, that*

### Adjectives

ἀληθής, ἀληθές, *true*  
τὰ ἀληθῆ, τῶν ἀληθῶν, *the*  
*truth*  
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that;*  
*pl., those*

Note the predicate position:

ἐκεῖνη ἡ μάχη or ἡ μάχη  
ἐκεῖνη, *that battle*

ψευδής, -ές, <i>false</i>	ὡς δοκεῖ, <i>as it seems</i>
τὰ ψευδῆ, τῶν ψευδῶν, <i>lies</i>	Expression
Preposition	τῷ ὄντι, <i>in truth</i>
ἐγγύς + gen., <i>near</i>	Proper Names
Adverbs	ἡ Ἑλλάς, τῆς Ἑλλάδος, <i>Hel-</i> <i>las, Greece</i>
ἅμα, <i>together, at the same time</i>	ὁ Ποσειδῶν, τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος, <i>Poseidon</i>
ὅτε, <i>when</i>	
ὥς, <i>as</i>	

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὀλίγον χρόνον ἐπλευσαν, δέκα νῆες μακραί ἐφαίνοντο, αἱ  
πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ ἐπόρευοντο ἀπὸ τῶν νήσων ἐπανιοῦσαι. πάντες  
οὖν τὰς τριήρεις ἐθεῶντο, αἱ ταχέως διὰ τῶν κῶμάτων ἔσπευδον. οἱ  
γὰρ ἐρέται τῷ κελευστῇ πειθόμενοι τὴν θάλατταν ἅμα ἔτυπτον. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ οὐκέτι ἐφαίνοντο αἱ τριήρεις, μείζων μὲν ἐγίνετο ὁ ἄνεμος, ἡ δὲ  
θάλαττα ἐκύμαιεν. οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι οὐκέτι ἐτέρποντο, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν  
ἄνδρες ἐσίγων, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες μέγα ἔκλαζον εὐχόμεναι τὸν  
Ποσειδῶνα σφάζειν ἐαυτὰς τὸν λιμένα.

[ὀλίγον, *small, short* νῆες μακραί, *long ships = warships* οἱ ... ἐρέται, *rowers*  
τῷ κελευστῇ, *boatswain* (he beat the time for the rowers) μείζων, *larger, greater*  
ἐκύμαιεν, *inchoative, was becoming rough* ἔκλαζον, *inchoative, began to shriek*]

ἄνθρωπος δὲ τις, ὃς (ἐγγὺς τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος) ἐκαθίζετο, ἀνέστη καὶ  
βοήσας, "ὀργίζεται ἡμῖν," ἔφη, "ὁ Ποσειδῶν, ὡς δοκεῖ. κακὸν γὰρ  
ἄνθρωπον ἐν τῇ νηὶ φέρομεν, ὃν δεῖ ρίπτειν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν." καὶ  
τοὺς παρόντας ἐπιφθόνως ἐσκόπει. ὁ δὲ γέρων προσελθὼν, "σίγησον,  
ὦ ἄνθρωπε," ἔφη. "οὐδὲν γὰρ λέγεις. ἤδη γὰρ πίπτει ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ  
οὐκέτι τοσοῦτο κύμαίνει ἡ θάλαττα. κάθιζε οὖν καὶ ἡσυχος ἔχε."  
τρεψάμενος δὲ πρὸς τὸν Φίλιππον, "μηδὲν φοβοῦ, ὦ παῖ," ἔφη. "δὶ  
ὀλίγου γὰρ εἰς τὴν Σαλαμίνα ἀφισόμεθα. ἤδη γὰρ πλέομεν διὰ τῶν  
στενῶν πρὸς τὸν λιμένα. ἰδοῦ, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, τὰ στενὰ, ἐν οἷς τὸ τῶν  
βαρβάρων ναυτικὸν ἐμένομεν ὅτε τῇ Ἑλλάδι αὐτοὺς ἡμῶν ὑπὲρ  
(τῆς ἐλευθερίας) μαχόμενοι."

[ἀνέστη, *stood up* ρίπτειν, *to throw* ἐπιφθόνως, *maliciously, malignantly*  
τοσοῦτο, *so* ἡσυχος ἔχε, *keep quiet!*]

ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, "τί λέγεις, ὦ γέρον," ἔφη. "ἄρα σὺ ἐκεῖνη τῇ  
μάχῃ παρήσθα;" ὁ δὲ γέρον, "μάλιστα γέ," ἔφη, "ἐγὼ παρῆν, νεανίας

7 ὦν καὶ ἐρέτης ἐν τριήρει Ἀθηναίᾳ.” ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἄρα τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγεις; μάλα οὖν γεραιὸς εἶ, εἰ τῷ ὄντι ἐκείνη τῇ μάχῃ παρῆσθα. ἀλλ’ εἰπὲ ἡμῖν τί ἐγένετο.” ὁ δέ, “μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ λόγος,” ἔφη, “ἀλλ’ εἰ βούλεσθε τὰ γενόμενα μαθεῖν, πάντα ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐξηγήσομαι. ἐγὼ δέ, 25 ὃς παρῆν, τέρπομαι ἐξηγούμενος. ἀκούετε οὖν.”

## WORD BUILDING

Give the meanings of the words in the following sets:

1. ἡ ναῦς      ὁ ναύτης      ναυτικός, -ή, -όν      τὸ ναυτικόν
2. ναυμαχέω      ἡ ναυμαχία      ὁ ναύκληρος      ὁ ναύαρχος

## GRAMMAR

### 3. Relative Clauses

You have now seen a number of relative clauses in the reading passages, e.g.:

- a. δέκα νῆες μακραὶ ἐφαίνοντο, αἱ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ ἐπορεύοντο.  
Ten warships were visible, **which were going to the Piraeus.**
- b. κακὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐν τῇ νηὶ φέρομεν, ὃν δεῖ ῥίπτειν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν.  
We are carrying an evil man in the ship, **whom it is necessary to throw into the sea.**

Relative clauses are adjectival or descriptive clauses that are introduced by relative pronouns, of which English has the forms *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, and *that*. In Greek the relative pronoun may appear in any of the following forms:

	Singular			Plural			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<b>Nom.</b>	ὃς	ἥ	ὅ	οἱ	αἱ	ἃ	<i>who, which, that</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	οὗ	ἥς	οὔ	ᾧν	ᾧν	ᾧν	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	<i>to/for whom/which</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	ὃν	ἣν	ὅ	οὓς	ἃς	ἃ	<i>whom, which, that</i>

Be careful not to confuse relative pronouns with definite articles. You may wish to compare the forms and accents of relative pronouns with those of the definite article (Chapter 4, Grammar 8, page 50). Note that the relative pronoun never begins with the letter τ and that the masculine and

feminine nominative singular and plural definite articles do not have accents.

Note the following rule: the relative pronoun, which introduces the relative clause, agrees with the noun, noun phrase, or pronoun to which it refers in the main clause (i.e., its *antecedent*) in gender and number, but its case is determined by its function in the relative clause.

Thus, in sentence a above, the noun phrase δέκα νῆες μακραί (feminine plural) is the antecedent of the relative pronoun, which must accordingly be feminine and plural. The relative pronoun is the subject of the verb in its own clause (ἐπορεύοντο) and must accordingly be in the nominative case; the correct form is therefore αἱ (feminine, plural, nominative).

In sentence b above, the noun phrase κακὸν ἄνθρωπον is the antecedent of the relative pronoun, which must accordingly be masculine and singular. The relative pronoun is the object of ῥίπτειν in its own clause and must accordingly be accusative; the correct form is therefore ὃν (masculine, singular, accusative).

The suffix -περ may be added to the forms of the relative pronoun given above for emphasis.

### Exercise 13ζ

In the first two paragraphs of reading passage β, locate five relative clauses. Identify the antecedent of each relative pronoun, and explain why the relative pronoun is in its gender, number, and case. Two of the five examples have already been analyzed above.

### Exercise 13η

Read aloud and translate into English. Explain the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:

1. οἱ ἔμποροι, οἱ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ νηὶ ἔπλεον, τὰ κύματα οὐκ ἐφοβοῦντο.
2. ὁ ναύτης, ᾧ τὸ ἀργύριον παρέσχες, ἡμῖν ἠγήσατο εἰς τὴν ναῦν.
3. οἱ ἄνθρωποι, οὓς ἐν τῷ ὄρει εἶδετε, σῖτον Ἀθήναζε ἔφερον.
4. ἐκεῖνοι οἱ δοῦλοι πάντα ἐποιοῦν ἅπερ ἐκέλευσεν ὁ δεσπότης.
5. αἱ γυναῖκες, αἷς διελεγόμεθα, οὐκ ἔλεγον τὰ ἀληθῆ.
6. πάντας ἐτίμων οἵπερ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἐμάχοντο.
7. ἐκείνη ἡ ναῦς, ἣν ἐθεῶ ἀποπλέουσας, σῖτον ἔφερεν ἀπὸ τοῦ Πόντου (*the Black Sea*).
8. ὁ ἄγγελος, οὗ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἀκούετε, οὐκ ἔλεγε τὰ ψευδῆ.
9. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐφοβείσθε τοὺς βαρβάρους οὓς ὁ Ξέρξης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἤγεν;
10. ἄρ’ εἶδες ἐκείνην τὴν παρθένον, ἣ οὕτως ὠργίζετο ὁ γέρων;

## Exercise 130

Translate into Greek:

- Those young men were journeying to certain friends who live in the city.
- The young men, whom you saw on the mountains, were looking for their sheep all day.
- The captain received the money that I handed over to him.
- He was sailing through the straits, in which the Greeks defeated the barbarians.
- That priest, with whom we were conversing (*use διαλέγομαι + dat.*), was telling lies.
- The ship, in which he was sailing, arrived at the harbor within four days.
- I was listening to the women, who were working in the house at night.
- On the next day the sailors did all that the captain ordered.
- Weren't you afraid of that old man, who was shouting so loudly?
- The foreigners, although hurrying, helped the old man, who was looking for the oxen.

## 4. 3rd Declension Nouns and Adjectives with Stems in -εσ-

Some 3rd declension nouns and adjectives have stems ending in -εσ-, from which the σ is lost before the endings, allowing the ε of the stem to contract with the vowels of the endings, e.g., τὸ τεῖχος (stem τεῖχεσ-). The usual contractions occur, as follows:

ε + ε > ει      ε + α > η  
ε + ο > ου      ε + ω > ω

Stem: τεῖχεσ-, wall

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχεσ-α > τεῖχη
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ τεῖχεσ-ος > τεῖχους	τῶν τεῖχεσ-ων > τεῖχῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ τεῖχεσ-ι > τεῖχει	τοῖς τεῖχεσ-σι(ν) > τεῖχεσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχεσ-α > τεῖχη
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ τεῖχος	ὦ τεῖχεσ-α > τεῖχη

Neuters with stems in -εσ- have -ος in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

So also τὸ ὄρος, τοῦ ὄρους, *mountain; hill*

Stem: τριηρεσ-, trireme

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ τριήρης	αἱ τριήρεσ-ες > τριήρεις
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς τριήρεσ-ος > τριήρους	τῶν τριήρεσ-ων > τριήρων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ τριήρεσ-ι > τριήρει	ταῖς τριήρεσ-σι(ν) > τριήρεσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν τριήρεσ-α > τριήρη	τὰς τριήρεις
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ τριήρες	ὦ τριήρεσ-ες > τριήρεις

The genitive plural borrows its accent from the other forms, and the accusative plural borrows its form from the nominative plural.

The adjective ἀληθής (stem ἀληθεσ-) has only two sets of forms, the first to go with masculine or feminine nouns and the second to go with neuter nouns. It also loses the σ of the stem before the endings and shows the same contractions as the noun above:

Stem: ἀληθεσ-, true

	M. & F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	ἀληθής	ἀληθές
<b>Gen.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ος > ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθέσ-ος > ἀληθοῦς
<b>Dat.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ι > ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθέσ-ι > ἀληθεῖ
<b>Acc.</b>	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ	ἀληθές
<b>Voc.</b>	ἀληθές	ἀληθές
<b>Nom.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ες > ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ
<b>Gen.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ων > ἀληθῶν	ἀληθέσ-ων > ἀληθῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	ἀληθέσ-σι(ν) > ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσ-σι(ν) > ἀληθέσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ
<b>Voc.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ες > ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ

So also ψευδής, ψευδές, false

**PRACTICE:** Write all the forms of τὸ μέγα ὄρος, *the big mountain*. Write the forms of ὁ Σωκράτης, *Socrates*, in the singular. Write all the forms of the following phrases: ὁ ψευδὴς λόγος, *the false story*; ἡ ἀληθὴς ἀρετή, *the true virtue*; and τὸ ψευδὲς ὄνομα, *the false name*.

## 5. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective with 3rd Declension Stems in -ν- and -ε-

As does the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (Chapter 8, Grammar 4, page 126), the adjective ταχύς, ταχεία, ταχύ, *quick, swift*, has masculine and neuter forms that are 3rd declension, while the feminine is 1st declension (with α, because the stem ends in ι; compare the declension of μάχαιρα, Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 42). For the 3rd declension forms, compare the declensions of πόλις and ἄστυ, Chapter 9, Grammar 3, page 145.

**Stems:** ταχυ-/ταχε- for masculine and neuter; ταχει- for feminine, *quick, swift*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<b>Nom.</b>	ταχύ-ς	ταχεία	ταχύ	ταχείς	ταχείαι	ταχέ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	ταχέ-ος	ταχείας	ταχέ-ος	ταχέ-ων	ταχείων	ταχέ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	ταχεῖ	ταχείᾳ	ταχεῖ	ταχέ-σι(ν)	ταχείαις	ταχέ-σι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	ταχύ-ν	ταχείαν	ταχύ	ταχείς	ταχείας	ταχέ-α
<b>Voc.</b>	ταχύ	ταχεία	ταχύ	ταχείς	ταχείαι	ταχέ-α

So also βραδύς, βραδεία, βραδύ, *slow*.

**PRACTICE:** Write all the forms of ὁ ταχύς κύων, *the swift dog*; ἡ ταχεία τριήρης, *the swift trireme*; and τὸ ταχὺ ζῷον, *the swift animal*.

### Exercise 13i

*Read aloud and translate:*

- οἱ παῖδες ἐπὶ τὰ τείχη ἀναβαίνουνσιν.
- αἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τριήρεις, ταχείαι οὔσαι, τὰς τῶν βαρβάρων ναῦς ῥαδίως ἔλαβον.
- ἀεὶ τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγε, ὦ παῖ.
- ὁ ἄγγελος ψευδῇ τοῖς πολίταις εἶπεν.
- μὴ τὰ πρόβατα ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη ἔλαυνε· πολλοὶ γὰρ λύκοι ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν εἰσιν.

## Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΕΛΛΗΣΠΟΝΤΟΝ ΔΙΑΒΑΙΝΕΙ

*Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 7.33–35 and 44) and answer the comprehension questions:*

ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης, τοὺς Ἕλληνας καταστρέψασθαι βουλόμενος, στρατὸν μέγιστον παρεσκεύασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα τὰ ἄλλα ἔτοιμα ἦν, τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσε γέφυραν ποιῆσαι ἐπὶ τῷ Ἑλλησπόντῳ, τὸν στρατὸν ἐθέλων διαβιβάσαι εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην. οἱ μὲν οὖν στρατηγοὶ γέφυραν ἐποίησαν, χειμῶν δὲ μέγας γενόμενος πάντα διέφθειρε καὶ ἔλυσεν. *loosened?*

[ὁ... Ξέρξης, Xerxes τοὺς Ἕλληνας, *the Greeks* καταστρέφεσθαι, *to overthrow, subdue* στρατὸν, *army* τοὺς στρατηγοὺς, *the generals* γέφυραν, *bridge* τῷ Ἑλλησπόντῳ, *the Hellespont* διαβιβάσαι, *to take across, transport* τὴν Εὐρώπην, *Europe* διέφθειρε, *destroyed*]

- What did Xerxes wish to do?
- What did he prepare?
- What did he order his generals to build? With what purpose in mind?
- What happened?

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμαθεν ὁ Ξέρξης τὰ γενόμενα, μάλα ὀργιζόμενος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς δούλους μαστιγῶσαι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ τοὺς τὴν θάλατταν μαστιγοῦντας ἐκέλευσε ταῦτα λέγειν· “ὦ πικρὸν ὕδωρ, ὁ δεσπότης σε οὕτω κολάζει· ἡδίκησας γὰρ αὐτὸν οὐδὲν κακὸν πρὸς αὐτοῦ παθόν. καὶ βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης διαβήσεται σε, εἴτε βούλει εἴτε μή.”

*neuter of a.i.p.*  
[μαστιγῶσαι, *to whip* ταῦτα, *these things* πικρὸν, *bitter, spiteful, mean* κολάζει, *punishes* ἡδίκησας, *you wronged* πρὸς αὐτοῦ, *from him* παθόν, *(although) having suffered*: note that this aorist participle is neuter to agree with ὕδωρ, the subject of ἡδίκησας διαβήσεται, *will cross* εἴτε... εἴτε, *whether... or*]

- How did Xerxes react to what had happened?
- What did he order his slaves to do?
- To what do the slaves address their speech?
- What justification is cited for the punishment of the Hellespont?
- What will Xerxes do?

οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἐκόλασε τὴν θάλατταν, ἐκείνους δὲ οἱ τὴν γέφυραν ἐποίησαν ἀπέκτεινε, τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποταμών. ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ἄλλην γέφυραν ποιῆσαι, μάλα ἰσχυράν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτοίμη ἦν ἡ γέφυρα, ὁ Ξέρξης πρὸς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον προσελθὼν, πρῶτον μὲν πάντα τὸν στρατὸν ἤθελεν θεᾶσθαι· ἐπὶ ὄχθον οὖν τινα ἀνέβη, ὅθεν πάντα τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν ἐθεᾶτο καὶ πάσας τὰς ναῦς. ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσε τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν διαβιβάσαι εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην. οὕτως οὖν τῷ στρατῷ ἡγεῖτο ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

[ἀποταμών (from ἀποτέμνω), *cutting off* ὄχθον, *hill* ἀνέβη, *he went up, ascended* ὅθεν, *from where, whence* τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν, *the infantry*]

- What did Xerxes do to those who had built the bridge?
- What did he order his generals to do?
- What did Xerxes want to do when he approached the Hellespont?
- Where did he go and what did he see?
- What did he order his generals to do?

### Exercise 13κ

*Translate into Greek:*

- When Philip was sailing to Salamis, the old sailor said that he was present at the battle (*dat. without a preposition*).
- And Philip, who was very amazed, said, “Unless (εἰ μὴ) you are

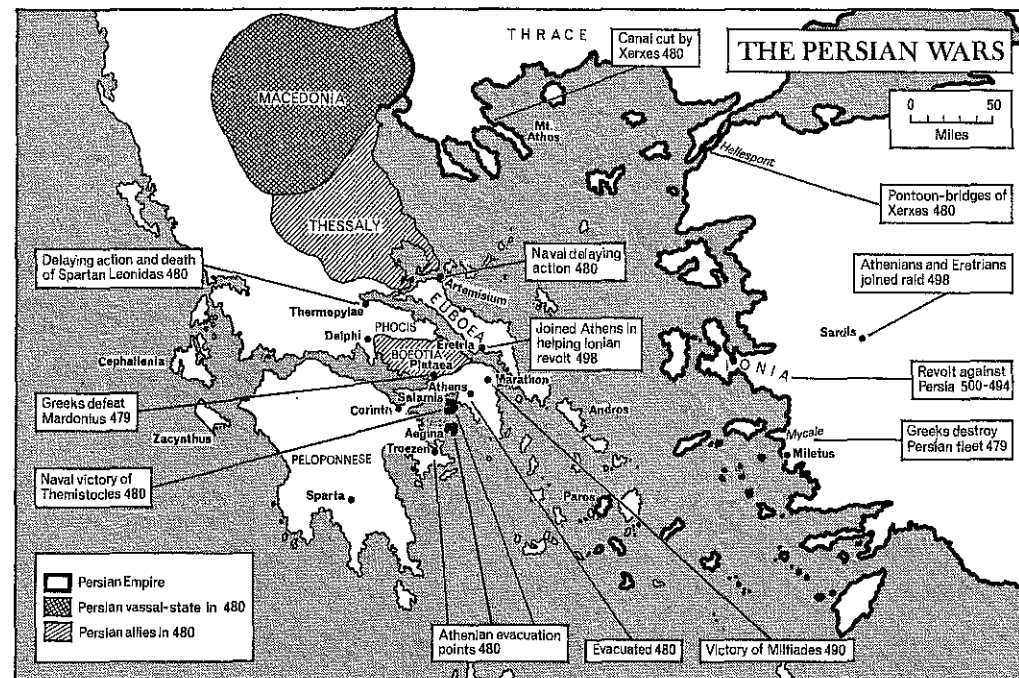
telling lies, you are very old.”

3. And the sailor answered: “I was a young man then and was rowing in the fleet.
4. “If you want to listen, I am willing to tell you what happened.
5. “But it’s a long story, which I must tell from the beginning.”

## Greek Wisdom

μηδὲν ἄγαν.

Σόλων (of Athens)



The Persian Wars

## Classical Greek

Archilochus

For Archilochus, see pages 121 and 173. After seeing an eclipse of the sun (648 B.C.), he declares that nothing is impossible (fragment 122, Gerber).

χρημάτων ἀελπτον οὐδὲν ἐστὶν οὐδ' ἀπώμοτον  
οὐδὲ θαυμάσιον, ἐπειδὴ Ζεὺς πατὴρ Ὀλυμπίων  
ἐκ μεσαμβρίας ἔθηκε νύκτ', ἀποκρύψας φάος  
ἡλίου λάμποντος, ὑγρὸν δ' ἦλθ' ἐπ' ἀνθρώπους δέος.

[χρημάτων . . . οὐδὲν, *nothing of things* = *nothing at all* ἀελπτον, *unexpected* ἀπώμοτον, *to be sworn impossible* ἐπειδὴ, *since* μεσαμβρίας, *midday* ἔθηκε, *made* ἀποκρύψας, *hiding* (τὸ) φάος, *the light* λάμποντος, *shining* ὑγρὸν, *moist, clammy* (we print this emendation instead of the unmetrical λυγρὸν, *baneful*, of the transmitted text) δέος, *fear*]

## New Testament Greek

Luke 21.1–4  
The Widow's Mite

ἀναβλέψας δὲ εἶδεν τοὺς βάλλοντας εἰς τὸ γαζοφυλάκιον τὰ δῶρα αὐτῶν πλουσίους. εἶδεν δὲ τινα χήρᾱ πενιχρὰν βάλλουσαν ἐκεῖ λεπτὰ δύο, καὶ εἶπεν, “ἀληθῶς λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι ἡ χήρᾱ αὕτη ἡ πτωχὴ πλεῖον πάντων ἔβαλεν· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἐκ τοῦ περισσεύοντος αὐτοῖς ἔβαλον εἰς τὰ δῶρα, αὕτη δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ὑστερήματος αὐτῆς πάντα τὸν βίον ὃν εἶχεν ἔβαλεν.”

[ἀναβλέψας: Jesus is the subject γαζοφυλάκιον, *treasury* τὰ δῶρα, *the gifts* πλουσίους, *wealthy* χήρᾱν, *widow* πενιχρὰν, *poor* λεπτὰ, *small coins* αὕτη (take with ἡ χήρᾱ), *this* ἡ πτωχὴ, *the poor (one)* πλεῖον πάντων, *more than all* οὗτοι, *these (men)* τοῦ περισσεύοντος αὐτοῖς, *the more than enough for them*, *their abundance* αὕτη, *this (woman)* ὑστερήματος, *need, poverty* τὸν βίον, *the livelihood*]

# 14 Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ ΜΑΧΗ (α)



οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρείοτατα μαχόμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἡμῶν.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἐλπίζω, [ἐλπιε-] ἐλπῶ, [ἐλπι-]  
ἤλπισα, ἐλπίσας, *I hope; I expect; I suppose*

ἐπιπέμπω, ἐπιπέμψω,  
ἐπέπεμψα, ἐπιπέμψας, *I send against; I send in*

πράττω, [πράκ-] πράξω,  
ἔπραξα, πράξας, *intransitive, I fare; transitive, I do X*

προσβάλλω, [βαλε-] προσ-  
βαλῶ, [βαλ-] προσέβαλον,  
προσβαλὼν + dat., *I attack*

συμβάλλω [= συν- + βάλλω],  
[βαλε-] συμβαλῶ, [βαλ-]  
συνέβαλον, συμβαλὼν, *I join battle; + dat., I join battle with*

συνέρχομαι, [εἰ-/ι-] σύνειμι,  
[ἐλθ-] συνήλθον, συνελθὼν,  
*I come together*

✓ χράομαι (present and imperfect  
have η where α would be ex-  
pected: χρώμαι, χρῆ, χρήται,

etc.), χρήσομαι (note that the α  
changes to η even after the ρ),  
ἐχρησάμην, χρησάμενος + dat.,  
*I use; I enjoy (14α)*

### Nouns

ὁ ὀπλίτης, τοῦ ὀπλίτου, *hoplite*  
(heavily-armed foot soldier)

τὸ πλῆθος, τοῦ πλήθους, *num-  
ber; multitude*

✓ ὁ στόλος, τοῦ στόλου, *expedi-  
tion; army; fleet*

ὁ στρατιώτης, τοῦ  
στρατιώτου, *soldier*

ὁ στρατός, τοῦ στρατοῦ, *army*

### Adjectives

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *small; pl., few*  
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this; pl.,  
these*

Note the predicate position:  
τοῦτο τὸ ἐπίγραμμα or τὸ  
ἐπίγραμμα τοῦτο, *this  
inscription*

στενός, -ή, -όν, *narrow*  
Cf. τὰ στενά, *narrows;*  
*straits; mountain pass*

### Conjunction

ἢ, with comparatives, *than*

### Expressions

ἐν μέσῳ + gen., *between*

κατὰ γῆν, *by land*

### Proper Names

ὁ Ἕλλην, τοῦ Ἕλληνας,  
*Greek; pl., the Greeks*

ἡ Εὐβοία, τῆς Εὐβοίας, *Euboea*

αἱ Θερμοπύλαι, τῶν Θερ-  
μοπυλῶν, *Thermopylae*  
ἡ Κόρινθος, τῆς Κορίνθου,  
*Corinth*

οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τῶν  
Λακεδαιμονίων, *the*  
*Lacedaemonians, Spartans*

ὁ Λεωνίδης, τοῦ Λεωνίδου,  
*Leonidas*

ὁ Ξέρξης, τοῦ Ξέρξου, *Xerxes*  
οἱ Πέρσαι, τῶν Περσῶν, *the*  
*Persians*

“ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξέρξης, βασιλεὺς ὢν τῶν Περσῶν, τὸν στόλον  
παρεσκεύαζεν, ἐν νῷ ἔχων πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα καταστρέψασθαι, οἱ  
τῶν Ἑλλήνων πρῶτοι συνήλθον εἰς τὴν Κόρινθον καὶ ἐσκόπουν τί δεῖ  
πράττειν. πολὺν δὲ χρόνον ἠπόρουν· μείζονα γὰρ στρατὸν εἶχεν ὁ  
Ξέρξης ἢ πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πλέονας ναῦς. τέλος δὲ ἔδοξεν  
αὐτοῖς τοὺς βαρβάρους ἀμύνειν ἐν ταῖς Θερμοπύλαις· ἐκεῖ γὰρ κατὰ  
μὲν γῆν τὰ ὄρη οὕτω πρόσκειται τῇ θαλάττῃ ὥστε ὀλίγοι πρὸς  
πολλοὺς δύνανται μάχεσθαι, κατὰ δὲ θάλατταν πόροι εἰσὶ στενοὶ ἐν  
μέσῳ τῆς τε Εὐβοίας καὶ τῆς ἠπείρου. μαθόντες οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες ὅτι  
ὁ Ξέρξης ἤδη πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πορεύεται καὶ δι’ ὀλίγου εἰς τὰς  
Θερμοπύλας οἱ Πέρσαι ἀφίξονται, τὸν Λεωνίδα ἔπεμψαν, βασιλεῖα  
ὄντα τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, ἑπτακισχίλιους ἔχοντα ὀπλίτας. οὗτοι δὲ  
ἀφικόμενοι εἰς τὰς Θερμοπύλας παρεσκευάζοντο ἀμύνειν τοὺς  
βαρβάρους τῇ Ἑλλάδι. *native of mainland (from)*

[καταστρέφεσθαι, *to subdue* μείζονα, *bigger, larger* πρόσκειται + dat., note the  
neuter plural subject, *lie close to* δύνανται, *are able* πόροι, *straits* τῆς ἠπείρου,  
*the mainland* ἑπτακισχίλιους, *seven thousand*]

“ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὰ στενὰ στρατὸν ἔχων μέγιστον δὴ,  
τέτταρας μὲν ἡμέρας ἡσύχαζεν· ἤλπιζε γὰρ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
ἀποφεύξεσθαι ἰδόντας τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ. τῇ δὲ πέμπτῃ  
ἡμέρᾳ—οἱ γὰρ Ἕλληνες ἔτι ἀκίνητοι ἔμενον—τὸν στρατὸν ἐκέλευσεν  
εὐθὺς προσβαλεῖν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρείοτατα μαχόμενοι τοὺς  
βαρβάρους ἡμῶν. τέλος δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς Περσᾶς ἐπέπεμψεν οὓς

‘ἀθανάτους’ ἐκάλει, ἀνδρειοτάτους ὄντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἐλπίζων τούτους γε ῥαδίως νικήσειν τοὺς Ἑλληνας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οὗτοι συνέβαλον, οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἔπραττον ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς μαχόμενοι καὶ οὐ δυνάμενοι τῷ πλήθει χρήσθαι. βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν μάχην θεώμενος τρὶς ἀνέδραμεν, ὥς λέγουσιν, ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου, 25 φοβούμενος ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατοῦ.”

[ἐλπίζε... τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἀποφεύξεσθαι, *he was hoping that the Greeks would flee* ἀκίνητοι, *unmoved* ἀθανάτους, *Immortals* ἄμεινον, *better* τρὶς, *three times* ἀνέδραμεν (from ἀνατρέχω), *leaped to his feet* τοῦ θρόνου, *his throne*]

## WORD STUDY

Using your knowledge of Greek, explain the meaning of the following fore-names:

- |           |                                       |             |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Philip | 3. Theodore (τὸ δῶρον = <i>gift</i> ) | 5. Dorothea |
| 2. George | 4. Sophie                             | 6. Ophelia  |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives have three *degrees*, e.g., “beautiful” (*positive*), “more beautiful” (*comparative*), and “most beautiful” (*superlative*) or “brave” (*positive*), “braver” (*comparative*), and “bravest” (*superlative*).

In Greek the comparative and superlative of adjectives are regularly formed by adding -τερος, -τέρᾱ, -τερον and -τατος, -τάτη, -τατον to the stem of the positive:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ἀνδρείος, -ᾱ, -ον, <i>brave</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> ἀνδρειο-	ἀνδρειό-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον <i>braver</i>	ἀνδρειό-τατος, -η, -ον <i>bravest</i>
χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, <i>difficult</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> χαλεπο-	χαλεπό-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον <i>more difficult</i>	χαλεπό-τατος, -η, -ον <i>most difficult</i>

Note that in 1st and 2nd declension adjectives as in the examples above, the ο at the end of the stem of the positive is lengthened to ω if the syllable preceding it is regarded as short (e.g., contains a short vowel).

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
3rd Declension:		
ἀληθής, ἀληθές, <i>true</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> ἀληθεσ-	ἀληθέσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον <i>truer</i>	ἀληθέσ-τατος, -η, -ον <i>truest</i>

Note what happens when the stem ends in -ον-:

σώφρων, σῶφρον, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled*

**Stem:** σωφρον- σωφρον-έσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον σωφρον-έσ-τατος, -η, -ον  
*more prudent* *most prudent*

The endings -έσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον and -έσ-τατος, -η, -ον are constructed by analogy with ἀληθέσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον and ἀληθέσ-τατος, -η, -ον.

### 2. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Some adjectives are irregular in their formation of comparatives and superlatives and show forms ending in -ίων or -ων (masculine and feminine) and -ιον or -ον (neuter) for the comparative and -ιστος, -ιστη, -ιστον for the superlative. The comparatives are declined like σώφρων, σῶφρον (see Chapter 7, Grammar 7, page 107), with some alternative forms that will be presented later.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν <i>good</i>	ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον <i>better</i>	ἄριστος, -η, -ον <i>best</i>
κακός, -ή, -όν <i>bad</i>	κακίων, κάκιον <i>worse</i>	κάκιστος, -η, -ον <i>worst</i>
καλός, -ή, -όν <i>beautiful</i>	καλλίων, κάλλιον <i>more beautiful</i>	κάλλιστος, -η, -ον <i>most beautiful</i>
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα <i>big, large, great</i>	μείζων, μείζον <i>bigger, larger, greater</i>	μέγιστος, -η, -ον <i>biggest, largest, greatest</i>
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον <i>small; pl., few</i>	ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον <i>smaller; pl., fewer</i>	ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον <i>smallest (in number); pl., fewest</i>
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ <i>much; pl., many</i>	πλείων/πλέον, πλείον/πλέον <i>more</i>	πλείστος, -η, -ον <i>most; very great;</i> pl., <i>very many</i>

PRACTICE: Write the forms of ἡ ἀμείνων γυνή and of τὸ ἄμεινον τέκνον (*child*).

### 3. Comparison of Adverbs

As you learned in Chapter 4 (Grammar 7, page 50), the positive degree of an adverb is regularly the same in spelling and accent as the genitive plural of the corresponding adjective, but with *ς* instead of *ν* at the end, e.g., adjective, gen., pl., καλῶν > adverb, καλῶς. The comparative degree of the adverb is the neuter singular of the comparative adjective, and the superlative degree of the adverb is the neuter plural of the superlative adjective, e.g.:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular:		
ἀνδρείως <i>bravely</i>	ἀνδρείοτερον <i>more bravely</i>	ἀνδρειότατα <i>most bravely</i>
ἀληθῶς <i>truly</i>	ἀληθέστερον <i>more truly</i>	ἀληθέστατα <i>most truly</i>
Irregular:		
εὖ <i>well</i> = adverb corresponding to ἀγαθός	ἄμεινον <i>better</i>	ἄριστα <i>best</i>
κακῶς <i>badly</i>	κάκιον <i>worse,</i>	κάκιστα <i>worst</i>
πολύ <i>much</i>	πλέον <i>more</i>	πλεῖστα <i>most</i>
μάλα <i>very</i>	μᾶλλον <i>more; rather</i>	μάλιστα <i>most, most of all; very much; especially</i>

Note the use of μᾶλλον ἢ, *rather than*:

ὁ πάππος ἐβούλετο ἐν τῇ ἄστει μένειν μᾶλλον ἢ οἴκαδε ἐπανελθεῖν.  
*Grandfather was wanting to stay in the city rather than to return home.*

### 4. Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives

#### a. Comparatives

μεῖζονα στρατὸν εἶχεν ὁ Ξέρξης ἢ πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες.  
*Xerxes had a bigger army than all the Greeks.*

Here the conjunction ἢ, *than*, is used; in this construction the two things being compared (underlined in the examples above and below)

are in the same case. Here is another example:

ὁ νεανίας τὸν Φίλιππον ἀγριώτερον ἔτυπεν ἢ τὸν ἄλλον νεανίαν.  
*The young man hit Philip more fiercely than (he hit) the other young man.*

The following examples show how the genitive case (*genitive of comparison*) may be used instead of the conjunction ἢ:

ὁ ἀνὴρ μεῖζων ἐστὶ τοῦ παιδός.  
*The man is bigger than the boy.*

οἱ ἀθάνατοι οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἐπράττον τῶν ἄλλων.  
*The Immortals were faring no better than the others.*

#### b. Superlatives

ὁ Λεωνίδης πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἄριστος ἦν.  
*Leonidas was the best of all the soldiers.*

The genitive used with superlatives, as above, is a *partitive genitive*.

#### c. Strengthened Comparisons

An adjective in the dative case may be used to enhance a comparison, e.g.:

πολλῷ/μακρῷ μεῖζονα στρατὸν εἶχεν ὁ Ξέρξης ἢ πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες.  
*Xerxes had a much/far bigger army than all the Greeks.*

This is called the *dative of degree of difference*; lit., *bigger by much / by far*. An adverb may also be used, e.g.:

ὁ Λεωνίδης πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν πολὺ ἄριστος ἦν.  
*Leonidas was by far the best of all the soldiers.*

#### d. Superlatives with ὥς

Note the following:

ὥς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*  
ὥς ἀνδρειότατα, *as bravely as possible*  
ὥς πλείστοι, *as many as possible*

#### e. Special Meanings of Comparatives and Superlatives

Sometimes comparatives are used when no explicit comparison is being made; the comparative softens the statement, e.g.:

οἱ βάρβαροι ἀνδρειότεροί εἰσιν.  
*The barbarians are rather/somewhat brave.*

Sometimes superlatives are used to indicate a very high degree of a quality when no explicit comparison is being made, e.g.:

οἱ ἀθάνατοι ἀνδρείοτατοί εἰσιν.  
*The Immortals are very brave.*

### Exercise 14α

*Locate six comparatives/superlatives in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter and explain the constructions in which they occur.*

### Exercise 14β

*Translate into English:*

1. τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλείστοι ἔπесον ἄριστα μαχόμενοι.
2. οἱ ὀπλῖται, καίπερ ἀνδρείοτατα μαχόμενοι, οὐκ ἐδύναντο (*were able*) τοὺς πολεμίους (*the enemy*) πλέονας ὄντας ἀμύνειν.
3. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρείοτεροι ἦσαν τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἄμεινον ἐμάχοντο.
4. τοῖς Ἕλλησι πολλῶ ἐλάττονες νῆες ἦσαν ἢ τοῖς βαρβάροις.
5. ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων πολλοὶ ἀπέθανον, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων πολλῶ πλέονες.
6. ἡ γυνή, πολλῶ σωφρονεστερὰ οὖσα τοῦ ἀνδρός, ἀληθέστερα εἶπεν.
7. οἱ Ἕλληνες, καίπερ ὀλίγιστοι ὄντες, τὰ ὅπλα (*their weapons*) παρεσκεύαζον, ἐν νῶ ἔχοντες ὡς ἀνδρείοτατα ἀποθανεῖν.
8. οἱ βάρβαροι, καίπερ ἀγριώτατα προσβάλλοντες, οὐκ ἐδύναντο τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῆσαι.

### Exercise 14γ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. The Persians had (*use imperfect of ἔχω*) a bigger army than we, but we were fighting more bravely.
2. The best soldiers of Xerxes attacked most fiercely but were faring no better than the others.
3. Old men are not always wiser than young men.
4. The hoplites attacked the Persians even (*καί*) more fiercely.
5. We decided to return home rather than to stay in the city.
6. The messenger, whom we heard in the agora, spoke more truly than you.

## The Rise of Athens

Athens played no part in the colonizing movement of the eighth and seventh centuries; she controlled a larger area than any other Greek state except Sparta and so had less need to send out colonies. She was also at this time somewhat backward. An attempt was made to establish a tyranny at Athens by Cylon (632 B.C.), but he failed to win popular support.

Forty years later in the 590s, the discontent of the farmers threatened to lead to civil war in Attica, and Solon was appointed arbitrator to find a solution (see page 118). Although his legislation pleased neither farmers nor nobles, his reforms had a lasting and profound effect both constitutionally and economically. Athens enjoyed a new prosperity. She began to export both olive oil and fine pottery; Attic black figure pottery, which had begun to appear about 600 B.C., gradually drove out Corinthian ware, and achieved a monopoly throughout the Greek world and beyond.

A renewed threat of civil war allowed Pisistratus to establish a tyranny, but Athens continued to grow in prosperity and power throughout his tyranny (546–527) and that of his son, Hippias. Hippias was driven out in 510, and three years later Cleisthenes put through the reforms that established a democracy. Immediately Athens was attacked by enemies on every side. The Spartan king Cleomenes led the army of the Peloponnesian League against her but turned back at the border, because the Corinthians refused to fight in an unjust war. Meanwhile the Boeotians had invaded Attica from the north and the Chalcidians from the east. As soon as Cleomenes had turned back, the Athenian army hurried north, defeated the Boeotians and then crossed to Euboea and inflicted a crushing defeat on the Chalcidians, taking and destroying their city.

When Aristagoras arrived in Athens to ask for help in the Ionian revolt against Persia, the Athenian people were confident enough to accept his appeal (see page 220). Since Hippias had taken refuge with the Persians, their motives were not entirely disinterested. Less than ten years later, Athens faced the might of Persia alone at Marathon, and her victory there filled the democracy with boundless pride and confidence.

Although Athens was now powerful by land, her navy was still inconsiderable. The founder of Athenian sea power was Themistocles, the victor of Salamis, who foresaw that the future of Athens lay by sea and who, as archon in 493/492 B.C., had begun the fortification of the Piraeus. Ten years later an exceptionally rich vein of silver was found in the state mines at Laurium. It was proposed to divide this windfall up among the citizens, but Themistocles persuaded the Assembly to use the money to build a new fleet. Two years later at Salamis we find that Athens had a fleet of 200 triremes, more than half the whole Greek force of 350 ships. Themistocles as admiral of the Athenian contingent had the greatest influence in the allied councils and devised the tactics that won victory at Salamis in 480 B.C. If Sparta remained the greatest land power among the Greeks, from now on there could be no doubt that Athens would take the lead by sea.

When representatives of the thirty-one loyal Greek states had met at Corinth in 481 B.C. to plan resistance to Xerxes' imminent invasion, the allies agreed without dispute to give Sparta command by both land and sea. News of Xerxes' preparations must have reached Greece a good time before this. He had summoned contingents from all over his empire and spent the winter of 481/480 at Sardis assembling and preparing his invasion force. According to Herodotus, his navy consisted of 1,207 ships and his army of

1,700,000 fighting men. The figure for the navy may be approximately correct, but that for the army is absurd. It may have numbered 200,000. To bring this great host into Europe, Xerxes' engineers constructed two bridges of boats across the Hellespont (480 B.C.). When they were destroyed by a storm, two new and stronger bridges were built, and the army crossed the Hellespont and proceeded along the coast, supplied by the navy. At Mount Athos, off which the Persian fleet had been wrecked in 492 B.C., a canal had been dug across the promontory, one and a half miles or two and a half kilometers long, to forestall a similar disaster (see map, page 230). The invading force continued inexorably through Macedonia and into Thessaly. There was no resistance; the Greeks had abandoned any idea of making a stand anywhere north of Thermopylae, the only place where geography made it possible to hold off the Persians by a combined operation by sea and land. The next defensible point was the Isthmus of Corinth, but withdrawal to this would mean abandoning Attica. Even the wall across the Isthmus would not provide effective defense, if the position could be circumvented by a landing of the Persian fleet south of the Isthmus.



Around the outside of this cup four Athenian warships are being rowed, with dolphins leaping beside their prows. They are not triremes, which with 170 oarsmen were too complicated for any artist to draw on a vase. They are penteconters, which had fifty oarsmen. Note the helmsmen holding the steering oars, the high platform in the bows where the lookout stood, and the bronze beaks that were used for ramming the enemy.

## Classical Greek

Archilochus

For Archilochus, see pages 121, 173, and 231. In the following epigram (poem 5, Gerber), he defiantly tells the world that in a battle against a Thracian tribe, the Saioi, he threw away his shield and ran:

ἀσπίδι μὲν Σαίων τις ἀγάλλεται, ἦν παρὰ θάμνῳ,  
ἔντος ἀμώμητον, κάλλιπον οὐκ ἐθέλων·  
αὐτὸν δ' ἐξεσάωσα. τί μοι μέλει ἀσπίς ἐκείνη;  
ἐρρέτω· ἐξαυτίς κτήσομαι οὐ κακίῳ.

[ἀσπίδι (from ἀσπίς), *my shield* ἀγάλλεται + dat., *enjoys* παρὰ θάμνῳ, *by a bush* ἔντος, *a weapon* ἀμώμητον, *blameless, excellent* κάλλιπον = κατέλιπον αὐτὸν = ἐμαυτὸν ἐξεσάωσα = ἐξέσωσα (from ἐκσώζω, *I keep X safe*) τί μοι μέλει ἀσπίς ἐκείνη, *what do I care about that shield?*, lit., *why is that shield a concern to me?* ἐρρέτω, *let it go!* ἐξαυτίς = αὐτίς κτήσομαι (supply ἄλλην), *I will get (another)* κακίῳ = κακίονα]

## New Testament Greek

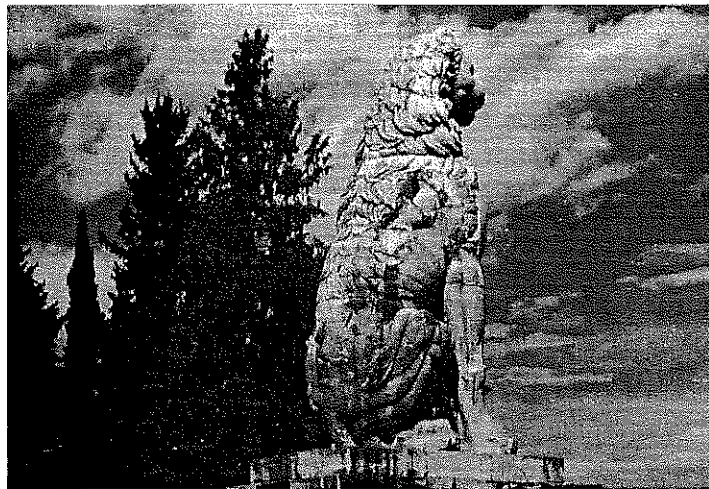
Luke 10.25–29  
The Good Samaritan

καὶ ἰδοὺ νομικός τις ἀνέστη ἐκπειράζων αὐτὸν λέγων, “διδάσκαλε, τί ποιήσῃς ζωὴν αἰώνιον κληρονομήσω;” ὁ δὲ εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτόν, “ἐν τῷ νόμῳ τί γέγραπται; πῶς ἀναγινώσκεις;” ὁ δὲ ἀποκριθεὶς εἶπεν, “ἀγαπήσεις κύριον τὸν θεόν σου ἐξ ὅλης καρδιάς σου καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ ψυχῇ σου καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ ἰσχύϊ σου καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ διανοίᾳ σου, καὶ τὸν πλησίον σου ὡς σεαυτόν.” εἶπεν δὲ αὐτῷ, “ὁρθῶς ἀπεκρίθης· τοῦτο ποιεῖ καὶ ζήσῃ.” ὁ δὲ θέλων δικαιοῦσαι ἑαυτὸν εἶπεν πρὸς τὸν Ἰησοῦν, “καὶ τίς ἐστὶν μου πλησίον;”

[νομικός, *lawyer* ἀνέστη, *stood up* ἐκπειράζων, *testing* αὐτόν, i.e., Jesus διδάσκαλε, *teacher* ζωὴν, *life* αἰώνιον, *eternal* κληρονομήσω, *will I inherit* τῷ νόμῳ, *the law* γέγραπται, *has been/is written* ἀναγινώσκεις = ἀναγινώσκεις, *do you read* ἀποκριθεὶς, *aorist passive participle with active meaning, answering* ἀγαπήσεις, *you will love* κύριον, *the Lord* ὅλης, *whole* καρδιάς, *heart* ἐν, *here best translated with* τῇ ψυχῇ, *the soul* τῇ ἰσχύϊ, *the strength* τῇ διανοίᾳ, *the mind* πλησίον, *adv. or prep. + gen., near*; τὸν πλησίον σου = *your neighbor* ζήσῃ (from \*ζάω), *you will live* δικαιοῦσαι, *to justify* μου πλησίον = ὁ πλησίον μου, *the one near me, my neighbor*]

Concluded at the end of the chapter

# Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ ΜΑΧΗ (β)



οἱ Ἕλληνες μνημεῖον ἐποίησαν τῷ Λεωνίδῃ,  
ἀνδρὶ ἀρίστῳ, λέοντα λίθινον.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀγγέλλω, [ἀγγελε-] ἀγγελῶ,  
[ἀγγελι-] ἡγγελία, ἀγγείλας,  
I announce; I tell

ἀναχωρέω, ἀναχωρήσω,  
ἀνεχώρησα, ἀναχωρήσας,  
I retreat, withdraw

ἀντέχω [= ἀντι- + ἔχω], imperfect,  
ἀντεῖχον (irregular augment),  
ἀνθέξω (irregular), [σχ-]  
ἀντέσχον, ἀντισχών + dat., I re-  
sist

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα,  
γράψας, I write

διέρχομαι [= δια- + ἔρχομαι],  
[ει-/ι-] δίειμι, [ἐλθ-] διήλθον,  
διελθών, I come through; I go  
through

παραγίγνομαι, [γενε-] παρ-  
αγενήσομαι, [γεν-] παρε-  
γενόμην, παραγενόμενος, I ar-  
rive

φράζω, φράσω, ἔφρασα,  
φράσας, I show; I tell; I tell of,  
explain

### Nouns

ὁ πόλεμος, τοῦ πολέμου, war  
αἱ πύλαι, τῶν πυλῶν, pl.,  
double gates; pass (through the  
mountains)

### Adjectives

ἅπᾱς, ἅπᾱσα, ἅπαν, all; ev-  
ery; whole  
ὅδε, ἥδε (note the accent), τόδε,  
this here; pl., these here

Note the predicate position:  
ὅδε ὁ ἄνθρωπος or ὁ  
ἄνθρωπος ὅδε, this man  
here

πολέμιος, -ᾱ, -ον, hostile; en-  
emy

οἱ πολέμιοι, τῶν  
πολεμίων, the enemy

### Adverb

ὅπου, where

### Conjunctions

ἕως, until

ὡς, when

### Expression

τῇ προτεραίᾳ, on the day before

### Proper Names

τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον, τοῦ

Ἀρτεμισίου, Artemisium

ἡ Ἀττική, τῆς Ἀττικῆς, Attica

ἡ Βοιωτία τῆς Βοιωτίας Boeo-  
tia

ὁ Ἐφιάλτης, τοῦ Ἐφιάλτου,  
Ephialtes

ἡ Πελοπόννησος, τῆς Πελο-  
ποννήσου, the Peloponnesus

ὁ Σπαρτιάτης, τοῦ  
Σπαρτιάτου, a Spartan

τὸ Φάληρον, τοῦ Φαλήρου,  
Phalerum (the old harbor of  
Athens)

νυκτ. at a loss: ἀπορέω

“τῇ δ’ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ βάρβαροι αὐτοῖς προσβάλλοντες οὐδὲν ἄμεινον  
ἔπραττον ἢ τῇ προτεραίᾳ. ὥς οὖν ἡπόρει ὁ Ξέρξης, προσῆλθε πρὸς  
αὐτὸν ἀνὴρ τις τῶν Ἑλλήνων, Ἐφιάλτης ὀνόματι, ἔφρασε τε τὴν  
ἀτραπὸν τὴν διὰ τοῦ ὄρους φέρουσιν εἰς τὰς Θερμοπύλας. ταῦτα δὲ  
μαθὼν ὁ Ξέρξης τοὺς ἀθανάτους ταύτῃ ἔπεμψεν, κελεύων αὐτοὺς ἐκ  
τοῦ ὀπισθεν λαβεῖν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες μαθόντες τί  
γίνεται πρῶτον μὲν ἡπόρουν τί δεῖ πράξαι, τέλος δὲ ἔδοξε τῷ Λεωνίδῃ  
τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς τὴν Ἀττικὴν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἔμενε ἐν  
ταῖς Θερμοπύλαις τριακοσίους ἔχων Σπαρτιάτας ἐν νῷ ἔχων τὰς  
πύλας φυλάττειν.

[τε, and τὴν ἀτραπὸν, the path φέρουσιν, leading ταύτῃ, this way ἐκ τοῦ  
ὀπισθεν, from the rear τριακοσίους, three hundred]

“οἱ μὲν οὖν βάρβαροι προσέβαλον, οἱ δὲ Σπαρτιάται ἐμάχοντο  
πρὸς πολεμίους πολλαπλασίους ὄντας καὶ πλείστους δὴ ἀπέκτειναν·  
τῶν δ’ Ἑλλήνων ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ ἔπεσον καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Λεωνίδης, ἀνὴρ  
ἄριστος γενόμενος. τέλος δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι οἱ διὰ τοῦ ὄρους διελθόντες  
παρεγένοντο καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν προσέβαλον. τότε δὴ οἱ Σπαρτιάται  
εἰς τὸ στενὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀνεχώρουν καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐμάχοντο ἕως  
ἅπαντες ἔπεσον.

[πολλαπλασίους, many times their number]

“οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον τοὺς τριακοσίους ἔθαψαν  
ὅπου ἔπεσον καὶ μνημεῖον ἐποίησαν τῷ Λεωνίδῃ, λέοντα λίθινον, ὃν  
καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ἰδεῖν. καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἐπίγραμμα ἐν στήλῃ λιθίνῃ  
ἔγραψαν.

it is possible

lion

ὁ ξεῖν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε  
κείμεθα, τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

[ἔθαψαν, *they buried* ἐπίγραμμα, *inscription* στήλη, *tombstone* ὁ ξεῖν' = ὁ  
ξένης ἀγγέλλειν: infinitive used as imperative τῇδε, *here* κείμεθα, *we lie*  
τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι, *their words*]

“ἐν δὲ τούτῳ κατὰ θάλατταν οἱ Ἕλληνες πρὸς τῷ Ἀρτεμισίῳ  
μένοντες τὰ στενὰ ἐφύλαττον καὶ ναυμαχοῦντες τοὺς βαρβάρους  
ἐνίκησαν καίπερ πλέονας ὄντας καὶ ἡμῶν. ὥς δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι τὰς  
Θερμοπύλας εἶλον, οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκέτι ἐφύλαττον τὰ στενὰ ἀλλὰ  
πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα ταῖς ναυσὶν ἀνεχώρουν. κατὰ δὲ γῆν οὐκέτι  
ἐδύναντο ἀντέχειν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον πρὸς τὴν  
Πελοπόννησον, τὴν τε Βοιωτίαν καὶ τὴν Ἀττικὴν τοῖς πολεμίοις  
καταλιπόντες. οὕτως οὖν οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ μὲν γῆν προχωρήσαντες  
ταῖς Ἀθήναις προσβαλεῖν ἐν νῷ εἶχον, κατὰ δὲ θάλατταν εἰς τὸ  
Φάληρον πλεύσαντες ἐν τῷ λιμένι ὥρμουν.”

[ναυμαχοῦντες, *fighting at sea* ταῖς ναυσὶν, *with their ships* ἐδύναντο, *they*  
*were able* ὥρμουν (from ὁρμέω), *came to lie at anchor*]

## WORD BUILDING

Deduce the meanings of the words in the following sets:

1. ὁ στρατός ἡ στρατιὰ στρατεύω (-ομαι) τὸ στράτευμα
2. ὁ στρατηγός στρατηγέω στρατηγικός, -ή, -όν ὁ στρατιώτης
3. ὁ πόλεμος πολέμιος, -α, -ον πολεμικός, -ή, -όν πολεμέω

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Demonstrative Adjectives

Here are three demonstrative adjectives, used when pointing to particular things (cf. the Latin *dēmōnstrō*, “I point out”):

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*  
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that*  
ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this here*

In the chart below, note that the demonstrative adjective οὗτος begins with τ everywhere the definite article does; the feminine has -αυ- instead of -ου- everywhere except in the genitive plural; and the neuter plural nominative and accusative have -αυ-:

### Singular

#### M.

#### F.

#### N.

### Plural

#### M.

#### F.

#### N.

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*

<b>Nom.</b>	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
<b>Gen.</b>	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
<b>Dat.</b>	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
<b>Acc.</b>	τούτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that*

<b>Nom.</b>	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκεῖνη	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
<b>Gen.</b>	ἐκεῖνου	ἐκεῖνης	ἐκεῖνου	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων
<b>Dat.</b>	ἐκεῖνῳ	ἐκεῖνῃ	ἐκεῖνῳ	ἐκεῖνοις	ἐκεῖναις	ἐκεῖνοις
<b>Acc.</b>	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκεῖνην	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκεῖνους	ἐκεῖνᾱς	ἐκεῖνα

The demonstrative adjective ὅδε is formed from the definite article plus -δε.

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this here*

<b>Nom.</b>	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε	οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
<b>Acc.</b>	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε

Note that these demonstrative adjectives require the definite article to be used with the noun and that the adjectives stand outside the definite article-noun group, i.e., in the *predicate position* (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7b, page 66), e.g.:

οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ or ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος = *this man*

ἐκεῖνη ἡ γυνή or ἡ γυνή ἐκεῖνη = *that woman*

τόδε τὸ ἔργον or τὸ ἔργον τόδε = *this work*

The datives ταύτῃ and τῇδε are used as adverbs, meaning *in this way*; *here*.

### Exercise 14δ

Give the correct form of the demonstrative to fit the following phrases:

1. (οὗτος) αἱ γυναῖκες αὗται
2. (ἐκεῖνος) τὸ δένδρον ἐκεῖνον
3. (οὗτος) τὰ ὀνόματα ταῦτα
4. (ὅδε) τῶν νεανιῶν τῶνδε
5. (οὗτος) τῆς παρθένου ταύτης
6. (οὗτος) οἱ βάρβαροι οὗτοι
7. (ἐκεῖνος) τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐκεῖνου
8. (οὗτος) τῇ πόλει τούτου
9. (ὅδε) οἱ γέροντες οἷδε
10. (οὗτος) τοῦ στρατιώτου τούτου

## Exercise 14ε

Translate:

1. ἐκεῖνο τὸ δένδρον μέγιστόν ἐστιν· οὐδέποτε (*never*) εἶδον δένδρον μείζον.
2. ἄρ' ὁρᾷς τούσδε τοὺς παῖδας, οἱ ἐκείνον τὸν κύνα διώκουσιν;
3. ταῦτα μαθοῦσαι αἱ γυναῖκες εὐθὺς τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐκάλεσαν.
4. τί οὐ βούλει τῷ ἀρότρῳ τούτῳ χρῆσθαι; ἄμεινον γάρ ἐστιν ἐκείνου.
5. τί ποιεῖς, ὦ πάτερ; ἄρα ταύτῃ τῇ γυναικὶ διαλέγεις;
6. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρείότεροι ἦσαν τῶν Περσῶν.
7. οἱ Σπαρτιᾶται πάντες ἀπέθανον ἀνδρείοτάτα μαχόμενοι.
8. This road is worse than that, but that (one) is longer.
9. After seeing this (*use the neuter plural*), that old man was growing very angry.
10. These women are wiser than those young men.

## 6. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs

In Chapter 7 (Grammar 8 and Grammar 9, pages 108–109) you learned the interrogative pronoun τίς, τί, *who? what?* and the corresponding indefinite adjective τις, τι, meaning *a certain, a, or an*. The interrogative pronoun always has an acute accent, while the indefinite adjective is enclitic.

Interrogative adverbs also have corresponding indefinite, enclitic forms:

## Interrogative Adverbs

ποῦ; *where?*  
 πόθεν; *from where? whence?*  
 ποῖ; *to where? whither?*  
 πότε; *when?*

πῶς; *how?*

## Indefinite Adverbs

που *somewhere, anywhere*  
 ποθεν *from somewhere*  
 ποι *to somewhere*  
 ποτέ *at some time, at one time, once, ever*  
 πως *somehow, in any way*

These indefinite adverbs cannot stand first in their clause, and they attach themselves to some important word as enclitics.

If an enclitic is followed by another enclitic, the first receives an accent but the second does not, e.g.: δυνατόν ἐστὶ ποτε, *it is ever possible*. (Remember that ἐστὶ is enclitic.) If an enclitic is followed by more than one enclitic, all but the last receive acute accents, e.g.: δυνατόν ἐστὶ σοὶ ποτε, *it is ever possible for you*.

## Exercise 14ζ

Translate into English. Locate indefinite adjectives and adverbs and explain why the accents are used that accompany them. Consult Enclitics and Proclitics, page 285, if necessary.

1. τίνες ἐλαύνουσι τοὺς βοῦς; γέροντές τινες αὐτοὺς ἐλαύνουσιν.
2. ποῖ πορεύεται ὁ βασιλεὺς; ὁ βασιλεὺς πορεύεται ἰσὺς πρὸς τὰ ὄρη.
3. ποῦ εἰσιν οἱ ναῦται; ἐν τῷ λιμένι ποῦ εἰσιν οἱ ναῦται.
4. τί πάσχετε, ὦ παῖδες; ἄρα κακόν τι πάσχετε;
5. πόθεν ἦκες, ὦ ἄνερ; ἦκα ἀπὸ τῶν ὁρῶν ποθεν, ὦ γύναι.
6. πότε ἐν νῶ ἔχεις εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἰέναι; δι' ὀλίγου ποτὲ ἐκεῖσε ἰέναι ἐν νῶ ἔχω.
7. πῶς τοῦτο ἐποίησας; τοῦτο ἐποίησα τεχνικῶς (*skillfully*) πως.
8. ποῦ μένει ὁ ἀδελφός; ὁ σὸς ἀδελφὸς μένει που ἐγγὺς τῆς ἀγορᾶς.

12. 287

ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑ ΥΠΕΡ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΩΝ  
ΣΤΕΝΑ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ

Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 7.215–219) and answer the comprehension questions:

ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης, μαθὼν ὅτι ἀτραπὸς ἐστὶν ὑπὲρ τὸ ὄρος φέρουσα, μάλα χαίρων ἔπεμψε τὸν Ὑδάρνην, στρατηγὸν ὄντα ἄριστον, καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας ὧν ἐστρατήγει ὁ Ὑδάρνης. ὠρμῶντο δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρᾱν ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, ἡγεῖτο δὲ αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἐφιάλτης. αὕτη δὲ ἡ ἀτραπὸς ἄρχεται ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ οὖν Πέρσαι τὸν Ἀσωπὸν διαβάντες ἐπορεύοντο πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα. ἐγίγνετο δὲ ἡμέρᾱ, καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι ἀφίκοντο εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος. κατὰ δὲ τοῦτο τοῦ ὄρους ἐφύλαττον Ἕλληνας χίλιοι ὀπλῖται.

[Ὑπὲρ + acc., *over* τὸν Ὑδάρνην, *Hydarnes* στρατηγόν, *general* ὧν ἐστρατήγει, *of whom (he) was in command* τοῦ στρατοπέδου, *the camp* ἄρχεται, *begins* τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ποταμοῦ, *the Asopus River* διαβάντες, *having crossed* κατὰ ... τοῦτο τοῦ ὄρους, *on this (part) of the mountain* χίλιοι, *a thousand*]

1. What had Xerxes learned? Whom did he send?
2. When did they set out? Who led them?
3. Where did the path begin?
4. How long did the Persians march?
5. Who were guarding the top of the mountain?

οἱ οὖν οὐκ εἶδον τοὺς Πέρσας ἀναβαίνοντας· πολλὰ γὰρ ἦν δένδρα κατὰ τὸ ὄρος. ψόφον δὲ ἀκούοντες ἔμαθον ὅτι ἀνέβησαν οἱ Πέρσαι. ἔδραμον οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐνέδυσαν τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ εὐθὺς παρήσαν οἱ βάρβαροι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι εἶδον

ἄνδρας ἐνδύοντας ὅπλα, ἐθαύμαζον· ἐλπίζοντες γὰρ οὐδένα φυλάττειν τὴν ἀτραπὸν, ἐνεκύρησαν στρατῷ. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ὑδάρνης διέταξε τοὺς Πέρσας εἰς μάχην· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐλπίζοντες τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐν νῷ ἔχειν προσβαλεῖν, ἔφυγον εἰς τὸν τοῦ ὄρους κόρυμβον καὶ παρεσκευάζοντο μαχόμενοι ἀποθανεῖν. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιοῦντο, κατέβησαν δὲ τὸ ὄρος ὡς τάχιστα.

[ψόφον, noise ἀνέβησαν, had come up, had ascended ἐνέδυσαν (from ἐνδύω) τὰ ὅπλα, began to put on their armor, began to arm themselves ἐνεκύρησαν (from ἐγκυρέω) + dat., they met, came face to face with διέταξε (from διατάττω), arranged, marshaled εἰς + acc., for τὸν . . . κόρυμβον, the top, the peak οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιοῦντο + gen., were taking no notice of, lit., were making no calculation of κατέβησαν, they went down]

6. Why didn't the Greeks see the Persians approaching?
7. How did they learn of the Persians' arrival?
8. What did the Greeks do immediately?
9. Why were the Persians surprised to see the Greeks?
10. What did Hydarnes do?
11. What was the response of the Greeks?
12. What did the Persians do?

### Exercise 14η

Translate into Greek:

1. When the Persians had taken (use aorist) Thermopylae, they went toward (use προσχωρέω) Attica.
2. The Greeks retreated both by land and by sea, leaving (behind) Attica to the enemy.
3. The Athenians, having sent the women and children and old men to the Peloponnesus and Salamis, were preparing to fight by sea.
4. So they asked the other Greeks to sail to Salamis as quickly as possible.
5. The Peloponnesians (οἱ Πελοποννήσιοι), who were making a wall across (διά + gen.) the Isthmus (use ὁ Ἴσθμός), were not wishing to come to aid the Athenians, but nevertheless sent their ships to Salamis.

## Classical Greek

### Theognis

For Theognis, see pages 163 and 185. In the following lines (1197–1200), while in exile, he hears the crane, which in its autumn migration to Africa is a sign that it is time to plow:

ὄρνιθος φωνήν, Πολυπαῖδη, ὅξυ βοώσης  
ἤκουσ', ἥ τε βροτοῖς ἄγγελος ἦλθ' ἀρότου  
ὠραίου· καὶ μοι κραδίην ἐπάταξε μέλαιναν,  
ὅττι μοι εὐανθεῖς ἄλλοι ἔχουσιν ἀγρούς.

[ὄρνιθος φωνήν, the voice of the bird (ὄρνις) i.e., the crane Πολυπαῖδη, voc., Poly-paides is the friend to whom Theognis addresses his poetry ὅξυ, loudly ἥ τε, which βροτοῖς, to mortals ἦλθ(εν), gnomic aorist, translate as present, comes ἀρότου ὠραίου, of plowing (being) seasonable, i.e., of the season of plowing μοι κραδίην, my heart ἐπάταξε, struck μέλαιναν, black ὅττι = ὅτι, because εὐανθεῖς, fair-flowering]

## New Testament Greek

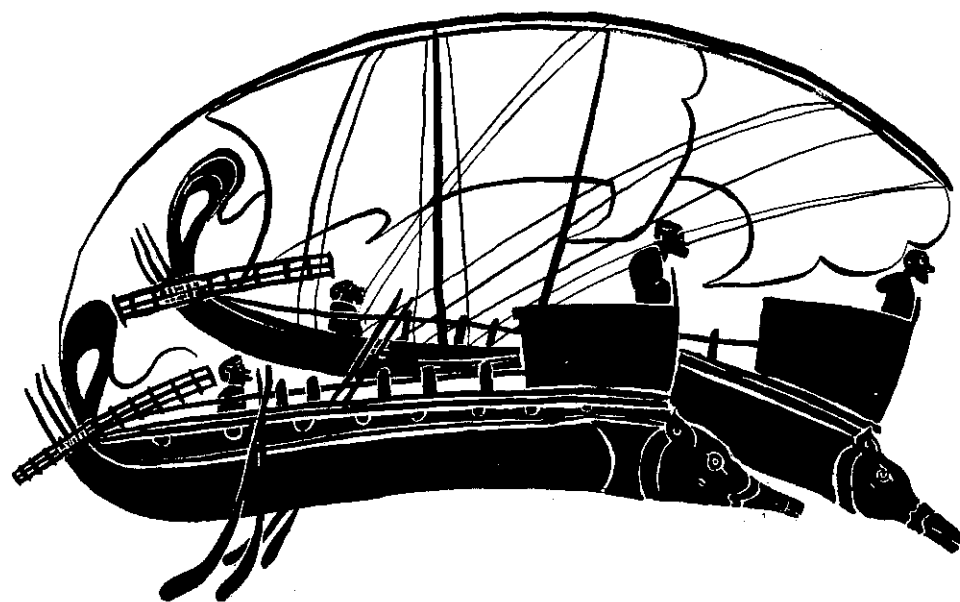
### Luke 10.30–37

#### The Good Samaritan (concluded)

ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν, “ἄνθρωπός τις κατέβαινεν ἀπὸ Ἱερουσαλὴμ εἰς Ἱεριχὼ καὶ λησταῖς περιέπεσεν, οἱ καὶ ἐκδύσαντες αὐτὸν καὶ πληγὰς ἐπιθέντες ἀπὸ τῆς ἀφέντης ἡμιθανῆ. κατὰ συγκυρίαν δὲ ἱερεὺς τις κατέβαινεν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἐκείνῃ καὶ ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἀντιπαρήλθεν· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ Λευίτης κατὰ τὸν τόπον ἐλθὼν καὶ ἰδὼν ἀντιπαρήλθεν. Σαμαρίτης δὲ τις ὁδεύων ἦλθεν κατ' αὐτὸν καὶ ἰδὼν ἐσπλαγχνίσθη, καὶ προσελθὼν κατέδυσεν τὰ τραύματα αὐτοῦ ἐπιχέων ἔλαιον καὶ οἶνον, ἐπιβιβάσας δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸ ἴδιον κτῆνος ἤγαγεν αὐτὸν εἰς πανδοχεῖον καὶ ἐπεμελήθη αὐτοῦ. . . . τίς τούτων τῶν τριῶν πλησίον δοκεῖ σοι γεγονέναι τοῦ ἐμπεσόντος εἰς τοὺς ληστές;” ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, “ὁ ποιήσας τὸ ἔλεος μετ' αὐτοῦ.” εἶπεν δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ Ἰησοῦς, “πορεύου καὶ σὺ ποίει ὁμοίως.”

[ὑπολαβὼν, answering λησταῖς, thieves ἐκδύσαντες, having stripped πληγὰς ἐπιθέντες, having put blows on him ἀφέντης (from ἀφίημι) ἡμιθανῆ, having left (him) half dead κατὰ συγκυρίαν, by chance ἀντιπαρήλθεν, went past on the other side ὁμοίως, likewise κατὰ τὸν τόπον, to the place ὁδεύων, journeying, on a journey ἐσπλαγχνίσθη, was filled with pity κατέδυσεν, he bound up τὰ τραύματα, the wounds ἐπιχέων, pouring on ἔλαιον, olive oil ἐπιβιβάσας, having mounted τὸ ἴδιον κτῆνος, his own beast πανδοχεῖον, inn ἐπεμελήθη + gen., he cared for (ὁ) πλησίον . . . τοῦ ἐμπεσόντος, the neighbor of the one who fell among γεγονέναι, to have been ὁ ποιήσας τὸ ἔλεος, the one who had (lit., who made) pity on μετ(ὰ), on]

# 15 Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (α)



οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι εἰς τὰς ναῦς εἰσβάντες παρεσκευάζοντο κατὰ θάλατταν μάχεσθαι.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω,  
ἠνάγκασα, ἀναγκάσας,  
*I compel*  
διαφθείρω, [φθερε-] διαφθερῶ,  
[φθειρ-] διέφθαιρα, διαφθείρας,  
*I destroy*  
εἴκω, εἴξω, εἴξα (no aug-  
ment), εἴξας + dat., *I yield*

### Nouns

ἡ ἀπορίᾱ, τῆς ἀπορίᾱς, *per-  
plexity; difficulty; the state of  
being at a loss*  
Cf. ἀπορέω, *I am at a loss*  
ὁ ναύαρχος, τοῦ ναυάρχου,  
*admiral*

ὁ νοῦς, τοῦ νοῦ, *mind*  
Cf. ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have  
in mind; intend*  
ὁ στρατηγός, τοῦ στρατηγοῦ,  
*general*  
ἡ φυγή, τῆς φυγῆς, *flight*

### Adjective

μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone; only*

### Adverb

μηκέτι (cf. Vocabulary 3α)  
+ imperative, *don't . . . any  
longer; + infin., no longer*  
μόνον, *only*

### Conjunctions

οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not  
only . . . but also*

### Proper Name

ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, τοῦ Θεμισ-  
τοκλέους, *Themistocles*

“οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἀθηναῖοι ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν πλείστη· ὁ δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς  
ἔπεισεν αὐτοὺς μὴ εἶκιν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀλλὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐλευθερίᾱς  
μάχεσθαι. τὰς τ' οὖν γυναῖκας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τοὺς γέροντας εἰς  
τὴν τε Πελοπόννησον καὶ τὴν Σαλαμῖνα ἐκόμισαν, τὴν τ' Ἀττικὴν  
καὶ τὴν πόλιν τοῖς πολεμίοις καταλιπόντες· αὐτοὶ δὲ εἰς τὰς ναῦς  
εἰσβάντες πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα προσέπλευσαν καὶ παρεσκευάζοντο  
ὡς κατὰ θάλατταν μαχοῦμενοι.

[εἰσβάντες, *having gotten into, having embarked upon*]

“ἐν δὲ τούτῳ οἱ μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ ἐν τῇ Σαλαμῖνι  
συνελθόντες οὕτως ἐφοβοῦντο ὥστε ἀποφυγεῖν ἐβούλοντο πρὸς τὴν  
Πελοπόννησον· ὁ δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς ἐν τῷ συνεδρίῳ ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὅτι  
ἔτι καὶ νῦν δύνανται τοὺς πολεμίους νικῆσαι· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς στενοῖς  
μαχόμενοι οὐ δυνήσονται οἱ βάρβαροι τῷ πλήθει χρῆσθαι· δεῖ οὖν  
ἀναγκάσαι αὐτοὺς ἐκεῖ συμβαλεῖν.

[τῷ συνεδρίῳ, *the council* ἀναστὰς, *having stood up* δύνανται, *they were (lit.,  
are) able*]

“οὕτως εἰπὼν οὐ μόνον τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς ἔπεισε  
μάχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄγγελον παρὰ τὸν Ξέρξην ἔπεμψε λάθρα, ὡς  
λέξοντα ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες παρασκευάζονται εἰς φυγὴν. ὁ οὖν Ξέρξης,  
ὡς ἔγνων ὅτι ἀποφυγεῖν ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες, βουλόμενος  
αὐτοὺς ὡς τάχιστα διαφθεῖραι, διέγνω αὐτοὺς ἀναγκάσαι ἐν  
Σαλαμῖνι μάχεσθαι. τῶν οὖν νεῶν τὰς μὲν ἔπεμψε περὶ τὴν νῆσον,  
κελεύων τοὺς ναυάρχους τοὺς ἑκπλους φυλάττειν, τὰς δὲ ἐκέλευσε  
φυλάττειν τὰ στενὰ ὥστε μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀποπλεῖν.”

[λάθρα, *secretly* εἰς + acc., *for* ἔγνων, *he learned* διέγνω, *decided* τῶν . . .  
νεῶν τὰς μὲν . . . τὰς δὲ, *some of the ships . . . others* τοὺς ἑκπλους, *the escape  
routes*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. monogamy (what does γαμέω mean?)
2. monologue
3. monochrome (what does τὸ χρώμα mean?)
4. monosyllable (what does ἡ συλλαβή mean? From what verb is this noun formed?)
5. monograph

## GRAMMAR

## 1. Athematic 2nd Aorists

The following common verbs form their aorist indicatives, imperatives, and infinitives by adding the appropriate endings directly to a long-vowel stem without a thematic vowel in between. The participles are formed on the short-vowel stem. We call these *athematic 2nd aorists*. The aorist of βαίνω is used only in compounds in Attic Greek:

βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην  
I step, walk, go

Aorist Stems: βη-/βα-

Indic.	Imper.	Infinitive	Participle
ἔβην		βῆναι	βάς,
ἔβης	βῆθι		βᾶσα,
ἔβη			βάν,
ἔβημεν		gen., βάντος, etc.	
ἔβητε	βῆτε		
ἔβησαν			

γινώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων  
I come to know; I perceive; I learn

Aorist Stems: γνω-/γνο-

Indic.	Imper.	Infinitive	Participle
ἔγνων		γνῶναι	γνούς,
ἔγnows	γνῶθι		γνοῦσα,
ἔγνω			γνόν,
ἔγνωμεν		gen., γνόντος, etc.	
ἔγnowτε	γνῶτε		
ἔγnowσαν			

The other tenses of the following verb will be presented in Book II:

ἔστην  
I stood; I stopped

Aorist Stems: στη-/στα-

Indic.	Imper.	Infinitive	Participle
ἔστην		στήναι	στάς,
ἔστης	στήθι		στάσα,
ἔστη			σάν,
ἔστημεν		gen., σάντος, etc.	
ἔστητε	στήτε		
ἔστησαν			

The participles of ἔβην and ἔστην are declined the same as sigmatic 1st aorist participles (see Chapter 12, Grammar 2, page 199). The participle of ἔγνων is declined the same as the present participle of εἰμί (see Chapter 9, Grammar 1, page 136), except for the masculine nominative singular.

Note the meanings of the following words:

ἀνέβην, I went up

ἀνάβηθι, go up!

ἀναβῆναι, to go up

ἀναβάς, having gone up, after going up, sometimes, going up

ἔγνων, I came to know; I perceived; I learned

γνῶθι, know!

γνῶναι, to know; to perceive; to learn

γνούς, having learned, after learning, sometimes, learning

ἔστην, I stood; I stopped

στήθι, stand! stop!

σῆναι, to stand; to stop

στάς, having stood, after standing, sometimes, standing;

having stopped, after stopping, sometimes, stopping

## Exercise 15α

In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, locate four instances of the above verbs or compounds of them; identify each form.

## Exercise 15β

Read aloud and translate:

1. Ἄρ' οὐ βούλεσθε γνῶναι τί εἶπεν ὁ ἄγγελος;
2. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, γνόντες ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι τὰς τε Θερμοπύλας εἶλον καὶ τῇ Ἀττικῇ προσχωροῦσιν, μάλα ἐφοβοῦντο.
3. ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, στρατηγὸς ὢν, ἀνέστη καὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἔπεισε μὴ εἶκιν τοῖς πολεμίοις.
4. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὰς τε γυναῖκας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας εἰς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα κομίσαντες εἰς τὰς ναῦς εἰσέβησαν.
5. ὁ Ξέρξης, γνούς ὅτι ἐν νῶ ἔχουσιν ἀποφυγεῖν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβούλετο ἀναγκάσαι αὐτοὺς σῆναι τε καὶ πρὸς τῇ Σαλαμῖνι μάχεσθαι.
6. ἔκβηθι ἐκ τῆς νεώς, ὦ παῖ, καὶ στήθι ἐν τῷ χώματι (pier).
7. ὁ ναύκληρος τὸν παῖδα ἐκέλευσεν ἀναστάντα ἐκβῆναι ἐκ τῆς νεώς.
8. αἱ γυναῖκες εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰσελθοῦσαι ἔστησαν πάντα θαυμάζουσαι.
9. ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἐν τοῖς Δελφοῖς ἔφη· "γνῶθι σεαυτόν."
10. στήτε, ὦ φίλοι, καὶ ἐμὲ μείνατε.

## Exercise 15γ

Translate into Greek, using athematic aorist verbs from page 252 with the prepositional prefixes ἀνα-, εἰς-, ἐκ-, and ἐπι- as appropriate (check the vocabularies at the end of the book as necessary). Participles and infinitives when compounded with prefixes retain the accent of their uncompounded forms, but the accent of compound indicatives and imperatives is recessive.

1. After going into the house, the women were sitting talking to one another.
2. Be silent, boy; stand up and help me.
3. Having gone into the temple, the priest stood and prayed to the god.
4. After climbing the mountain, we stood and were looking at the city.
5. The old man told the boys to stand up and listen.
6. Having learned what had happened (use aorist), the boy went out of the house to look for his father.
7. The women want to know why they must leave their homes behind.
8. Having learned that the barbarians were approaching (use present tense), the women embarked on the ships.
9. The soldiers, whom Xerxes sent, climbed the mountain very quickly.
10. When they arrived at the top (τὸ ἄκρον), they saw the Greeks, who did not stand bravely but fled away.

## 2. More 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems in -εσ-

In Chapter 13, Grammar 4, pages 226–227, you learned the declension of nouns with stems in -εσ-, such as τὸ τεῖχος (stem τευχес-) and ἡ τριήρης (stem τριηρες-). The noun ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέους also has a stem in -εσ-, but with a preceding ε so that the following contractions occur:

**Stem:** Θεμιστοκλε-εσ-, *Themistocles*

<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ	Θεμιστοκλῆς	
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ	Θεμιστοκλέ-εσ-ος >	Θεμιστοκλέους
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ	Θεμιστοκλέ-εσ-ι >	Θεμιστοκλεί
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν	Θεμιστοκλέ-εσ-α >	Θεμιστοκλέα
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	Θεμιστόκλε-εσ- >	Θεμιστόκλεις

As usual, the intervocalic σ is lost. The last two vowels then contract in the usual ways, except that after ε the vowels ε + α > ᾱ, and not η, thus τὸν Θεμιστοκλέα. The names Ἡρακλῆς, Περικλῆς, and Σοφοκλῆς are declined the same way.

Aeschylus's *Persae*

Aeschylus, the first of the three great Athenian writers of tragedy, had fought at the battle of Marathon and probably also at Salamis. He certainly saw the battle, and he has left us an eyewitness account of it. Eight years after the battle, he entered his play *The Persians* (Πέρσαι) in the dramatic contest at the festival of Dionysus in 472 B.C. This is our earliest extant Greek tragedy, and it is unique in that it has an historical theme; all other extant tragedies draw their plots from myth. For Aeschylus, human events were interwoven with the divine; he saw the defeat and humiliation of Xerxes as the supreme example of *hubris* (human pride) punished by *Nemesis* (Divine Vengeance).

The scene of the play is Susa, the Persian capital, where the Elders anxiously wait for news of Xerxes' expedition. Since he left, they have heard nothing, and their hearts are heavy with foreboding as they wonder what has happened to the host that went forth in pride to cast the yoke of slavery on Greece. As they speculate gloomily, they see Atossa, the Queen-mother, approaching. She tells them that ever since her son left, she has been troubled by dreams and that now she has had a dream of unmistakable significance: she saw Xerxes yoke two women to his chariot, one in Asian dress, the other in Greek. The Asian woman was proud of her harness and was obedient to the reins, but the Greek struggled, tore the harness from the chariot, threw off the bridle, and broke the yoke. When Atossa woke and went to the altar to pray for deliverance from evil, she saw another terrible omen: an eagle (the king of birds = Xerxes) flew to Apollo's altar, pursued by a falcon (= the Greeks), which clawed at its head, while it cowered unresisting.

As the Elders attempt to calm and comfort Atossa, a messenger is seen approaching in haste, who without preamble reveals the news they have dreaded: "Cities of all the lands of Asia, by one blow your great prosperity has been destroyed and the flower of the Persians is fallen and gone; the whole host has perished."

While Atossa is stunned to silence, the Elders lament wildly until the queen recovers and with quiet dignity asks the messenger how it could have happened since the Persians surely outnumbered the Greeks. The messenger replies (337–347, tr. Podlecki):

Be sure of this, that in a matter of sheer numbers,  
The ships on our side would have conquered, for the Greeks'  
Entire total of ships was only three hundred ten. . . .  
But the multitude of ships in Xerxes' fleet—I know  
The facts—were no less than a thousand, those in speed  
Surpassing, two hundred seven. This is the total sum.  
Was it here you think we were surpassed when battle came?  
No, not by numbers, but some Spirit crushed the host,  
Threw in an evil fate against us in the scales.  
The gods are keeping the Goddess Pallas' city safe.

The messenger then describes the battle as follows (386–430, tr. Podlecki):

But when the white-horsed chariot of dawn appeared  
 And filled the entire earth with radiance to behold,  
 The first thing was a sound, a shouting from the Greeks,  
 A joyful song, and to it, making shrill response,  
 From the island rocks about there came an antiphony  
 Of echoes; fear stood next to each one of our men,  
 Tripped up in their hopes: for not as if in flight  
 Were the Greeks raising then a solemn paean-strain,  
 But rushing into battle with daring confidence;  
 A trumpet, too, blazed over everything its sound.  
 At once, with measured stroke of surging, sea-dipped oar,  
 They struck the brine and made it roar from one command,  
 And quickly all of them were visible to sight.  
 Their right wing first, in order just as they had been  
 Arranged, led off, and next the whole remaining force  
 Came out to the attack, and with the sight we heard  
 A loud voice of command: "O sons of Greeks, go on,  
 Bring freedom to your fatherland, bring freedom to  
 Your children, wives, and seats of your ancestral gods,  
 And your forebears' graves; now the struggle is for all."  
 Of course, on our side, too, a roar of Persian tongues  
 Went forth in answer; the moment would not brook delay.  
 Immediately ship struck its brazen-plated beak  
 On ship. The ramming was begun by a Greek ship  
 And it snapped off from one of the Phoenicians the whole  
 Curving stern, and men on both sides shot their spears.  
 At first the streaming Persian force withstood the shocks;  
 But when their crowd of ships was gathered in the straits,  
 And no assistance could be given one to another,  
 But they were being struck by their own brazen rams,  
 They kept on breaking all their equipage of oars,  
 And the ships of the Greeks, with perfect plan and order, came  
 Around them in a circle and struck, and hulls of ships  
 Were overturned; and the sea no longer was visible,  
 Filled as it was with shipwrecks and the slaughter of men.  
 The beaches, too, and the reefs around were filled with corpses.  
 Now every ship that came with the Persian armament  
 Was being rowed for quick escape, no order left.  
 And they kept striking us, deboning us, like tunnies  
 Or a catch of fish, with broken fragments of oars, or bits  
 Of flotsam from the wrecks; and all this time, moaning  
 And wailing held control of that area of sea,  
 Until the eye of black night took it away.  
 So great a crowd of ills, not even if I took  
 Ten days in order to tell, could I tell the tale in full.

## New Testament Greek

Luke 2.1-14  
 The Birth of Jesus

ἐγένετο δὲ ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις ἐκείναις ἐξῆλθεν δόγμα παρὰ Καίσαρος Αὐγούστου ἀπογράφεσθαι πᾶσαν τὴν οἰκουμένην. αὕτη ἀπογραφή πρώτη ἐγένετο ἡγεμονεύοντος τῆς Συρίας Κυρηνίου. καὶ ἐπορεύοντο πάντες ἀπογράφεσθαι, ἕκαστος εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πόλιν. ἀνέβη δὲ καὶ Ἰωσήφ ἀπὸ τῆς Γαλιλαίας ἐκ πόλεως Ναζαρέθ εἰς τὴν Ἰουδαίαν εἰς πόλιν Δαυὶδ ἣτις καλεῖται Βηθλέεμ, διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν ἐξ οἴκου καὶ πατριᾶς Δαυὶδ, ἀπογράψασθαι σὺν Μαριᾷ τῇ ἐμνηστευμένη αὐτῷ, οὔσῃ ἐγκύῳ. ἐγένετο δὲ ἐν τῷ εἶναι αὐτοὺς ἐκεῖ ἐπλήσθησαν αἱ ἡμέραι τοῦ τεκεῖν αὐτήν, καὶ ἔτεκεν τὸν υἱὸν αὐτῆς τὸν πρωτότοκον, καὶ ἐσπαργάνωσεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἀνέκλινεν αὐτὸν ἐν φάτνῃ, διότι οὐκ ἦν αὐτοῖς τόπος ἐν τῷ καταλύματι.

[δόγμα, order, decree παρὰ + gen., from ἀπογράφεσθαι, to be registered, enrolled (in the census) τὴν οἰκουμένην, the inhabited world, the Roman Empire ἡγεμονεύοντος... Κυρηνίου, when Quirinius was governor ἕκαστος, each διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν, because of his being πατριᾶς, family, nation, people σὺν + dat., with Μαριᾷ: indeclinable τῇ ἐμνηστευμένη, the betrothed ἐγκύῳ, pregnant ἐπλήσθησαν, were fulfilled τεκεῖν (from τίκω), to give birth τὸν υἱὸν, the son πρωτότοκον, first-born ἐσπαργάνωσεν, she wrapped X in swaddling bands ἀνέκλινεν (from ἀνακλίνω) she made X recline φάτνη, manger, feeding-trough διότι, because τόπος, place τῷ καταλύματι, the inn]

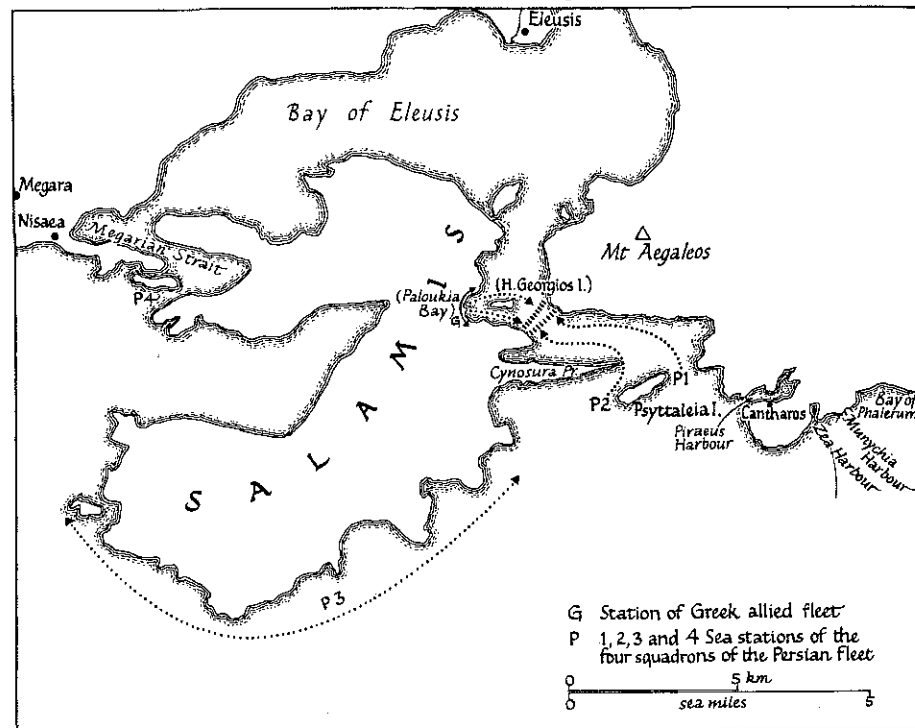
καὶ ποιμένες ἦσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῇ αὐτῇ ἀγραυλοῦντες καὶ φυλάσσοντες φυλακὰς τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὴν ποίμνην αὐτῶν. καὶ ἄγγελος κυρίου ἐπέστη αὐτοῖς καὶ δόξα κυρίου περιέλαμψεν αὐτούς, καὶ ἐφοβήθησαν φόβον μέγαν. καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ὁ ἄγγελος, "μὴ φοβεῖσθε, ἰδοὺ γὰρ εὐαγγελίζομαι ὑμῖν χαρὰν μεγάλην ἣτις ἔσται παντὶ τῷ λαῷ, ὅτι ἐτέχθη ὑμῖν σήμερον σωτὴρ ὅς ἐστιν Χριστὸς κύριος ἐν πόλει Δαυὶδ. καὶ τοῦτο ὑμῖν τὸ σημεῖον, εὐρήσετε βρέφος ἐσπαργανωμένον καὶ κείμενον ἐν φάτνῃ." καὶ ἐξαίφνης ἐγένετο σὺν τῷ ἀγγέλῳ πλῆθος στρατιᾶς οὐρανόυ αἰνοῦντων τὸν θεὸν καὶ λεγόντων,

"δόξα ἐν ὑψίστοις θεῷ

καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς εἰρήνη ἐν ἀνθρώποις εὐδοκίας."

[ποιμένες, shepherds τῇ χώρᾳ, the place ἀγραυλοῦντες, living out of doors φυλάσσοντες = φυλάττοντες φυλακὰς, watches ἐπὶ + acc., over τὴν ποίμνην, the flock ἄγγελος, angel κυρίου, of the Lord δόξα, the glory περιέλαμψεν, shone around ἐφοβήθησαν, they feared φόβον, fear εὐαγγελίζομαι, I announce χαρὰν, joy τῷ λαῷ, the people ἐτέχθη (from τίκω), was born σήμερον, today σωτὴρ, savior τὸ σημεῖον, the sign βρέφος, baby, infant ἐσπαργανωμένον, wrapped in swaddling bands κείμενον, lying ἐξαίφνης, suddenly στρατιᾶς, of an army, host οὐρανόυ, heavenly αἰνοῦντων, of ones praising ἐν ὑψίστοις, lit., among the highest (things), in heaven εἰρήνη, peace εὐδοκίας, of good will or of (His) choice] Concluded in Chapter 16β

# Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (β)



ἡ ἐν τῇ Σαλαμῖνι μάχη

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀνέστην, ἀναστᾶς, *I stood up*  
βλάπτω, [βλαβ-] βλάψω,  
ἔβλαψα, βλάβας, *I harm, hurt*  
δηλῶ, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα,  
δηλώσας, *I show*  
ἐλευθερόω, ἐλευθερώσω,  
ἠλευθέρωσα, ἐλευθερώσας,  
*I free, set free*  
ἐμπίπτω [= ἐν- + πίπτω],  
ἐμπεσοῦμαι (irregular),  
ἐνέπεσον (irregular),  
ἐμπεσών + dat., *I fall into;*  
*I fall upon; I attack*  
ἐπιπλέω, [πλευσ-] ἐπιπλεύ-

σομαι, ἐπέπλευσα, ἐπιπλεύ-  
σας + dat. or + εἰς + acc., *I sail*  
*against*  
ναυμαχέω, ναυμαχήσω,  
ἐναυμάχησα, ναυμαχήσας,  
*I fight by sea*  
πειράω, πειράσω (note that be-  
cause of the ρ the α lengthens to ᾱ  
rather than η), ἐπειράσα,  
πειράσας, active or middle,  
*I try, attempt*  
πιστεύω, πιστεύσω,  
ἐπίστευσα, πιστεύσας + dat.,  
*I trust, am confident (in); I be-*  
*lieve; + ὡς, I believe (that)*

συμπίπτω [= συν- + πίπτω],  
συμπεσοῦμαι (irregular),  
[πετ-] συνέπεσον (irregular),  
συμπεσών, *I clash; + dat.,*  
*I clash with*

### Nouns

ὁ ἀγών, τοῦ ἀγῶνος, *struggle;*  
*contest*  
ἡ ἀρετή, τῆς ἀρετῆς, *excel-*  
*lence; virtue; courage*  
ὁ θόρυβος, τοῦ θορύβου, *uproar,*  
*commotion*  
ὁ κόσμος, τοῦ κόσμου, *good or-*  
*der*  
κόσμῳ, *in order*  
τὸ μέρος, τοῦ μέρους, *part*  
ὁ νεκρός, τοῦ νεκροῦ, *corpse*  
ἡ νίκη, τῆς νίκης, *victory*  
ἡ πατρίς, τῆς πατρίδος, *father-*  
*land*  
ὁ πέπλος, τοῦ πέπλου, *robe;*  
*cloth*

ὁ πρόγονος, τοῦ προγόνου, *an-*  
*cestor*  
ἡ σπουδή, τῆς σπουδῆς, *haste;*  
*eagerness*  
ἡ τύχη, τῆς τύχης, *chance;*  
*luck; fortune*

### Adjectives

δεξιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *right (i.e., on*  
*the right hand)*  
πεζός, -ή, -όν, *on foot*

### Adverb

πανταχοῦ, *everywhere*

### Conjunction

ὥς, *that*

### Proper Names

ὁ Αἰσχύλος, τοῦ Αἰσχύλου,  
*Aeschylus*  
ἡ Ἀσίᾱ, τῆς Ἀσιᾶς, *Asia (i.e.,*  
*Asia Minor)*  
Περσικός, -ή, -όν, *Persian*  
ὁ Σιμωνίδης, τοῦ Σιμωνίδου,  
*Simonides*

“πᾶσαν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οἱ βάρβαροι ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα ἤρεσσον τὰ τε  
στενὰ φυλάττοντες καὶ τοὺς ἔκπλους, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἡσύχαζον  
παρασκευαζόμενοι μάχεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾱ ἐγένετο,  
προὔχουρουν οἱ βάρβαροι εἰς τὰ στενά, πιστεύοντες ὡς ῥαδίως  
7 μέλλουσι νικήσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐξαίφνης δὲ βοὴν μεγίστην 5  
ἤκουσαν ὥστε μάλα ἐφοβοῦντο. οἱ γὰρ Ἕλληνες, κόσμῳ χρώμενοι  
εἰς μάχην προὔχουρουν καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους πλέοντες τὸν  
παιᾶνα ἐβόων.

[ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα, *this way and that* ἐξαίφνης, *suddenly* τὸν παιᾶνα, *the battle*  
*song*]

“οὕτω δὲ ὁ Αἰσχύλος ὁ ποιητής, ὃς καὶ αὐτὸς τῇ μάχῃ παρῆν,  
τοὺς Ἕλληνας ποιεῖ ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπιπλέοντας.”

10

τὸ δεξιὸν μὲν πρῶτον εὐτάκτως κέρᾱς  
ἠγείτο κόσμῳ, δεύτερον δ' ὁ πᾶς στόλος  
ἐπεξεχώρει, καὶ παρῆν ὁμοῦ κλύειν  
πολλὴν βοήν, ὧ παιῖδες Ἑλλήνων ἔτε,

ἐλευθεροῦτε πατρίδ', ἐλευθεροῦτε δὲ  
παῖδας, γυναῖκας, θεῶν τε πατρῶν ἔδη,  
θῆκᾱς τε προγόνων· νῦν ὑπὲρ πάντων ἁγών.'

[ποιεῖ, here, describes τὸ δεξιὸν . . . κέρα, the right wing εὐτάκτως, in an orderly manner δεύτερον, secondly ἐπεξεχώρει, was coming out against (them) παρῆν, it was possible ὁμοῦ, together, at the same time κλῦειν, to hear θεῶν: pronounce as one syllable πατρῶν, ancestral (τὰ) ἔδη, seats, shrines θῆκᾱς, tombs (The quotation is from Aeschylus, Persians 399-405.)]

“οὕτως οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες τῷ Περσικῷ στρατῷ προσέβαλλον καὶ ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς συμπύκτοντες ἐναυμάχουν ὀλίγοι πρὸς πολλούς. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι, καίπερ πλείστᾱς ἔχοντες ναῦς, οὐκ ἐδύναντο πάσαις ταῖς ναυσὶν ἅμα χρῆσθαι. καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες τὰς πρώτᾱς τῶν βαρβάρων ναῦς ἢ ἔβλαψαν ἢ κατέδυσαν τοσαύτη σπουδῇ προσβάλλοντες ὥστε οἱ βάρβαροι μάλα φοβούμενοι ἐτρέποντο καὶ ἐπειρῶντο ἐκφυγεῖν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πλείστος ἐγένετο θόρυβος. [αἱ γὰρ τῶν βαρβάρων νῆες ἀλλήλαις ἐνέπιπτον, αἱ μὲν ἐκ τῆς μάχης πειρώμεναι ἐκφυγεῖν, αἱ δὲ εἰς τὴν μάχην προχωροῦσαι.] τέλος δὲ πάντες οἱ βάρβαροι ἔφευγον οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ χρώμενοι, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες διώκοντες πλείστᾱς δὴ ναῦς κατέδυσαν· καὶ πανταχοῦ μὲν ἦν ναυάγια, πανταχοῦ δὲ νεκροί, ὥστε τὴν θάλατταν οὐκέτι ἔξῃν ἰδεῖν. οὕτως οὖν ἐμάχοντο ἕως νύξ ἐγένετο.

[ἐδύναντο, were able κατέδυσαν, sank ναυάγια, shipwrecks]

“ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ Ξέρξης ἐκαθίζετο ἐπὶ ὄχθῳ τινὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς θαλάττης τὴν μάχην θεώμενος· ἐπίστευε γὰρ ὡς ῥαδίως νικήσουσιν οἱ Πέρσαι· ἡγνόει γὰρ τὰ τῆς τύχης οὐδ' ἔγνω τί ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν οἱ θεοὶ ἀλλ' αἰεὶ ὕβρει ἐχρήτο.

[ὄχθῳ, hill ἡγνόει, he was ignorant of τὰ τῆς τύχης, the (things) of chance, i.e., that chance rules human affairs ὕβρει, insolence, pride]

“γνοὺς δὲ ὅτι νικῶσι μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀποφεύγουσιν, ἀνέστη καὶ τοὺς πέπλους ἔρρηξεν. ἐν ἀπορίᾳ γὰρ μεγίστῃ ἦν· ἀπολέσᾱς γὰρ τὸ ναυτικὸν οὐκέτι ἐδύνατο σῖτον παρέχειν τῷ πεζῷ στρατῷ μεγίστῳ ὄντι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν στρατηγοὺς

ἐκέλευσε τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν ἄγειν κατὰ γῆν πρὸς τὴν Ἀσίαν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπέφυγεν ὀδυρόμενος.

[ἔρρηξεν (from ῥήγνυμι, I break), he tore ἀπολέσᾱς (from ἀπόλλυμι), having lost ὀδυρόμενος, lamenting]

“οὕτως οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες τοὺς Πέρσας νίκησαντες τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἡλευθέρωσαν. καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἔργῳ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι πλείστᾱς τε ναῦς παρέσχον τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ πλείστην ἐδήλωσαν ἀρετὴν, ὥστε ἔξεστιν ἀληθῶς λέγειν ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἔσωσαν, καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, ὃς στρατηγὸς ὦν Ἀθηναῖος μάλιστα αἴτιος ἦν τῆς νίκης.

[καὶ δὴ καὶ, and in particular, and what is more ἥκιστα, least]

“τοῦτο τὸ ἐπίγραμμα τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις τοῖς ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πολέμῳ ἀποθανοῦσιν ἔγραψεν ὁ Σιμωνίδης, ποιητὴς ὦν ἄριστος·

εἰ τὸ καλῶς θνήσκειν ἀρετῆς μέρος ἐστὶ μέγιστον,  
ἡμῖν ἐκ πάντων τοῦτ' ἀπένειμε Τύχη·  
Ἑλλάδι γὰρ σπεύδοντες ἐλευθερίην περιθεῖναι  
κείμεθ' ἀγηράντῳ χρώμενοι εὐλογίῃ.”

[τὸ ἐπίγραμμα, epigram τὸ καλῶς θνήσκειν, to die well (this infinitive phrase is the subject of the sentence) ἀπένειμε (from ἀπονέμω), bestowed, gave περιθεῖναι (from περιτίθημι), to put around, to put X (acc.) on Y (dat.), as one would put a garland or a crown on someone's head κείμεθ(α), we lie (in our graves) ἀγηράντῳ (cf. τὸ γῆρας, old age), ageless εὐλογίῃ, praise, eulogy]

## WORD BUILDING

In the following pairs of words, deduce the meaning of the nouns and the adjective from the meanings of the verbs. Note the change in vowels from ε in the verbs to ο in the nouns and the adjective:

- |          |         |           |                 |
|----------|---------|-----------|-----------------|
| 1. λέγω  | ὁ λόγος | 4. μένω   | ἡ μονή          |
| 2. τρέπω | ἡ τροπὴ | 5. σπεύδω | ἡ σπουδὴ        |
| 3. πέμπω | ἡ πομπή | 6. λείπω  | λοιπός, -ή, -όν |

## GRAMMAR

### 3. Contract Verbs in -ο-

In the vocabulary list and reading passage above, you have seen examples of two contract verbs with stems ending in -ο- instead of in -ε- or

-α-, namely, δηλώω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, and ἐλευθερώω, ἐλευθερώσω, ἠλευθέρωσα. Verbs in -ο- contract as follows:

**Stem:** δηλο-, *show*

### Present Active

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δηλό-ω>	δηλῶ	δηλοῦν	
δηλό-εις>	δηλοῖς	δήλο-ε >	δηλό-ων > δηλῶν,
δηλό-ει>	δηλοῖ	δήλου	δηλό-ουσα > δηλοῦσα,
δηλό-ομεν>	δηλοῦμεν		δηλό-ον > δηλοῦν,
δηλό-ετε>	δηλοῦτε	δήλο-ετε >	gen., δηλοῦντος
δηλό-ουσι(ν) >	δηλοῦσι(ν)	δηλοῦτε	

### Present Middle

Shown here in contracted forms only

δηλοῦμαι		δηλοῦσθαι	δηλούμενος, -η, -ον
δηλοῖ	δηλοῦ		
δηλοῦται			
δηλούμεθα			
δηλοῦσθε	δηλοῦσθε		
δηλοῦνται			

### Imperfect Active

ἐ-δήλο-ον >	ἐδήλουν
ἐ-δήλο-ες >	ἐδήλους
ἐ-δήλο-ε >	ἐδήλου
ἐ-δηλό-ομεν >	ἐδηλοῦμεν
ἐ-δηλό-ετε >	ἐδηλοῦτε
ἐ-δήλο-ον >	ἐδήλουν

### Imperfect Middle

ἐδηλο-ό-μην >	ἐδηλούμην
ἐδηλό-ε-σο >	ἐδηλοῦ
ἐδηλό-ε-το >	ἐδηλοῦτο
ἐδηλο-ό-μεθα >	ἐδηλούμεθα
ἐδηλό-ε-σθε >	ἐδηλοῦσθε
ἐδηλό-ο-ντο >	ἐδηλοῦντο

The following rules for these contractions may be observed:

1. ο + ε, ο, or ου > ου.
2. ο + ει, οι, or η > οι.
3. ο + η or ω > ω.

There are only a few contract verbs in -ο-; examples are ἀρόω, *I plow*, δηλώω, *I show*, ἐλευθερώω, *I free, set free*, δουλόω, *I enslave*, and πληρώω, *I fill*. The futures and aorists obey the usual rules for contract verbs, lengthening the stem vowel.

### Exercise 15δ

Locate four examples of -ο- contract verbs in reading passage β in this chapter and identify the form of each.

### Exercise 15ε

Make two photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and on one set fill in the forms of δηλώω that you have learned to date in the active voice and on the other, in the middle voice.

### 4. Contract Nouns of the 2nd Declension

A few nouns of the 2nd declension with stems ending in -οο- show the same process of contraction as is seen in the verbs above.

**Stem:** νοο-, *mind*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ νόο-ς > νοῦς	οἱ νόοι > νοῖ
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ νόου > νοῦ	τῶν νόων > νῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ νόῳ > νῷ	τοῖς νόοις > νοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν νόο-ν > νοῦν	τοὺς νόους > νοῦς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ νόε > νοῦ	ὦ νόοι > νοῖ

### Exercise 15ζ

Read aloud and translate:

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ ἀληθῆ γινούσιν πάντα τῷ δήμῳ δηλοῖ.
2. οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν πόλιν ἐλόντες τοὺς ἐνοίκους (*inhabitants*) δουλοῦσιν.
3. δεῖ ἀνδρείως μάχεσθαι, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ ἐλευθεροῦν τὴν πατρίδα.
4. τὴν ἀρετὴν δηλοῦτε ἣν αἰεὶ ἐδήλουν οἱ πρόγονοι.
5. οἱ ὀπλίται, ταῦτα γνόντες, τοῖς πολεμίοις προσέβαλον καὶ πλείστην ἀρετὴν δηλοῦντες τὴν πόλιν ἠλευθέρωσαν.
6. τί ἐν νῷ ἔχει ὁ Ξέρξης; ἐν νῷ ἔχει πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα δουλοῦν.
7. τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἔδοξε τοὺς τε βαρβάρους ἀμύνειν καὶ τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐλευθερῶσαι.

### 5. More Numbers

You have already learned the cardinals 1–10 and the ordinals 1st–10th (see Chapter 8, Grammar 5, page 128). You should learn to recognize the following cardinals and ordinals, including the cardinals on page 264:

11	ἑνδεκα	11th	ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον
12	δώδεκα	12th	δωδέκατος, -η, -ον
20	εἴκοσι(ν)	20th	εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν
100	ἑκατόν	100th	ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν
1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α	1,000th	χίλιοστός, -ή, -όν
10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α	10,000th	μῦριοστός, -ή, -όν

13, etc. = τρεῖς καὶ δέκα, etc. 21, etc. = εἶς καὶ εἴκοσι(ν), etc.

The numbers 30 to 90 are formed from the cardinal numbers for 3 to 9 + -κοντα (with some variations in spelling): τριάκοντα, τετταράκοντα, πενήκοντα, ἐξήκοντα, ἑβδομήκοντα, ὀγδοήκοντα, ἐνενήκοντα.

The numbers 200 to 900 are formed from the cardinal numbers for 2 to 9 + -κοσιοι, -αι, -α (with some variations in spelling): διακόσιοι, τριακόσιοι, τετρακόσιοι, πεντακόσιοι, ἑξακόσιοι, ἑπτακόσιοι, ὀκτακόσιοι, ἑνακόσιοι.

The word μῦριοι, -αι, -α is used in the general sense of *numberless, countless*; note the different accent from that of μύριοι, -αι, -α, 10,000, on the previous page.

## 6. Uses of ὥς and Its Compounds

### a. As Adverbs

Exclamatory (*how*): “ὦ Θησεῦ,” φᾶσιν, “ὥς ἀνδρείος εἶ.” (6b:22)

Introducing a parenthetical comment (*just as*): ὥσπερ λέγει ὁ ποιητής (8a:23)

Expressing purpose with future participle (*to*): “ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν τῷ ἄστει μενῶ ὥς τὰς τραγηδίας θεᾶσόμενος.” (10β:13–14 and 10 Gr 7)

With superlatives (*as . . . as possible*): οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι εὐθὺς παρεσκευάσαντο βουλόμενοι ὥς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι. (12α: 2–3 and 14 Gr 4d)

Introducing a parenthetical comment (*as, cf. ὥσπερ above*): “ὀργίζεται ἡμῖν,” ἔφη, “ὁ Ποσειδῶν, ὥς δοκεῖ.” (13β:10)

### b. As Conjunctions

Expressing result (*that*): οὕτω δὲ ταχέως τρέχουσιν ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν ὄραν οὔτε τὸν κῆνα οὔτε τὸν λαγών. (5α:7–8)

Expressing time (*when*): ὥς οὖν ἠπόρει ὁ Ξέρξης, προσήλθε πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀνὴρ τις τῶν Ἑλλήνων. (14β:2–3)

Introducing an indirect statement (*that*): προὔχωρουν οἱ βάρβαροι εἰς τὰ στενά, πιστεύοντες ὥς ῥαδίως μέλλουσι νικήσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. (15β:4–5)

## ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑΣ ΑΘΗΝΑΣ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ

Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 8.51–53) and answer the comprehension questions:

οἱ Πέρσαι αἰροῦσιν ἔρημον τὸ ἄστυ, καὶ τινὰς εὐρίσκουσι τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ὄντας, ταμίας τε τοῦ ἱεροῦ καὶ πένητας ἀνθρώπους, οἱ φραξάμενοι τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἡμύνοντο τοὺς προσβάλλοντας. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι καθιζόμενοι ἐπὶ τὸν ὄχθον τὸν ἐναντίον τῆς Ἀκροπόλεως, ὃν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι καλοῦσιν Ἀρειόπαγον, ἐπολιόρκουν.

[ἔρημον, deserted ταμίας, stewards πένητας, poor φραξάμενοι, having barricaded ἐπὶ τὸν ὄχθον, upon the hill ἐναντίον + gen., opposite

Ἀρειόπαγον, the Areopagus (Hill of Ares, the god of war) ἐπολιόρκουν, were besieging]

1. When the Persians take the city, whom do they find in the temple?
2. What had these people done, and what were they doing?
3. How did the Persians situate themselves to besiege the Acropolis?

οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι, καίπερ κάκιστα πάσχοντες, οὐκ ᾔθελον εἶκιν ἀλλὰ ἡμύνοντο, ὥστε πολὺν χρόνον Ξέρξης ἠπόρει, οὐ δυνάμενος αὐτοὺς εἰλεῖν. τέλος δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι οὕτως εἶλον· ἀνέβησαν γὰρ τινες ὅπου ἀπόκρημνος ἦν ὁ χῶρος καὶ οὐκ ἐφύλαττον οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀλλ' ἐπίστευον ὥς οὐδεὶς δύναται ταύτῃ ἀναβῆναι. ὥς δὲ εἶδον αὐτοὺς ταύτῃ ἀναβεβηκότας ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν, οἱ μὲν ἔρριπτον ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τὸ τεῖχος καὶ ἀπέθανον, οἱ δὲ εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν ἔφευγον. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς ἰκέτας ἀπέκτειναν, ἔπειτα δὲ τὸ ἱερὸν σὺλήσαντες ἐνέπρησαν πᾶσαν τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν.

[ἀπόκρημνος, sheer ὁ χῶρος, the place ἀναβεβηκότας (perfect participle of ἀναβαίνω), having gone up ἔρριπτον (from ῥίπτω), threw τοὺς ἰκέτας, the suppliants σὺλήσαντες, having plundered ἐνέπρησαν (from ἐμπύρηναι), they set fire to]

4. How were the Athenians faring and what were their intentions?
5. Why was it possible for the Persians finally to scale the Acropolis?
6. What did the Athenians do when they saw the Persians coming up?
7. What did the Persians do that showed their ignorance of or lack of respect for customary forms of Greek behavior?

### Exercise 15η

Translate into Greek:

1. When the Athenians learned that the Persians were advancing (*use present tense*) toward Attica, they sent messengers to Delphi (*use οἱ Δεῖφοί*).
2. These, having gone into the temple, asked the god what the Athenians must (δεῖ) do.
3. The god, answering (*use aorist participle*), said: “Athena is not able (οὐ δύναται) to save you. The barbarians will take Athens. Only the wooden (*use ξύλινος, -ον*) wall will be unsacked (*use ἀπόρθητος, -ον*).”
4. The messengers wrote these words and having returned to Athens announced them to the people (*dative*).
5. Themistocles, having stood up, said: “Hear, Athenians, what the oracle (τὸ χρηστήριον) means (λέγει); the ships of the Athenians are the wooden wall; for these will save the city.”
6. Having spoken thus, he persuaded the Athenians not to yield to the barbarians but to fight by sea.

# 16 META THN EN THΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗΝ (α)



τάς τε πυραμίδας ἐθεωρήσαμεν καὶ τὴν Σφίγγα καὶ ζῶα ἔκτοπα.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

δύναμαι, imperfect, ἐδυνάμην,  
δυνήσομαι, aorist to be pre-  
sented later, *I am able; I can*  
ἐπίσταμαι, imperfect,  
ἠπιστάμην, ἐπιστήσομαι, no  
aorist middle, *I understand;*  
*I know*  
καταλαμβάνω, [ληβ-]  
καταλήψομαι, [λαβ-]  
κατέλαβον, καταλαβών,  
*I overtake, catch*  
κείμαι, imperfect, ἐκείμην,  
κείσομαι, no aorist, *I lie*  
κατάκειμαι, *I lie down*  
στρατεύω, στρατεύσω,  
ἐστράτευσα, στρατεύσας, ac-  
tive or middle, *I wage war,*  
*campaign; + ἐπί + acc., I cam-*  
*paign (against)*  
συναγείρω, [ἀγερε-] συνα-  
γερῶ, [ἀγειρ-] συνήγειρα,  
συναγείρας, active, transitive,  
*I gather X; middle, intrans-*  
*itive, I gather together*

τελευτάω, τελευτήσω,  
ἐτελεύτησα, τελευτήσας,  
*I end; I die*

### Nouns

ὁ ἔνοικος, τοῦ ἐνοίκου, *inhabi-*  
*tant*  
ὁ σύμμαχος, τοῦ συμμάχου,  
*ally*  
ἡ συμφορά, τῆς συμφορᾶς, *mis-*  
*fortune; disaster*

### Adjectives

διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α, *two hun-*  
*dred*  
ἐκατόν, indeclinable, *a hun-*  
*dred*  
πόσος; πόση; πόσον; *how much?*  
*pl., how many?*

### Preposition

ὑπό + gen., *under; of agent,*  
*by,\* + dat., under; + acc., un-*  
*der*

### Adverbs

οὐδαμοῦ, *nowhere*  
πολλαχόσε, *to many parts*  
ὕστερον, *later*

### Expressions

καὶ δὴ καί, *and in particular;*  
*and what is more*  
ποῦ γῆς; *where (in the world)?*

### Proper Names

For the proper names in this  
reading, see the vocabulary at  
the end of the book.

\* The preposition ὑπό + the genitive case, meaning *by*, will often be found with verbs in the passive voice, e.g., ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἔτι εἴχοντο, *they were still being held by the barbarians*. In the present and imperfect tenses the passive voice, introduced in this chapter, has the same forms as the middle voice, which you have seen since Chapter 6. In the following reading you will find a number of verbs with middle voice endings, with which you are familiar, but being used in the passive voice. The context will tell you whether the verb is being used as middle or passive; if it is accompanied by a prepositional phrase with ὑπό + the genitive case, it is most likely passive.

οὕτως οὖν περᾱνᾱς τὸν λόγον ὁ ναύτης κατέκειτο ἐπὶ τῷ κατα-  
στρώματι, ὁ δὲ Δικαίολις καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος ἐσίγων, <sup>were silent</sup> πάντα  
θαυμάζοντες <sup>which</sup> ἄπερ εἶπεν. τέλος δὲ ὁ Φίλιππος, "ὥς ἀνδρείως," ἔφη,  
"ἐμάχοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὥς λαμπρῶς τοῖς συμμάχοις ἡγοῦντο οἱ  
Ἀθηναῖοι. σὺ δὲ τί ἐποίεις μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον; [ἄρα ἔμπορος 5  
γενόμενος ἐν ὀλκάσιν ἔπλεις;]" ὁ δὲ, "οὐδαμῶς," ἔφη, "οὐ γὰρ  
ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ πόλεμος, ἀλλὰ πολὺν <sup>still</sup> ἐτι χρόνον <sup>it was necessary</sup> ἔδει πρὸς τοὺς  
βαρβάρους μάχεσθαι. πᾶσαι τε γὰρ αἱ νῆσοι καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Ἰωνία ὑπὸ  
τῶν βαρβάρων ἔτι εἴχοντο.

[περᾱνᾱς (from περαίνω), <sup>passive imp. ἔκω</sup> *having finished* τῷ καταστρώματι, *deck* ὀλκάσιν,  
*merchant ships*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, "ἀλλὰ πόσον χρόνον ἔδει μάχεσθαι; [ἄρα πολλαῖς 10  
παρησθα μάχαις;]"

ὁ δὲ ναύτης, "μάλιστά γε, ὦ παῖ," ἔφη, [πλείσταις τε μάχαις] παρῆν  
καὶ πολλαχόσε τῆς γῆς ἔπλεον μετὰ τῶν συμμάχων. αἰεὶ μὲν γὰρ οἱ  
βάρβαροι ἐμάχοντο, αἰεὶ δὲ ἐνίκωντο." <sup>they were always defeated</sup>  
ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, "ἀλλὰ ποῦ γῆς ἐμάχεσθε;" 15

ὁ δὲ, "πρῶτον μὲν ἅμα ἦρι ἀρχομένῳ οἱ Ἴωνες ὑφ' ἡμῶν  
ἐλευθεροῦνται· πλεύσαντες γὰρ ἐκατόν ναυσὶ πρὸς τὴν Σάμον καὶ τὸ  
τῶν βαρβάρων ναυτικὸν εἰς τὴν Μυκαλὴν διώξαντες, οὕτω προθύμως  
αὐτοῖς προσβάλλομεν ὥστε νικᾶται τε ὁ στρατὸς αὐτῶν καὶ  
διαφθείρεται τὸ ναυτικόν. οἱ δὲ Ἴωνες, <sup>when</sup> ὥς ἠπίσταντο ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι 20

νικῶνται, ἡμῖν ἐβοήθουν· οὕτως οὖν πᾶσά τε ἡ Ἰωνιᾶ ἐλευθεροῦται  
καὶ πᾶσαι αἱ νῆσοι. οὐδαμοῦ γὰρ δύνανται οἱ βάρβαροι ἡμῖν  
ἀντέχειν. *in no way*

[ἄμα ἦρι ἀρχομένῳ, *together with the beginning of spring* ἑκατὸν ναυσὶ, *with a hundred ships* προθύμως, *eagerly*]

“ὕστερον δέ, ὥς οἱ Πέρσαι στρατὸν τε μέγιστον καὶ ναῦς διακοσίᾱς  
συναγείραντες εἰς τὸν Αἰγαῖον πόντον αὐθις εἰσβιάζεσθαι ἐπειρῶντο, 25  
καταλαβόντες αὐτοὺς πρὸς τῷ Εὐρυμέδοντι ποταμῷ ἐνίκησαμεν ἐν  
μάχῃ μεγίστῃ κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλατταν. *active*

[εἰσβιάζεσθαι, *to force their way into* ποταμῷ, *river*]

“καὶ δὴ καὶ εἰς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἐστρατεύσαμεν καὶ τοῖς ἐνοίκις  
βοηθοῦντες τοὺς Πέρσας ἐξηλάσαμεν. ἀνά τε γὰρ τὸν Νεῖλον  
ἐπλεύσαμεν καὶ τὴν Μέμφιν εἴλομεν, πόλιν μεγίστην ἐπὶ τῷ Νεῖλῳ 30  
κειμένην. ἔξ οὖν ἔτη ἐν τῇ Αἰγύπτῳ ἐμένομεν καὶ πολλὰ θαύματα  
εἶδομεν. τὰς τε γὰρ πυραμίδας ἐθεωρήσαμεν, σήματα μέγιστα οὐσᾶς  
τῶν βασιλέων τῶν ἀρχαίων, καὶ τὴν Σφίγγα, εἰκόνα δεινотάτην, τὸ μὲν  
ἥμισυ λέαιναν, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ γυναῖκα. καὶ δὴ καὶ ζῶα ἔκτοπα εἶδομεν,  
κροκοδίλους τε καὶ στρουθοὺς. τέλος δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι, στρατὸν μέγιστον 35  
συναγείραντες, ἡμῖν προσέβαλον· νικώμεθα οὖν καὶ ἐξ Αἰγύπτου  
ἐξελαυνόμεθα. οὕτως οὖν συμφορὰν μεγίστην ἐπάθομεν· διακοσίᾱς  
γὰρ ναῦς ἀπολέσαντες μόλις ἡμεῖς αὐτοὶ ἔξεφύγομεν.”

[ἔτη, *years* θαύματα, *wonders* πυραμίδας, *pyramids* σήματα, *tombs*  
ἀρχαίων, *old, ancient* εἰκόνα, *a statue* τὸ... ἥμισυ, *half* λέαιναν, *lioness*  
ζῶα, *animals* ἔκτοπα, *out of the way, unusual* κροκοδίλους, *crocodiles*  
στρουθοὺς, *ostriches* ἀπολέσαντες (from ἀπόλλυμι), *having lost*]

## WORD STUDY

How are the following words derived from the Greek verb δύναιμι and the related noun δύναμις?

1. dynamic 2. dynamo 3. dynamite 4. dynasty

## GRAMMAR

### 1. The Passive Voice

For the concepts of active, passive, and middle voice, see Chapter 6, Grammar 2, pages 75–76.

In the present and imperfect tenses, the passive forms of verbs are spelled the same as middle voice forms. In the aorist and future tenses, the forms are different, and those forms will be introduced in Book II of this course. For the present and imperfect tenses, the context will make clear whether the verb is middle or passive in meaning, e.g.:

Active Voice:

ἡ γυνὴ τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγείρει.

The woman **wakes** her husband.

Middle Voice:

ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐγείρεται.

The husband **wakes himself up/wakes up**.

Passive Voice:

ὁ ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐγείρεται.

The husband **is woken up by his wife**.

Note that the *agent* by whom the action is performed is expressed with the preposition ὑπό + the genitive. The *thing* with which or by which the action is performed is expressed by a noun in the dative case (*dative of means or instrument*) without a preposition (see Chapter 6, Grammar 6d, page 88):

ὁ λύκος μαχαίρᾳ τύπτεται ὑπὸ τοῦ παιδός

The wolf **is struck with a knife** by the boy.

Here is a set of examples with the imperfect tense:

Active Voice:

ἡ μήτηρ τοὺς παῖδας ἔλουεν.

The mother **was washing** her children.

Middle Voice:

οἱ παῖδες ἐλούοντο.

The children **were washing themselves/were washing**.

Passive Voice:

οἱ παῖδες ὑπὸ τῆς μητρὸς ἐλούοντο.

The children **were being washed by their mother**.

### Exercise 16a

Make four photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present and imperfect passive forms of λαμβάνω, φιλέω, τιμᾶω, and δηλόω that you have learned to date. Translate each form. Keep these charts.

**Exercise 16β**

*Read aloud and translate. Identify all passive verb forms (both indicatives and participles):*

- οἱ βόες πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν βραδέως ἐλαύνονται ὑπὸ τοῦ αὐτουργοῦ.
- πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπόνει ὁ αὐτουργός, τῷ ἡλίῳ κατατριβόμενος (κατατρίβω, *I wear out*).
- ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐσπέρα γίνεται, ὁ αὐτουργὸς παύεται ἐργαζόμενος· οἱ δὲ βόες λύνονται καὶ τὸ ἄροτρον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ λείπεται.
- ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἴκαδε ἡλαύνοντο οἱ βόες ὑπὸ τοῦ δούλου, ὁ αὐτουργὸς μάλα κάμνων πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἐκαθίζετο.
- ἐξαίφνης (*suddenly*) δὲ βοὴ ἐγείρεται καὶ τῶν παιδῶν ἀκούει ἑαυτὸν καλούντων.
- ἐλθε δεῦρο, ὦ πάτερ, καὶ βοήθει· διωκόμεθα γὰρ ὑπὸ λύκου.
- οἱ παῖδες ὑπὸ τοῦ λύκου διωκόμενοι μάλα ἐφοβοῦντο.
- μὴ φοβεῖσθε, ὦ παῖδες· οὐδὲν γὰρ βλάπτεσθε ὑπὸ τοῦ λύκου.
- οὕτως εἰπὼν, τὸν κύνα ἔλυσεν· ὁ δὲ λύκος ὑπὸ τοῦ κυνὸς διωκόμενος ἀπέφυγεν.
- οὕτως οὖν σφύζονται οἱ παῖδες καὶ μετὰ τοῦ πατρὸς οἴκαδε σπεύδουσιν.

**Exercise 16γ**

*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

- οἱ βάρβαροι ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νικώμενοι ἐτρέψαντο καὶ πρὸς τὴν γῆν ἔφυγον.  
The sailors, pursued by the pirates (ὁ ληστής), raised their sails and fled to the harbor.
- οἱ Ἕλληνες καίπερ ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες μεγίστη ὑπὸ τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέους πείθονται μὴ εἶκιν τοῖς βαρβάροις.  
The Persians, although having very many ships, are being defeated by the Greeks.
- ἀναγκαζόμενοι ἐν τοῖς στένοις μάχεσθαι οὐκ ἐδύναντο πάσαις ταῖς ναυσὶ χρῆσθαι.  
They were being pursued by the Greeks, and all their ships were either being damaged or destroyed.
- ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ὑπὸ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐπείθετο πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ πορεύεσθαι.  
Philip was being pursued by a certain big wolf.
- τῷ χειμῶνι ἀναγκαζόμεθα εἰς τὸν λιμένα ἐπανελθεῖν.  
We are ordered by our father to disembark from the ship.

**Exercise 16δ**

*Translate into Greek:*

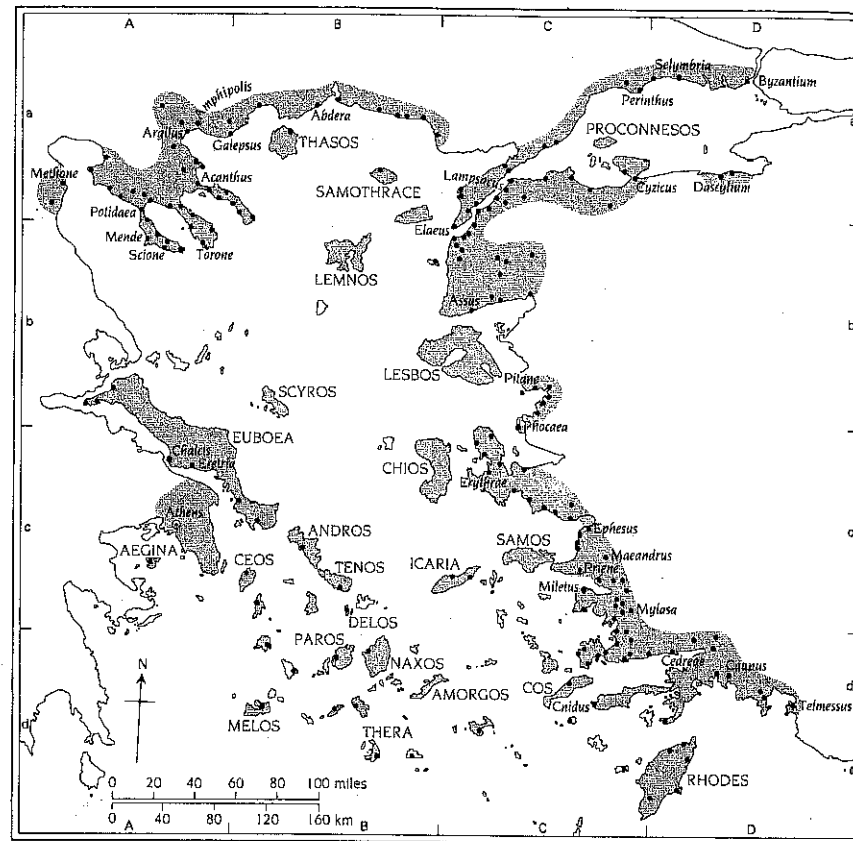
- The women are loved and honored by their husbands.
- The girls, pursued by some young men, were hurrying home to their mothers.
- Don't go away; we are ordered by the king to wait (*use present tense*) in the market place.
- When evening was falling, a messenger arrived.
- "Citizens," he said, "you are ordered to hurry (*use aorist*) home and return (*use aorist*) tomorrow."

**The Athenian Empire**

During the invasion of Xerxes, the loyal Greeks had accepted without question the leadership of Sparta by both land and sea; for she was still the dominant power in Greece. In spring of 479 B.C., the allied fleet, led by a Spartan general, was based at Delos and, invited by the Samians, sailed to Ionia, defeated the Persians at Mycale, and liberated the Ionians, who revolted from their Persian masters (see map, page 230). The following year the allied forces were led by Pausanias, the Spartan commander at Plataea. In a brilliant campaign he first liberated most of Cyprus from Persian rule and then sailed north and took Byzantium, the key to the Black Sea. Here he fell victim to *hubris*; he adopted Persian dress, intrigued with the Persian authorities, and alienated the allies by his outrageous and tyrannical behavior. In consequence, the allies appealed to the Athenians for protection, and Pausanias was recalled to Sparta and later executed.

Meanwhile the Athenians took over the leadership of the allies. Representatives met at Delos and agreed to form a voluntary league (the Delian League) to carry on the war against Persia under the leadership of Athens. Each member state was to provide ships or money in proportion to its means, of which an assessment was made. The representatives threw lumps of lead into the sea and swore to maintain the League until the lead swam.

Led by Cimon, their Athenian general, the fleet of the League had a series of very successful campaigns, expelling the Persian garrisons wherever they remained and finally defeating them in the great battle of the Eurymedon River on the southern coast of Asia Minor when they tried to make a comeback (ca. 467 B.C.). As the Persian danger receded, some members became less willing to contribute ships or money. Around 469 B.C. the important island of Naxos seceded from the League; the allied fleet blockaded the island and forced it back into the League on terms that made it a subject of Athens. This was the first step of the Athenians on the road to empire.



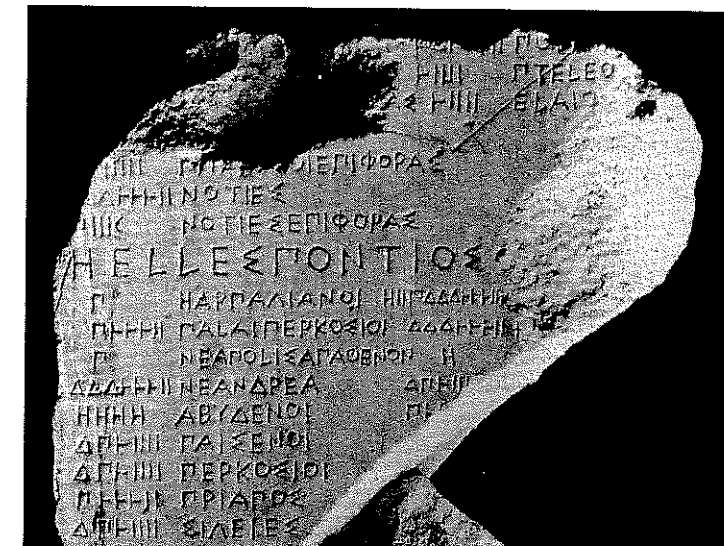
The Athenian Empire

As time went by, more and more members ceased to provide ships and contributed money instead, and soon only three large and wealthy islands (Lesbos, Chios, and Samos) were independent members contributing ships. The rest had become tributary allies, in whose internal affairs Athens began to interfere. In 454 B.C., a highly significant step was taken when the treasury of the League was transferred from Delos to Athens, ostensibly because the defeat of the Athenian expeditionary force in Egypt in 456 B.C. left the Aegean exposed to danger.

A number of inscriptions carved on stone have been found in Athens that throw much light on the development and organization of the Empire in these years. These include records of the annual tribute paid by each member from 454 B.C., when the treasury of the League was moved to Athens, until 415 B.C. We find that the Empire included nearly all the Aegean Sea and stretched from the coast of the Black Sea to the south of Asia Minor. In 449 B.C., the Athenians made peace with Persia; the purpose of the Delian League had come to an end. The following year the tribute list is very short; many mem-

bers must have refused to pay. We then find a decree that introduced measures for tightening up the collection of the tribute, and the next year's tribute list is long; recalcitrant members had been forced to pay up. At the same time, evidence accumulates of Athenian interference in the internal affairs of League members. Uniform coinage, weights, and measures are imposed by decree; democracies are installed in some cities under the supervision of Athenian officials; garrisons of Athenian troops are stationed at some danger points; settlements of Athenian citizens are made on allied territory; and judicial cases involving an Athenian and an ally are referred to Athenian courts. All such measures infringed the sovereignty of "independent" allies, who were being reduced to the status of subjects in what the Athenians now openly called their Empire (ἡ ἀρχή).

These developments were inspired by Pericles, who dominated the Athenian democracy for nearly thirty years, until his death in 429 B.C. They were largely responsible for the great war between Athens and the Peloponnesian League led by Sparta, for the Peloponnesians not only feared the ever-growing power of Athens but also condemned the "enslavement" of fellow Greeks. The final ultimatum sent by Sparta to Athens said: "The Spartans want peace; and there would be peace, if you let the Greeks be independent." Even at Athens not all approved of the Empire, despite the economic and military advantages it brought. Not even Pericles himself sought moral justification for it. In a speech to the people shortly before his death, he said: "The Empire you hold is a tyranny, which you may think it was wrong to acquire, but it is dangerous to give it up."



Athenian tribute list

This fragment records the tribute paid in 440/439 B.C. by the Hellespontine district of the Empire. In the columns below the heading (ΗΕΛΛΕΣΠΟΝΤΙΟΣ ΦΟΡΟΣ) are listed on the left the amount of tribute and on the right the name of the city concerned.

# ΜΕΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗΝ (β)



τὸ Αἰτναῖον ὄρος εἶδον ποταμούς πυρὸς πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἐκβάλλον.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

λυπέω, λυπήσω, ἐλύπησα,  
λυπήσῃς, *I grieve, vex, cause  
pain to X; passive, I am  
grieved, distressed*

πολιορκέω [= πόλις, *city* + ἔρκος,  
*wall*], πολιορκήσω, ἐπολιόρ-  
κησα, πολιορκήσῃς, *I besiege*

### Nouns

ὁ βίος, τοῦ βίου, *life*  
ἡ εἰρήνη, τῆς εἰρήνης, *peace*  
τὸ ἔτος, τοῦ ἔτους, *year*  
ὁ θάνατος, τοῦ θανάτου, *death*  
ὁ θυμός, τοῦ θυμοῦ, *spirit*  
ὁ ποταμός, τοῦ ποταμοῦ, *river*  
ἡ σπονδή, τῆς σπονδῆς, *libation*

(drink offering)

αἱ σπονδαί, τῶν σπονδῶν,  
pl., *peace treaty*

### Adjectives

ἄξιος, -α, -ον, *worthy; + gen.,  
worthy of*

### Expression

ἥκιστα γε, *least of all, not at all*  
Cf. μάλιστα γε, *certainly,  
indeed*

### Proper Names

For the proper names in this  
reading, see the Greek to En-  
glish Vocabulary at the end of  
the book.

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἄρ’ οὐ τοσαύτην συμφορὰν παθόντες τοῦ  
πολέμου ἐπαύσασθε.”

avrist

ὁ δὲ ναύτης, “ἥκιστα γε,” ἔφη· “οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐδύνατο τὸν τῶν  
Ἀθηναίων θῦμὸν καθαιρεῖν. δι’ ὀλίγου οὖν ὁ Κίμων τῷ ναυτικῷ εἰς  
Κύπρον ἡγησάμενος τοὺς Πέρσας αὐθις ἐνίκησεν, αὐτὸς δὲ πόλιν  
τινὰ πολιορκῶν ἀπέθανεν. ἡμεῖς οὖν λυπούμενοι οἴκαδε ἀπ-  
επλεύσαμεν. τῷ δὲ ἐπιγιγνομένῳ ἔτει σπονδαὶ ποιοῦνται ὑπὸ τοῦ  
δήμου πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας. τοσαῦτα οὖν εἰργασάμεθα πρὸς τοὺς  
βαρβάρους μαχόμενοι. ἀγὼν οὖν μέγιστος πρόκειται σοι, ὦ παῖ· δεῖ  
γὰρ σε ἄξιον γίνεσθαι τῶν πατέρων.”

[καθαλεῖν, *to reduce* τῷ... ἐπιγιγνομένῳ ἔτει, *the next year* πρὸς + acc., *with*  
*πρόκειται σοι, lies before you*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ γέρον,” ἔφη· “ἐὰν δὲ ἴλεως ᾖ ὁ  
θεός, ἐγὼ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς γίνεσθαι πειράσομαι, ἄξιος τῶν πατέρων.  
ἀλλὰ τί ἐποίεις σὺ ἐν τῇ εἰρήνῃ;”

[ἐὰν... ᾖ, *if... is*]

ὁ δὲ γέρων, “οὐκέτι νεανίας ἦν ἐγώ,” ἔφη, “οὐδὲ τοσαύτη ρώμη  
ἐχρώμην ὥστε ἐν τῷ ναυτικῷ ἐρέσσειν. μισθοφορῶν οὖν ἐν ὀλκάσι  
πολλαχόσε τῆς γῆς ἔπλεον. εἷς τε γὰρ τὴν Σικελίαν ἦλθον, οὐπερ τὸ  
Αἰτναῖον ὄρος εἶδον ποταμούς πυρὸς πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἐκβάλλον,  
καὶ εἰς τὴν Σκυθίαν ἔπλευσα, οὐπερ τοῦ χειμῶνος τοσαῦτά ἐστιν τὰ  
ψύχη ὥστε πήγνυσθαι καὶ τὴν θάλατταν. νῦν δὲ μάλα γεραῖος ὢν  
πλοῦς τινὰς μικροὺς ποιοῦμαι περὶ τὰς νήσους, καὶ θάνατον  
εὐκόλος προσδέχομαι.”

[ρώμη, *strength* μισθοφορῶν, *hiring myself out* οὐπερ, *where* τοῦ χειμῶνος, *in*  
*winter* τὰ ψύχη, *the frosts* πήγνυσθαι (present passive infinitive of πήγνυμι, *I make*  
*solid, make stiff*), *freezes* πλοῦς, *voyages* εὐκόλος, *contented(ly)* προσδέχομαι,  
*I await*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “πολλὰ μὲν εἶδες, ὦ γέρον,” ἔφη, “ἐν τῷ μακρῷ βίῳ,  
πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἔπαθες. οὐ γὰρ αὐτὸς ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς πορρωτέρω  
ἐπλανᾶτο ἢ σὺ.”

[πορρωτέρω, *further* ἐπλανᾶτο (from πλανᾶω, *I lead X astray, make X wander*;  
*passive, I wander*), *was used to wandering*]

ὁ δὲ γέρων πρὸς τὴν γῆν βλέψας ἀνέστη καί, “ἰδοῦ,” ἔφη, “ἤδη γὰρ  
ἡ ναῦς ἀνέμφ οὐρίῳ φερομένη τῷ λιμένι προσχωρεῖ. χαίρετε οὖν.”  
[οὐρίῳ, *favorable*]

οὕτως εἰπὼν ἀπέβη πρὸς τὴν πρῶραν, οἱ δὲ ἔμενον πάντα ἐνθῦμούμενοι ἅπερ εἶπεν.

[τὴν πρῶραν, *the bow of the ship* ἐνθῦμούμενοι, *thinking about, pondering*]

οἱ δ' ὅτε δὴ λιμένος πολυβενθέος ἐντὸς ἵκοντο,

ἰστία μὲν στείλαντο, θέσαν δ' ἐν νηὶ μελαίνῃ . . .

καρπαλίμως, τὴν δ' εἰς ὄρμον προέρεσαν ἐρετμοῖς.

[πολυβενθέος, gen. sing., *very deep* ἐντὸς + gen., *within* ἵκοντο (unaugmented aorist in Homer), *they arrived* στείλαντο (unaugmented aorist in Homer; from στέλλω, *I make ready; I send*; of sails, *I take down, furl*) they took down θέσαν (unaugmented aorist in Homer), *they put* μελαίνῃ, *black* καρπαλίμως, *quickly* τὴν, *it*, i.e., the ship ὄρμον, *anchorage* προέρεσαν ἐρετμοῖς (unaugmented aorist in Homer), *they rowed . . . forward with the oars* (The quotation is from *Iliad* 1.432, 433, and 435.)]

## WORD BUILDING

The following adjectives, verbs, and nouns are related to the word ὁ θυμός, spirit, with the prefixes ἀ-, not, εὐ-, good, and προ-, before; forth (often indicating readiness). Deduce the meaning of the following compounds:

1. ἄθυμος, -ον ἀθυμέω ἡ ἀθυμία
2. εὐθυμος, -ον εὐθυμέω ἡ εὐθυμία
3. πρόθυμος, -ον προθυμέομαι ἡ προθυμία

## GRAMMAR

### 2. Verbs with Athematic Presents and Imperfects: δύναιμι, κεῖμαι, and ἐπίσταμαι

The following common deponent verbs add personal endings directly to the stem with no thematic vowel between the stem and the ending (note that intervocalic σ remains except in the two alternative imperfect forms). The verbs δύναιμι and ἐπίσταμαι do not have aorist middle forms; their aorists will be introduced in Chapter 17 at the beginning of Book II. The verb κεῖμαι was not used in the aorist.

### Present

δύναιμι, δυνήσομαι  
Stem: δυνά-, *be able*

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δύνα-μαι		δύνα-σθαι	δυνά-μεν-ος, -η, -ον
δύνα-σαι	δύνα-σο		
δύνα-ται			
δυνά-μεθα			
δύνα-σθε	δύνα-σθε		
δύνα-νται			

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι  
Stem: κεί-, *lie*

κεῖ-μαι		κεῖ-σθαι	κεί-μεν-ος, -η, -ον
κεῖ-σαι	κεῖ-σο		
κεῖ-ται			
κεί-μεθα			
κεῖ-σθε	κεῖ-σθε		
κεῖ-νται			

ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι

Stem: ἐπίστα-, *understand, know*

ἐπίστα-μαι		ἐπίστα-σθαι	ἐπιστά-μεν-ος, -η, -ον
ἐπίστα-σαι	ἐπίστα-σο		
ἐπίστα-ται			
ἐπιστά-μεθα			
ἐπίστα-σθε	ἐπίστα-σθε		
ἐπίστα-νται			

### Imperfect Indicative

ἐ-δυνά-μην	ἐ-κεῖ-μην	ἡπιστά-μην
ἐ-δύνα-σο or ἐδύνω	ἔ-κει-σο	ἡπίστα-σο or ἡπίστω
ἐ-δύνα-το	ἔ-κει-το	ἡπίστα-το
ἐ-δυνά-μεθα	ἐ-κεῖ-μεθα	ἡπιστά-μεθα
ἐ-δύνα-σθε	ἔ-κει-σθε	ἡπίστα-σθε
ἐ-δύνα-ντο	ἔ-κει-ντο	ἡπίστα-ντο

## Exercise 16ε

Read aloud and translate:

1. ὦ ξεῖν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῆδε κείμεθα τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι. (See Chapter 14β, page 244.)
2. ἄρ' ἐπίστασθε τί οὐ δύνανται ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν οἱ σύμμαχοι;
3. ἡ γυνὴ οὐκ ἠπίστατο ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἀπέθανεν.
4. αὕτη ἡ νῆσος οὕτως ἐγγὺς (*near*) ἔκειτο τῇ ἡπείρῳ (*mainland*) ὥστε ῥᾶδις ἐκείσε διέβημεν.
5. ἐν οὐδεμίᾳ ναυμαχίᾳ ἐδύναντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῆσαι.
6. τέλος δὲ ὁ Ξέρξης ἠπίστατο ὅτι αἱ τῶν βαρβάρων νῆες ταῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐ δύνανται ἀντέχειν.
7. καίπερ ἄριστα μαχόμενοι, οὐκ ἐδύναντο οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἀμῦναι.
8. τί οὐκ ἐργάζει, ὦ νεανία, ἀλλὰ οὕτω ἄργος κείσαι; *lying down*
9. ἐπιστάμενοι ὅτι ὁ δεσπότης προσχωρεῖ, οἱ δοῦλοι, οἱ ἐν τῷ ἄργῳ ἔκειντο, ἀνέστησαν καὶ εἰργάζοντο.
10. τοῦτο ἐπίστασο, ὅτι οὐ δύνασαι τοὺς θεοὺς ἐξαπατᾶν (*to deceive*).

## Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΣΙΑΝ ΑΝΑΧΩΡΕΙ

Read the following passage (adapted from Herodotus 8.118) and answer the comprehension questions below:

After the defeat at Salamis, Xerxes accompanied his army on the retreat northwards. In Thessaly he left a large army under Mardonius to renew the attack the following year. Herodotus gives two versions of the rest of his journey home, of which this is the second.

ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὁδε ἄλλος λόγος, ὅτι, ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξέρξης ἀπελαύνων ἐξ Ἀθηνῶν ἀφίκετο εἰς Ἡΐονα, οὐκέτι κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύετο ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν στρατίαν Ὑδάρνει ἐπιτρέπει ἀπάγειν εἰς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, αὐτὸς δὲ εἰς ναῦν εἰσβὰς ἔπλει εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. πλείοντι δὲ αὐτῷ ἄνεμος μὲν μείζων ἐγίγνετο, ἡ δὲ θάλαττα ἐκύμαιεν. ἡ δὲ ναὺς πλείστους φέρουσα ἀνθρώπους τῶν Περσῶν, οἱ τῷ Ξέρξῃ ἠκολούθουν, ἐν κινδύνῳ ἦν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς μάλα φοβούμενος τὸν κυβερνήτην ἤρετο εἴ τις σωτηρίᾳ ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· “ὦ δέσποτα, οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδεμία σωτηρίᾳ, ἐὰν μὴ ἀπαλλάγωμέν τινων τῶν πολλῶν ἐπιβατῶν.”

[ἀπελαύνων, *marching away* Ἡΐονα, *Eion* (a town in Thrace) τὴν... στρατίαν, *the army* Ὑδάρνει, *to Hydarnes* ἐπιτρέπει, *entrusts* ἀπάγειν, *to lead back* τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, *the Hellespont* ἐκύμαιεν, *was becoming rough* ἠκολούθουν + dat., *were following, accompanying* τὸν κυβερνήτην, *the steers-*

man σωτηρίᾳ, *safety, salvation* ἐὰν μὴ, *unless* ἀπαλλάγωμέν (from ἀπαλλάττω) + gen., *get rid of* ἐπιβατῶν, *passengers*]

1. In this second version of the story of Xerxes' return to Asia, what did he do with his army and what did he do himself?
2. What happened during the voyage?
3. What did Xerxes ask his helmsman?
4. On what did the helmsman say their salvation depended?

καὶ Ξέρξης ταῦτα ἀκούσας εἶπεν· “ὦ ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, νῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς δηλοῦν εἰ τὸν βασιλέα φιλεῖτε· ἐν ὑμῖν γάρ, ὥς δοκεῖ, ἔστιν ἡ ἐμὴ σωτηρίᾳ.” ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν, οἱ δὲ αὐτὸν προσκυνοῦντες ἔρριψαν ἑαυτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ ἡ ναὺς ἐπικουφισθεῖσα οὕτω δὴ ἔσωσε τὸν βασιλέα εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὥς δὲ ἐξέβη εἰς τὴν γῆν, ὁ Ξέρξης ἐποίησε τοῦτο· ὅτι μὲν ἔσωσε τὸν βασιλέα, χρῦσοῦν στέφανον τῷ κυβερνήτῃ ἔδωκεν, ὅτι δὲ Περσῶν πολλοὺς διέφθειρεν ἀπέταμε τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ. [προσκυνοῦντες, *bowing down to* ἔρριψαν (from ῥίπτω), *they threw* ἐπικουφισθεῖσα (from ἐπικουφίζω), *lightened* ὅτι, *because* χρῦσοῦν στέφανον, *a golden crown* ἔδωκεν (from δίδωμι), *he gave* ἀπέταμε (from ἀποτέμνω), *he cut off*]

5. What does Xerxes say that the Persians must now show?
6. Upon whom does Xerxes say his salvation depends?
7. What two things do the Persians do?
8. What is the result of their action?
9. Why did Xerxes give his helmsman a golden crown?
10. Why did he cut off his head?

## Exercise 16ζ

Translate into Greek:

1. After the battle, Xerxes and his generals, having stayed a certain few days in Attica, set out (*use aorist active*) toward Boeotia.
2. The king ordered Mardonius (*use ὁ Μαρδόνιος*) (on the one hand) to stay in Thessaly (*use ἡ Θεσσαλία*) during the winter, and (on the other hand) at the beginning of spring (*ἄμα ἡρι ἀρχομένων*) to advance against the Peloponnesus.
3. When they arrived in Thessaly, Mardonius (on the one hand) selected (*ἐξελέξατο*) the best of his soldiers, (on the other hand) Xerxes leaving them there marched as quickly as possible to the Hellespont.
4. We cannot trust the other story that they tell about the return (*use ὁ νόστος*) of Xerxes.
5. Those who understand the truth say that retreating to Asia by land he arrived at the Hellespont within forty-five (*πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα; indeclinable*) days (*use genitive*).

## Classical Greek

## Sappho: Love's Power

The following two fragments (47 and 130, Campbell) of Sappho's poetry describe how love (Ἔρος) affected her once in the past and how it affects her again in the present. For Sappho, see pages 131 and 202. The dialect is Aeolic.

Ἔρος δ' ἐτίναξέ μοι

φρένας, ὡς ἄνεμος κατ' ὄρος δρύσιν ἐμπέτων.

[ἐτίναξε, *shook* μοι: take as possessive with φρένας φρένας, *heart* ὡς = ὡς, *as* κατ' = κατὰ + acc., *on* δρύσιν, *oak trees* ἐμπέτων = ἐμπεσών + dat., *falling on*]

Ἔρος δηδύτέ μ' ὁ λῦσιμέλης δόνει,

γλυκύπικρον ἀμάχανον ὄρπετον.

[δηδύτε = δὴ αὖτε, *again* ὁ λῦσιμέλης, *the limb-relaxing* (lit., *relaxing the limbs*, τὰ μέλη) δόνει, *shakes; excites* γλυκύπικρον, *bitter-sweet* (lit., *sweet-bitter*) ἀμάχανον = ἀμήχανον, *against whom or which one cannot fight; irresistible* ὄρπετον = ἔρπετόν, *creature*]



Temple of Athena Nike on the Acropolis  
The Athenians built this temple in 427–424 B.C.  
to commemorate their victories in the Persian Wars.

## Classical Greek

## Simonides

You have already read two epitaphs that Simonides wrote for the Athenians who died in the war against the Persians (pages 244 and 261); see also the epitaph on page 151. He wrote the following epitaph (no. IX, Campbell) for the Spartans who died at Plataea, where the Greeks defeated the Persian land army in 479 B.C. and ended Xerxes' attempt to conquer Greece.

ἄσβεστον κλέος οἶδε φίλῃ περὶ πατρίδι θέντες

κῦάνεον θανάτου ἀμφεβάλλοντο νέφος·

οὐδὲ τεθνᾶσι θανόντες, ἐπεὶ σφ' ἀρετὴ καθύπερθε

κῦδαίνουσ' ἀνάγει δώματος ἐξ Ἀΐδew.

[ἄσβεστον κλέος, *inextinguishable/imperishable glory* περὶ... θέντες, *putting X* (acc.) *around Y* (dat.), *clothing Y with X* κῦάνεον... νέφος, *the dark cloud* ἀμφεβάλλοντο, *they threw around themselves, clothed themselves in* οὐδὲ τεθνᾶσι θανόντες, *and although having died they are not dead* ἐπεὶ, *since* σφ' = σφε = αὐτούς, *them* καθύπερθε κῦδαίνουσα, *giving (them) glory (τὸ κῦδος) from (the earth) above* δώματος... Ἀΐδew, *the house of Hades (= death)*]

## New Testament Greek

## Luke 2.15–20

## The Birth of Jesus (concluded)

καὶ ἐγένετο ὡς ἀπῆλθον ἀπ' αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν οὐρανὸν οἱ ἄγγελοι, οἱ ποιμένες ἐλάλουν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, “διέλθωμεν δὴ ἕως Βηθλέεμ καὶ ἴδωμεν τὸ ρῆμα τοῦτο τὸ γεγονὸς ὃ ὁ κύριος ἐγνώρισεν ἡμῖν. καὶ ἦλθαν σπεύσαντες καὶ ἀνεῦραν τὴν τε Μαριὰμ καὶ τὸν Ἰωσήφ καὶ τὸ βρέφος κείμενον ἐν τῇ φάτνῃ· ἰδόντες δὲ ἐγνώρισαν περὶ τοῦ ρήματος τοῦ λαληθέντος αὐτοῖς περὶ τοῦ παιδίου τούτου. καὶ πάντες οἱ ἀκούσαντες ἐθαύμασαν περὶ τῶν λαληθέντων ὑπὸ τῶν ποιμένων πρὸς αὐτούς· ἡ δὲ Μαριὰμ πάντα συνετήρει τὰ ρήματα ταῦτα συμβάλλουσα ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτῆς. καὶ ὑπέστρεψαν οἱ ποιμένες δοξάζοντες καὶ αἰνοῦντες τὸν θεὸν ἐπὶ πᾶσιν οἷς ἤκουσαν καὶ εἶδον καθὼς ἐλαλήθη πρὸς αὐτούς.

[οἱ ἄγγελοι, *the angels* οἱ ποιμένες, *the shepherds* ἐλάλουν, *were saying* διέλθωμεν, *subjunctive, let us go* ἕως, *to* ἴδωμεν, *subjunctive, let us see* τὸ ρῆμα, *saying; event, happening* γεγονός, *having happened, that has happened* ὁ κύριος, *the Lord* ἐγνώρισεν, *made known* ἦλθαν... ἀνεῦραν = ἦλθον... ἀνεῦρον τὸ βρέφος, *baby, infant* τῇ φάτνῃ, *manger, feeding-trough* λαληθέντος, *that had been spoken* τοῦ παιδίου, *child, infant* συνετήρει, *was keeping, remembering* συμβάλλουσα, *thinking about, pondering* τῇ καρδίᾳ, *the heart* ὑπέστρεψαν, *turned back, returned home* δοξάζοντες, *glorifying* αἰνοῦντες, *praising* ἐπὶ πᾶσιν οἷς, *for all the things that* καθὼς, *just as* ἐλαλήθη, *they had been spoken*]

## VERB CHART: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT

Principal Parts of Verb: \_\_\_\_\_

Exercise Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## Present

<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Optative</b>	<b>Imperative</b>	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Participle</b>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>			<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>		<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>			<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>			<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>		<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>			

## Imperfect

[illegible]

For participles, fill in the nominative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter and the genitive singular masculine of participles having 3rd and 1st declension forms.

For middle voice participles, give the masculine nominative singular and the feminine and neuter endings.

## VERB CHART: FUTURE AND AORIST

First Principal Part of Verb: \_\_\_\_\_

Exercise Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## Future

<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>Optative</b>	<b>Imperative</b>	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Participle</b>
<hr/>		<hr/>		<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>		<hr/>			<hr/>
<hr/>		<hr/>			<hr/>
<hr/>		<hr/>			<hr/>
<hr/>		<hr/>			
<hr/>		<hr/>			

## Aorist

[illegible]

# SYLLABLES AND ACCENTS

A Greek word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs, e.g.: ἄν-θρω-πος.

In dividing words into syllables, single consonants go with the following vowel (note -πος in ἄν-θρω-πος above); a group of consonants that cannot stand at the beginning of a word is divided between two syllables (note how the consonants νθρ are divided in ἄν-θρω-πος above); and double consonants are divided between syllables, e.g., θά-λατ-τα.

The final syllable is called the *ultima*, the next to the last, the *penult*, and the third from the end, the *antepenult*. These terms are useful in discussing the placement of accents.

A syllable is said to be long (1) if it contains a long vowel or diphthong or (2) if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consecutive consonants or by one of the double consonants ζ, ξ, or ψ. Exceptions to these rules are the diphthongs αι and οι, which are regarded as short when they stand as the final element in a word (except in the optative mood, to be studied in Book II). Note that η and ω are long vowels, ε and ο are short vowels, and α, ι, and υ may be either long or short—when long they are marked with a macron in this book.

For the three types of accents, see Introduction, page xv. The acute accent can stand on any of the last three syllables of a word; the circumflex can stand on either of the last two syllables; and the grave can stand only on the ultima. The grave accent replaces an acute on the ultima when that word is followed immediately by another word with no intervening punctuation, except when the following word is an enclitic (see below).

The accent on finite forms of verbs is *recessive*, i.e., it is placed as far toward the beginning of the word as is allowed by the rule in d1 below. The accent on a noun, adjective, or participle is *persistent*, i.e., it remains as it is in the nominative case unless forced to change by one of the rules in d1 and d2 below. The placement of the accent in the nominative must be learned by observation, e.g.: ἄν-θρω-πος, ὁ-λί-γος, κα-λός, λῦ-ό-με-νος, λῦ-ων, and λι-πών.

## Placement of Accents

- a. On the antepenult  
Only an acute accent may stand on the antepenult, e.g.: ἄν-θρω-πος.
- b. On the penult  
If the penult is accented, it will have a circumflex if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel and if the vowel or diphthong of the final syllable is short, e.g.: οἶ-κος, οἶ-κοι. Otherwise, it will have an acute, e.g.: ἄν-θρώ-που, πό-νου.
- c. On the ultima  
If the ultima is accented, its accent will be an acute (changed to a grave as noted above) or a circumflex (by special rules, particularly in contract verbs).
- d. Shifts and changes of accent
  1. The acute cannot stand on the antepenult if the ultima is long. Therefore, ἄν-θρω-πος becomes ἄν-θρώ-που in the genitive case.
  2. Since the circumflex can stand on the accented penult only if the vowel or diphthong of the ultima is short, the circumflex on οἶ-κος changes to an acute in the genitive case (οἷ-κου).

# ENCLITICS AND PROCLITICS

Enclitics lean upon the preceding word, and the two words taken together are accented to some extent as if they were one word. Enclitics met in Book I of *Athenaze* include the short forms of the personal pronouns (μου, μοι, με; σου, σοι, σε); the indefinite pronoun and adjective τις, τι; the indefinite adverbs που, πως, ποτέ, ποθέν, and ποι; the particle γε; the conjunction τε; and the forms of εἰμί and φημί in the present indicative (except for the 2nd person singular).

- a. An acute accent on the ultima of a word preceding an enclitic does not change to a grave, and the enclitic has no accent, e.g.:

ἄγρός τις  
ἄγροί τινες.

- b. If a circumflex stands on the ultima of a word preceding an enclitic, the enclitic has no accent, e.g.:

ἄγρῳ τινῶν

- c. A word with an acute on its penult does not change its accent when followed by an enclitic, but a disyllabic enclitic will require an accent on its ultima (an acute accent if the ultima is short and a circumflex if it is long), e.g.:

πόνος τις  
ἀνθρώπου τινός  
ἀνθρώπων τινῶν

The acute on the ultima of the enclitic will, of course, change to a grave if the enclitic is followed by another word with no intervening punctuation.

- d. A word with an acute on its antepenult will need to add an acute to its ultima to support an enclitic, e.g.:

ἄνθρωπός τις  
ἄνθρωποί τινες

The enclitics need no accents.

- e. If a word has a circumflex on its penult, an acute accent is added to its ultima to support a following enclitic, e.g.:

οἶκός τις  
οἶκοί τινες

- f. If an enclitic is followed by another enclitic, the first receives an acute accent but the second does not, e.g.:

δυνατόν ἐστί σοι

If an enclitic is followed by more than one enclitic, all but the last receive acute accents, e.g.:

δυνατόν ἐστί σοί ποτε

- g. The enclitic ἐστί(ν) receives an acute accent on its penult:

1. when it stands at the beginning of its sentence or clause, e.g., ἔστι λύκος ἐκεῖ. *There's a wolf there.*
2. when it follows οὐκ, e.g., οὐκ ἔστι λύκος ἐκεῖ. *There isn't a wolf there.*
3. when it means *it is possible*, e.g., σπεῖδε, ὦ πάτερ· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἀπελαύνειν τὸν λύκον. *Hurry, father; for it's not possible to drive the wolf away.*

Note: the other enclitic forms of εἰμί retain their accents when they follow οὐκ, and the proclitic has no accent, e.g.: οὐκ εἰμὶ ἄργός. *I am not lazy.* See next page.

Proclitics

Proclitics are words of a single syllable that normally do not have accents, e.g., οὐ and εἰ. The following words are proclitic: the adverbs οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ; the definite articles ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, and αἱ; the prepositions ἐν, εἰς, ἐκ, and ἐξ; the conjunctions εἰ and ὥς; and the adverb ὥς. When followed by enclitics, they must be accented, e.g.:

εἴ τις  
οὐ τις  
Exceptions: οὐκ followed by an enclitic form of εἰμί, e.g., οὐκ εἰμὶ ἄργός. *I am not lazy.* See the previous page for οὐκ followed by ἐστί(ν). Here is how the six forms of εἰμί are accented with οὐκ:

οὐκ εἰμί                    οὐκ ἐσμέν  
οὐκ εἶ                    οὐκ ἐστέ  
οὐκ ἔστι(ν)               οὐκ εἰσί(ν)



Greek warrior attacking a Persian archer

FORMS

1. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (see page 50)

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τόν	τήν	τό	τούς	τάς	τά

2. NOUNS OF THE 1ST DECLENSION

Feminine (see pages 40–42)

Singular		Plural		Singular		Plural	
N.	ἡ κρήνη	αἱ κρήναι	ἡ ὑδρία	αἱ ὑδρίαι			
G.	τῆς κρήνης	τῶν κρηνῶν	τῆς ὑδρίας	τῶν ὑδριῶν			
D.	τῇ κρήνῃ	ταῖς κρήναις	τῇ ὑδρίᾳ	ταῖς ὑδρίαις			
A.	τὴν κρήνην	τὰς κρήνας	τὴν ὑδρίαν	τὰς ὑδρίας			
V.	ὦ κρήνη	ὦ κρήναι	ὦ ὑδρία	ὦ ὑδρίαι			
N.	ἡ μέλιττα	αἱ μέλιτται	ἡ μάχαιρα	αἱ μάχαιραι			
G.	τῆς μελίττης	τῶν μελιττῶν	τῆς μαχαίρας	τῶν μαχαιρῶν			
D.	τῇ μελίττῃ	ταῖς μελίτταις	τῇ μαχαίρᾳ	ταῖς μαχαίραις			
A.	τὴν μέλιτταν	τὰς μελίττας	τὴν μάχαιραν	τὰς μαχαίρας			
V.	ὦ μέλιττα	ὦ μέλιτται	ὦ μάχαιρα	ὦ μάχαιραι			

Masculine (see pages 47–48)

Singular		Plural		Singular		Plural	
N.	ὁ δεσπότης	οἱ δεσπότες	ὁ νεανίας	οἱ νεανίαι			
G.	τοῦ δεσπότης	τῶν δεσποτῶν	τοῦ νεανίου	τῶν νεανιῶν			
D.	τῷ δεσπότῃ	τοῖς δεσπότης	τῷ νεανίᾳ	τοῖς νεανίας			
A.	τὸν δεσπότην	τοὺς δεσπότης	τὸν νεανίαν	τοὺς νεανίας			
V.	ὦ δέσποτα*	ὦ δεσπότες	ὦ νεανία	ὦ νεανίαι			

\*Irregular accent. Normally the accent is persistent as with the noun ὁ πολίτης, vocative, ὦ πολίτα.

## 3. NOUNS OF THE 2ND DECLENSION

Masculine (see page 31)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ ἀγρός	οἱ ἀγροί
G.	τοῦ ἀγροῦ	τῶν ἀγρῶν
D.	τῷ ἀγρῷ	τοῖς ἀγροῖς
A.	τὸν ἀγρόν	τοὺς ἀγρούς
V.	ὁ ἀγρέ	ὁ ἀγροί

Neuter (see page 31)

	Singular	Plural
N.	τὸ δένδρον	τὰ δένδρα
G.	τοῦ δένδρου	τῶν δένδρων
D.	τῷ δένδρῳ	τοῖς δένδροις
A.	τὸ δένδρον	τὰ δένδρα
V.	ὁ δένδρον	ὁ δένδρα

Feminine: e.g., ἡ ὁδός (see page 48)

Contract: Masculine (see page 263):

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ νοῦς	οἱ νοῖ
G.	τοῦ νοῦ	τῶν νῶν
D.	τῷ νῷ	τοῖς νοῖς
A.	τὸν νοῦν	τοὺς νοῦς
V.	ὁ νοῦ	ὁ νοῖ

Attic Declension

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ λαγώς	οἱ λαγῶ
G.	τοῦ λαγῶ	τῶν λαγῶν
D.	τῷ λαγῷ	τοῖς λαγῶς
A.	τὸν λαγῶν/ῶ	τοὺς λαγῶς
V.	ὁ λαγῶς	ὁ λαγῶ

Contract Neuter: τὸ κανοῦν (rare; not formally presented in this course; for an example, see κανῶ, 9β:6)

## 4. NOUNS OF THE 3RD DECLENSION

Labial Stems (β, π, φ; see page 107)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ κλώψ	οἱ κλῶπες
G.	τοῦ κλωπός	τῶν κλωπῶν
D.	τῷ κλωπί	τοῖς κλωπί(ν)
A.	τὸν κλωπα	τοὺς κλωπας
V.	ὁ κλώψ	ὁ κλῶπες

Velar Stems (γ, κ, χ; see page 98)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ φύλαξ	οἱ φύλακες	ὁ αἴξ	οἱ αἴγες
G.	τοῦ φύλακος	τῶν φυλάκων	τοῦ αἰγός	τῶν αἰγῶν
D.	τῷ φύλακι	τοῖς φύλαξι(ν)	τῷ αἰγί	τοῖς αἰξί(ν)
A.	τὸν φύλακα	τοὺς φύλακας	τὸν αἶγα	τοὺς αἶγας
V.	ὁ φύλαξ	ὁ φύλακες	ὁ αἴξ	ὁ αἴγες

Dental Stems (δ, θ, τ; see page 99)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ παῖς	οἱ παῖδες	τὸ ὄνομα	τὰ ὀνόματα
G.	τοῦ παιδός	τῶν παιδῶν	τοῦ ὀνόματος	τῶν ὀνομάτων
D.	τῷ παιδί	τοῖς παισί(ν)	τῷ ὀνόματι	τοῖς ὀνόμασι(ν)
A.	τὸν παῖδα	τοὺς παῖδας	τὸ ὄνομα	τὰ ὀνόματα
V.	ὁ παῖ	ὁ παῖδες	ὁ ὄνομα	ὁ ὀνόματα

Stems in -ντ- (see page 145)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ γέρον	οἱ γέροντες
G.	τοῦ γέροντος	τῶν γερόντων
D.	τῷ γέροντι	τοῖς γέρουσι(ν)
A.	τὸν γέροντα	τοὺς γέροντας
V.	ὁ γέρον	ὁ γέροντες

Liquid Stems (λ, ρ; see page 107)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ ῥήτωρ	οἱ ῥήτορες
G.	τοῦ ῥήτορος	τῶν ῥητόρων
D.	τῷ ῥήτορι	τοῖς ῥήτορσι(ν)
A.	τὸν ῥήτορα	τοὺς ῥήτορας
V.	ὁ ῥήτωρ	ὁ ῥήτορες

Nasal Stems (ν; see pages 106–107)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ χειμών	οἱ χειμῶνες
G.	τοῦ χειμῶνος	τῶν χειμῶνων
D.	τῷ χειμῶνι	τοῖς χειμῶσι(ν)
A.	τὸν χειμῶνα	τοὺς χειμῶνας
V.	ὁ χειμών	ὁ χειμῶνες

Stems in -ρ- (see pages 124–125)

Singular

N.	ὁ ἀνὴρ	ὁ πατήρ	ἡ μήτηρ	ἡ θυγάτηρ
G.	τοῦ ἀνδρός	τοῦ πατρός	τῆς μητρός	τῆς θυγατρὸς
D.	τῷ ἀνδρί	τῷ πατρί	τῇ μητρί	τῇ θυγατρί
A.	τὸν ἄνδρα	τὸν πατέρα	τὴν μητέρα	τὴν θυγατέρα
V.	ὁ ἄνερ	ὁ πάτερ	ὁ μήτερ	ὁ θύγατερ

Plural

N.	οἱ ἄνδρες	οἱ πατέρες	αἱ μητέρες	αἱ θυγατέρες
G.	τῶν ἀνδρῶν	τῶν πατέρων	τῶν μητέρων	τῶν θυγατέρων
D.	τοῖς ἀνδράσι(ν)	τοῖς πατράσι(ν)	ταῖς μητράσι(ν)	ταῖς θυγατράσι(ν)
A.	τοὺς ἄνδρας	τοὺς πατέρας	τὰς μητέρας	τὰς θυγατέρας
V.	ὁ ἄνδρες	ὁ πατέρες	ὁ μητέρες	ὁ θυγατέρες

## Stems in -εσ- (see pages 226–227)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N.	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχη	ἡ τριήρης	αἱ τριήρεις
G.	τοῦ τεῖχους	τῶν τευχῶν	τῆς τριήρους	τῶν τριήρων
D.	τῷ τείχει	τοῖς τείχεσι(v)	τῇ τριήρει	ταῖς τριήρεσι(v)
A.	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχη	τὴν τριήρη	τὰς τριήρεις
V.	ὦ τεῖχος	ὦ τεῖχη	ὦ τριήρες	ὦ τριήρεις

## Also ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς (see page 254)

N.	ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς
G.	τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέους
D.	τῷ Θεμιστοκλεῖ
A.	τὸν Θεμιστοκλέα
V.	ὦ Θεμιστόκλεις

## Stems Ending in a Vowel (see page 145)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N.	ἡ πόλις	αἱ πόλεις	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστυ
G.	τῆς πόλεως	τῶν πόλεων	τοῦ ἄστεως	τῶν ἄστεων
D.	τῇ πόλει	ταῖς πόλεσι(v)	τῷ ἄστει	τοῖς ἄστεσι(v)
A.	τὴν πόλιν	τὰς πόλεις	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστυ
V.	ὦ πόλι	ὦ πόλεις	ὦ ἄστυ	ὦ ἄστυ

## Stems in Diphthongs or Vowels (see page 146)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ βασιλεύς	οἱ βασιλεῖς
G.	τοῦ βασιλέως	τῶν βασιλέων
D.	τῷ βασιλεῖ	τοῖς βασιλεῦσι(v)
A.	τὸν βασιλέα	τοὺς βασιλέας
V.	ὦ βασιλεῦ	ὦ βασιλεῖς

## Irregular

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N.	ἡ ναῦς	αἱ νῆες	ὁ βοῦς	οἱ βόες
G.	τῆς νεώς	τῶν νεῶν	τοῦ βοός	τῶν βοῶν
D.	τῇ νηϊ	ταῖς ναυσί(v)	τῷ βοί	τοῖς βουσί(v)
A.	τὴν ναῦν	τὰς ναῦς	τὸν βοῦν	τοὺς βοῦς
V.	ὦ ναῦ	ὦ νῆες	ὦ βοῦ	ὦ βόες

## Irregular (see page 125)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
N.	ἡ γυνή	αἱ γυναῖκες	ἡ χεῖρ	αἱ χεῖρες
G.	τῆς γυναικός	τῶν γυναικῶν	τῆς χειρός	τῶν χειρῶν
D.	τῇ γυναικί	ταῖς γυναιξί(v)	τῇ χειρί	ταῖς χερσί(v)
A.	τὴν γυναῖκα	τὰς γυναῖκας	τὴν χεῖρα	τὰς χεῖρας
V.	ὦ γύναι	ὦ γυναῖκες	ὦ χεῖρ	ὦ χεῖρες

## 5. ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF THE 1ST AND 2ND DECLENSIONS

## Adjectives (see pages 48–49)

Singular			Plural			
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
N.	καλός	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά
G.	καλοῦ	καλῆς	καλοῦ	καλῶν	καλῶν	καλῶν
D.	καλῷ	καλῇ	καλῷ	καλοῖς	καλαῖς	καλοῖς
A.	καλόν	καλήν	καλόν	καλούς	καλάς	καλά
V.	καλέ	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ῥάδιος	ῥαδίᾱ	ῥαδίον	ῥάδιοι	ῥάδιαι	ῥάδια
G.	ῥαδίου	ῥαδίᾱς	ῥαδίου	ῥαδίων	ῥαδίων	ῥαδίων
D.	ῥαδίῳ	ῥαδίῃ	ῥαδίῳ	ῥαδίοις	ῥαδίαῖς	ῥαδίοις
A.	ῥαδίον	ῥαδίᾱν	ῥαδίον	ῥαδίους	ῥαδίᾱς	ῥάδια
V.	ῥάδιε	ῥαδίᾱ	ῥαδίον	ῥάδιοι	ῥάδιαι	ῥάδια

## Present or Progressive Middle Participles (see pages 115–116 and 262)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Singular		
N.	λϋόμενος	λϋομένη	λϋόμενον
G.	λϋομένου	λϋομένης	λϋομένου
D.	λϋομένῳ	λϋομένῃ	λϋομένῳ
A.	λϋόμενον	λϋομένην	λϋόμενον
V.	λϋόμενε	λϋομένη	λϋόμενον
	Plural		
N., V.	λϋόμενοι	λϋόμεναι	λϋόμενα
G.	λϋομένων	λϋομένων	λϋομένων
D.	λϋομένοις	λϋομέναις	λϋομένοις
A.	λϋόμενους	λϋομένας	λϋόμενα

**Singular**

N.	φιλούμενος	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
G.	φιλουμένου	φιλουμένης	φιλουμένου
D.	φιλουμένῳ	φιλουμένη	φιλουμένῳ
A.	φιλούμενον	φιλουμένην	φιλούμενον
V.	φιλούμενε	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον

**Plural**

N., V.	φιλούμενοι	φιλούμεναι	φιλούμενα
G.	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων
D.	φιλουμένοις	φιλουμέναις	φιλουμένοις
A.	φιλουμένους	φιλουμένᾱς	φιλούμενα

Exempli gratia:

N.	τιμώμενος	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
----	-----------	----------	-----------

Exempli gratia:

N.	δηλούμενος	δηλουμένη	δηλούμενον
----	------------	-----------	------------

**Sigmatic 1st Aorist and Thematic 2nd Aorist Middle Participles** (see pages 199 and 180)

Exempli gratia:

N.	λῦσάμενος	λῦσαμένη	λῦσάμενον
N.	γενόμενος	γενομένη	γενόμενον

## 6. ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR DECLENSION (see page 49)

**Singular**

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
G.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
D.	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
A.	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα
V.	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
N.	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
G.	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
D.	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
A.	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
V.	none					

## 7. ADJECTIVES OF THE 3RD DECLENSION

**Adjectives with Stems in -ov-** (see pages 107–108)

**Singular****Plural**

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	σώφρων	σῶφρον	σώφρονες	σώφρονα
G.	σώφρονος	σῶφρονος	σωφρόνων	σωφρόνων
D.	σώφρονι	σῶφρονι	σώφροσι(ν)	σώφροσι(ν)
A.	σώφρονα	σῶφρον	σώφρονας	σώφρονα
V.	σῶφρον	σῶφρον	σώφρονες	σώφρονα

Irregular comparative adjectives, such as ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον (see page 235), are declined like σῶφρων, σῶφρον, but have some alternative forms that will be presented in Book II.

**Adjectives with Stems in -εσ-** (see page 227):

**M. & F.****N.**

N.	ἀληθής	ἀληθές
G.	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς
D.	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ
A.	ἀληθῇ	ἀληθές
V.	ἀληθές	ἀληθές
N.	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῇ
G.	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν
D.	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)
A.	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῇ
V.	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῇ

## 8. ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF 1ST AND 3RD DECLENSIONS

**Adjectives**

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, *all; every; whole* (see page 126).

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N., V.	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
G.	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
N., V.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
D.	πᾶσι(ν)	πᾶσαις	πᾶσι(ν)
A.	πάντας	πᾶσας	πάντα

ταχύς, ταχεία, ταχύ, *quick, swift* (see pages 227–228)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	ταχύς	ταχεία	ταχύ
G.	ταχέος	ταχείας	ταχέος
D.	ταχεῖ	ταχείᾳ	ταχεῖ
A.	ταχύν	ταχεῖαν	ταχύ
V.	ταχύ	ταχεία	ταχύ
N.	ταχείς	ταχεῖαι	ταχέα
G.	ταχέων	ταχειῶν	ταχέων
D.	ταχέσι(ν)	ταχεῖαις	ταχέσι(ν)
A.	ταχείς	ταχεῖας	ταχέα
V.	ταχείς	ταχεῖαι	ταχέα

### Present or Progressive Active Participles

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
εἰμί (see page 136):			
N., V.	ῶν	οῦσα	ὄν
G.	όντος	ούσης	όντος
D.	όντι	ούσῃ	όντι
A.	όντα	ούσαν	όν
N., V.	όντες	ούσαι	όντα
G.	όντων	ουσῶν	όντων
D.	ούσι(ν)	ούσαις	ούσι(ν)
A.	όντας	ούσας	όντα
λύω (see page 136):			
N., V.	λύων	λύουσα	λῶν
G.	λύοντος	λυούσης	λύοντος
D.	λύοντι	λυούσῃ	λύοντι
A.	λύοντα	λύουσαν	λῶν
N., V.	λύοντες	λύουσai	λύοντα
G.	λύνωντων	λυσουσῶν	λύνωντων
D.	λύουσι(ν)	λυσούσαις	λύουσι(ν)
A.	λύοντας	λυσούσας	λύοντα

φιλέω (see page 136):

N., V.	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
G.	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
D.	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
A.	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν

N., V.	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
G.	φιλοῦντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλοῦντων
D.	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
A.	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσας	φιλοῦντα

τίμᾶω (see pages 136–137):

N., V.	τίμῶν	τίμῶσα	τίμῶν
G.	τίμῶντος	τίμῶσης	τίμῶντος
D.	τίμῶντι	τίμῶσῃ	τίμῶντι
A.	τίμῶντα	τίμῶσαν	τίμῶν
N., V.	τίμῶντες	τίμῶσαι	τίμῶντα
G.	τίμῶντων	τίμῶσῶν	τίμῶντων
D.	τίμῶσι	τίμῶσαις	τίμῶσι
A.	τίμῶντας	τίμῶσας	τίμῶντα

δηλόω (see page 262; declined like φιλῶν above; we give only the nominative):

δηλῶν	δηλοῦσα	δηλοῦν
-------	---------	--------

### Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active Participles (see page 199)

N., V.	λύσας	λύσᾱσα	λῦσαν
G.	λύσαντος	λυσάσης	λύσαντος
D.	λύσαντι	λυσάσῃ	λύσαντι
A.	λύσαντα	λυσᾱσαν	λῦσαν
N., V.	λύσαντες	λυσᾱσαι	λύσαντα
G.	λυσάντων	λυσᾱσῶν	λυσάντων
D.	λυσᾱσι(ν)	λυσᾱσαις	λυσᾱσι(ν)
A.	λύσαντας	λυσᾱσας	λύσαντα

### Thematic 2nd Aorist Active Participles (see page 180)

N., V.	λιπών	λιποῦσα	λιπόν
G.	λιπόντος	λιπούσης	λιπόντος
D.	λιπόντι	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντι
A.	λιπόντα	λιποῦσαν	λιπόν
N., V.	λιπόντες	λιποῦσαι	λιπόντα
G.	λιπόντων	λιπουσῶν	λιπόντων
D.	λιποῦσι(ν)	λιπούσαις	λιποῦσι(ν)
A.	λιπόντας	λιπούσας	λιπόντα

## 9. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**Positive**                      **Comparative**                      **Superlative**

**Regular** (see pages 234–235)

1st and 2nd Declension

ἀνδρείος                      ἀνδρειότερος                      ἀνδρειότατος  
χαλεπός                      χαλεπώτερος                      χαλεπώτατος

3rd Declension

ἀληθής                      ἀληθέστερος                      ἀληθέστατος  
σώφρων                      σωφρονέστερος                      σωφρονέστατος

**Irregular** (see page 235)

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν                      ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον                      ἄριστος, -η, -ον  
κακός, -ή, -όν                      κακίων, κάκιον                      κάκιστος, -η, -ον  
καλός, -ή, -όν                      καλλίων, κάλλιον                      κάλλιστος, -η, -ον  
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα                      μείζων, μείζον                      μέγιστος, -η, -ον  
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον                      ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον                      ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον  
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ                      πλείων/πλέον, πλείον, πλέον                      πλείστος, -η, -ον

## 10. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this* (see pages 244–245)

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
G. τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τούτων	ταύτων	τούτων
D. τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A. τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that* (see page 245):

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ἐκεῖνος	ἐκεῖνη	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
G. ἐκεῖνου	ἐκεῖνης	ἐκεῖνου	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων
D. ἐκεῖνῳ	ἐκεῖνῃ	ἐκεῖνῳ	ἐκεῖνοῖς	ἐκεῖναις	ἐκεῖνοῖς
A. ἐκεῖνον	ἐκεῖνην	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκεῖνους	ἐκεῖνας	ἐκεῖνα

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this here* (see page 245):

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε	οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε
G. τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
D. τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
A. τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε

11. THE ADJECTIVE αὐτός, -ή, -ό, *-self, -selves; same* (see pages 68–69)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N. αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό	
G. αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ	
D. αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ	
A. αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό	
N. αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά	
G. αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	
D. αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς	
A. αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά	

## 12. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE (see page 108)

Singular		Plural	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. τίς	τί	τίνες	τίνα
G. τίνος	τίνος	τίνων	τίνων
D. τίνι	τίνι	τίσι(v)	τίσι(v)
A. τίνα	τί	τίνας	τίνα

## 13. THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE (see page 109)

Singular		Plural	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. τις	τι	τινές	τινά
G. τινός	τινός	τινῶν	τινῶν
D. τινί	τινί	τισί(v)	τισί(v)
A. τινά	τι	τινάς	τινά

## 14. NUMERICAL ADJECTIVES (see pages 128 and 263–264)

## Cardinals

1	εἷς, μία, ἓν	11	ἑνδεκα
2	δύο	12	δώδεκα
3	τρεις, τρία	13	τρεις (τρία) καὶ δέκα or τρεισκαίδεκα
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	14	τέτταρες (τέτταρα) καὶ δέκα
5	πέντε	15	πεντεκαίδεκα
6	ἕξ	16	ἑκκαίδεκα
7	ἐπτά	17	ἑπτακαίδεκα
8	ὀκτώ	18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα
9	ἐννέα	19	ἐννεακαίδεκα
10	δέκα	20	εἴκοσι(v)

	21	εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι(v)
	100	ἑκατόν
	1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α
	10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α

M.	F.	N.
N. εἷς	μία	ἓν
G. ενός	μιᾶς	ἐνός
D. ἐνί	μιῇ	ἐνί
A. ἓνα	μίαν	ἓν

M. F. N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
G. δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
D. δυοῖν	τρισί(v)	τρισί(v)	τέτταρσι(v)	τέτταρσι(v)
A. δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

### Ordinals

1st	πρῶτος, -η, -ον	9th	ἕνατος, -η, -ον
2nd	δεύτερος, -ᾱ, -ον	10th	δέκατος, -η, -ον
3rd	τρίτος, -η, -ον	11th	ένδέκατος, -η, -ον
4th	τέταρτος, -η, -ον	12th	δωδέκατος, -η, -ον
5th	πέμπτος, -η, -ον	20th	εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν
6th	ἕκτος, -η, -ον	100th	ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν
7th	ἑβδόμος, -η, -ον	1,000th	χίλιοστός, -ή, -όν
8th	ὀγδοός, -η, -ον	10,000th	μυριοστός, -ή, -όν

### 15. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (see pages 64–65)

1st Person Singular			1st Person Plural	
N.	ἐγώ	I	ἡμεῖς	we
G.	ἐμοῦ μου	of me	ἡμῶν	of us
D.	ἐμοί μοι	to or for me	ἡμῖν	to or for us
A.	ἐμέ με	me	ἡμᾶς	us
2nd Person Singular			2nd Person Plural	
N.	σύ	you	ὑμεῖς	you
G.	σοῦ σου	of you	ὑμῶν	of you
D.	σοί σοι	to or for you	ὑμῖν	to or for you
A.	σέ σε	you	ὑμᾶς	you

### 3rd Person

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
G. αὐτοῦ of him or it	αὐτῆς of her or it	αὐτοῦ of it
D. αὐτῷ to or for him or it	αὐτῇ to or for her or it	αὐτῷ to it
A. αὐτόν him or it	αὐτήν her or it	αὐτό it
G. αὐτῶν of them	αὐτῶν of them	αὐτῶν of them
D. αὐτοῖς to or for them	αὐταῖς to or for them	αὐτοῖς to or for them
A. αὐτούς them	αὐτάς them	αὐτά them

### 16. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (see pages 100–101)

1st Person	2nd Person
Masculine	Feminine
G. ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς
D. ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ
A. ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν
G. ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
D. ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς
A. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς
3rd Person	Feminine
Masculine	Neuter
G. ἐαυτοῦ	ἐαυτῆς
D. ἐαυτῷ	ἐαυτῇ
A. ἐαυτόν	ἐαυτήν
G. ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν
D. ἐαυτοῖς	ἐαυταῖς
A. ἐαυτούς	ἐαυτάς

### 17. THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
G. ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D. ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
A. ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλας	ἀλλήλα

### 18. POSSESSIVES (see pages 66–67)

#### Possessive Adjectives

	Singular	Plural
1st Person	ἐμός, -ή, -όν, my, mine	ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, our, ours
2nd Person	σός, -ή, -όν, your, yours	ὑμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, your, yours

**Possessive Pronouns** (used for 3rd person possessives)**Singular****Masculine** αὐτοῦ *of him, his; of it, its***Feminine** αὐτῆς *of her, her; of it, its***Neuter** αὐτοῦ *of it, its***Plural****M., F., N.** αὐτῶν *of them, their*

## 19. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

For the interrogative pronoun τίς, τί, *who? what?* see page 108. Its forms are the same as those of the interrogative adjective (see above) and are not repeated here; it always has an acute accent on the first syllable.

## 20. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

For the indefinite pronoun τις, τι, *someone; something; anyone; anything*, see page 109. This pronoun is enclitic, and it has the same forms as the indefinite adjective (see above).

## 21. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (see pages 224–225)

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ὅς	ἥ	ὃ	οἱ	αἱ	ἅ
G. οὗ	ἥς	οῦ	ῶν	ῶν	ῶν
D. ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	οῖς	αῖς	οῖς
A. ὅν	ἣν	ὃ	οὓς	ᾗς	ᾗς

## 22. FORMATION OF ADVERBS (see page 50)

Adverbs regularly have the same spelling and accent as the genitive plural of the corresponding adjective, but with the final ν changed to ς:

Adjective καλός (genitive plural, καλῶν) &gt; adverb καλῶς

Adjective σώφρων (genitive plural, σωφρόνων) &gt; adverb σωφρόνως

Adjective ἀληθής (genitive plural, ἀληθῶν) &gt; adverb ἀληθῶς

Adjective ταχύς (genitive plural, ταχέων) &gt; adverb ταχέως

## 23. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (see page 236)

For the comparative adverb the neuter singular of the comparative adjective is used, and for the superlative the neuter plural of the superlative adjective:

**Regular**

ἀνδρείως	ἀνδρειότερον	ἀνδρειότατα
χαλεπῶς	χαλεπότερον	χαλεπώτατα
ἀληθῶς	ἀληθέστερον	ἀληθέστατα
σωφρόνως	σωφρονέστερον	σωφρονέστατα

**Irregular**

εὖ	ἄμεινον	ἄριστα
κακῶς	κάκϊον	κάκιστα
πόλυ	πλέον	πλεῖστα
μᾶλα	μᾶλλον	μάλιστα

**Verbs**

## 24. VERBS WITH THEMATIC PRESENTS, SIGMATIC FUTURES, AND SIGMATIC 1ST AORISTS

λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, *I loosen, loose; middle, I ransom*

PRESENT ACTIVE (THEMATIC) (see pages 38 and 136)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
λύω		λύειν	λύων,
λύεις	λύε		λύουσα,
λύει			λύον,
λύομεν			gen., λύοντος, etc.
λύετε	λύετε		
λύουσι(ν)			

PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (THEMATIC) (see pages 77 and 115)

λύομαι		λύεσθαι	λϋόμενος, -η, -ον
λύει or λύη	λύου		
λύεται			
λϋόμεθα			
λύεσθε	λύεσθε		
λϋονται			

IMPERFECT ACTIVE (THEMATIC) (see page 214)

ἔλϋον  
ἔλϋες  
ἔλϋε(ν)  
ἐλϋόμεν  
ἐλϋετε  
ἐλϋον

## IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (THEMATIC) (see page 214)

**Indicative**

ἐλϋόμην  
ἐλϋου  
ἐλϋετο  
ἐλϋόμεθα  
ἐλϋεσθε  
ἐλϋοντο

## SIGMATIC FUTURE ACTIVE (THEMATIC) (see page 158; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 158–159)

**Indicative**

λύσω  
λύσεις  
λύσει  
λύσομεν  
λύσετε  
λύσουσι(ν)

**Infinitive**

λύσειν

**Participle**

λύσων,  
λύσουσα,  
λύσον,  
gen., λύσοντος, etc.

## SIGMATIC FUTURE MIDDLE (THEMATIC) (see page 158; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 158–159)

λύσομαι  
λύσει or λύσῃ  
λύσεται  
λύσόμεθα  
λύσεσθε  
λύσονται

λύσεσθαι λύσόμενος, -η, -ον

## SIGMATIC 1ST AORIST ACTIVE (see page 196; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 197–198)

**Indicative**

ἔλϋσα  
ἔλϋσας  
ἔλϋσε(ν)  
ἐλύσαμεν  
ἐλύσατε  
ἔλϋσαν

**Imperative**

λϋσον

λύσατε

**Infinitive**

λϋσαι

**Participle**

λύσας,  
λύσᾱσα,  
λϋσαν,  
gen., λύσαντος, etc.

## SIGMATIC 1ST AORIST MIDDLE (see page 197; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 197–198)

ἐλϋσάμην  
ἐλύσω  
ἐλύσατο

λϋσαι,

λύσσασθαι λϋσάμενος, -η, -ον

ἐλϋσάμεθα  
ἐλύσασθε  
ἐλύσαντο

λϋσασθε

## 25. VERBS WITH ATHEMATIC PRESENTS AND IMPERFECTS (see pages 276–277)

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, *I am able; I can*

## PRESENT

**Indicative**

δύναμαι  
δύνασαι  
δύναται  
δυνάμεθα  
δύνασθε  
δύνανται

**Imperative**

δύνασο  
δύνασθε

**Infinitive**

δύνασθαι

**Participle**

δυνάμενος, -η, -ον

## IMPERFECT

ἐδυνάμην  
ἐδύνασο or ἐδύνω  
ἐδύνατο  
ἐδυνάμεθα  
ἐδύνασθε  
ἐδύναντο

κείμεαι, κείσομαι, *I lie*

## PRESENT

κείμεαι  
κείσαι  
κείται  
κείμεθα  
κείσθε  
κείνται

κείσο

κείσθε

κείσθαι

κείμενος, -η, -ον

## IMPERFECT

ἐκείμεν  
ἔκεισο  
ἔκειτο  
ἐκείμεθα  
ἔκεισθε  
ἔκειντο

ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, *I understand; I know*

## PRESENT

ἐπίσταμαι  
ἐπίστασαι  
ἐπίσταται

ἐπίστασο

ἐπίστασθαι ἐπιστάμενος, -η, -ον

ἐπιστάμεθα	
ἐπίστασθε	ἐπίστασθε
ἐπίστανται	

## IMPERFECT

## Indicative

ἠπιστάμην  
ἠπίστασο or ἠπίστω  
ἠπίστατο  
ἠπιστάμεθα  
ἠπίστασθε  
ἠπίσταντο

## 26. CONTRACT VERBS

φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, *I love*

PRESENT ACTIVE (see pages 39 and 136)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
φιλῶ		φιλεῖν	φιλῶν,
φιλεῖς	φίλει		φιλοῦσα,
φιλεῖ			φιλοῦν,
φιλοῦμεν			gen., φιλοῦντος, etc.
φιλεῖτε	φιλεῖτε		
φιλοῦσι(ν)			

PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see pages 77 and 115–116)

φιλοῦμαι		φιλεῖσθαι	φιλούμενος, η, -ον
φιλεῖ or φιλῇ	φιλοῦ		
φιλεῖται			
φιλούμεθα			
φιλεῖσθε	φιλεῖσθε		
φιλοῦνται			

IMPERFECT ACTIVE (see page 214)

ἐφίλουν  
ἐφίλεις  
ἐφίλει  
ἐφιλοῦμεν  
ἐφιλεῖτε  
ἐφίλουν

IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 214)

ἐφιλοῦμην  
ἐφιλοῦ  
ἐφιλεῖτο

ἐφιλοῦμεθα  
ἐφιλείσθε  
ἐφιλοῦντο

FUTURE ACTIVE (see page 159)

φιλήσω, etc., like λύσω above

FUTURE MIDDLE (see page 159)

φιλήσομαι, etc., like λύσομαι above

AORIST ACTIVE (see page 198)

ἐφίλησα, etc., like ἔλυσα above

AORIST MIDDLE (see page 198)

ἐφιλησάμην, etc., like ἐλύσάμην above

τιμάω, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα, *I honor*

PRESENT ACTIVE (see pages 56 and 136–137)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
τιμῶ		τιμᾶν	τιμῶν,
τιμᾷς	τίμᾱ		τιμῶσα,
τιμᾷ			τιμῶν,
τιμῶμεν			gen., τιμῶντος, etc.
τιμᾶτε	τιμᾶτε		
τιμῶσι(ν)			

PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see pages 77–78 and 116)

τιμῶμαι		τιμᾶσθαι	τιμώμενος, -η, -ον
τιμᾷ	τιμῶ		
τιμᾶται			
τιμώμεθα			
τιμᾶσθε	τιμᾶσθε		
τιμῶνται			

IMPERFECT ACTIVE (see page 214)

ἐτίμων  
ἐτίμας  
ἐτίμᾱ  
ἐτιμῶμεν  
ἐτιμᾶτε  
ἐτίμων

## IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 214)

ἐτιμώμην  
ἐτιμῶ  
ἐτιμᾶτο  
ἐτιμώμεθα  
ἐτιμᾶσθε  
ἐτιμώντο

## FUTURE ACTIVE (see page 159)

τιμήσω, etc., like λύσω above

## FUTURE MIDDLE (see page 159)

τιμήσομαι, etc., like λύσομαι above

## AORIST ACTIVE (see page 198)

ἐτίμησα, etc., like ἔλυσα above

## AORIST MIDDLE (see page 198)

ἐτιμησάμην, etc., like ἐλύσάμην above

δηλώω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, *I show*

## PRESENT ACTIVE (see page 262)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δηλῶ		δηλοῦν	δηλῶν,
δηλοῖς	δήλου		δηλοῦσα,
δηλοῖ			δηλοῦν,
δηλοῦμεν			gen., δηλοῦντος, etc.
δηλοῦτε	δηλοῦτε		
δηλοῦσι(ν)			

## PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 262)

δηλοῦμαι		δηλοῦσθαι	δηλούμενος, -η, -ον
δηλοῖ	δηλοῦ		
δηλοῦται			
δηλούμεθα			
δηλοῦσθε	δηλοῦσθε		
δηλοῦνται			

## IMPERFECT ACTIVE (see page 262)

ἐδήλουν  
ἐδήλους  
ἐδήλου

ἐδηλοῦμεν  
ἐδηλοῦτε  
ἐδήλουν

## IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 262)

## Indicative

ἐδηλούμην  
ἐέδηλοῦ  
ἐδηλοῦτο  
ἐδηλούμεθα  
ἐδηλοῦσθε  
ἐδηλοῦντο

## FUTURE ACTIVE (see page 262)

δηλώσω, etc., like λύσω above

## FUTURE MIDDLE (see page 262)

δηλώσομαι, etc., like λύσομαι above

## AORIST ACTIVE (see page 262)

ἐδήλωσα, etc., like ἔλυσα above

## AORIST MIDDLE (see page 262)

ἐδηλωσάμην, etc., like ἐλύσάμην above

## 27. ASIGMATIC CONTRACT FUTURE OF VERBS IN -ίζω (see page 159)

κομίζω, <sup>κομιῶ</sup>καμῖῶ, ἐκόμισα, *I bring; I take; middle, I get for myself, acquire*

## FUTURE ACTIVE

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
κομιῶ	κομιεῖν	κομιῶν,
κομιεῖς		κομιοῦσα,
κομιεῖ		κομιοῦν,
κομιοῦμεν		gen., κομιοῦντος, etc.
κομιεῖτε		
κομιοῦσι(ν)		

## FUTURE MIDDLE

κομιοῦμαι  
κομιεῖ or κομιῇ  
κομιεῖται

κομιεῖσθαι κομιούμενος, -η, -ον

κομιούμεθα  
κομείσθε  
κομιούνται

## 28. ASIGMATIC CONTRACT FUTURE OF VERBS WITH LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS (see pages 166–167)

μένω, μενῶ, ξμεινα, intransitive, *I stay* (in one place); *I wait*; transitive, *I wait for*

### FUTURE ACTIVE

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
μενῶ	μενεῖν	μενῶν,
μενεῖς		μενοῦσα,
μενεῖ		μενοῦν,
μενοῦμεν		gen., μενούντος, etc.
μενεῖτε		
μενοῦσι(ν)		

κάμνω, καμοῦμαι, ἔκαμον, *I am sick; I am tired*

### FUTURE MIDDLE

καμοῦμαι	καμείσθαι	καμούμενος, -η, -ον
καμείσῃς		
καμκεῖται		
καμούμεθα		
καμείσθε		
καμοῦνται		

## 29. ASIGMATIC 1ST AORIST OF VERBS WITH LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS (see page 207)

αἴρω, ἄρῶ, ἦρα, *I lift*; with reflexive pronoun, *I get up*

### AORIST ACTIVE

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἦρα		ἄραι	ἄρας,
ἦρας	ἄρον		ἄρασα,
ἦρε(ν)			ἄραν,
ἦραμεν			gen., ἄραντος, etc.
ἦρατε	ἄρατε		
ἦραν			

### AORIST MIDDLE

ἠράμην	ἄραι	ἄρασθαι	ἄράμενος, -η, -ον
ἦρω			
ἦρατο			

ἠράμεθα  
ἦρασθε  
ἦραντο

ἄρασθε

## 30. THEMATIC 2ND AORISTS (see pages 177–178)

λείπω, λείπω, ἔλιπον, *I leave*

### AORIST ACTIVE

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔλιπον		λιπεῖν	λιπών,
ἔλιπες	λίπε		λιποῦσα,
ἔλιπε(ν)			λιπόν,
ἐλίπομεν			gen., λιπόντος, etc.
ἐλίπετε	λίπετε		
ἔλιπον			

γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, *I become*

### AORIST MIDDLE

ἐγενόμην		γενέσθαι	γενόμενος, -η, -ον
ἐγένου	γενοῦ		
ἐγένετο			
ἐγενόμεθα			
ἐγένεσθε	γένεσθε		
ἐγένοντο			

## 31. ATHEMATIC 2ND AORISTS (see pages 252–253)

βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην, *I step, walk, go*

### ACTIVE

ἔβην		βῆναι	βάς,
ἔβης	βῆθι		βᾶσα,
ἔβη			βάν,
ἔβημεν			gen., βάντος, etc.
ἔβητε	βῆτε		
ἔβησαν			

γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, *I come to know; I perceive; I learn*

### ACTIVE

ἔγνων		γνῶναι	γνούς,
ἔγnows	γνῶθι		γνοῦσα,
ἔγνω			γνόν,
ἔγνωμεν			gen., γνόντος, etc.
ἔγνωτε	γνῶτε		
ἔγνωσαν			

ἔστην, *I stood; I stopped*

ACTIVE

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔστην ἔστης ἔστη ἔστημεν ἔστητε ἔστησαν	στήθι    στήτε	στήναι	στάς, στάσα, σάν, gen., σάντος, etc.

32. THE IRREGULAR VERB εἰμί, *I am*

εἰμί, ἔσομαι, *I am*

PRESENT (see pages 39 and 136)

εἰμί εἶ ἐστί(ν) ἐσμέν ἐστέ εἰσί(ν)	ἴσθι    ἔστε	εἶναι	ὢν, οὔσα, ὄν, gen., ὄντος, etc.
---	--------------------------	-------	--

IMPERFECT (see page 215)

ἦ or ἦν  
ἦσθα  
ἦν  
ἦμεν  
ἦτε  
ἦσαν

FUTURE (see page 160)

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔσομαι ἔσει or ἔση ἔσται ἐσόμεθα ἔσεσθε ἔσονται	ἔσεσθαι	ἐσόμενος, -η, -ον

33. THE IRREGULAR VERB εἶμι, *I will go*

FUTURE/PRESENT (see pages 168–169)

Future	Present	Usually Present	Usually Present
Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
εἶμι εἶ εἶσι(ν) ἵμεν ἴτε ἰᾶσι(ν)	    ἴτε	ἰέναι	ιών, ιοῦσα, ιόν, gen., ιόντος, etc.

IMPERFECT (see page 215)

ἦα or ἦειν  
ἦεισθα or ἦεις  
ἦειν or ἦει  
ἦμεν  
ἦτε  
ἦσαν or ἦεσαν

# INDEX OF LANGUAGE AND GRAMMAR

This listing of topics will help you find information on language and grammar in this book.

## ACCENTS, 284–286

- accent shifting**, ἄνθρωπος, οἶκος, and σπεύδει/σπεῦδε 32–33
- accents on thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives**, 26, 189–190
- acute**, xv, 9, 32
- augmented compound verbs**, accenting of, 189, 209
- circumflex**, xiii, xv, 9, 20, 21, 32, 33, 41, 47, 49, 57, 78, 98, 126, 167, 284, 285
- contract verbs**, accents on, 57, 78, 116
- enclitics**, 285, and see **ENCLITICS**
- grave**, xv, 9
- infinitives of compound verbs retain the accent of the uncompounded infinitive**, 254
- participles of compound verbs retain the accent of the uncompounded participle**, 254
- persistent accent of nouns and adjectives**, 20–21, 32, 41, 49, 98, 99
- pitch accent**, xv, xvi
- proclitics**, 286, and see **PROCLITICS**
- recessive accent of finite verbs in the indicative and imperative**, 21, 56–57
  - irregular accent of certain singular thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives, 189–190
  - irregular accent of thematic 2nd aorist middle imperative, γενοῦ, 177–178
  - recessive accent of compound indicatives and imperatives, 254
- stress accent**, xv

## ADJECTIVES: see also “Forms,” pages 291–298

- cardinal adjectives**, 128–129, 263–264
- comparison of adjectives**: positive, comparative, and superlative, 234–235
  - comparatives declined like σώφρων, σώφρον (107–108) with some alternative forms to be presented later
  - comparatives, uses of, 236–238
    - with ἢ, *than*, 236–237
    - with genitive of comparison, 237
  - irregular comparison of adjectives, 235
  - special meanings of comparatives (= *rather/somewhat*) and superlatives (= *very*), 237–238
  - strengthened comparisons with dative of degree of difference, 237
  - superlatives, uses of, 237–238
    - with partitive genitive, 237
    - with ὥς, 237
- compound adjectives**: no separate feminine forms, 37
- declensions**
  - 1st and 2nd declension adjectives, καλός, -ή, -όν, and ῥάδιος, -ᾱ, -ον 48–49

so also:

- comparative adjectives, regular, 234–235
- middle participles, e.g., 115–116
- ordinal adjectives, 128, 263
- possessive adjectives, 66
- superlative adjectives, 234–235
- 1st and 3rd declension adjective** πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν 126
  - attributive position, 126
  - predicate position, 126
  - substantive use of, 126
  - without definite article, 126
- 1st and 3rd declension adjectives with 3rd declension stems in -υ- and -ε-**, ταχύς, ταχεία, ταχύ 227–228
- 3rd declension adjective**, σώφρων, σώφρον 107–108
- 3rd declension adjective with stem in -εσ-**, ἀληθής -ές 227
  - rules for contraction, 226
- demonstrative adjectives**, οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο; ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο; and ὅδε, ἧδε, τόδε 244–245
  - predicate position, 222, 232, 242, 245
- indefinite adjective**, τις, τι 109, 246
- intensive adjective**, αὐτός, -ή, -ό 68–69
  - intensive in predicate position, 68–69
  - meaning *same* in attributive position, 69
- intervocalic sigma in adjectives**, loss of, 227
- irregular declension**, adjectives of, μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα and πολύς, πολλή, πολύ 49
- interrogative adjective**, τίς, τί 108
- ordinal adjectives**, 128–129, 263
- possessive adjectives**, 66
- substantive use of adjectives**, 96
  - substantive use of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 126

## ADVERBS: see also “Forms,” pages 300–301

- comparison of adverbs**: positive, comparative, superlative, 236
  - comparatives, uses of, 236–238
    - with ἢ, *than*, 236–237
    - with genitive of comparison, 237
  - special meanings of comparatives (= *rather/somewhat*) and superlatives (= *very*), 237–238
  - strengthened comparisons with dative of degree of difference, 237
  - superlatives, uses of, 237–238
    - with partitive genitive, 237
    - with ὥς, 237
- formation of positive adverbs**, 50
- indefinite adverbs**, 246
  - list, 246
- interrogative adverbs**, 246
  - list, 246
- use of ὥς as an adverb**, 170, 237, 264

**AGREEMENT**

- agreement of definite articles, adjectives, and nouns, 5
- agreement of subject and verb: neuter plural subjects take singular verbs, 64

**ALPHABET**

- alphabet, xii
- digamma, 146

**ALPHA-PRIVATIVE, 206****ARTICLE: see DEFINITE ARTICLE****ASPECT**

- present participles, 115
- see **VERBS, aspect**

**ASPIRATION**

- aspiration, xii, xiii
- rough breathing, xiii
- smooth breathing, xiii

**CASES, Uses of the, 20****accusative**

- after certain prepositions, 20
- for direct object, 5, 20
- of duration of time, 128–129

**dative**

- after certain prepositions, 20, 88
- of degree of difference, 237
- of indirect object, 88
- of means or instrument, 88, 269
- of respect, 88
- of the possessor, 88
- of time when, 88, 128–129
- with certain verbs, 88
  - list of verbs that take the dative case, 88
- with comparatives and superlatives, 237

**genitive**

- after certain prepositions, 20, 147, with *ὅτι* to express the agent with a passive verb, 267, 269
- of comparison, 237
- of possession, 147
- of the whole, 147 and 237
- of time within which, 129, 147
- partitive genitive, 147
  - with superlatives, 237
- with certain verbs, 147

**nominative**

- for subject and complement, 5, 6, 20

**vocative**

- for direct address, 20

**CONJUNCTIONS**

- use of *ὅς* and *ὥστε* as conjunctions, 264

**CONSONANTS****aspirated consonants, xiv****consonant sounds, classifications of, xv****double consonants, xiv**

- ντ- lost when followed by σ and the preceding vowel lengthens, *πάντ-ς* > *πᾶς* 126, *ὄντ-σι(ν)* > *οὔσι(ν)* 135–136, *λύσαντ-ς* > *λύσας* 199

**paired consonants, xiv****sigma, intervocalic, loss of, 76, 159, 166, 226–227, 254, 276****stops**

- all stop consonants lost in word-final position, 99, 125, 126, 135
- labial stops (π, β, φ) + σ > ψ, xv, *κλώψ* 107, sigmatic future 158, sigmatic 1st aorist 197
- dental stops (τ, δ, θ) and ζ lost before σ, xv, *παῖς* 99, sigmatic future 159, sigmatic 1st aorist 197–198
- velar stops (κ, γ, χ) + σ > ξ, xv, *φύλαξ*, *αἴξ* 98, sigmatic future 158, sigmatic 1st aorist 197

**CONTRACTIONS****nouns and adjectives, 226–227, 254, 263****verbs, see VERBS, contract verbs****DECLENSIONS****1st, 2nd, and 3rd declensions, 40, 97****see NOUNS and ADJECTIVES****DEFINITE ARTICLE: see also "Forms," page 287****as case indicator, 50****at the beginning of a clause to indicate a change of subject, 58, 148****definite article, 2, 21, 50****definite article, use of the, 6**

- sometimes translated into English with a possessive adjective, 6
- sometimes used in Greek where not used in English, 6

**plus adjective to form a noun phrase, 148****plus adverb, prepositional phrase, or genitive to form a noun phrase, 148****plus neuter of an adjective to form an abstract noun, 148****plus participle to form a noun phrase = attributive use of participle, 115, 148****DIPHTHONGS, xiii, and see VOWELS**

**ENCLITICS, 285**

- accenting of, 9, 285
- accenting of more than one consecutive enclitic, 246
- forms of the verb εἰμί, 4, 26, 39, 57
- list, 285
- personal pronouns, some forms enclitic, 65
- proclitic + enclitic, accenting of, 14, 286
- τις, τι, 94, 109, 246

**ELISION, 58–59****FUNCTIONS OF WORDS IN SENTENCES**

Functions: S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, 6

**IMPERATIVES: see VERBS****INFINITIVES: see VERBS****MOVABLE v, 4****MOODS: see VERBS, moods****NOUNS: see also "Forms," pages 287–291**

- accenting of, *see* ACCENTS
- agreement, 5
- cases, 5
- declensions: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd, 40, 97
  - 1st or alpha declension nouns, feminine, forms of, ἡ κρήνη, ἡ ὑδρία, ἡ μέλιττα, and ἡ μάχαιρα 40–42
  - 1st or alpha declension nouns, masculine, forms of, ὁ δεσπότης, ὁ Ξανθιάς, ὁ πολίτης, and ὁ νεανίας 47–48
  - 2nd or omicron declension nouns, masculine and neuter, forms of, ὁ ἄγρός and τὸ δένδρον 31
  - 2nd or omicron declension nouns, feminine, ἡ ὁδός and ἡ νῆσος 48
  - 2nd or omicron declension nouns, masculine, contract, ὁ νοῦς 263
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: dental stems, ὁ παῖς and τὸ ὄνομα 99
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: labial stems, ὁ κλώψ 107
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: liquid stems, ὁ ῥήτωρ 107
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: nasal stems, ὁ χειμῶν 106–107
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: stems in -εσ-, τὸ τεῖχος and ἡ τριήρης 226–227, ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς 254
    - rules for contraction, 226
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: stems in -ντ-, ὁ γέρον 145
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: stems in -ρ-, ὁ πατήρ, ἡ μήτηρ, ἡ θυγάτηρ, and ὁ ἀνὴρ 124–125
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: velar stems, ὁ φύλαξ and ὁ αἰξ 98
  - 3rd declension nouns with stems ending in a vowel, ἡ πόλις and τὸ ἄστυ, 145
    - quantitative metathesis, 145

3rd declension nouns with stems ending in a diphthong or vowel, ὁ βασιλεύς, ἡ ναῦς, and ὁ βοῦς 146

3rd declension nouns, irregular, ἡ γυνή and ἡ χεῖρ 125

**endings, 5****gender**

grammatical gender, 4–5

natural gender, 4

intervocalic sigma in nouns, loss of, 226–227, 254

stems, 5

**NUMBERS**

*see* ADJECTIVES, cardinal adjectives, and ADJECTIVES, ordinal adjectives

**PARTICIPLES: see VERBS****POSSESSIVES**

possessive adjectives, 66

attributive and predicate positions of, 66

possessive genitives, 67

predicate position of certain possessive genitives, 67

**POSTPOSITIVES**, οὖν 2, γάρ 2, δέ 2, μέν . . . δέ 12, placement of another postpositive with μέν 22, φησί(ν) 24, τε 24, φᾶσί(ν) 84, γε 84, δὴ 84

**PREPOSITIONS**

prepositions, 19, 89

agent with passive verbs = ὑπό + gen., 267, 269

place where, place from which, place to which, 89

list, 89

**PROCLITICS, 14, 286**

accents, 14, 286

list, 286

**PRONOUNS: see also "Forms," pages 298–300**

indefinite pronoun, τις, τι 109, 246

interrogative pronoun, τίς, τί 108, 246

personal pronouns, 64–65

declensions, 65

some forms enclitic, 65

subject pronouns expressed where emphatic, 14

reflexive pronouns, 100–101

relative pronouns, 224–225

declension, 224

**PRONUNCIATION**

- practice, xviii–xix
- pronunciation of vowels, consonants, diphthongs, and digraphs, xii–xiv, xvi
- restored pronunciation, xvi

**PUNCTUATION**

- comma, dot above the line, period, question mark, xv

**QUANTITATIVE METATHESIS**, 145**QUESTIONS**

- interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs, 246
- questions, review of, 171

**RELATIVE CLAUSES**

- antecedent of relative pronoun, 225
- relative clauses, 224–225
- relative pronouns, 224–225
  - declension, 224
- rules governing gender, number, and case of relative pronouns, 225
- suffix -περ, 222, 225

**SYLLABLES**, 284**TRANSLITERATION**, xvi**VERBS**: *see also* “Forms,” pages 301–311**accents**, *see* **ACCENTS****aspect**

- aorist aspect
    - gnomic aorist, 178–179
    - imperatives, aspect of aorist, 179
    - indicatives, aspect of aorist, 178–179
    - infinitives, aspect of aorist, 179
    - ingressive aorist, 216
    - participles, aspect of aorist, 179–180
  - aspect: progressive, aorist, perfective, 155
  - imperfect or past progressive tense, aspect of, 216–217
    - attempt to do something in past time: conative imperfect, 216–217
    - beginning of an action in past time: inchoative imperfect, 216
    - continuous or incomplete action in past time, 216
  - present participles, aspect of, 115, 135
- athematic presents and imperfects**, verbs with, δύναιμαι, κεῖμαι, and ἐπίσταμαι 276–277
- augment**, 154, 155, 176, 180, 190–191, 196
  - augment of compound verbs, 209
  - irregular augment, 191, 198, 215

- syllabic augment, 190
- temporal augment, 190–191

**compound verbs**, 19

- accent of augmented compound verbs, 189, 209
- compounds of εἰμί, 160
- compounds of ἔρχομαι, 169
- elision, 59

**contract verbs**

- accenting of, 57, 78, 116, 136–137
- contract verbs in -α-, τιμάω
  - present, 56–57, 77–78
  - imperfect, 214
  - future, 159
  - aorist, 198
  - participles, active 136–137, middle 116
  - rules for contraction, 56
- contract verbs in -ε-, φιλέω
  - present, 39, 77
  - imperfect, 214
  - future, 159
  - aorist, 198
  - participles, active 136, middle 115–116
  - rules for contraction, 39
    - exception: πλέω, present 74, imperfect 214
- contract verbs in -ο-, δηλόω
  - present, 262
  - imperfect, 262
  - future, 159, 262
  - aorist, 198, 262
  - participles, active and middle, 262
  - rules for contraction, 262

**deponent verbs**, 78, 115

- list, 78

**endings**, 4, 13

- primary and secondary, 177
- secondary endings on imperfect, 213

**finite forms**, 56**imperative mood**, 15, *and see* moods, imperative**impersonal verbs**, 170

- δεῖ 10β, δοκεῖ 11α, 11β, ἔξεστι(ν) 10β
- with infinitive as subject, 170
- with accusative and infinitive as subject, 170

**indicative mood**, 13, *and see* moods, indicative**infinitives**

- definition of, 27
- accenting of
  - sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorist active, next to the last syllable,
    - κελεῦσαι 197, ἀποκτείνειν 207
  - sigmatic 1st aorist middle, λύσασθαι 197
  - thematic 2nd aorist active, circumflex on last syllable, λυπεῖν 177–178

**VERBS** (continued)

thematic 2nd aorist middle, on next to the last syllable, γενέσθαι 177–178

aspect, 179

subject of impersonal verbs, 170

**intervocalic sigma in verbs**, loss of, 76, 159, 166, 276

**intransitive**, 6, 75, 86–87

**irregular verbs**

εἰμί, 39, future 160, imperfect 215

εἶμι, 168–169, imperfect 215

**moods**

## indicative

use of, 13

accent, recessive, 56–57

aorist, 176, 190–191

aspect, aorist 178–179, imperfective 216–217

## imperative

use of, 15

accent

recessive accent, 56–57

irregular accent of certain singular thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives, 189–190

irregular accent of thematic 2nd aorist middle imperative, γενοῦ, 177–178

**negative commands**, 15

**number**: singular, plural, dual, 4

**participles**, *see also* “Forms,” pages 291–292, 294–295

accent: persistent

N.B. thematic 2nd aorist participles, λιπών, λιποῦσα, λιπόν, 177–178, 180

aspect

aorist, 179–180

present, 115, 135

attributive use of participles, 115, 148

circumstantial use of participles, 114

future participle with or without ὥς to express purpose, 170

present or progressive: active voice, 135–137

endings, 135

forms, 136–137

suffixes, -οντ-, -ουσ- 135

present or progressive: middle voice, 114–116

endings, 115

forms, 115–116

suffix, -μεν- 115

sigmatic 1st aorist: active and middle voices, 199

forms, 199

supplementary use of participles, 115

thematic 2nd aorist: active and middle voices, 180

forms, 180

**passive voice**, 75, 267, 269

**past progressive tense**, 213–215, *and see* **tenses**, imperfect or past progressive tense

**past tense**: the aorist, 176, *and see* **tenses**, aorist

**person**, 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4

**preview of new verb forms**, 154–155

**principal parts**, 155

**prohibitions**, 15

**review of verb forms**, 152–153

**stems**, 4, 155

**tenses**, present, imperfect, future, aorist, perfect, and pluperfect, 154

present tense

regular verbs, λύω 38, λύομαι 77, all forms 152

contract verbs, τιμῶ 56, τιμῶμαι 77–78, all forms 153, φιλῶ 39, φιλοῦμαι 77, all forms 152, πλέω 74, δηλῶ 262, δηλοῦμαι 262

irregular verbs, εἰμί 39, all forms 153, (εἶμι; present and future forms 169)

imperfect or past progressive tense, 213–215

regular verbs, ἔλθον and ἐλθόμεν 214

contract verbs, ἐφίλουν, ἐφιλοῦμεν, ἐτίμων, ἐτιμώμεν, and ἔπλεον 214, ἐδήλουν and ἐδηλούμεν 262

irregular verbs, from εἰμί, ἦ or ἦν, and from εἶμι, ἦα or ἦεν 215

future tense, 158–160

asigmatic contract future of verbs in -ίζω, 159

asigmatic contract future of verbs with liquid and nasal stems, μενῶ 166–167, 207

list, 167

deponent futures, 159–160

list, 159–160

with sigmatic 1st aorists, 198

future of εἰμί, 160

sigmatic future, λύσω and λύσομαι 158–159

of verbs with labial, velar, and dental stems, 158–159

sigmatic future of contract verbs, 159

aorist

asigmatic 1st aorist of verbs with liquid and nasal stems, ἦρα and ἦράμεν 207

list, 207

athematic 2nd aorists, ἔβην, ἔγνω, and ἔστην 252–253

sigmatic 1st aorist, 176, ἔλθω and ἐλθόμεν 196–198

accents, 197

of contract verbs, 198

of verbs with deponent futures, list, 198

of verbs with labial, velar, and dental stems, 197–198

irregular sigmatic 1st aorists, 208

list, 208

thematic 2nd aorist, 176, ἔλιπον and ἐγενόμεν 177–178

accents, 178

accents on thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives, 189–190

common verbs with thematic 2nd aorists, 180–181

list, 181

thematic 2nd aorists from unrelated stems, 189

list, 189

**thematic vowels**, 76, 115, 154, 155, 177, 178, 213

**VERBS** (continued)**transitive**, 6, 75, 86–87**voice**: active, middle, passive, 75–76, 155, 267, 269

active voice, middle voice, meaning of verbs in, 86–87

middle, forms of verbs in, see **tenses**, present, imperfect, future, aorist

middle voice: reflexive with accusative sense, 75, 86–87

middle voice: reflexive with dative sense, 75–76, 87

middle voice: reflexive with causative sense, 76

passive voice: 267, 269

with ὑπό + gen. for agent, 267, 269

with dative of instrument or means, 269

**VOICE**: see **VERBS**, **voice****VOWELS****alphabet**, xii**digraphs**, xiii, xiv**diphthongs**, xiii**iota subscript**, xiii, xiv**long diphthongs**, xiv**long vowel digraphs**, xiv**long vowels**, xiii**macrons**, xiii**short vowels**, xiii**WORD ORDER****attributive and predicate position**, 66

attributive position, 66

of αὐτός, -ή, -ό meaning *same*, 69

of genitive of possession, 147

of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 126

of possessive adjectives, 66

participles in attributive position, 115, 148

predicate position, 66

of αὐτός, -ή, -ό as intensive adjective, 68–69

of demonstrative adjectives, 222, 232, 242, 245

of genitive of possession of personal pronouns (αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, αὐτῶν), 147

of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 126

of possessive adjectives, 66

of certain possessive genitives, 67

**WORDS IN SENTENCES****functions**: S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, 6**WRITING GREEK LETTERS**, xvi–xviii

# GREEK TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

We do not give principal parts of contract verbs except when they are irregular.

For the principal parts of most compound verbs, see the corresponding simple verb.

We give the principal parts of other regular and irregular verbs, with their stems when their stems are different from what is seen in the present indicative form and with their aorist participles.

For compound verbs we give in brackets the prefix and the simple verb when elision or elision and assimilation take place, e.g. ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἵκνέομαι].

Note: 5β means that the vocabulary item appears in the vocabulary list in the second half of Chapter 5, i.e., in 5β. A notation such as 14 Gr 2 refers to Chapter 14, Grammar 2.

Sample principal parts of contract verbs:

φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, φιλήσᾱς

τιμάω, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα, τιμήσᾱς

δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δηλώσᾱς

**A**ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, *good* (5β and 14 Gr 2)ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον, *better* (14 Gr 2)ἄριστος, -η, -ον, *best; very good; noble* (9β and 14 Gr 2)Ἀγαμέμνων, Ἀγαμέμνωνος, ὁ, *Agamemnon* (7α)ἄγαν, adv., *very much; too much, in excess*ἀγγέλλω, [ἀγγελε-] ἀγγεῖλω, [ἄγγελι-] ἡγγεῖλα, ἀγγεῖλᾱς, *I announce; I tell* (14β)ἄγγελος, ἀγγέλου, ὁ, *messenger* (4α)ἄγε; pl., ἄγετε, *come on!* (9α)ἀγείρω, [ἀγερε-] ἀγερῶ, [ἀγειρ-] ἡγειρα, ἀγειρᾱς, *I gather*ἀγορά, ἀγορᾱς, ἡ, *agora, city center, market place* (8β)ἄγριος, -ᾱ, -ον, *savage; wild; fierce* (5β)ἀγρίως, adv., *savagely; wildly; fiercely*ἀγρός, ἀγροῦ, ὁ, *field* (1α and 3 Gr 2)  
ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς, *in the country*ἄγω, ἄξω, [ἄγαγ-] ἡγαγον, ἀγαγών, *I lead; I take* (2β)ἄγε; pl., ἄγετε, *come on!* (9α)ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ, *struggle; contest* (15β)ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ, ὦ ἄδελφε, *brother* (11α)ἀδύνατος, -ον, *impossible*ἀεί, adv., *always* (4β)ἀθάνατοι, ἀθανάτων, οἱ, *the Immortals*Ἀθήναζε, adv., *to Athens* (12β)Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ, *Athens* (6α)Ἀθήνησι, *at Athens*ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις, *in Athens* (1α)ἡ Ἀθηνᾶ, τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς, τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ, τὴν Ἀθηνᾶν, ὦ Ἀθηνᾶ, *Athena* (daughter of Zeus) (9α)Ἀθηναῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Athenian* (1α)Ἀθηναῖοι, Ἀθηναίων, οἱ, *the Athenians*Ἀθήνησι, *at Athens*Αἰγαῖος πόντος, Αἰγαίου πόντου, ὁ, *Aegean Sea*Αἰεύς, Αἰεέως, ὁ, *Aegeus* (king of Athens) (6α)Αἰγύπτιοι, Αἰγυπτίων, οἱ, *Egyptians*Αἴγυπτος, Αἰγύπτου, ἡ, *Egypt*αἶξ, αἰγός, ὁ or ἡ, *goat* (7α and 7 Gr 3α)Αἴολος, Αἰόλου, ὁ, *Aeolus*

- αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, [έλ-] εἶλον (irregular augment), ἐλών, *I take* (7α, 11β)  
 αἴρω, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ, [ἄρ-] ἦρα, ἄρᾱς, *I lift*; with reflexive pronoun, *I get up* (1β, 10β, and 12 Gr 3)  
 Αἰσχύλος, Αἰσχύλου ὁ, *Aeschylus* (15β)  
 αἰτέω, *I ask*; *I ask for* (11α)  
 αἵτιος, -α, -ον, *responsible (for); to blame* (3α)  
 Αἰτναῖον ὄρος, Αἰτναίου ὄρους, τό, *Mount Etna* (16β)  
 ἀκίνητος, -ον, *motionless, unmoved*  
 ἀκούω, ἀκούομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκούσας, *intransitive, I listen*; *transitive + gen. of person, acc. of thing, I listen to; I hear* (4α)  
 Ἀκρόπολις, Ἀκροπόλεως, ἡ, *the Acropolis (the citadel of Athens)* (8β)  
 ἄκρος, -α, -ον, *top (of)* (5α)  
 ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος, *the top of the mountain/hill* (5α)  
 ἀκτή, ἀκτῆς, ἡ, *promontory*  
 ἀληθής, ἀληθές, *true* (13β, 13 Gr 4, and 14 Gr 1)  
 ἀληθῶς, *adv., truly* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀληθέστερον, *adv., more truly* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀληθέστατα, *adv., most truly* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀληθῆ, ἀληθῶν, τὰ, *the truth* (13β)  
 ἀλλά, *conj., but* (1α)  
 ἀλλ' ἄντοπώλης, ἀλλ' ἄντοπώλου, ὁ, *sausage-seller*  
 ἀλλήλων, *of one another* (13α)  
 ἄλλος, -η, -ο, *other, another* (4β)  
 ἅμα, *adv., together, at the same time* (13β)  
 ἅμα, *prep. + dat., together with*  
 ἅμαξα, ἀμάξης, ἡ, *wagon*  
 ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον, *better* (14 Gr 2)  
 ἄμεινον, *adv., better* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀμύνω, [ἀμυνε-] ἀμυνῶ, [ἀμυν-] ἡμύνα, ἀμύνας, *active, transitive, I ward off X (acc.) from Y (dat.); middle,*

*transitive, I ward off X (acc.); I defend myself against X (acc.)* (13β)

ἀνά, *prep. + acc., up* (5α)

ἀναβαίνω, *I go up, get up; + ἐπί + acc., I climb, go up onto* (8β)

ἀναβλέπω, *I look up*

ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα, ἀναγκάσας, *I compel* (15α)

ἀνάστηθι, *stand up!*

ἀναχωρέω, *I retreat, withdraw* (14β)

ἀνδρείος, -α, -ον, *brave* (3β, and 14 Gr 1)

ἀνδρείως, *adv., bravely* (14 Gr 3)

ἀνδρείοτερον, *adv., more bravely* (14 Gr 3)

ἀνδρείοτατα, *adv., most bravely* (14 Gr 3)

ἄνεμος, ἀνέμου, ὁ, *wind* (13α)

ἀνέστην, ἀναστῆς, *I stood up* (15β)

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ, *man; husband* (4α and 8 Gr 2)

ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ, *man; human being; person* (1α and 3 Gr 3)

ἀντέχω [= ἀντι- + ἔχω], *imperfect, ἀντεῖχον (irregular augment), ἀνθέξω (irregular), [σχ-] ἀντέσχον, ἀντισχών + dat., I resist* (14β)

ἄντρον, ἄντρον, τό, *cave*

ἄξιος, -α, -ον, *worthy; + gen., worthy of* (16β)

ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν, *all; every; whole* (14β)

ἄπειμι [= ἀπο- + εἶμι], *I am away* (5α)

ἀπέκτονε (perfect of ἀποκτείνω), *he/she has killed*

ἀπελαύνω [= ἀπο- + ἐλαύνω], *I drive away*

ἀπέρχομαι [= ἀπο- + ἔρχομαι], *I go away* (6α)

ἀπό, *prep. + gen., from* (4α)

ἀπο-, *as a prefix in compound verbs, away* (4α)

ἀποβαίνω, *I go away*

ἀποθνήσκω, [θανε-] ἀποθανοῦμαι, [θαν-] ἀπέθανον, ἀποθανών, *I die* (11α)

ἀποκρίνομαι, [κρινε-] ἀπο-

κρινοῦμαι, [κριν-] ἀπεκρινάμην,

ἀποκρινάμενος, *I answer* (7β)

ἀποκτείνω, [κτενε-] ἀποκτενῶ,

[κτειν-] ἀπέκτεινα, ἀποκτείνας, *I kill* (6α, 10β)

ἀπόλλυμι [= ἀπο- + ὀλλυμι], [ὀλε-]

ἀπολῶ, ἀπόλεσα, ἀπολέσας, *I destroy; I lose*

Ἀπόλλων, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ, *Apollo*

ἀποπέμπω, *I send away*

ἀποπλέω, *I sail away*

ἀπορέω, *I am at a loss* (12α)

ἀπορίᾱ, ἀπορίᾱς, ἡ, *perplexity; difficulty; the state of being at a loss* (15α)

ἀποφεύγω, *I flee (away), escape* (5β and 10β)

ἄρα, *particle; introduces a question* (4α and 10 Gr 9)

Ἄργος, Ἄργου, ὁ, *Argus (name of a dog; cf. ἀργός, -ή, -όν, shining; swift)* (5α)

ἀργός [= ἀεργός = ἀ-, *not* + ἐργ-, *work*], -όν, *not working, idle, lazy* (2α and 4α)

ἀργύριον, ἀργυρίου, τό, *silver; money* (11β)

ἀρετή, ἀρετῆς, ἡ, *excellence; virtue; courage* (15β)

Ἀριάδνη, -ης, ἡ, *Ariadne (daughter of King Minos)* (6α)

ἀριστερά, ἀριστερᾱς, ἡ, *left hand* (9α)

ἄριστος, -η, -ον, *best; very good; noble* (9β)

ἄριστα, *adv., best* (14 Gr 3)

ἄροτος, ἀρότου, ὁ, *plowing*

ἄροτρον, ἀρότρου, τό, *plow* (2α)

ἀρόω, *I plow*

Ἀρτεμίσιον, Ἀρτεμισίου, τό, *Artemisium* (14β)

ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ, *beginning* (13β)

Ἀσίᾱ, Ἀσίας, ἡ, *Asia (i.e., Asia Minor)* (15β)

Ἀσκληπιός, Ἀσκληπιοῦ, ὁ, *Asclepius (the god of healing)* (11β)

ἄσκος, ἄσκοῦ, ὁ, *bag*

ἄστυ, ἄστεως, τό, *city* (8α and 9 Gr 3)

ἄτη, ἄτης, ἡ, *ruin*

ἀτραπός, ἀτραποῦ, ἡ, *path*

Ἀττική, Ἀττικῆς, ἡ, *Attica* (14β)

αὖθις, *adv., again* (3α)

αὐλίον, αὐλίου, τό, *sheepfold*

αὐξάνω, [αὐξε-] αὐξήσω, ηὕξησα, αὐξήσας, *I increase* (9β)

αὔριον, *adv., tomorrow* (11α)

αὐτήν, *her; it*

αὐτό, *it* (3)

αὐτόν, *him* (1β); *it* (3α)

αὐτός, -ή, -ό, *intensive adjective, -self, -selves; adjective, same; pronoun in nom., gen., dat., and acc. cases, him, her, it, them* (5β, 5 Gr 6, and 5 Gr 9)

αὐτουργός, αὐτουργοῦ, ὁ, *farmer* (1α)

ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἰκνέομαι], [ικ-] ἀφίζομαι, ἀφικόμην, ἀφικόμενος, *I arrive; + εἰς + acc., I arrive at* (6α and 10α)

Ἀχαιοί Ἀχαιῶν, οἱ, *Achaean; Greeks* (7α)

## B

βαδίζω, [βαδιε-] βαδιοῦμαι, [βαδι-] ἐβάδισα, βαδίσας, *I walk; I go* (1β)

βαίνω, [βη-] βήσομαι, ἔβην, βάς, *I step; I walk; I go* (2β, 15 Gr 1)

βάλλω, [βαλε-] βαλῶ, [βαλ-] ἔβαλον, βαλών, *I throw; I put; I pelt; I hit, strike* (7β)

βάρβαρος, βαρβάρου, ὁ, *barbarian* (13β)

βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ, *king* (6α and 9 Gr 4)

βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω,

ἐβασίλευσα, βασιλεύσας, *I rule* (6α)

βέβαιος, -α, -ον, *firm, steady* (13α)

βίος, βίου, ὁ, *life* (16β)

βλάπτω, [βλαβ-] βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, βλάψας, *I harm, hurt* (15β)

βλέπω, βλέπομαι, ἔβλεψα, βλέψας, *usually intransitive, I look; I see* (2β)

against  
participle

βοάω, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα, βοήσας, *I shout* (5α)  
 βοή, βοῆς, ἡ, *shout* (10β)  
 βοηθέω, *I come to the rescue; + dat., I come to X's aid; I come to rescue/aid X* (6α)  
 Βοιωτία, Βοιωτίας, ἡ, *Boeotia* (14β)  
 βότρυες, βοτρώων, οἱ, *grapes*  
 βούλομαι, [βουλε-] βουλήσομαι, *no aorist middle, + infin., I want; I wish* (6α)  
 βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, *ox* (2β and 9 Gr 4)  
 βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ, *slow* (13 Gr 5)  
 βραδέως, *adv., slowly* (2β)  
 Βρόμιος, Βρομίου, ὁ, *the Thunderer (a name of Dionysus)* (9β)  
 βωμός, βωμοῦ, ὁ, *altar* (8β)

Γ  
 γάρ, *postpositive conj., for* (1α)  
 γε, *postpositive enclitic; restrictive, at least; intensive, indeed* (6β)  
 γέγνε (perfect of γίνομαι), *he/she/it has become; he/she/it is*  
 γεραιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *old* (12α)  
 γέρων, γέροντος, *old* (9β and 9 Gr 2)  
 γέρων, γέροντος, ὁ, *old man* (9β and 9 Gr 2)  
 γέφυρα, γεφύρας, ἡ, *bridge*  
 γεωργέω, *I farm*  
 γῆ, γῆς, ἡ, *land; earth; ground* (4β)  
 κατὰ γῆν, *by land* (14α)  
 ποῦ γῆς; *where (in the world)?* (16α)  
 γίγας, γίγαντος, ὁ, *giant*  
 γίνομαι, [γενε-] γενήσομαι, [γεν-] ἐγενόμην, γενόμενος, *I become* (6α, 10α, 11 Gr 2, and 11 Gr 4)  
 γίγνεται, *he/she/it becomes; it happens* (6α)  
 γινώσκω, [γνω-] γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, γνούς, *I come to know; I perceive; I learn* (5β, 15 Gr 1)  
 γνῶθι, *know!*  
 γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γράψας, *I write* (14β)

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, *woman; wife* (4α and 8 Gr 3)

Δ  
 δακρύω, δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσσα, δακρύσας, *I cry, weep* (11α)  
 δέ, *postpositive particle, and, but* (1α)  
 δεῖ, *impersonal + acc. and infin., it is necessary* (10β and 10 Gr 8)  
 δεῖ ἡμᾶς παρεῖναι, *we must be there* (10β and 10 Gr 8)  
 δεινός, -ή, -όν, *terrible* (6α)  
 δεινά, *terrible things*  
 δεινῶς, *adv., terribly, frightfully*  
 δειπνέω, *I eat*  
 δεῖπνον, δείπνου, τό, *dinner* (3β); *meal*  
 δέκα, *indeclinable, ten* (8 Gr 5)  
 δέκατος, -η, -ον, *tenth* (8 Gr 5)  
 Δελφοί, Δελφῶν, οἱ, *Delphi*  
 δένδρον, δένδρου, τό, *tree* (2β and 3 Gr 2)  
 δεξιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *right (i.e., on the right hand)* (15β)  
 δεξιᾶ, δεξιᾶς, ἡ, *right hand* (9α)  
 δεσμωτήριον, δεσμωτηρίου, τό, *prison*  
 δεσπότης, δεσπότης, ὁ, ὁ δέσποτα, *master* (2β and 4 Gr 4)  
 δεῦρο, *adv., here, i.e., hither* (3α)  
 δεύτερος, -ᾶ, -ον, *second* (8 Gr 5)  
 δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δεξάμενος, *I receive* (6α)  
 δῆ, *postpositive particle; emphasizes that what is said is obvious or true, indeed, in fact* (6β)  
 δηλώω, *I show* (15β and 15 Gr 3)  
 δῆμος, δήμου, ὁ, *the people* (9β)  
 διά, *prep. + gen., through* (9α)  
 δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* (5α)  
 διαβαίνω, *I cross*  
 διαβιβάζω (aorist infin. of διαβιβάζω), *to take across, transport*  
 διακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *200* (15 Gr 5 and 16α)  
 διαλέγομαι, διαλέξομαι, δι-

ελεξάμην, διαλεξάμενος + dat., *I talk to, converse with* (8α)  
 διαφθείρω, [φθερε-] διαφθερῶ, [φθειρ-] διέφθιρα, διαφθείρας, *I destroy* (15α)  
 διέρχομαι [= δια- + ἔρχομαι], *I come through; I go through* (14β)  
 Δικαίολις, Δικαιοπόλιδος, ὁ, τῷ Δικαιοπόλιδι, τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν, ὁ Δικαιοπόλι, *Dicaeopolis* (1α)  
 δίκαιος, -ᾶ, -ον, *just*  
 δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* (5α)  
 Διονύσια, Διονυσίων, τά, *the festival of Dionysus* (4α)  
 τὰ Διονύσια ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι, *I celebrate the festival of Dionysus* (4α)  
 Διόνυσος, Διονύσου, ὁ, *Dionysus* (8α)  
 διώκω, διώξομαι, ἐδίωξα, διώξας, *I pursue, chase* (5α)  
 δοκεῖ, *impersonal, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), δόξαν, it seems (good); + dat., e.g., δοκεῖ μοι, it seems good to me; I think it best* (11α); + dat. and infin., e.g., δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς σπεύδειν, *it seems good to them to hurry, they decide to hurry* (11β)  
 ὥς δοκεῖ, *as it seems* (13β)  
 δοῦλος, δούλου, ὁ, *slave* (2α)  
 δουλόω, *I enslave*  
 δραμεῖν (aorist infin. of τρέχω), *to run*  
 δραχμή, δραχμῆς, ἡ, *drachma (a silver coin worth six obols)* (11β)  
 δύναμαι, *imperfect, ἐδυνάμην, δυνήσομαι, aorist middle not used in Attic Greek, I am able; I can* (16α and 16 Gr 2)  
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *possible* (3α)  
 δύο, *two* (7β and 8 Gr 5)  
 δώδεκα, *indeclinable, twelve* (15 Gr 5)  
 δωδέκατος, -η, -ον, *twelfth* (15 Gr 5)

Ε  
 ἐαυτοῦ: *see ἐμαντοῦ*

ἐβδομήκοντα, *indeclinable, seventy* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἔβδομος, -η, -ον, *seventh* (8 Gr 5)  
 ἔβην: *see βαίνω*  
 ἐγγυάω, *I give/hand over X as security (for a loan); I borrow (money)*  
 ἐγγύς, *adv., nearly*  
 ἐγγός, *prep. + gen., near* (13β)  
 ἐγείρω, [ἐγερε-] ἐγερῶ, [ἐγειρ-] ἡγείρα, ἐγείρας, *active, transitive, I wake X up; middle and passive, intransitive, I wake up* (8β)  
 ἔγνων: *see γινώσκω*  
 ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ or μου, *I* (2α and 5 Gr 6)  
 ἔγωγε, *strengthened form of ἐγώ, I indeed*  
 ἔδραμον: *see τρέχω*  
 ἐθέλω, [ἐθελε-] ἐθελήσω, ἐθέλῃσα, ἐθελήσας + infin., *I am willing; I wish* (4α)  
 εἰ, *conj., if; in indirect questions, whether* (11α)  
 εἰ μή, *unless*  
 εἴ πως, *if somehow, if perhaps*  
 εἴκοσι(ν), *indeclinable, twenty* (15 Gr 5)  
 εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν, *twentieth* (15 Gr 5)  
 εἴκω, εἴξω, εἴξα (no augment), εἴξας + dat., *I yield* (15α)  
 εἰκὼν, εἰκόνος, ἡ, *statue*  
 εἶλον: *see αἰρέω*  
 εἰμί [ἐσ-], *imperfect, ἦ or ἦν, ἔσομαι, I am* (1α, 4 Gr 1, 10 Gr 1, and 13 Gr 1)  
 εἶμι [εἰ-/ι], *imperfect, ἦα or ἦεν, I will go* (10 Gr 6 and 13 Gr 1)  
 εἶπον (aorist of λέγω), *I/they said; I/they told; I/they spoke*  
 εἰπέ; pl., εἴπετε, *tell!*  
 εἰπεῖν, *to say; to tell*  
 εἰπὼν, *having said, after saying, sometimes, saying; having told, after telling, sometimes, telling*  
 εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ, *peace* (16β)  
 εἰς, *prep. + acc., into; to; at* (2β); *for*  
 εἰς καιρόν, *at just the right time*  
 εἷς, μία, ἓν, *one* (7β and 8 Gr 5)



ἑσπέρᾱ, ἑσπέρᾱς, ἡ, evening (8α); the west  
 ἔστην, I stood; I stopped (15 Gr 1)  
 ἐστὶ(ν), he/she/it is (1α)  
 ἔστω, let it be so! all right!  
 ἑταῖρος, ἑταίρου, ὁ, comrade, companion (6α)  
 ἔτι, adv., still (3α)  
 ἔτοιμος, -η, -ον, ready (9β)  
 ἔτος, ἔτους, τό, year (16β)  
 εὖ, adv., well (8α and 14 Gr 3)  
 ἄμεινον, adv., better (14 Gr 3)  
 ἄριστα, adv., best (14 Gr 3)  
 εὖ γε, good! well done! (8α)  
 Εὐβοία, Εὐβοίᾱς, ἡ, Euboea (14α)  
 εὐθύς, εὐθείᾱ, εὐθύ, straight  
 εὐθύς, adv., straightway, immediately, at once (10β)  
 εὐμενῶς, adv., kindly  
 εὐρίσκω, [εὐρε-] εὐρήσω, [εὐρ-] ἦν, he/she/it was  
 ἦν, he/she/it was  
 Εὐρύλοχος, Εὐρυλόχου, ὁ, Eurylochus  
 Εὐρυμέδων ποταμός, Εὐρυμέδοντος ποταμοῦ, ὁ, the Eurymedon River  
 εὐχομαι, εὐξομαι, ἡ, εὐξάμην, εὐξάμενος, I pray; + dat., I pray to; + acc. and infin., I pray (that) (8β)  
 ἔφη, he/she said (11α)  
 ἔφασαν, they said  
 Ἐφιάλτης, Ἐφιάλτου, ὁ, Ephialtes (14β)  
 ἔχω, imperfect, εἶχον (irregular augment), ἔξω (irregular) (I will have) and [σχε-] σχήσω, (I will get), [σχ-] ἔσχον, σχόν, I have; I hold (4α); middle + gen., I hold onto  
 ἐν νῷ ἔχω, I have in mind; I intend (4α)  
 καλῶς ἔχω, I am well (11α)  
 πῶς ἔχεις; How are you? (11α)  
 ἕως, conj., until (14β)  
 Ζ  
 Ζεὺς, ὁ, τοῦ Διός, τῷ Δί, τὸν Δία, ὃ

Ζεῦ, Zeus (king of the gods) (3α and 8β)  
 ζητέω, I seek, look for (5α)  
 ζῷον, ζῶον, τό, animal

## H

ἢ, conj., or (12α)  
 ἢ . . . ἢ, conj., either . . . or (12α)  
 ἢ, with comparatives, than (14α)  
 ἡγέομαι + dat., I lead (6β)  
 ἤδη, adv., already; now (2β)  
 ἥκιστα, adv., least  
 ἥκιστα γε (the opposite of μάλιστα γε), least of all, not at all (16β)  
 ἦκω, I have come; imperfect, ἦκον, I had come; future, ἥξω, I will have come (5β)  
 ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ, sun (1β)  
 ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν, we (5β and 5 Gr 6)  
 ἡμέρᾱ, ἡμέρᾱς, ἡ, day (6α)  
 καθ' ἡμέρᾱν, every day  
 ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, our (5 Gr 8)  
 ἡμίονος, ἡμιόνου, ὁ, mule (12α)  
 ἦν, he/she/it was  
 ἡσυχάζω, ἡσυχάσω, ἡσύχασα, ἡσυχάσας, I keep quiet; I rest (13α)  
 ἡσυχος, -ον, quiet

## Θ

θάλαττα, θαλάττης, ἡ, sea (7α)  
 κατὰ θάλατταν, by sea (11β)  
 θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ, death (16β)  
 θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, θαυμάσας, intransitive, I am amazed; transitive, I wonder at; I admire (5β)  
 θαυμάσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, wonderful, marvelous  
 θεάομαι, θεάσομαι (note that because of the ε the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η), ἐθεασάμην, θεασάμενος, I see, watch, look at (8α and 10α)  
 θέατρον, θεάτρου, τό, theater  
 Θεμιστοκλῆς, Θεμιστοκλέους, ὁ, Themistocles (15α and 15 Gr 2)  
 θεός, θεοῦ, ἡ, goddess (9α)  
 θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ, god (8α)

θεράπων, θεράποντος, ὁ, attendant; servant  
 Θερμοπύλαι, Θερμοπυλῶν, αἱ, Thermopylae (14α)  
 θεωρέω, I watch; I see (4α)  
 θηρίον, θηρίου, τό, beast, wild beast  
 Θησεύς, Θησέως, ὁ, Theseus (son of King Aegeus) (6α)  
 θόρυβος, θορύβου, ὁ, uproar, commotion (15β)  
 θυγάτηρ, θυγατρὸς, ἡ, daughter (4α and 8 Gr 2)  
 θῦμός, θῦμοῦ, ὁ, spirit (16β)  
 θύρα, θύρας, ἡ, door (8α)

## I

ἰάτρεω, ἰάτρεύω, ἰάτρευσα, ἰάτρευσας, I heal  
 ἰατρός, ἱατροῦ, ὁ, doctor (11α)  
 ἰδεῖν (aorist infinitive of ὁράω), to see  
 ἰδοῦ, adv., look! (4α)  
 ἰέναι (infinitive of εἶμι, used as infinitive of ἔρχομαι), to go (7α)  
 ἱερεῖον, ἱερείου, τό, sacrificial victim (9β)  
 ἱερεύς, ἱερέως, ὁ, priest (9β)  
 ἱερόν, ἱεροῦ, τό, temple (9α)  
 ἴθι; pl., ἴτε (imperative of εἶμι, used as imperative of ἔρχομαι), go! (5α)  
 ἴθι δὴ, go on! (5α)  
 ἴλεως, acc., ἴλεων, propitious (9β)  
 ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ, horse  
 ἴσθι; pl., ἔστε (imperative of εἶμι), be!  
 ἱστία, ἱστιῶν, τά, sails (13α)  
 ἰσχυρός, -ᾱ, -όν, strong (1β)  
 Ἴωνες, Ἰόνων, οἱ, Ionians  
 Ἰωνία, Ἰωνίας, ἡ, Ionia

## K

καθεύδω [= κατα- + εὕδω], imperfect, καθεύδον or καθηύδον, καθευδήσω, no aorist in Attic Greek, I sleep (2α)  
 καθ' ἡμέρᾱν, every day  
 καθίζω [= κατα- + ἵζω], [καθι-] καθιῶ, [καθι-] ἐκάθισα, καθίσας, active, transitive, I make X sit down; I

set; I place; active, intransitive, I sit (1β); middle, intransitive, I seat myself, sit down (8β)  
 καί, adv., even; also, too (4α)  
 καί, conj., and (1α)  
 καὶ δὴ καί, and in particular; and what is more (16α)  
 καὶ . . . καί, conj., both . . . and (5β)  
 καίπερ + participle, although (12α)  
 καιρός, καιροῦ, ὁ, time; right time (4α)  
 εἰς καιρόν, just at the right time  
 καίω or κάω, κάεις, κάει, κάομεν, κάετε, κάουσι(ν), [καυ-] καύσω, ἔκαυσα, καύσας, active, transitive, I kindle, burn; middle, intransitive, I burn, am on fire (9β)  
 κακός, -ή, -όν, bad; evil (12α and 14 Gr 2)  
 κακίω, κακίον, worse (14 Gr 2)  
 κάκιστος, -η, -ον, worst (14 Gr 2)  
 κακῶς, adv., badly (14 Gr 3)  
 κάκιον, adv., worse (14 Gr 3)  
 κάκιστα, adv., worst (14 Gr 3)  
 κακόν τι, something bad  
 καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, καλέσας, I call (2α)  
 καλός, -ή, -όν, beautiful (1α, 3 Gr 2, 4 Gr 3, 4 Gr 6, and 14 Gr 2)  
 καλλίω, κάλλιον, more beautiful (14 Gr 2)  
 κάλλιστος, -η, -ον, most beautiful; very beautiful (9α and 14 Gr 2)  
 καλῶς, adv., well (10α)  
 κάλλιον, adv., better  
 κάλλιστα, adv., best  
 καλῶς ἔχω, I am well (11α)  
 κάμνω, [καμε-] καμοῦμαι, [καμ-] ἔκαμον, καμών, I am sick; I am tired (9α)  
 κατά, prep. + acc., down (5α); distributive, each; on; by (11β)  
 καθ' ἡμέρᾱν, every day  
 κατὰ γῆν, by land (14α)  
 κατὰ θάλατταν, by sea (11β)

κατ' εἰκός, *probably*  
καταβαίνω, *I come down; I go down*  
καταβάλλω, *I throw down; I drop*  
κατάκειμαι, *I lie down* (16α)  
καταλαμβάνω, *I overtake, catch* (16α)  
καταλείπω, *I leave behind, desert* (10β)  
καταπίπτω, *I fall down*  
κατάρᾳτος, -ον, *cursed*  
κατ' εἰκός, *probably*  
καττίτερος, καττιτέρου, ὁ, *tin*  
κεῖμαι, *imperfect, ἐκείμην, κείσομαι,*  
*no aorist, I lie* (16α and 16 Gr 2)  
κεῖνος = ἐκεῖνος  
κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα,  
κελεύσας + acc. and infin., *I order, tell*  
*(someone to do something)* (7α)  
κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ, *head* (10β)  
κήπος, κήπου, ὁ, *garden*  
κήρυξ, κήρυκος, ὁ, *herald* (9β)  
Κίμων, Κίμωνος, ὁ, *Cimon*  
κινδύνος, κινδύνου, ὁ, *danger* (9α)  
Κίρκη, Κίρκης, ἡ, *Circe*  
κλήρος, κλήρου, ὁ, *farm*  
Κνωσός, Κνωσοῦ, ἡ, *Knossos* (6α)  
κολάζω, κολάσω, ἐκόλασα,  
κολάσας, *I punish*  
κομίζω, [κομιε-] κομιῶ, [κομι-]  
ἐκόμισα, κομίσας, *I bring; I take* (11α)  
κόπτω, [κοπ-] κόψω, ἔκοψα, κόψας, *I*  
*strike; I knock on (a door)* (11α) *mod.*  
κόρη, κόρης, ἡ, *girl*  
Κόρινθος, Κορίνθου, ἡ, *Corinth*  
(14α) *beatone's breast*  
κόσμος, κόσμου, ὁ, *good order* (15β)  
κόσμος, *in order* (15β)  
κρήνη, κρήνης, ἡ, *spring* (4α and 4  
Gr 3)  
Κρήτη, Κρήτης, ἡ, *Crete* (6α)  
κυβερνήτης, κυβερνήτου, ὁ,  
*steersman*  
Κύκλωψ, Κύκλωπος, ὁ, *Cyclops* (one-  
eyed monster) (7β)  
κύμα, κύματος, τό, *wave* (13β)  
κύμαίνω, [κύμανε-] κύμανῶ, [κύμην-]  
ἐκύμνηνα, κύμηνᾱς, *I am rough* (of the  
sea)

Κύπρος, Κύπρου, ἡ, *Cyprus*  
Κυρήνη, Κυρήνης, ἡ, *Cyrene*  
κύων, κυνός, ὁ or ἡ, *dog* (5α)  
κωμάζω, κωμάσω, ἐκώμασα,  
κωμάσας, *I revel*  
Λ  
λαβύρινθος, λαβυρίνθου, ὁ,  
*labyrinth*  
λαγώς, ὁ, acc., τὸν λαγών, *hare* (5α)  
Λακεδαιμόνιοι, Λακεδαιμονίων,  
οἱ, *the Lacedaemonians, Spartans*  
(14α)  
λαμβάνω, [ληβ-] λήψομαι, [λαβ-]  
ἐλάβον, λαβών, *I take* (2β); middle  
+ gen., *I seize, take hold of* (11α)  
λαμπρός, -ᾱ, -όν, *bright; brilliant*  
(13α)  
λαμπρῶς, adv., *brightly; brilliantly*  
λέγω, λέξω or [ἐρε-] ἐρῶ, ἔλεξα,  
λέξας or [ἐπ-] εἶπον (irregular aug-  
ment), εἰπών (augment retained), *I say;*  
*I tell; I speak* (1α, 11β)  
λείπω, λείψω, [λιπ-] ἔλιπον, [λιπών], *I*  
*leave* (3β, 11α, 11 Gr 2, and 11 Gr 4)  
λέον, λέοντος, ὁ, *lion*  
Λεωνίδης, Λεωνίδου, ὁ, *Leonidas*  
(14α)  
λίθινος, -η, -ον, *of stone, made of*  
*stone*  
λίθος, λίθου, ὁ, *stone* (3α)  
λιμήν, λιμένος, ὁ, *harbor* (12α)  
λίμος, λιμοῦ, ὁ, *hunger*  
λίνον, λίνου, τό, *thread*  
λόγος, λόγου, ὁ, *word; story* (11α);  
*reason*  
λύκος, λύκου, ὁ, *wolf* (5α)  
λυπέω, *I grieve, vex, cause pain to X;*  
*passive, I am grieved, distressed* (16β)  
λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λύσας, *I loosen,*  
*loose* (3β, 4 Gr 1, 6 Gr 3, 9 Gr 1, 10 Gr 1,  
12 Gr 1, 12 Gr 2, and 13 Gr 1)  
λῶμαι, *I ransom* (6 Gr 2c, 6 Gr 3, 8  
Gr 1, 10 Gr 1, 12 Gr 1, 12 Gr 2, and  
13 Gr 1)

## M

μακρός, -ᾱ, -όν, *long; large* (1α)  
μάλα, adv., *very* (4α and 14 Gr 3)  
μᾶλλον, adv., *more; rather* (14 Gr 3)  
μᾶλλον ἢ, *rather than* (14 Gr 3)  
μάλιστα, adv., *most, most of all; very*  
*much; especially* (4β and 14 Gr 3)  
μάλιστα γε, *certainly, indeed*  
(12β)  
μανθάνω, [μαθε-] μαθήσομαι, [μαθ-]  
ἔμαθον, μαθών, *I learn; I understand*  
(11α)  
μάχαιρα, μαχαίρας, ἡ, *knife* (4 Gr 3)  
μάχη, μάχης, ἡ, *fight; battle* (13β)  
μάχομαι, [μαχε-] μαχοῦμαι,  
ἐμαχεσάμην, μαχεσάμενος, *I fight*  
(6β); + dat., *I fight against*  
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *big, large; great*  
(3α, 4 Gr 6, and 14 Gr 2)  
μέγα, adv., *greatly; loudly* (12β)  
μεῖζων, μεῖζον, *bigger, larger;*  
*greater* (14 Gr 2)  
μέγιστος, -η, -ον, *biggest, largest;*  
*greatest* (7α and 14 Gr 2)  
μεθύω, *only present and imperfect, I am*  
*drunk*  
μεῖζων, μεῖζον, *bigger, larger; greater*  
(14 Gr 2)  
μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν, *black*  
μελέτη, μελέτης, ἡ, *practice*  
μέλιττα, μελίττης, ἡ, *bee* (4 Gr 3)  
Μέλιττα, Μελίττης, ἡ, [= bee],  
*Melissa* (daughter of Dicaeopolis and  
Myrrhine) (4α)  
μέλλω, [μελλε-] μελλήσω,  
ἐμέλλησα, μελλήσας + infin., *I am*  
*about (to); I am destined (to); I intend*  
*(to)* (7β)  
Μέμφις, Μέμφεως or Μέμφιδος or  
Μέμφιος, ἡ, *Memphis* (16α)  
μέν ... δέ ..., *postpositive particles,*  
*on the one hand ... and on the other*  
*hand ... or on the one hand ... but on*  
*the other hand* (2α)  
μένω, [μενε-] μενῶ, [μειν-] μέμιναι,

μείνω, *intransitive, I stay* (in one place);  
*I wait; transitive, I wait for* (3α, 10β,  
and 10 Gr 5)  
μέρος, μέρος, τό, *part* (15β)  
μέσος, -η, -ον, *middle* (of) (9β)  
ἐν μέσῳ + gen., *between* (14α)  
μετά, prep. + gen., *with* (6α); + acc., of  
time or place, *after* (6α)  
μέτρον, μέτρου, τό, *measure; due*  
*measure, proportion*  
μή, adv., *not; + imperative, don't ...!* (2α)  
εἰ μή, *unless*  
μηδεῖς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, *used instead*  
*of οὐδεῖς with imperatives and*  
*infinitives, no one, nothing; no* (13β)  
μηκέτι, adv., + imperative, *don't ... any*  
*longer!* (3β); + infin., *no longer* (15α)  
μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ, *mother* (4α and 8  
Gr 2)  
μικρός, -ᾱ, -όν, *small* (1α)  
Μίνως, Μίνω, ὁ, *Minos* (king of Crete)  
(6α)  
Μινώταυρος, Μινωταύρου, ὁ, *Mino-*  
*taur* (6α)  
μισθός, μισθοῦ, ὁ, *reward; pay* (11β)  
μνημεῖον, μνημείου, τό, *monument*  
μόλις, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely; re-*  
*luctantly* (4α)  
μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone; only* (15α)  
μόνον, adv., *only* (15α)  
οὐ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καί, *not*  
*only ... but also* (15α)  
μόσχος, μόσχου, ὁ, *calf*  
μοχλός, μοχλοῦ, ὁ, *stake*  
μῦθος, μύθου, ὁ, *story* (5β)  
Μυκαλή, Μυκαλῆς, ἡ, *Mycalē*  
μῦριοι, -αι, -α, *10,000* (15 Gr 5)  
μῦριοι, -αι, -α, *numberless, countless*  
(15 Gr 5)  
μῦριοστός, -ή, -όν, *ten thou-*  
*sandth* (15 Gr 5)  
Μυρρίνη, Μυρρίνης, ἡ [= myrtle],  
*Myrrhine* (wife of Dicaeopolis) (4α)

μυχός, μυχοῦ, ὁ, *far corner*

## N

ναύαρχος, ναυάρχου, ὁ, *admiral* (15α)

ναύκληρος, ναυκλήρου, ὁ, *ship's captain* (12β)

ναυμαχέω, *I fight by sea* (15β)

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ, *ship* (6α and 9 Gr 4)

ναύτης, ναύτου, ὁ, *sailor* (12β)

ναυτικόν, ναυτικοῦ, τό, *fleet* (13β)

νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ, *young man* (4 Gr 4 and 8β)

Νεῖλος, Νείλου, ὁ, *Nile*

νεκρός, νεκροῦ, ὁ, *corpse* (15β)

νήσος, νήσου, ἡ, *island* (4 Gr 5 and 6α)

νικάω, *I defeat; I win* (10α)

νίκη, νίκης, ἡ, *victory* (15β)

Νίκη, Νίκης, ἡ, *Nike* (the goddess of victory) (9α)

νοσέω, *I am sick, ill* (11β)

νοστέω, *I return home*

νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ, *mind* (15α and 15 Gr 4)  
ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have in mind; I intend* (4α)

νόμφη, νύμφης, ἡ, *nymph*

νῦν, adv., *now* (5β)

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night* (6α)

## Ξ

Ξανθίας, Ξανθίου, ὁ, *Xanthias* (2α and 4 Gr 4)

ξένος, ξένου, ὁ, *foreigner; stranger* (7β)

ξεῖνος = ξένος

Ξέρξης, Ξέρξου, ὁ, *Xerxes* (14α)

ξίφος, ξίφους, τό, *sword*

## Ο

ὁ, ἡ, τό, *the* (4 Gr 8)

ὁ δέ, *and he*

ὀβολός, ὀβολοῦ, ὁ, *obol* (a coin of slight worth) (11β)

ὀγδοήκοντα, indeclinable, *eighty* (15 Gr 5)

ὀγδοός, -η, -ον, *eighth* (8 Gr 5)

ὅδε, ἧδε (note the accent), τόδε, *this here; pl., these here* (14β and 14 Gr 5)

ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ, *road; way; journey* (4β and 4 Gr 5)

Ὀδυσσεύς, Ὀδυσσέως, ὁ, *Odysseus* (7α)

οἴκαδε, adv., *homeward, to home* (4β)

οἰκέω, *I live; I dwell* (1α)

οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ, *house; home; dwelling* (5α)

οἶκος, οἴκου, ὁ, *house; home; dwelling* (1α and 3 Gr 3)

κατ' οἶκον, *at home* (16α)

οἴκοι, note the accent, adv., *at home* (8α)

οἶμοι, note the accent, interjection, *alas!* (11β)

οἶνος, οἴνου, ὁ, *wine* (7β)

ὀκνέω, *I shirk*

ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, 800 (15 Gr 5)

ὀκτώ, indeclinable, *eight* (8 Gr 5)

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *small; pl., few* (14α and 14 Gr 2)

ἐλάττων, ἑλαττον, *smaller; pl., fewer* (14 Gr 2)

ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον, *smallest; pl., fewest* (14 Gr 2)

ὀλκάς, ὀλκάδος, ἡ, *merchant ship*

Ὀλύμπιοι, Ὀλυμπίων, οἱ, *the Olympian gods*

ὄμιλος, ὀμίλου, ὁ, *crowd* (12α)

ὅμως, conj., *nevertheless* (8α)

ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό, *name* (7α and 7 Gr 3)

ὀπισθεν, adv. or prep. + gen., *behind*  
ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν, *from the rear*

ὀπλίτης, ὀπλίτου, ὁ, *hoplite* (heavily-armed foot soldier) (14α)

ὅπου, adv., *where* (14β)

ὀράω, imperfect, ἑώρων (double augment), [ὀπ-] ὄψομαι, [ιδ-] εἶδον (irregular augment), ἰδών, *I see* (5α, 11β)

ὀργίζομαι, [ὀργιε-] ὀργιοῦμαι, *no aorist middle, I grow angry; I am an-*

*gry; + dat., I grow angry at; I am angry at*

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν, *straight; right, correct* (12α)

ὀρμάω, active, transitive, *I set X in motion; active, intransitive, I start; I rush; middle, intransitive, I set myself in motion; I start; I rush; I hasten* (7β)

ὄρος, ὄρους, τό, *mountain; hill* (5α)

ὅς, ἡ, ὅ, relative pronoun, *who, whose, whom, which, that* (13β and 13 Gr 3)

ὥστερ, ἥπερ (note the accent),

ὅπερ, relative pronoun, emphatic forms, *who, whose, whom, which, that* (13β)

ὅτε, adv., *when* (13β)

ὅτι, conj., *that* (5β)

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, οὐχί, adv., *not* (1α)

οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not only . . . but also* (15α)

οὐδαμοῦ, adv., *nowhere* (16α)

οὐδαμῶς, adv., *in no way, no* (6β)

οὐδέ, conj., *and . . . not; nor; not even* (5α)

οὐδεῖς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, pronoun, *no one; nothing*; adjective, *no* (7α and 8 Gr 5)

οὐδέν, *nothing, no*

οὐκέτι, adv., *no longer* (3α)

οὖν, a connecting adverb, postpositive, *so* (i.e., because of this); *then* (i.e., after this) (1α)

οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ, *sky, heaven* (9β)

οὔτε . . . οὔτε, note the accent, conj., *neither . . . nor* (5α)

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this; pl., these* (14α and 14 Gr 5)

οὕτως, adv., *before consonants,*

οὕτω, *so, thus* (2α)

ὀφθαλμός, ὀφθαλμοῦ, ὁ, *eye* (7β)

ὀψέ, adv., *late; too late*

## Π

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ or ἡ, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child* (3β and 7 Gr 3b)

πανήγυρις, πανηγύρεως, ἡ, *festival*

πάντα, *everything*

πανταχόσε, adv., *in all directions*

πανταχοῦ, adv., *everywhere* (15β)

πάππας, πάππου, ὁ, ὁ πάππα, *papa* (6α)

πάππος, πάππου, ὁ, *grandfather* (5α)

παρά, prep. + acc., *of persons only, to* (11α); *along, past*

πάρα = πάρεστι(ν), *is near at hand*

παραγίγνομαι, *I arrive* (14β)

παραπλέω, *I sail by; I sail past; I sail along*

παρασκευάζω, *I prepare* (7α)

πάρειμι [= παρα- + εἰμί], *I am present; I am here; I am there* (2α); + dat., *I am present at*

παρέχω [= παρα- + ἔχω], imperfect,

παρεῖχον (irregular augment),

παρασχήσω (irregular), [σχ-]

παρέσχον, imperative, *παράσχε, participle, παρασχών, I hand over; I supply; I provide* (6β)

παρθένος, παρθένον, *virgin, chaste*

παρθένος, παρθένου, ἡ, *maiden, girl* (6α)

Παρθένος, Παρθένου, ἡ, *the Maiden* (= the goddess Athena) (9α)

Παρθενών, Παρθενῶνος, ὁ, *the Parthenon* (the temple of Athena on the Acropolis in Athens) (8β)

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, *all; every; whole* (7β and 8 Gr 4)

πάσχω, [πενθ-] πείσομαι, [παθ-]

ἔπαθον, παθών, *I suffer; I experience* (5β and 11α)

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ, *father* (3β and 8 Gr 2)

πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ, *fatherland* (15β)

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, παύσας, active, transitive, *I stop X; middle, intransitive + participle, I stop doing X; + gen., I cease from* (7β)

παῦε, *stop!* (7β)

πεζός, -ή, -όν, *on foot* (15β)

πειθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πείσῃς, *I persuade* (4β)  
 πείθομαι, πείσομαι + dat., *I obey* (6α)  
 Πειραιεύς, Πειραιῶς, ὁ, τῷ Πειραιεῖ, τὸν Πειραιᾶ, *the Piraeus* (the port of Athens) (11β)  
 πειράω, πειράσω (note that because of the ρ the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η), ἐπειράσα, πειράσῃς, active or middle, *I try, attempt* (15β)  
 Πελοπόννησος, Πελοποννήσου, ἡ, *the Peloponnesus* (14β)  
 πέμπτος, -η, -ον, *fifth* (8 Gr 5)  
 πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, πέμψῃς, *I send* (6α)  
 πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *500* (15 Gr 5)  
 πέντε, indeclinable, *five* (8 Gr 5)  
 πενήκοντα, indeclinable, *fifty* (15 Gr 5)  
 πέπλος, πέπλου, ὁ, *robe; cloth* (15β)  
 περί, prep. + gen., *about, concerning* (7α); + acc., *around* (7α)  
 Πέρσαι, Περσῶν, οἱ, *the Persians* (14α)  
 Περσικός, -ή, -όν, *Persian* (15β)  
 πεσεῖν (aorist infinitive of πίπτω), *to fall* (irregular), πεσών, *I fall* (3α)  
 πίνω, [πι-] πῖομαι, [πι-] ἔπιον, πινών, *I drink* (9α)  
 πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι (irregular), ἔπεσον (irregular), πεσών, *I fall* (3α)  
 πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα, πιστεύσῃς + dat., *I trust, am confident (in); I believe; + ὡς or infin., I believe (that)* (15β)  
 πλείστος, -η, -ον, *most; very great; pl., very many* (12β and 14 Gr 2)  
 πλείστα, adv., *most* (14 Gr 3)  
 πλείων/πλέων, alternative forms for either masculine or feminine, *πλέον*, neuter, *more* (12β)  
 πλέον, adv., *more* (14 Gr 3)  
 πλέω, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι, [πλευ-] ἔπλευσα, πλεύσῃς, *I sail* (6α and 6 Gr 1)

πλήθος, πλήθους, τό, *number, multitude* (14α)  
 πληρώω, *I fill*  
 πόθεν; adv., *from where? whence?* (7β, 10 Gr 9, and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποθέν, enclitic, *from somewhere* (14 Gr 6)  
 ποῖ; *to where? whither?* (10 Gr 9 and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποι, enclitic, *to somewhere* (14 Gr 6)  
 ποιέω, *I make; I do* (4α)  
 ποιητής, ποιητοῦ, ὁ, *poet* (8α)  
 πολέμιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *hostile; enemy* (14β)  
 πολέμιοι, πολεμίων, οἱ, *the enemy* (14β)  
 πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ, *war* (14β)  
 πολιορκέω [= πόλις, *city* + ἔρκος, *wall*], *I besiege* (16β)  
 πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ, *city* (7α and 9 Gr 3)  
 πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ, *citizen* (8β)  
 πολλάκις, adv., *many times, often* (6β)  
 πολλαχόσε, adv., *to many parts* (16α)  
 πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, *much* (1α, 4 Gr 6, and 14 Gr 2); pl., *many* (3β)  
 πλείων/πλέων, alternative forms for either masculine or feminine, πλέον, neuter, *more* (12β and 14 Gr 2)  
 πλείστος, -η, -ον, *most; very great; pl., very many* (12β and 14 Gr 2)  
 πολύ, adv., *much* (14 Gr 3)  
 πλέον, adv., *more* (14 Gr 3)  
 πλείστα, adv., *most* (14 Gr 3)  
 πομπή, πομπῆς, ἡ, *procession* (9β)  
 πονέω, *I work* (1α)  
 πόνος, πόνου, ὁ, *toil, work* (1α)  
 Πόντος, Πόντου, ὁ, *Pontus, the Black Sea*  
 πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, ἐπορεύσάμην (only in compounds), πορευσάμενος, *I go; I walk; I march; I journey* (6β)  
 Ποσειδῶν, Ποσειδῶνος, ὁ, *Poseidon* (13β)

πόσος; πόση; πόσον; *how much? pl., how many?* (16α)  
 ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ, *river* (16β)  
 πότε; adv., *when?* (10 Gr 9 and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποτέ, enclitic, *at some time, at one time, once, ever* (10β and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποῦ; adv., *where?* (5α and 14 Gr 6)  
 που, enclitic, *somewhere, anywhere* (10 Gr 9 and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποῦ γῆς; *where (in the world)?* (16α)  
 ποῦς, ποδός, ὁ, *foot*  
 πράττω, [πρακ-] πράξω, ἔπραξα, πράξῃς, intransitive, *I fare*; transitive, *I do* X (14α)  
 πρό, prep. + gen., of time or place, *before* (10β)  
 πρόβατα, προβάτων, τά, *sheep* (5α)  
 πρόγονος, προγόνου, ὁ, *ancestor* (15β)  
 πρός, prep. + dat., *at, near, by* (4α); + acc., *to, toward* (1β); upon, onto; against (11β)  
 προσβάλλω + dat., *I attack* (14α)  
 προσέρχομαι + dat. or πρός + acc., *I approach* (11β)  
 προσπλέω, *I sail toward*  
 προστρέχω, *I run toward*  
 προσχωρέω + dat., *I go toward, approach* (3α)  
 προτεραίᾱ, τῇ, *on the day before* (14β)  
 προχωρέω, *I go forward; I come forward, advance* (6β); + ἐπί + acc., *I advance against*  
 πρῶτος, -η, -ον, *first* (5β and 8 Gr 5)  
 πρῶτοι, πρώτων, οἱ, *the leaders*  
 πρῶτον, adv., *first* (4α)  
 τὸ πρῶτον, *at first*  
 πύλη, πύλης, ἡ, *gate*  
 πύλαι, πυλῶν, αἱ, pl., *double gates* (6β); *pass (through the mountains)* (14β)  
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό, *fire* (7β)  
 πυραμίς, πυραμίδος, ἡ, *pyramid*  
 πῶς; adv., *how?* (7β, 10 Gr 9, and 14 Gr 6)  
 πῶς ἔχεις; *How are you?* (11α)

πως, enclitic adv., *somehow, in any way* (14 Gr 6)  
 Ρ  
 ῥάβδος, ῥάβδου, ἡ, *wand*  
 ῥάδιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *easy* (4β and 4 Gr 6)  
 ῥάθυμος [= ῥᾱ, *easily* + θυμός, *spirit*], -ον, *careless* (5α)  
 ῥῆμα, ῥήματος, τό, *word*  
 Σ  
 Σαλαμίς, Σαλαμίνος, ἡ, *Salamis* (13α)  
 Σάμος, Σάμου, ἡ, *Samos*  
 σεαυτοῦ: see ἐμαυτοῦ  
 σιγάω, *I am silent* (9β)  
 Σικελίᾱ, Σικελίᾱς, ἡ, *Sicily*  
 Σιμωνίδης, Σιμωνίδου, ὁ, *Simonides* (15β)  
 σίτος, σίτου, ὁ, pl., τὰ σῖτα, *grain; food* (1α)  
 σκοπέω, [σκεπ-] σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, σκεψάμενος, *I look at, examine; I consider* (11α)  
 σκότος, σκότου, ὁ, *darkness*  
 Σκυθίᾱ, Σκυθίᾱς, ἡ, *Scythia*  
 σός, -ή, -όν, *your*, sing. (5 Gr 8)  
 σοφός, -ή, -όν, *skilled; wise; clever* (11α)  
 Σπαρτιάτης, Σπαρτιάτου, ὁ, *a Spartan* (14β)  
 σπείρω, [σπερε-] σπερῶ, [σπειρ-] ἔσπειρα, σπείρῃς, *I sow*  
 σπέρμα, σπέρματος, τό, *seed*  
 σπεύδω, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα, σπεύσῃς, *I hurry* (2α)  
 ἡ σπονδή, σπονδῆς, ἡ, *libation* (drink offering) (16β)  
 αἱ σπονδαί, σπονδῶν, αἱ, pl., *peace treaty* (16β)  
 σπουδή, σπουδῆς, ἡ, *haste; eagerness* (15β)  
 στέλλω, [στελε-] στείλω, [στειλ-] ἔστειλα, στείλῃς, *I take down* (sails)  
 στενάζω, [στεναχ-] στενάξω, ἐστέναξα, στενάξῃς, *I groan* (4β)

στενός, -ή, -όν, *narrow* (14α)  
 στενά, στενών, τά, *narrows, straits; mountain pass* (13β)  
 στοά, στοάς, ή, *colonnade*  
 στόλος, στόλου, ό, *expedition; army; fleet* (14α)  
 στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, έστρά-  
 τευσα, στρατεύσας, *active or middle, I wage war, campaign* (16α)  
 στρατηγός, στρατηγού, ό, *general* (15α)  
 στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ό, *soldier* (14α)  
 στρατός, στρατοϋ, ό, *army* (14α)  
 στρογγύλος, -η, -ον, *round*  
 σύ, σοϋ or σου, *you, sing.* (3β and 5 Gr 6)  
 συλλαμβάνω [= συν- + λαμβάνω], *I help* (2β); + dat., *I help X* (6 Gr 6g)  
 συμβάλλω [= συν- + βάλλω], *I join battle; + dat., I join battle with* (14α)  
 σύμμαχος, συμμάχου, ό, *ally* (16α)  
 συμπίπτω [= συν- + πίπτω], *I clash; + dat., I clash with* (15β)  
 συμφορά, συμφοράς, ή, *misfortune; disaster* (16α)  
 συναγείρω, *active, transitive, I gather X; middle, intransitive, I gather together* (16α)  
 συνέρχομαι, *I come together* (14α)  
 συφεός, συφεού, ό, *pigsty*  
 Σφίγξ, Σφιγγός, ή, *Sphinx*  
 σώζω, σώσω, έσωσα, σώσας, *I save* (6α)  
 σώφρων, σώφρον, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled* (7β, 7 Gr 7, and 14 Gr 1)

## T

ταύτη, *adv., in this way; here* (14 Gr 5)  
 ταχύς, ταχεία, ταχύ, *quick, swift* (13α and 13 Gr 5)  
 ταχέως, *quickly; swiftly* (4α)  
 τάχιστα, *adv., most quickly; most swiftly* (12α)

ώς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible* (12α)  
 τε... καί or τε καί, the τε is post-  
 positive and enclitic, particle and con-  
 junction, both... and (3α)  
 τείχος, τείχους, τό, *wall* (12α and 13 Gr 4)  
 τεκόντες, τεκόντων, οι, *parents* (10β)  
 τελευτάω, *I end; I die* (16α)  
 τέλος, *adv., in the end, finally* (8β)  
 τέμενος, τεμένους, τό, *sacred precinct*  
 τέρπομαι,τέρψομαι, έτερψάμην, *τερψάμενος, I enjoy myself; + dat., I enjoy X; + participle, I enjoy doing X* (9β)  
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον, *fourth* (8 Gr 5)  
 τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *400* (15 Gr 5)  
 τετραράκοντα, *indeclinable, forty* (15 Gr 5)  
 τέτταρες, τέτταρα, *four* (8 Gr 5)  
 τῇδε, *adv., in this way; here* (14 Gr 5)  
 τῇ προτεραίᾳ, *on the day before* (14β)  
 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, *on the next day* (8β)  
 τί; *adv., why?* (2α and 10 Gr 9)  
 τί; *pronoun, what?* (4β and 10 Gr 9)  
 τιμάω, *I honor* (5α, 5 Gr 1, 6 Gr 3, 8 Gr 1, 9 Gr 1, and 13 Gr 1)  
 τίς; τί; *gen., τίνος; interrogative adjective, which...? what...?* (7α and 7 Gr 8)  
 τίς; τί; *gen., τίνος; interrogative pronoun, who? what?* (7α, 7 Gr 8, and 10 Gr 9)  
 τις, τι *gen., τινός, enclitic indefinite adjective, a certain; some; a, an* (7α and 7 Gr 9)  
 τις, τι *gen., τινός, enclitic indefinite pronoun, someone; something; anyone; anything* (7α and 7 Gr 9)  
 τλήμων, τλήμονος, *poor; wretched*  
 τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο, *so great; pl., so great; so many* (3β)  
 τότε, *adv., then* (12β)  
 τούτῳ, ἐν... , *meanwhile* (8β)  
 τραγωδίᾳ, τραγωδίας, ή, *tragedy*  
 τρεῖς, τρία, *three* (8 Gr 5)

τρεῖς καὶ δέκα, *thirteen* (15 Gr 5)  
 τρέπω, τρέψω, έτρεψα, τρέψας, *active, transitive, I turn X; middle, intransitive, I turn myself, turn* (10β)  
 τρέχω, [δραμε-] δραμοῦμαι, [δραμ-] έδραμον, δραμών, *I run* (5α)  
 τριάκοντα, *indeclinable, thirty* (15 Gr 5)  
 τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *300* (15 Gr 5)  
 τριήρης, τριήρους, ή, *trireme* (a warship) (13β and 13 Gr 4)  
 τρίτος, -η, -ον, *third* (8 Gr 5)  
 Τροίᾳ, Τροιάς, ή, *Troy* (7α)  
 τύπτω, [τυπτε-] τυπτήσω, *no other principal parts of this verb in Attic, I strike, hit* (5β and 10β)  
 τυφλός, -ή, -όν, *blind* (11α)  
 τύχη, τύχης, ή, *chance; luck; fortune* (15β)  
 τῷ ὄντι, *in truth* (13β)

## Y

ὕδριᾱ, ὕδριᾱς, ή, *water jar* (4α and 4 Gr 3)  
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, *water* (10β)  
 ὑλακτέω, *I bark*  
 ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν, *you, pl.* (5β and 5 Gr 6)  
 ὑμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *your, pl.* (5 Gr 8)  
 ὕμνέω, *I hymn, praise*  
 ὑπέρ, *prep. + gen., on behalf of, for* (8β); *above*  
 ὑπηρέτης, ὑπηρέτου, ό, *servant; attendant*  
 ὑπό, *prep. + gen., under; of agent, by* (16α); + dat., *under* (5β); + acc., *under* (5β)  
 ὕστεραίᾳ, τῇ, *on the next day* (8β)  
 ὕστερον, *adv., later* (16α)  
 ὑφαίνω, *I weave*

## Φ

φαίνομαι, [φανε-] φανήσομαι or φανοῦμαι, *no aorist middle, I appear* (12β)  
 Φάληρον, Φαλήρου, τό, *Phalerum* (the old harbor of Athens) (14β)

φᾱσί(v), *postpositive enclitic, they say* (6β)  
 Φειδίᾱς, Φειδίου, ό, *Pheidias* (the great Athenian sculptor) (9α)  
 φέρω, [οί-] οἴσω, [ένεγκ-] ήνεγκα, ένέγκας or ήνεγκον, ένεγκών, *I carry* (1β); of roads, *lead*  
 φεῦ, *interjection, often used with gen. of cause, alas!* (10α)  
 φεύγω, φεύξομαι, [φυγ-] έφυγον, φυγών, *I flee; I escape* (5α)  
 φησί(v), *postpositive enclitic, he/she says* (3α)  
 έφη, *he/she said*  
 έφασαν, *they said*  
 φιλέω, *I love* (1α, 4 Gr 1, 6 Gr 3, 8 Gr 1, 9 Gr 1, and 13 Gr 1)  
 Φίλιππος, Φιλίππου, ό, *Philip* (3β)  
 φίλος, -η, -ον, *dear* (4α)  
 φίλος, φίλου, ό or φίλη, φίλης, ή, *friend* (4α)

φλυᾶρέω, *I talk nonsense*  
 φοβέομαι, *imperfect, usually used for fearing in past time, έφοβούμην, φοβήσομαι, no aorist middle, intransitive, I am frightened, am afraid; transitive, I fear, am afraid of (something or someone)* (6α)  
 φοβερός, -ᾱ, -όν, *terrifying, frightening*  
 φορτία, φορτίων, τά, *cargoes; burdens*  
 φράζω, φράσω, έφρασα, φράσας, *I show; I tell (of); I explain* (14β)  
 φροντίζω, [φρομτιε-] φροντιῶ, [φροντι-] έφρόντισα, φροντίσας, *I worry; I care* (12α)  
 φυγή, φυγῆς, ή, *flight* (15α)  
 φύλαξ, φύλακος, ό, *guard* (7 Gr 3)  
 φυλάττω, [φυλακ-] φυλάξω, *έφύλαξα, φυλάξας, I guard* (5α)

## X

χαίρω, [χαίρε-] χαιρήσω, *έχαίρησα, χαιρήσας, I rejoice* (1α and 4α)

participles

χαῖρε; pl., χαίρετε, *greetings!* (4α)  
 χαίρειν κελεύω + acc., *I bid X*  
*farewell, I bid farewell to X* (12α)  
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, *difficult* (1β and 14  
 Gr 1)  
 χειμῶν, χειμῶνος, ὁ, *storm; winter*  
 (7β and 7 Gr 5)  
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ, *hand* (8β)  
 χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *1,000* (15 Gr 5)  
 χίλιοστός, -ή, -όν, *thousandth* (15  
 Gr 5)  
 χορός, χοροῦ, ὁ, *dance; chorus* (4α)  
 χράομαι (present and imperfect have η  
 where α would be expected: χρώμαι,  
 χρῆ, χρῆται, etc.), *χρήσομαι* (note  
 that the α changes to η even after the  
 ρ), *ἐχρησάμην, χρησάμενος + dat., I*  
*use; I enjoy* (14α)  
 χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ, *time* (1β)

## Ψ

ψευδής, -ές, *false* (13β)  
 ψευδῆ, ψευδῶν, τά, *lies* (13β)  
 ψόφος, ψόφου, ὁ, *noise*

## Ω

ὦ, interjection, introducing a vocative

ὦ Ζεῦ, *O Zeus* (3α)  
 ὦ, ἐν, *while* (8α)  
 ὠθίζομαι, no future or aorist, *I push*  
 ὦν, οὔσα, ὄν, participle of εἰμί, *being* (9  
 Gr 1)  
 ὠνια, ὠνίων, τά, *wares*  
 ὦς, adv., in exclamations, *how!* (6β and 15  
 Gr 6a)  
 ὦς, adv. + future participle to express  
 purpose, *to* (10 Gr 7 and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὦς, adv. + superlative adjective or adverb,  
 e.g., ὥς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*  
 (12α, 14 Gr 4d, and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὦς, adv., *as* (13β and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὥς δοκεῖ, *as it seems* (13β and 15 Gr  
 6a)  
 ὦς, conj., temporal, *when* (14β and 15 Gr  
 6b)  
 ὦς, conj., *see πιστεύω, that* (15β and 15 Gr  
 6b)  
 ὥσπερ, note the accent, adv., *just as* (8α  
 and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὥστε, note the accent, conj. + indicative or  
 infinitive, introducing a clause that ex-  
 presses result, *so that, that, so as to* (5α  
 and 15 Gr 6b)  
 ὠφελέω, *I help; I benefit* (11β)

# ENGLISH TO GREEK VOCABULARY

This English to Greek vocabulary is provided merely as a reminder of Greek equivalents of English words. For further information about the Greek words, you must consult the Greek to English Vocabulary and the readings and grammar sections in the various chapters of this book.

## Α

a (certain), *τις*  
 able, I am, *δύναμαι*  
 about, *περί*  
 about (to), I am, *μέλλω*  
 accomplish, I, *ἐργάζομαι*  
 Achaeans, *Ἀχαιοί*  
 Acropolis, *Ἀκρόπολις*  
 admiral, *ναύαρχος*  
 admire, I, *θαυμάζω*  
 advance (against), I, *προ-  
χωρέω*  
 Aegean Sea, *Αἰγαῖος*  
 πόντος  
 Aegeus, *Αἰγεύς*  
 Aeolus, *Αἰόλος*  
 Aeschylus, *Αἰσχύλος*  
 afraid (of), I am, *φοβέ-  
ομαι*  
 after, *μετά*  
 again, *αὖθις*  
 against, *ἐπί, πρός*  
 Agamemnon, *Ἀγαμέ-  
μνων*  
 agora, *ἀγορά*  
 alas! *οἶμοι, φεῦ*  
 all, *ἅπας, πᾶς*  
 all right! *ἔστω*  
 allowed, it is, *ἔξεστι(ν)*  
 ally, *σύμμαχος*  
 alone, *μόνος*  
 along, *παρά*  
 already, *ἤδη*  
 also, *καί*  
 altar, *βωμός*  
 although, *καίπερ*  
 always, *ἀεί*  
 am, I, *εἰμί*  
 amazed, I am, *θαυμάζω*  
 among, *ἐν*  
 an, *τις*

ancestor, *πρόγονος*  
 and, *δέ, καί*  
 and in particular, *καὶ δὴ*  
*καί*  
 and . . . not, *οὐδέ*  
 and what is more, *καὶ δὴ*  
*καί*  
 angry (at), I grow/am,  
*ὀργίζομαι*  
 animal, *ζῷον*  
 announce, I, *ἀγγέλλω*  
 another, *ἄλλος*  
 answer, I, *ἀποκρίνομαι*  
 anyone, anything, *τις, τι*  
 anywhere, *που*  
 appear, I, *φαίνομαι*  
 approach, I, *προσ-  
έρχομαι, προσχωρέω*  
 Argus, *Ἄργος*  
 Ariadne, *Ἀριάδνη*  
 army, *στόλος, στρατός*  
 around, *περί*  
 arrive (at), I, *ἀφ-  
ικνέομαι, παρα-  
γίγνομαι*  
 Artemisium, *Ἀρτεμί-  
σιον*  
 as, *ὥς*  
 as it seems, *ὥς δοκεῖ*  
 as quickly as possible, *ὥς*  
*τάχιστα*  
 Asclepius, *Ἀσκληπιός*  
 Asia (Minor), *Ἀσίᾱ*  
 ask, I, *αἰτέω, ἐρωτάω*  
 ask for, I, *αἰτέω*  
 at, *εἰς, ἐπί, πρός*  
 at a loss, I am, *ἀπορέω*  
 at home, *κατ' οἶκον,*  
*οἶκοι*  
 at just the right time, *εἰς*  
*καιρόν*

at least, *γε*  
 at once, *εὐθύς*  
 at one time, *ποτέ*  
 at some time, *ποτέ*  
 at that very moment, *ἐν-  
ταῦθα δὴ*  
 at the same time, *ἅμα*  
 Athena, *Ἀθηνᾶ, Παρ-  
θένης*  
 Athenian, *Ἀθηναῖος*  
 Athenians, *Ἀθηναῖοι*  
 Athens, *Ἀθῆναι*  
 Athens, at, *Ἀθήνησι*  
 Athens, in, *ἐν ταῖς*  
*Ἀθήναις*  
 Athens, to, *Ἀθήναζε*  
 attack, I, *ἐμπίπτω,*  
*προσβάλλω*  
 attempt, I, *πειράω, πει-  
ράομαι*  
 attendant, *θεράπων,*  
*ὑπηρέτης*  
 Attica, *Ἀττική*  
 away, I am, *ἄπειμι*

## Β

bad, *κακός*  
 bag, *ἀσκός*  
 barbarian, *βάρβαρος*  
 bark, I, *ὕλακτέω*  
 battle, *μάχη*  
 be! *ἴσθι*  
 be so! let it, *ἔστω*  
 beast, *θηρίον*  
 beautiful, *καλός*  
 beautiful, more, *καλλίων*  
 beautiful, most, *κάλλισ-  
τος*  
 become, I, *γίγνομαι*  
 bee, *μέλιττα*  
 before, *πρό*

beginning, ἀρχή  
 behind, ὀπισθεν  
 being, ὄν  
 believe (that), I, πιστεύω  
 benefit, I, ὠφελέω  
 besiege, I, πολιορκέω  
 best, ἄριστος  
 better, ἀμείνων  
 between, ἐν μέσῳ  
 bid X farewell, I, χαίρειν  
 κελεύω  
 big, μέγας  
 bigger, μείζων  
 biggest, μέγιστος  
 black, μέλας  
 Black Sea, the, Πόντος  
 blame, to (adj.), αἷτιος  
 blind, τυφλός  
 Boeotia, Βοιωτία  
 both... and, καί...  
 καί, τε... καί  
 boy, παῖς  
 brave, ἀνδρείος  
 bravely, ἀνδρείως  
 bridge, γέφυρα  
 bright, λαμπρός  
 brilliant, λαμπρός  
 bring, I, κομίζω  
 bring in(to), I, εἰσφέρω  
 brother, ἀδελφός  
 burn, I, καίω, κάω  
 but, ἀλλά, δέ  
 by, πρὸς, ὑπό  
 by land, κατὰ γῆν  
 by sea, κατὰ θάλατταν

## C

calf, μόσχος  
 call, I, καλέω  
 call in(to), I, εἰσκαλέω  
 call out, I, ἐκκαλέω  
 called, ὀνόματι  
 campaign, I, στρατεύω  
 can, I, δύναμαι  
 captain: see ship's captain  
 care, I, φροντίζω  
 careless, ῥάθυμος  
 carry, I, φέρω  
 carry out, I, ἐκφέρω  
 catch, I, καταλαμβάνω  
 cause pain to, I, λυπέω

cave, ἄντρον  
 cease from, I, παύομαι  
 celebrate a festival, I, ἐορ-  
 τὴν ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι  
 celebrate the festival of  
 Dionysus, I, τὰ Διο-  
 νύσια ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι  
 certain, α, τις  
 certainly, μάλιστά γε  
 chance, τύχη  
 chase, I, διώκω  
 child, παῖς  
 chorus, χορός  
 Cimon, Κίμων  
 Circe, Κίρκη  
 citizen, πολίτης  
 city, ἄστυ, πόλις  
 city center, ἀγορά  
 clash (with), I, συμπίπτω  
 clever, σοφός  
 climb, I, ἀναβαίνω  
 cloth, πέπλος  
 colonnade, στοά  
 come! ἐλθέ  
 come, I, ἔρχομαι  
 come, I have, ἦκω  
 come back! ἐπάνελθε  
 come back, I, ἐπαν-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 come back, to, ἐπανιέναι  
 come down, I, κατα-  
 βαίνω  
 come forward, I, προ-  
 χωρέω  
 come in, I, εἰσβαίνω,  
 εἰσέρχομαι  
 come on! ἄγε  
 come out (of), I, ἐκ-  
 βαίνω, ἐξέρχομαι  
 come through, I, δι-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 come to know, I, γινώ-  
 σκω  
 come to rescue/aid X, I,  
 βοηθέω  
 come to the rescue, I, βο-  
 ηθέω  
 come to X's aid, I, βοηθέω  
 come together, I, συν-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 coming out, ἐξελθών

commotion, θόρυβος  
 companion, ἐταῖρος  
 compel, I, ἀναγκάζω  
 comrade, ἐταῖρος  
 concerning, περί  
 confident (in), I am, πισ-  
 τεύω  
 consider, I, σκοπέω  
 contest, ἀγών  
 converse with, I, δια-  
 λέγομαι  
 Corinth, Κόρινθος  
 corpse, νεκρός  
 correct, ὀρθός  
 courage, ἀρετή  
 Crete, Κρήτη  
 cross, I, διαβαίνω  
 crowd, ὄμιλος  
 cry, I, δακρύω  
 cursed, κατάρχτος  
 Cyclops, Κύκλωψ  
 Cyprus, Κύπρος  
 Cyrene, Κυρήνη

## D

dance, χορός  
 danger, κίνδυνος  
 darkness, σκότος  
 daughter, θυγάτηρ,  
 παῖς  
 day, ἡμέρᾱ  
 day, on the next, τῇ  
 ὑστεραίᾳ  
 day before, on the, τῇ  
 προτεραιᾳ  
 dear, φίλος  
 death, θάνατος  
 decide, I, δοκεῖ μοι  
 deed, ἔργον  
 defeat, I, νικάω  
 defend myself (against), I,  
 ἀμύνομαι  
 desert, I, καταλείπω  
 destined (to), I am, μέλλω  
 destroy, I, ἀπόλλυμι,  
 διαφθείρω  
 Dicaeopolis, Δικαιό-  
 πολις  
 die, I, ἀποθνήσκω,  
 τελευτάω  
 difficult, χαλεπός

difficulty, ἀπορία  
 difficulty, with, μάλιστα  
 dinner, δεῖπνον  
 Dionysus, Διόνυσος  
 directions, in all, παντα-  
 χόσε  
 disaster, συμφορὰ  
 disembark, ἐκβαίνω ἐκ  
 τῆς νεώς  
 distressed, I am, λυπέο-  
 μαι  
 do, I, ποιέω, πράττω  
 doctor, ἰατρός  
 dog, κύων  
 don't, μή  
 don't... any longer, μη-  
 κέτι  
 door, θύρᾱ  
 down, κατά  
 drachma, δραχμή  
 drag, I, ἔλκω  
 drink, I, πίνω  
 drive, I, ἐλαύνω  
 drive away, I, ἀπελαύνω  
 drive in, I, εἰσελαύνω  
 drive out, I, ἐξελαύνω  
 drop, I, καταβάλλω  
 drunk, I am, μεθύω  
 during (use acc. of dura-  
 tion of time)  
 dwell, I, οἰκέω  
 dwelling, οἰκία, οἶκος

## E

eagerness, σπουδή  
 earth, γῆ  
 easy, ῥάδιος  
 eat, I, δειπνέω, ἐσθίω  
 Egypt, Αἴγυπτος  
 Egyptians, Αἰγύπτιοι  
 eight, ὀκτώ  
 eighth, ὀγδοός  
 either... or, ἢ... ἢ  
 embark, I, εἰς ναὺν εἰς-  
 βαίνω  
 end, I, τελευτάω  
 enemy, πολέμιος  
 enemy, the, πολέμιοι  
 enjoy, I, χρᾶσθαι  
 enjoy (myself), I, τέρπο-  
 μαι

enslave, I, δουλόω  
 entrance, εἴσοδος  
 Ephialtes, Ἐφιάλτης  
 Epidaurus, Ἐπίδαυρος  
 escape (from), I, ἀπο-  
 φεύγω, ἐκφεύγω,  
 φεύγω  
 escape route, ἔκπλους  
 especially, μάλιστα  
 Euboea, Εὐβοία  
 Eurylochus, Εὐρύλοχος  
 Eurymedon River, the,  
 Εὐρυμέδων  
 even, καί  
 evening, ἐσπέρᾱ  
 ever, ποτέ  
 every, ἅπας, πᾶς  
 every day, καθ' ἡμέρᾱν  
 everything, πάντα  
 everywhere, πανταχοῦ  
 evil, κακός  
 examine, I, σκοπέω  
 excellence, ἀρετή  
 expect, I, ἐλπίζω  
 expedition, στόλος  
 experience, πάσχω  
 explain, I, φράζω  
 eye, ὀφθαλμός

## F

fall, I, πίπτω  
 fall down, I, καταπίπτω  
 fall into, I, ἐμπίπτω  
 fall (of evening, etc.), γί-  
 γνεται  
 fall out, I, ἐκπίπτω  
 fall (up)on, I, ἐμπίπτω  
 false, ψευδής  
 far corner, μυχός  
 fare, I, πράττω  
 farm, κλήρος  
 farm, I, γεωργέω  
 farmer, αὐτουργός  
 father, πάππας, πατήρ  
 fatherland, πατρίς  
 fear, I, φοβέομαι  
 festival, ἐορτή, παν-  
 ἡγυρις

festival of Dionysus, Διο-  
 νύσια  
 few, pl. of ὀλίγος  
 fewer, pl. of ἐλάττων  
 fewest, pl. of ὀλίγιστος  
 field, ἀγρός  
 fierce, ἄγριος  
 fifth, πέμπτος  
 fight, μάχη  
 fight (against), I, μάχο-  
 μαι  
 fight by sea, I, ναυμαχέω  
 fill, I, πληρόω  
 finally, τέλος  
 find, I, εὐρίσκω  
 fire, πῦρ  
 fire, I am on, καίομαι,  
 κάομαι  
 firm, βέβαιος  
 first, πρῶτον, πρῶτος  
 first, at, τὸ πρῶτον  
 five, πέντε  
 flee, I, φεύγω  
 flee (away), I, ἀποφεύγω  
 flee (out), I, ἐκφεύγω  
 fleet, ναυτικόν, στόλος  
 flight, φυγή  
 flow in, I, εἰσρέω  
 follow, I, ἔπομαι  
 food, σίτος  
 foot, ποῦς  
 foot, on, πεζός  
 for, γάρ, εἰς, ὑπέρ  
 foreigner, ξένος  
 forget, I, ἐπι-  
 λανθάνομαι  
 fortune, τύχη  
 four, τέτταρες  
 fourth, τέταρτος  
 free, ἐλεύθερος  
 free, I, ἐλευθερώω  
 freedom, ἐλευθερία  
 friend, φίλη, φίλος  
 frightened, I am, φοβέο-  
 μαι  
 frightening, φοβερός  
 frightfully, δεινῶς  
 from, ἀπό  
 from where? πόθεν;

## G

garden, κήπος  
 gates, double, πύλαι  
 gather (together), I, συν-  
 αλείρω  
 general, στρατηγός  
 get (myself) up, I, see  
 αἴρω, ἐπαίρω  
 get up, I, ἀναβαίνω  
 giant, γίγας  
 girl, κόρη, παῖς, παρ-  
 θένος  
 go! ἴθι  
 go, I, βαδίζω, βαίνω,  
 ἔρχομαι, πορεύομαι  
 go, to, ἵεναι  
 go away, I, ἀπέρχομαι  
 go down, I, καταβαίνω  
 go forward, I, προχωρέω  
 go in, I, εἰσβαίνω, εἰσ-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 go in, to, εἰσιέναι  
 go on! ἴθι δὴ  
 go on board ship, I, εἰς  
 ναὺν εἰσβαίνω  
 go out of, I, ἐκβαίνω,  
 ἐξέρχομαι  
 go through, I, διέρχομαι  
 go toward, I, προσχωρέω  
 go up (onto), I, ἀνα-  
 βαίνω  
 goat, αἴξ  
 god, θεός  
 goddess, θεός  
 good, ἀγαθός  
 good! εὖ γε  
 good order, κόσμος  
 grain, σῖτος  
 grandfather, πάππος  
 grapes, βότρυες  
 great, μέγας  
 greater, μείζων  
 greatest, μέγιστος  
 greatly, μέγα  
 Greece, Ἑλλάς  
 Greek(s), Ἕλλην(ες)  
 Greeks, Ἀχαιοί  
 greetings! χαῖρε  
 grieve, I, λυπέω  
 grieved, I am, λυπέομαι

groan, I, στενάζω  
 ground, γῆ  
 grow angry (at), I, ὀργί-  
 ζομαι  
 guard, φύλαξ  
 guard, I, φυλάττω

## H

hand, χεῖρ  
 hand over, I, παρέχω  
 happens, it, γίγνεται  
 harbor, λιμὴν  
 hare, λαγός  
 harm, I, βλάπτω  
 has become, he/she/it,  
 γέγονε  
 haste, σπουδή  
 hasten, I, ὀρμάομαι  
 have, I, ἔχω  
 have come, I, ἦκω  
 have in mind, I, ἐν νῷ  
 ἔχω  
 having come out, ἐξ-  
 ελθών  
 he, and, ὁ δέ  
 head, κεφαλή  
 heal, I, ἰάτρυνω  
 hear, I, ἀκούω  
 heaven, οὐρανός  
 Hellas, Ἑλλάς  
 Hellespont, Ἑλλησπον-  
 τος  
 help, I, συλλαμβάνω,  
 ὠφελέω  
 her, αὐτήν  
 herald, κήρυξ  
 here, δεῦρο, ἐνθάδε,  
 ἐνταῦθα, ταύτη,  
 τῇδε  
 here, I am, πάρειμι  
 herself, of: see ἐμαυτοῦ  
 hill, ὄρος  
 him, αὐτόν  
 himself, of: see ἐμαυτοῦ  
 hit, I, βάλλω, τύπτω  
 hither, δεῦρο, ἐνθάδε,  
 ἐνταῦθα  
 hold, I, ἔχω  
 hold onto, I, ἔχομαι  
 home, οἰκία, οἶκος

home, at, κατ' οἶκον,  
 οἶκοι  
 home, to, οἴκαδε  
 homeward, οἴκαδε  
 honor, I, τιμῶ  
 hope, I, ἐλπίζω  
 hoplite, ὀπλίτης  
 horse, ἵππος  
 hostile, πολέμιος  
 house, οἰκία, οἶκος  
 how, ὥς  
 how? πῶς;  
 How are you? πῶς ἔχεις;  
 how many? pl. of πόσος;  
 how much? πόσος;  
 human being, ἄνθρωπος  
 hundred, a, ἑκατόν  
 hunger, λιμός  
 hurry, I, σπεύδω  
 hurt, βλάπτω  
 husband, ἀνὴρ  
 hymn, I, ὑμνέω

## I

I, ἐγώ  
 I am, εἰμί  
 idle, ἄργος  
 if, εἰ  
 if perhaps, if somehow, εἰ  
 πῶς  
 ill, I am, νοσέω  
 immediately, εὐθύς  
 impossible, ἀδύνατος  
 in, ἐν  
 in, I am, ἔνιμι  
 in all directions, παντα-  
 χόσε  
 in any way, πῶς  
 in Athens, ἐν ταῖς  
 Ἀθήναις  
 in no way, οὐδαμῶς  
 in order, κόσμος  
 in the end, τέλος  
 in the field, ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ  
 in this way, ταύτη, τῇδε  
 in truth, τῷ ὄντι  
 increase, I, αὐξάνω  
 indeed, γε, δή, μάλιστα  
 γε  
 inhabitant, ἐνοικος

intend (to), I, ἐν νῷ ἔχω,  
 μέλλω  
 into, εἰς  
 Ionia, Ἰωνία  
 Ionians, Ἴωνες  
 is, he/she/it, ἐστί(ν)  
 island, νῆσος  
 it, αὐτόν, αὐτήν, αὐτό  
 it is necessary, δεῖ  
 itself: see ἐμαυτοῦ

## J

jar, water, ὕδρις  
 join battle (with), I, συμ-  
 βάλλω  
 journey, ὁδός  
 journey, I, πορεύομαι  
 just as, ὥσπερ

## K

keep quiet, I, ἡσυχάζω  
 kill, I, ἀποκτείνω  
 killed, he/she has, ἀπ-  
 ἔκτονε  
 kindle, I, καίω, κᾶω  
 kindly, εὐμενῶς  
 king, βασιλεύς  
 knife, μάχαιρα  
 knock on (a door), I,  
 κόπτω  
 Knossos, Κνωσός  
 know, I, ἐπίσταμαι  
 know, come to, I, γιγνώ-  
 σκω

## L

labyrinth, λαβύρινθος  
 Lacedaemonians, the,  
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι  
 land, γῆ  
 land, on or by, κατὰ γῆν  
 large, μακρός, μέγας  
 larger, μείζων  
 largest, μέγιστος  
 later, ὕστερον  
 lazy, ἄργος  
 lead, I, ἄγω, ἡγέομαι  
 lead in, I, εἰσάγω,  
 εἰσηγέομαι  
 lead (of roads), I, φέρω

lead out, I, ἐξάγω  
 leaders, pl. of πρῶτος  
 learn, I, γινώσκω, μαν-  
 θάνω  
 least of all, ἥκιστα γε  
 leave, I, λείπω  
 leave behind, I, κατα-  
 λείπω  
 left hand, ἀριστερά  
 Leonidas, Λεωνίδης  
 libation, σπονδή  
 lie, I, κείμαι  
 lie down, I, κατάκειμαι  
 lie near, I, ἐπικείμαι  
 lie off, I, ἐπικείμαι  
 lies, ψευδῆ  
 life, βίος  
 lift, I, αἴρω, ἐπαίρω  
 lion, λέων  
 listen (to), I, ἀκούω  
 live, I, οἰκέω  
 long, μακρός  
 long (of time), πολὺς  
 look! ἰδοὺ  
 look, I, βλέπω  
 look at, I, θεάομαι, σκο-  
 πέω  
 look for, I, ζητέω  
 loose/loosen, I, λύω  
 loss, I am at a, ἀπορέω  
 loss, state of being at a,  
 ἀπορία  
 loudly, μέγα  
 love, I, ἐράω, φιλέω  
 luck, τύχη

## M

made of stone, λίθινος  
 maiden, παρθένος  
 Maiden, the, Παρθένος  
 make, I, ποιέω  
 make X sit down, I, καθ-  
 ἵζω  
 man, ἀνὴρ, ἄνθρωπος  
 man, young, νεανίας  
 many, pl. of πολὺς  
 many times, πολλάκις  
 march, I, ἐλαύνω, πο-  
 ρεύομαι

market place, ἀγορά  
 master, δεσπότης  
 may, ἔξεστι(ν)  
 me, με  
 meal, δεῖπνον  
 meanwhile, ἐν . . .  
 τοῦτῳ  
 Melissa, Μέλιττα  
 Memphis, Μέμφις  
 merchant, ἔμπορος  
 merchant ship, ὀλκάς  
 messenger, ἄγγελος  
 middle (of), μέσος  
 mind, νοῦς  
 mind, have in, I, ἐν νῷ  
 ἔχω  
 mine, ἐμός  
 Minos, Μίνως  
 Minotaur, Μινώταυρος  
 misfortune, συμφορά  
 money, ἀργύριον  
 monument, μνημεῖον  
 more, μᾶλλον, πλεί-  
 ων/πλείων  
 more, and what is, καὶ δὴ  
 καί  
 most, μάλιστα, πλείσ-  
 τος  
 most of all, μάλιστα  
 most swiftly/quickly, τά-  
 χιστα  
 mother, μήτηρ  
 motion, set in, I, ὀρμάω  
 motionless, ἀκίνητος  
 Mount Etna, Αἰτναῖον  
 ὄρος  
 mountain, ὄρος  
 mountain pass, στενά  
 much, πολὺς  
 mule, ἡμίονος  
 multitude, πλῆθος  
 must, δεῖ  
 my, ἐμός  
 Mycale, Μυκαλή  
 Myrrhine, Μυρρίνη  
 myself, of, ἐμαυτοῦ

## N

name, ὄνομα  
 name, by, ὀνόματι

narrow, στενός  
narrows, στενά  
near, ἐγγύς, πρόσ  
necessary, it is, δεῖ  
neither . . . nor,  
οὔτε . . . οὔτε  
nevertheless, ὅμως  
next day, on the, τῇ  
ὑστεραίᾳ  
night, νύξ  
Nike, Νίκη  
Nile, Νεῖλος  
nine, ἐννέα  
ninth, ἕνατος  
no, μηδεῖς, οὐδαμῶς,  
οὐδεῖς, οὐδέν, οὐχί  
no longer, μηκέτι, οὐ-  
κέτι  
no one, μηδεῖς, οὐδεῖς  
noble, ἄριστος  
nor, οὐδέ  
not, μή, οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ,  
οὐχί  
not, and, οὐδέ  
not at all, ἡκιστα γε  
not even, οὐδέ  
not only . . . but also, οὐ  
μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί  
not working, ἀργός  
nothing, μηδέν, οὐδέν  
now, ἤδη, νῦν  
nowhere, οὐδαμοῦ  
number, πλήθος  
nymph, νύμφη

## Ο

obey, I, πείθομαι  
obol, ὀβολός  
obstruct, I, ἐμποδίζω  
Odysseus, Ὀδυσσεύς  
of one another, ἀλλήλων  
of sound mind, σώφρων  
often, πολλάκις  
old, γεραιός, γέρων  
old man, γέρων  
on, ἐν, ἐπί, κατά, πρόσ  
on behalf of, ὑπέρ  
on fire, I am, καίομαι,  
κάομαι  
on foot, πεζός

on the day before, προ-  
τεραίᾳ  
on the next day, τῇ  
ὑστεραίᾳ  
on the one hand . . . and on  
the other hand . . . ; on the  
one hand . . . but on the  
other hand, μέν . . . δέ  
. . .  
once, ποτέ  
one, εἷς  
one another, of,  
ἀλλήλων  
only, μόνον, μόνος  
onto, ἐπί, πρόσ  
opposite, ἐναντίος  
or, ἢ  
order, I, κελεύω  
order, in, κόσμῳ  
other, ἄλλος  
our, ἡμέτερος  
out of, ἐκ, ἐξ  
overtake, I, κατα-  
λαμβάνω  
ox, βοῦς

## Ρ

pain to X, cause, I, λυπέω  
para, πάπας  
parents, τεκόντες  
part, μέρος  
Parthenon, Παρθενών  
particular, and in, καὶ δὴ  
καί  
parts, to many, πολλα-  
χόσε  
pass (through the  
mountains), πύλαι  
past, παρά  
path, ἀτραπός  
pay, μισθός  
peace, εἰρήνη  
peace treaty, σπονδαί  
Peloponnesus, the, Πελο-  
πόννησος  
pelt, I, βάλλω  
people, the, δῆμος  
perceive, I, γινώσκω  
perplexity, ἀπορίᾳ  
Persian, Περσικός

Persians, the, Πέρσαι  
person, ἄνθρωπος  
persuade, I, πείθω  
Phalerum, Φάληρον  
Pheidias, Φειδίᾱς  
Philip, Φίλιππος  
pigsty, συφεός  
Piraeus, the, Πειραιεύς  
place, I, καθίζω  
plow, ἄροτρον  
plow, I, ἄρώω  
plowing, ἄροτος  
poet, ποιητής  
Pontus, Πόντος  
poor, τλήμων  
Poseidon, Ποσειδῶν  
possible, δυνατός  
possible, it is, ἔξεστι(ν)  
praise, I, ὑμνέω  
pray (to), I, εὐχόμεαι  
precinct, sacred, τέμενος  
prepare, I, παρα-  
σκευάζω, παρα-  
σκευάζομαι  
present (at), I am, πάρ-  
ειμι  
priest, ἱερεύς  
prison, δεσμοκτήριον  
procession, πομπή  
promontory, ἀκτὴ  
propitious, ἔλεως  
provide, I, παρέχω  
prudent, σώφρων  
punish, I, κολάζω  
pursue, I, διώκω  
push, I, ώθίζομαι  
put, I, βάλλω  
pyramid, πυραμίδας

## Q

quick, ταχύς  
quickly, ταχέως  
quickly, most, τάχιστα  
quiet, ἡσυχός  
quiet, keep, I, ἡσυχάζω

## R

raise, I, ἐπαίρω  
ransom, I, λύομαι

rather, μᾶλλον  
rather than, μᾶλλον ἢ  
ready, ἔτοιμος  
rear, from the, ἐκ τοῦ  
ὀπισθε(ν)  
reason, λόγος  
receive, I, δέχομαι  
rejoice, I, χαίρω  
relate, I, ἐξηγέομαι  
reluctantly, μόλις  
resist, I, ἀντέχω  
responsible (for), αἷτιος  
rest, I, ἡσυχάζω  
retreat, I, ἀναχωρέω  
return, to, ἐπανιέναι  
return home, I, νοστέω  
return (to), I, ἐπαν-  
έρχομαι  
revel, I, κωμάζω  
reward, μισθός  
right, δεξιός, ὀρθός  
right hand, δεξιὰ  
right time, καιρός  
right time, just at the, εἰς  
καιρόν  
river, ποταμός  
road, ὁδός  
robe, πέπλος  
rough, I am, κῦμαινω  
round, στρογγύλος  
route, escape, ἔκπλους  
row, I, ἐρέσσω  
rower, ἐρέτης  
rule, I, βασιλεύω  
run, I, τρέχω  
run toward, I, προσ-  
τρέχω  
rush, I, ὀρμάομαι, ὀρ-  
μάω

## S

sacrificial victim, ἱερεῖον  
said, he/she, ἔφη  
said, I/they, εἶπον  
said, they, ἔφασαν  
sail, I, πλέω  
sail against, I, ἐπιπλέω  
sail along, I, παραπλέω  
sail away, I, ἀποπλέω  
sail by, I, παραπλέω

sail in(to), I, εἰσπλέω  
sail out, I, ἐκπλέω  
sail past, I, παραπλέω  
sail toward, I, προσπλέω  
sailor, ναύτης  
sails, ἱστία  
Salamis, Σαλαμίς  
same, αὐτός  
same time, at the, ἅμα  
Samos, Σάμος  
sausage-seller, ἀλλαντο-  
πώλης  
savage, ἄγριος  
save, I, σφίζω  
say, I, λέγω  
say, to, εἰπεῖν  
say, they, φασί(ν)  
says, he/she, φησί(ν)  
scarcely, μόλις  
Scythia, Σκυθία  
sea, θάλαττα  
sea, by, κατὰ θάλατταν  
seat myself, I, καθίζομαι  
second, δεύτερος  
see, I, βλέπω, θεάομαι,  
θεωρέω, ὁράω  
seed, σπέρμα  
seek, I, ζητέω  
seems, as it, ὥς δοκεῖ  
seems (good), it, δοκεῖ  
seems good to me, it,  
δοκεῖ μοι  
seize, I, λαμβάνομαι  
-self, -selves, αὐτός  
self-controlled, σώφρων  
send, I, πέμπω  
send against, I, ἐπιπέμπω  
send away, I, ἀποπέμπω  
send in, I, ἐπιπέμπω  
send out, I, ἐκπέμπω  
servant, θεράπων, ὑπη-  
ρέτης  
set, I, καθίζω  
set free, I, ἐλευθερώω  
set myself in motion, I,  
ὀρμάομαι  
set out, I, ὀρμάομαι,  
ὀρμάω  
set X in motion, I, ὀρμάω  
seven, ἐπτά

seventh, ἑβδομος  
sheep, πρόβατα  
sheepfold, αὐλῖον  
ship, ναῦς  
ship, merchant, ὀλκάς  
ship's captain, ναύ-  
κληρος  
shirk, I, ὀκνέω  
shout, βοή  
shout, I, βοάω  
show, I, δηλώω, φράζω  
Sicily, Σικελία  
sick, I am, κάμνω, νο-  
σέω  
silent, I am, σιγάω  
silver, ἀργύριον  
Simonides, Σιμωνίδης  
sit (down), I, καθίζω,  
καθίζομαι  
sit down, I make X, καθ-  
ίζω  
six, ἕξ  
sixth, ἕκτος  
skilled, σοφός  
sky, οὐρανός  
slave, δοῦλος  
sleep, I, καθεύδω  
slow, βραδύς  
slowly, βραδέως  
small, μικρός, ὀλίγος  
smaller, ἐλάττω, μι-  
κρότερος  
smallest, μικρότατος,  
ὀλίγιστος  
so, οὖν, οὕτω(ς)  
so great, τοσοῦτος  
so many, pl. of τοσοῦτος  
so that, ὥστε  
soldier, στρατιώτης  
some, τις  
somehow, πως  
someone, something, τις,  
τι  
something bad, κακόν τι  
somewhere, πού  
somewhere, from, ποθεν  
somewhere, to, ποί  
son, παῖς  
soon, δι' ὀλίγου  
sow, I, σπείρω

Spartan, Σπαρτιάτης  
Spartans, the, Λακεδαι-  
μόνιοι  
speak, I, λέγω  
Sphinx, Σφίγξ  
spirit, θυμός  
spoke, I/they, εἶπον  
spring, κρήνη  
stake, μοχλός  
stand/stood, see ἔστην  
stand up! ἀνάστηθι  
start, I, ὀρμάομαι, ὀρ-  
μάω  
state of being at a loss, the,  
ἀπορία  
statue, εἰκὼν  
stay, I, μένω  
steady, βέβαιος  
steersman, κυβερνήτης  
step, I, βαίνω  
step out, I, ἐκβαίνω  
still, ἔτι  
stone, λίθος  
stone, of, λίθινος  
stood, I, ἔστην  
stood up, I, ἀνέστην  
stop! παῦε  
stop, I, παύω  
stop (doing), I, παύομαι  
stopped, I, ἔστην  
storm, χειμῶν  
story, λόγος, μῦθος  
straight, ὀρθός  
straightway, εὐθύς  
straits, στενά  
stranger, ξένος  
strike, I, βάλλω, κόπτω,  
τύπτω  
strong, ισχυρός  
struggle, ἀγών  
suffer, I, πάσχω  
sun, ἥλιος  
supply, I, παρέχω  
suppose, I, ἐλπίζω  
swift, ταχύς  
swiftly, ταχέως  
sword, ξίφος

## T

take, I, ἄγω, αἰρέω,  
κομίζω, λαμβάνω

take across, to, δια-  
βιβάσαι  
take down (sails), I,  
στέλλω  
take hold of, I, λαμβάνο-  
μαι  
take in, I, εἰσάγω  
take out, I, ἐξαίρω  
talk nonsense, I, φλυᾶρέω  
talk to, I, διαλέγομαι  
tell! εἰπέ  
tell, I, ἀγγέλλω, λέγω  
tell, to, εἰπεῖν  
tell (of), I, φράζω  
tell (someone to do some-  
thing), I, κελεύω  
temple, ἱερόν  
ten, δέκα  
tenth, δέκατος  
terrible, δεινός  
terrible things, δεινά  
terribly, δεινῶς  
terrifying, φοβερός  
than, ἢ  
that, ἐκεῖνος, ὅς, ὅς-  
περ, ὅτι, ὥς, ὥστε  
the, ὁ, ἡ, τό  
theater, θεᾶτρον  
them: see αὐτός  
Themistocles, Θεμισ-  
τοκλῆς  
then, ἐνταῦθα (δὴ),  
ἔπειτα, οὖν, τότε  
there, ἐκεῖ, ἐνθάδε,  
ἐνταῦθα  
there, I am, πάρεμι  
thereafter, ἔπειτα  
Thermopylae, Θερμο-  
πύλαι  
Theseus, Θησεύς  
things: use neuter plural of  
adjective  
think it best, I, δοκεῖ μοι  
third, τρίτος  
this, pl., these, οὗτος  
this here, pl., these here,  
ἕδε  
thither, ἐκεῖσε, ἐνθάδε,  
ἐνταῦθα  
those, pl., of ἐκεῖνος

thread, λίνον  
three, τρεῖς  
three hundred, τρια-  
κόσιοι  
through, διὰ  
throw, I, βάλλω  
throw down, I,  
καταβάλλω  
throw out, I, ἐκβάλλω  
Thunderer, Βρόμιος  
thus, οὕτως(ς)  
time, χρόνος  
time, (right), καιρός  
tin, καττίτερος  
tired, I am, κάμνω  
to, εἰς, παρά, πρὸς  
to Athens, Ἀθήναζε  
to blame (adj.), αἵτιος  
to home, οἶκαδε  
to many parts, πολλα-  
χόσε  
to that place, ἐκεῖσε  
together, ἅμα  
toil, πόνος  
told, I/they, εἶπον  
tomorrow, αὔριον  
too, καί  
top (of), ἄκρος  
top of the mountain/hill,  
ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος  
toward, πρὸς  
tragedy, τραγῳδίᾱ  
transport, to, δια-  
βιβάσαι  
tree, δένδρον  
trireme, τριήρης  
Troy, Τροίᾱ  
true, ἀληθής  
trust, I, πιστεύω  
truth, ἀληθῆ  
truth, in, τῷ ὄντι  
try, I, πειράομαι, πει-  
ράω  
turn, I, τρέπω  
turn (myself), I, τρέπο-  
μαι  
two, δύο  
two hundred, διὰκόσιοι

## U

under, ὑπό

understand, I, ἐπίσ-  
ταμαι, μανθάνω  
unless, εἰ μή  
unmoved, ἀκίνητος  
until, ἕως  
up, ἀνά  
upon, ἐπί, πρὸς  
uproar, θόρυβος  
us, ἡμῶν, ἡμῖν, ἡμᾶς  
use, I, χράομαι

## V

very, μάλα  
very big, μέγιστος  
very good, ἄριστος  
very great, πλείστος  
very many, pl. of πλείσ-  
τος  
very much, μάλιστα  
vex, I, λυπέω  
victim, sacrificial, ἱερεῖον  
victory, νίκη  
virtue, ἀρετή

## W

wage war, I, στρατεύω  
wagon, ἄμαξα  
wait (for), I, μένω  
wake X up, I, ἐγείρω  
walk, I, βαδίζω, βαίνω,  
πορεύομαι  
wall, τεῖχος  
wand, ῥάβδος  
want, I, βούλομαι  
war, πόλεμος  
ward off, I, ἀμύνω  
wares, ὄνια  
watch, I, θεάομαι, θεω-  
ρέω

water, ὕδωρ  
water jar, ὑδρία  
wave, κύμα  
way, ὁδός  
way, in any, πως  
way, in this, ταύτῃ  
we, ἡμεῖς  
weep, I, δακρύω  
well, εὖ, καλῶς  
well, I am, καλῶς ἔχω  
well done! εὖ γε  
what? τί; τίς;  
when, ἐπεὶ, ὅτε, ὥς  
when? πότε;  
whence? πόθεν;  
where, ὅπου  
where? ποῦ;  
where?, from, πόθεν;  
where (in the world)? ποῦ  
γῆς;  
where to? ποῖ;  
whether, εἰ  
which, ὅς, ὅσπερ  
which? τί; τίς;  
while, ἐν ᾧ  
whither? ποῖ;  
who? τίς;  
who, whose, whom,  
which, that, ὅς, ὅσπερ  
whole, ἅπᾱς, πᾶς  
why? τί;  
wife, γυνή  
wild, ἄγριος  
wild beast, θηρίον  
will go, I, εἴμι  
willing, I am, ἐθέλω  
win, I, νικάω  
wind, ἄνεμος  
wine, οἶνος

winter, χειμῶν  
wise, σοφός  
wish, I, βούλομαι,  
ἐθέλω  
with, μετά  
with difficulty, μόλις  
withdraw, I, ἀναχωρέω  
wolf, λύκος  
woman, γυνή  
wonder at, I, θαυμάζω  
word, λόγος  
work, ἔργον, πόνος  
work, I, ἐργάζομαι, πο-  
νέω  
worry, I, φροντίζω  
worse, κακίων  
worst, κάκιστος  
worthy (of), ἄξιος  
wretched, τλήμων  
write, I, γράφω

## X

Xanthias, Ξανθιάς  
Xerxes, Ξέρξης

## Y

year, ἔτος  
yield, I, εἴκω  
you, pl., ὑμεῖς  
you, sing., σὺ  
young man, νεανίας  
your, pl., ὑμέτερος  
your, sing., σός,  
yourself, of, σεαυτοῦ

## Z

Zeus, Ζεύς  
Zeus, O, ὦ Ζεῦ

# GENERAL INDEX

This index is selective. It does not include the names of the family members when they appear in the stories, but it does include them when they appear in essays. Numbers in boldface refer to illustrations or maps.

- A**  
 Abraham, 93, 95, 105, 106, 200  
 Achaemenids, 219  
*Acharnians*, Aristophanes', 7  
 Achilles, 102, 103  
 Acropolis, 117, **117**, 123, 133, 134, 139, 140, **141**, 264, 265, **280**  
 Aegaea, 149  
 Aegean Sea, 91, 110, 118, 119, 201, 220, 221, 268, 272  
 Aegeus, 73, 110, 111  
 Aegina, 201  
 Aeolia, 130  
 Aeolic dialect, 131, 280  
 Aeolus, 130, 131, 149  
 Aeschinus, 183  
 Aeschylus, 221  
*Persae*, 255–256, 259  
 Aetna, Mount, 275  
 Afghanistan, 220  
 Africa, 249  
 Agamemnon, 95, 102, 103  
 agora, 29, **138**, 139  
 Akkad, 220  
 Al Mina, 201  
 Alcaeus, 202  
 Alexander the Great, 219  
 alphabet, 201  
 altar of the ten eponymous heroes of Athens, 139  
 altar of Zeus, 139  
 Amasis, 201  
 Amazon, **83**  
 Amazons, 82  
 Amphiarus, 183  
 Anacreon, 71  
*Anacreontea*, 71  
 animal sacrifice, 60  
 Antimenidas, 202  
 Aphrodite, 60, 81  
 Apollo, 60, 61, 151, 168, 219, 255  
 Apollo Patroos, temple of, 139  
 Apollo, sacrifice to, **168**  
 Archaic Greece, xi  
 Archilochus, 121, 173, 231, 241  
 archon, 118  
 Areopagus, 139, 264  
 Ares, 60  
 Argathionius, 210  
 Ariadne, 73, 85, 86, **91**, 91, **92**, 110  
 Aristagoras, 220, 239  
 aristocracy, 201  
 Aristophanes, x, 7, 16  
*Acharnians*, 7  
 Aristotle, 15, 16  
 army, the Persian, 260  
 Artemis, 60  
 Artemisium, 244  
 Asclepius, 188  
 Asia Minor, 117, 119, 219, 261, 272, 278, 279  
 Asopus River, 247  
 Assembly, Athenian, 29, 43, 118, 139  
 Assyria, 218  
 Assyrian Empire, 218  
 Athena, 60, 81, **81**, 140, 162  
 Nike, temple of, **280**  
 Parthenos, 134  
 Parthenos, statue of, inside the Parthenon, **132**, 134, 140  
 Promachos, statue of, 134, 139, 140, **141**  
 Athenian(s), 3, 6–7, 16, 29, 35, 37, 43, 44, 46, 51, 73, 84, 113, 118, 119, 120, 162, 163, 202, 220, 221, 224, 239, 240, **250**, 251, 255, 261, 264, 265, 267, 271, 272, 273, 275, 280, 281  
 Assembly, 29, 43, 118, 139  
 democracy, ix, 7, 29  
 Empire, 119, 120, 271–273, **272**  
 navy, 202  
 tribute list, **273**  
 Athens, ix, 3, 6, 7, 15, 16, 28, 29, 35, 59, 70, 73, 74, 82, 85, 91, 110, 111, **117**, 117–120, **120**, 123, **132**, **138**, 139–140, 162, 202, 206, 213, 220, 224, 230, 238–240, 271–273, 278  
 city of, 139–140  
 rise of, 238–240  
 history of, 117–120  
 athletic competitions, 163  
 Athos, Mount, 221, 240  
 Atlas, 131  
 Atossa, 255  
 Attic dialect, 131  
 Attica, 6, 28, 82, 117, 118, 119, 221, 239, 240, 243, 244, 251  
 Augustus Caesar, 257  
**B**  
 Babylon, 202, 218, 219, 220  
 Babylonians, 218  
 Bacchylides, x  
 Bardiya, 220  
 Bay of Cadiz, 201  
 Bay of Naples, 201  
 Beatitudes, the, 185  
 Bethlehem, 257, 281  
 Bias of Priene, 70, 211  
 Birth of Jesus, 257, 281

- Black Sea, 82, 117, 201, 271, 272  
 bloodletting, 184  
 Boeotia, 202, 244  
 Boeotians, 239  
 Bouleuterion, 139  
 Britain, 201  
 Brittany, 201  
 Bromios (title of Dionysus), 143  
 Bronze Age, the, 103, 117, 200  
 bull-jumping, 82  
 Byzantium, 271  
**C**  
 Cadiz, Bay of, 201  
 Caesar Augustus, 257  
 Callimachus, 23, 53  
 Calypso, 103  
 Cambyeses, 220  
 Cantharus, **206**  
 Carchemish, 218  
 Caria, 15  
 Carthaginians, 201  
 cavalry, 201  
 cella, 140  
 Chaerestrates, 44  
 Chalcidians, 239  
 Chalcis, 201  
 Charybdis, 171  
 Chilon of Sparta, 61, 70  
 Chios, 272  
 Cholorgus (deme), 28  
 Cholleidae, ix, 6, 28, 187  
 Christ, 257  
 Chryse (place name in *Iliad*), 61  
 Chryses (character in *Iliad*), 60, 61  
 Cilla (place name in *Iliad*), 61  
 Cimon, 119, 271, 275  
 Circe, 149, 150, **151**, **153**  
 classes of citizens, 118  
 Cleisthenes, 118, 239  
 Cleobulus of Lindos, 16, 70  
 Cleomenes, 220, 239  
 Colaeus of Samos, 201, 210  
 Colchis, 15  
 colonies, 201  
 Comedy, New, 35, 93  
 constitutional reforms, 118  
 Corfu, 120  
 Corinth, ix, 120, 201, 202, 233, 239  
 Isthmus of, 240  
 Corinthian ware, 239  
 Corinthians, 239  
 Council of 500, 29  
 Councilors, 29  
*Cratylus*, Plato's, 11  
 creation myths, 81  
 Crete, 73, 74, 82, 91, 110  
 Croesus, x, 219  
 Cyclops, ix, 82, 105, 106, 130  
 Cylon, 238  
 Cyprus, 271, 275  
 Cyrus, 219, 220  
**D**  
 Danube, 220  
 Darius, 118, 119, 220, 221, **221**  
 Dark Age, the, 117, 200  
 Date Chart, xx  
 David, 257  
 Delian League, 119, 271, 272, 273  
 Delos, 119, 271, 272  
 Delphi, 151, 219  
*demarch*, 28  
 deme, 28–29  
 Demeter, 19, 59, 60  
 Democedes, 183, 192  
 democracy, 118, 118, 162, 239, 239, 273  
 Athenian, ix, 7, 29  
 radical, 120  
 Dicaeopolis, ix, x, 6, 7, 16, 28, 59, 120, 139, 202  
 Dionysia, Greater, 163  
 Rural, 29  
 Dionysus, 60, **92**, 143, 156, 163  
 festival of, 37, 59, 255  
 precinct of, 140, 143  
 priest of, 143  
 sanctuary of, 134, 135  
 statue of, 143  
 temple of, 140  
 theater of, 140, **144**  
 doctor, **183**  
 Dorian invasions, 117  
 Doric columns, 140  
**E**  
 Earth Mother, 60  
 economic reforms, 118  
 Egypt, 201, 201, 202, 202, 210, 218, 220, 220, 221, 268, 272  
 Egyptians, 218  
 Eion, 278  
*Electra*, 44  
 emigrations, 201  
 Empire, Assyrian, 218  
 Athenian, 119, 120, 271–273, **272**  
 Lydian, 218  
 Persian, 119, **219**  
 Enyalios, 121  
 Ephesus, 220  
 Ephialtes, 243, 247  
 Epidaurus, 188, 205  
*Epidemics*, 184  
 Epimetheus, 81  
 eponymous heroes of  
 Athens, altar of the ten, 139  
 Ercheia (deme), 29  
 Erechtheum, 140  
 Erechtheus, 140  
 Eretria, 201, 221  
 Etruria, 201  
 Euboea, 185, 201, 202, 221, 233  
 Euripides, 44  
 Europe, 220, 228, 229, 240  
 Eurotas River, 185  
 Eurylochus, 149, 150  
 Eurymedon River, 268, 271  
**F**  
 farmers, Athenian, 6–7  
 Fates, the three, xix  
 festival of Dionysus, 37, 59, 255

festivals, religious, 44,  
162–163  
folk tale, 83  
France, 117  
frieze of the Parthenon,  
162, **162**, 140, 140  
funeral oration, Pericles',  
29, 43, 162

**G**  
Galilee, 257  
gods, 59–61  
Golden Age, 82  
Goliath, 202  
Good Samaritan, the, 241,  
249  
gospels, xi  
Graces, the three, xix  
Greater Dionysia, 163  
Greater Greece, 201  
Greece, Archaic, xi  
renaissance of, 117  
Greece and the Aegean  
Sea, **xxi**  
Greek medicine, 183–184  
mercenaries, 201  
religion, 60  
science, 183–184  
Greeks, Ionian, 218, 220  
Gulf, Persian, 220  
Gyges, 218

**H**  
Halys River, 218, 219  
healing, **183**  
Hector, 103  
Helios, 172  
Hellas, 220, 228, 229,  
240, 278  
Hellas, Pontine district of  
Athenian Empire, 273  
Hephaestion, 131  
Hephaestus, 60, 81  
temple of, 139  
Hera, 60  
Heracles, 82  
Heracitus, 11, 69  
Hercules, Pillars of, 210  
Hermes, 60, 81  
Herodotus, ix, x, 183, 192,

201, 239, 264, 278  
Hesiod, 60, 81, 82, 113, 123,  
202, 203  
*Works and Days*, 60,  
81, 113, 123, 203  
*hippeis*, 7  
Hippias, 118, 239  
Hippocrates, 184  
Hippocratic oath, 184  
Hippolytus, 82  
Hipponax, 93  
history of Athens, 117–120  
Holy Ghost, the, 23  
holy silence, 162  
Homer, x, 60, 82, 83, 102–  
103, 103  
*Iliad*, 61, 102, 103, 117  
*Odyssey*, ix, 82, 102,  
103  
Hope, 82  
hoplites, 29, 201  
House of the Double Axe,  
82  
*hubris*, 255, 260  
Hydarnes, 247, 248, 278

**I**  
Ictinus, 140  
*Iliad*, Homer's, 60, 102,  
103, 117  
Illyria, 15  
"Immortals," the, 234, 243  
India, 220  
Indus River, 220  
Ionia, 103, 118, 183, 218,  
267, 268, 271  
Ionian Greeks, 218, 220  
philosophers, 183  
revolt, 239  
settlements, 117  
Ionians, 118, 220, 221, 267,  
271  
Iran, 218, 219  
Isaiah, 219  
Ischia, 201  
Ismaric wine, 173  
Isthmus of Corinth, 240  
Italy, 201  
Ithaca, 82, 103

**J**  
Jericho, 249  
Jerusalem, 202, 218, 319,  
249  
Jesus, 23, 35, 53, 71, 93,  
121, 173, 185, 203, 231,  
241, 249  
birth of, 257, 281  
Jews, 202, 218, 219, 220  
John, xi  
Joseph, 71, 257, 281  
Judaea, 257  
Judah, the tribes of, 218

**K**  
King of Persia, 118  
knights on the Parthenon  
frieze, 162, **162**  
Knossos, 73, 82

**L**  
labyrinth, 82, 84  
*labyrinthos*, 82  
Lacedaemonians, 233, 244  
Laurium, silver mines at,  
202, 239  
law courts, 139  
League, Delian, 119, 271,  
272, 273  
Peloponnesian, ix, 119,  
239, 273  
Leonidas, 233, 243  
Lesbos, 202, 272  
Levant, 220  
Levi, 173  
Levite, 249  
libations, 60  
Long Walls, 139  
Lost Sheep, Parable of the,  
203  
Luke, xi, 11  
Lydia, 218, 218, 219, x  
Lydian Empire, 218  
Lydians, 218

**M**  
Macedonia, 220, 240  
Maiden, The, 134  
Marathon, 118, 221, 239,  
255

Mardonius, 119, 278  
marriage, 44, 93  
Marseilles (= Massilia),  
201  
Mary, 257, 281  
Massilia (= Marseilles),  
201  
Medes, 218, 219, 221  
Media, 218  
medicine, 184  
medicine, Greek, 183–184  
*medimnos*, 7  
Mediterranean, 202  
Megara, 163, 185  
Memphis, 268  
Menander, 35, 173  
*Twice a Swindler*, 35  
mercenaries, Greek, 201  
merchant ship, **202**  
Mesopotamia, 201, 218,  
218  
metics, 15, 143  
metopes of the Parthenon,  
140  
Metroon, 139  
Miletus, 183, 201, 220, 220  
Thales of, 70, 111, 183,  
218  
Miltiades, 221  
Minos, 73, 82, 84  
Minotaur, 73, 74, **80**, 82,  
84, 85, 110, ix  
Mnesicles, 140  
monarchy, 118, 201  
Mount Aetna, 275  
Mount Athos, 220, 240  
Mount Olympus (home of  
the gods), 60, 81  
Mount Parnes, 28  
Mount Pentelicon, 28  
Munychia, **206**  
Muses, the nine, xix  
Mycalae, 119, 267, 271  
Mycenae, 117  
myth, 81–83  
creation, 81

**N**  
Naucratis, 201  
navy, Athenian, 202

Naxos, 91, 110, 271  
Nazareth, 71, 257  
Nebuchadnezzar, 202, 218  
*Nemesis*, 255  
New Comedy, 35, 93  
New Testament, xi  
Nicoteles, 53  
Nike, 134  
statue of, **132**  
temple of Athena Nike,  
139, **280**  
Nile River, 201, 268  
Nineveh, 218  
nymphs, 60

**O**  
Ocean, 210  
Odysseus, ix, 82, 95, 96,  
103, 104, 105, 106, 130,  
149, **151**, **153**, 171, 172,  
275  
*Odyssey*, Homer's, ix, 82,  
102, 103  
Oedipus, 111  
*Oedipus at Colonus*,  
Sophocles', 111  
*Oikonomikos*, Xenophon's,  
43–44  
*oikos*, 43, 44  
olive tree, sacred, 140  
Olympian gods, the, xix,  
231, 60, 162  
Olympus, Mount, home of  
the gods, 60, 81  
oral poetry, 103  
Orontes River, 201

**P**  
Palestine, 184  
Pallas (Athena), 255  
Pan, 60  
Panathenaea, 163  
Panathenaic procession,  
140, **162**  
Way, 139  
Pandora, 81, **81**, 82  
Parable of the Lost Sheep,  
203  
Parnes, Mount, 28

Parthenon, 123, 139, 139,  
140, 140, **141**  
Parthenon frieze, knights  
on, 162, **162**  
frieze of the, 140, **140**,  
162, **162**  
metopes of the, 140  
Patroclus, 102  
Pausanias, 271  
Peloponnesian invasion,  
6–7  
League, 119, 239, 273,  
ix  
War, ix, x  
war, first, 119  
Peloponnesus, ix, 119, 244,  
251  
Penelope, 103  
*pentacosimedimnoi*, 7  
penteconters, **240**  
Pentelicon, Mount, 28  
Periander of Corinth, 70,  
127  
Pericles, ix, 28, 29, 43, 120,  
**120**, 138, 140, 162, 273  
funeral oration, 29, 43,  
162  
peristyle, 140  
*Persae*, Aeschylus's, 255–  
256, 259  
Persia, 119, 218, 219, 219,  
220, 239, 239, 271, 272  
rise of, 218–221  
Persian army, 260  
Empire, 119, **219**  
Gulf, 220  
soldiers, **119**  
Wars, ix, 118, **230**, 280  
Persians, 118, 119, 140,  
192, 218, 219, 220, 233,  
240, 243, 247, 248, 255,  
260, 261, 264, 268, 275,  
278, 279, 281  
*Persians, The*, Aeschylus's,  
255–256, 259  
Phaeacia, 103  
Phaeacians, 103  
Pharisees, 121, 173, 203  
Pheidias, 134, 140

Philip (in epigram of Callimachus), 53  
 philosophers, Ionian, 183  
 Phocaea, 201  
   Phocaeans, 201  
 Phoebus (= Apollo), 151  
 Phoenicia, 201  
 Phoenician script, 201  
 Phoenicians, 256  
 Phormio, x  
 Phraortes, 218  
 Pillars of Hercules, 210  
 Piraeus, the, 6, 44, **138**,  
   139, 188, 202, **206**, 239  
 pirate ship, **202**  
 Pisistratus, 118, 239  
 Pittacus of Mitylene, 45, 70  
 Plataea, 119, 139, 221, 271,  
   281  
 Plato, ix  
   *Cratylus*, 11  
 Pleiades, 131  
 Pleione, 131  
 Pnyx, 139  
 polis, 28–29, 201  
 Polycrates, 192  
 Polypaides, 249  
 polytheists, 60  
 porticoes, 140  
 Poseidon, 60, 140, 223  
 precinct of Dionysus, 140,  
   143  
 Priam, 103  
 priest, 162  
   of Dionysus, 143  
 procession, 23, 135, 142,  
   143  
 Prometheus, 81  
 Propylaea, 134, 140, 141  
 Psammetichus I, 201, 218  
   II, 201  
 Pseudo-Xenophon, 16  
 Pteria, 219  
 Punjab, the, 220  
 Pylos, 117  
 pyramids, 268  
 Pythion, 184

**Q**  
 Quirinius, 257  
**R**  
 reforms of Solon, 118  
 religion, Greek, 60  
 religious festivals, 44, 162–  
   163  
 renaissance of Greece, 117  
 revolt, Ionian, 239  
 revolution, 118  
 rise of Athens, 238–240  
 ritual, 163  
 Rural Dionysia, 29  
 Russia, 202, 218, 220  
**S**  
 sabbath, 93  
 sacred olive tree, 140  
 sacred serpent, 140  
 sacrifice to Apollo, **168**  
 sacrifice, 162  
   animal, 60  
 sacrificial procession, **23**  
 Saioi, 241  
 Salamis, 119, 223, 239, 239,  
   244, 251, 255, 278  
   battle of, 139  
 Samaritan, 249  
 Samians, 210, 271  
 Samos, 210, 267, 272  
 sanctuary of Dionysus,  
   134, 135  
 Sappho, 131, 202, 280  
 Sardis, 219, 220, 239  
 Satan, 93  
 satyr play, 163  
 sausage-seller, 133  
 science, Greek, 183–184  
 scolion, 203  
 scribes, 121, 173, 203  
 Scylla, 171  
 Scythia, 15, 202, 275  
   Scythians, 220  
 Semonides, 44–45  
 Sermon on the Mount, 151,  
   163, 185, 193  
 serpent, sacred, 140  
 settlements, Ionian, 117  
 seven wise men, the, xi, 70

Sheep, Parable of the Lost,  
   203  
 Sicily, 171, 185, 201, 202,  
   202, 275  
 silence, holy, 162  
 silver mines at Laurium,  
   202, 239  
 Simonides, 151, 261, 281  
 sinners, 203  
 Sirens, 171  
 slavery, 15–16  
 slaves, 15–16, **17**  
 Smintheus (epithet of  
   Apollo), 61  
 soldiers, Persian, **119**  
 Solon of Athens, ix, 70, 118,  
   230, 239  
   reforms of, 118  
 Sophocles, 111  
 Sophocles' *Oedipus at*  
   *Colonus*, 111  
 Spain, 201  
 Sparta, ix, 119, 120, 151,  
   185, 220, 221, 238, 239,  
   271, 273  
 Spartans (Spartiatæ), 243  
 Sphinx, 268  
 statue of Athena  
   Parthenos inside the  
   Parthenon, **132**, 134, 140  
   of Athena Promachos,  
   134, 139, 140, **141**  
   of Dionysus, 143  
   of Athena Nike, **132**  
 stoas, 139  
 Straits of Gibraltar, 201  
 Strategeion, 139  
 Sumer, 220  
 surgery, 184  
 Susa, 192, 255  
 Syracuse, 201  
 Syria, 15, 201, 218, 218,  
   257  
**T**  
 Tartessus, 201, 210  
 tax collectors, 173, 203  
 Telemachus, 103  
 temple of Apollo Patroos,  
   139

of Athena Nike, 139,  
   **280**  
 of Dionysus, 140  
 of Hephaestus, 139  
 of the Jews in  
   Jerusalem, 220  
 temples, 60  
 Tenedus (place name in *Il-*  
   *iad*), 61  
 Thales of Miletus, 70, 111,  
   183, 218  
 Thasos, 184  
 theater of Dionysus, 140,  
   **144**  
 Themistocles, 119, 139,  
   239, 251, 261  
 Theognis, 163, 185, 249  
 Thermopylae, 119, 233,  
   240, 243, 244, 247  
 Theseus, ix, 73, 74, **80**, 82,  
   84, 85, 86, **91**, 91, 110,  
   111, 117  
 Thessaly, 240, 278  
*thetes*, 7  
 Thirty Years' Peace, 119,  
   120  
 Tholos, 139  
 Thrace, 15, 220, 220  
   Thracians, 241  
 Thucydides, ix, x, 6, 29, 82  
 Thunderer (title of Diony-  
   sus), 143  
 trade, 200–203  
 tragedies, 163  
 travel, 200–203  
 tribes of Judah, the, 218  
 tribute list, Athenian, **273**  
 tribute, annual, 272  
 triremes, 240  
 Trojan War, 82, 102, 117  
 Trojans, 103  
 Troy, 82, 95, 102, 103, 105  
*Twice a Swindler*,  
   Menander's, 35  
 tyranny, 118, 238  
**W**  
 War, Peloponnesian, ix, x  
   first Peloponnesian, 119  
   Trojan, 82, 102, 117  
 Wars, Persian, ix, 118, **230**,  
   280  
 Widow's Mite, the, 231  
 wise men, the seven, xi, 70

women, 43–45  
*Works and Days*, Hesiod's,  
   60, 81, 113, 123, 203  
**X**  
 Xanthias, 16  
 Xanthippus, 28  
 Xenophon, 43  
   *Oikonomikos*, 43–44  
 Xerxes, 119, 221, **221**, 228,  
   229, 233, 239, 240, 243,  
   251, 255, 260, 265, 271,  
   278, 279, 281  
**Z**  
 Zea, **206**  
 Zephyr, 130  
*zeugitai*, 7  
 Zeus, 3, 25, **59**, 60, 123, 134,  
   166, 172, 175, 195  
   father of the  
   Olympians, 231  
   the Cloud-Gatherer,  
   81, 82  
   the Father, 60

## LIST OF MAPS

Page

- xxi Greece and the Aegean Sea. From H. D. Amos and A. G. P. Lang, *These Were the Greeks*, © 1979 by Nelson Thornes, Cheltenham, United Kingdom, page 5.
- 28 Attica and surroundings. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 25.
- 132 αἱ Ἀθῆναι. From Chester G. Starr, *A History of the Ancient World*, Oxford University Press, 1965, page 332.
- 138 The Piraeus and Athens in the time of Pericles. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 27.
- 219 The Persian Empire. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 21.
- 230 The Persian Wars. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 22.
- 258 ἡ ἐν τῇ Σαλαμῖνι μάχη. From J. S. Morrison, J. F. Coates, and N. B. Rankov, *The Athenian Trireme: The History and Reconstruction of an Ancient Greek Warship*, Cambridge, 2nd edition, 2000, page 57.
- 272 The Athenian Empire. From *The Oxford History of the Classical World*, ed. by J. Boardman, J. Griffin, and O. Murray, © 1985 by Oxford University Press, page 134.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The material on writing Greek letters on pages xvi–xviii is taken from Eugene Van Ness Goetchius's *The Language of the New Testament*, originally published in 1965 by Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, and now available from Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, NJ.

The Greek words and the names of the Muses, Graces, and Fates on pages xviii–xix are taken from Jane Gray Carter's *Little Studies in Greek*, published by Silver, Burdett and Company, New York, 1927, pages 63–70 and 101–102.

Most of the passages in the Classical Greek readings and some of the quotations from Greek authors in the stories are taken from Loeb Classical Library editions (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press) with permission of the publishers and the Trustees of the Loeb Classical Library.

The selections from the Gospel of Luke are taken from *The Greek New Testament*, Fourth Revised Edition, edited by Barbara Aland, Kurt Aland, Johannes Karavidopoulos, Carlo M. Martini, and Bruce M. Metzger, © 1993 Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, Stuttgart (available in the U.S.A. from the American Bible Society, 1865 Broadway, New York, NY 10023).

The passages from Aeschylus's *Persians* on pages 255–256 are taken from Anthony J. Podlecki, *The Persians by Aeschylus*, Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1970.

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Page

- xi Myrrhine, Melissa, and Argus. (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 2 The Moschophoros. Athens, Acropolis Museum. (Photo: Alison Frantz).
- 7 Detail of an Attic black figure cup. Berlin, Antikenmuseum, Staatliche Museen F 1806. (Photo: Museum).
- 8 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 11 Farmer. From *Aristophanic Comedy* by K. J. Dover, © 1972 by B. T. Batsford, Ltd. (Photo: D. A. Harrisiades).
- 12 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 16 Detail of an Attic red figure stamnos. Cambridge, England, Fitzwilliam Museum GR.9-1917. (Photo: Museum).
- 17 Clay plaque. Berlin, Staatliche Museen. (After *Antike Denkmäler* I, pl. 8.7).
- 17 Detail of an Attic red figure column crater. Ht. 17 3/4 in. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 07.286.74, Rogers Fund 1907. (Photo: Museum).
- 18 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 23 Detail of an Attic red figure lekythos. Ht. 31 cm (12 3/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 13.195, Francis Bartlett Donation. (Photo: Museum).
- 24 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 30 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 35 Detail of an Attic red figure drinking cup. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 38.11.2, Fletcher Fund, 1938. (Photo: Museum).
- 36 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 43 Interior of an Attic red figure cylix. Ht. 6 1/8 in.; di. 14 3/8 in. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 06.1021.167, Rogers Fund, 1906.
- 45 Attic black figure hydria. Ht. 53 cm (20 7/8 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 61.195, William Francis Warden Fund. (Photo: Museum).
- 46 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 51 Detail of an Attic black figure lekythos. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 31.11.10, Fletcher Fund, 1931. (Photo: Museum).
- 52 Ceramic knucklebone. Vase E804. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 54 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 59 Bronze statue of Zeus. Athens, National Archaeological Museum 15161. (Photo: Museum).
- 61 Attic kylix, white ground interior. Ht. 6.2 cm. (2 1/2 in.); W. 21.7 cm. (8 1/2 in.). All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 1979.11.15, Fletcher and Rogers Funds, 1979. (Photo: Museum).
- 62 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 72 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 80 Attic red figure cylix. Di. 20.4 cm. (8 1/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 68.291, Helen and Alice Colburn Fund. (Photo: Museum).
- 81 Detail of an Attic red figure calyx-crater. Vase E467. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 83 Apulian situla. Ht. 30.5 cm. (12 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 1991.242, Gift of Dr. and Mrs. Jerome M. Eisenberg. (Photo: Museum).

- 84 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 91 Detail of an early Apulian red figure stamnos. Ht. 30 cm (11 13/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 00.349a, Henry Lillie Pierce Fund. (Photo: Museum).  
 92 Detail of a Faliscan red figure calyx-krater. Ht. 49.1 cm. (19 5/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 1970.487, John H. and Ernestine A. Payne Fund. (Photo: Museum).  
 94 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 102 Bust of Homer. Sculpture 1825. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).  
 104 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 112 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 117 The Acropolis of Athens. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
 119 Relief with Persian guards. Courtesy of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago P-848b/P. 58360/N. 38245. (Photo: Museum).  
 120 Bust of Pericles. Sculpture 549. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).  
 120 Reconstruction of house. From Peter Connolly and Hazel Dodge, *The Ancient City: Life in Classical Athens & Rome*, Oxford University Press, 1998, page 49.  
 121 Floor plan of house. From Peter Connolly and Hazel Dodge, *The Ancient City: Life in Classical Athens & Rome*, Oxford University Press, 1998, page 48.  
 122 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 132 Model of Athena Parthenos. With permission of the Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, Canada 962.228.16. © ROM. (Photo: Museum).  
 138 Model of the Agora. Athens, American School of Classical Studies at Athens. (Photo: American School).  
 140 Relief of frieze from the Parthenon. Paris, Musée du Louvre. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
 141 Model of the Athenian Acropolis. With permission of the Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, Canada 956.118. © ROM. (Photo: Museum).  
 141 Parthenon. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
 142 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 144 Theater of Dionysus. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
 151 Detail of Attic red figure calyx krater. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 41.83, gift of Amelia E. White, 1941. (Photo: Museum).  
 153 Boeotian skyphos. Oxford, Ashmolean Museum  
 156 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 162 Relief of frieze from the Parthenon. West Frieze 1.2–3. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).  
 164 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 168 Detail of Attic red figure bell krater. Frankfurt, Archäologisches Museum. (Photo: Museum).  
 174 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 183 Relief. Deutsches Archäologisches Institut Athen NM 3312. (Photo: Wagner).  
 186 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 194 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 202 Detail of an Attic black figure cup. Vase B8436. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).  
 204 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 206 Piraeus. Loyola University Chicago Archives. (Photo: Raymond V. Schoder, S.J.).

- 211 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 212 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 221 Relief. Courtesy of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago. (Photo: Persepolis Expedition of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago).  
 222 Site of the battle of Salamis. Loyola University Chicago Archives. (Photo: Raymond V. Schoder, S.J.).  
 232 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 240 Detail of Attic black (and red) figure cup. Vase E2. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).  
 242 Lion of Chaeronea. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
 250 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 266 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 273 Relief. Athens, National Archaeological Museum. From *The Oxford History of the Classical World*, ed. by J. Boardman, J. Griffin, and O. Murray, © 1985 by Oxford University Press, page 137 (after J. Kirchner, *Imagines Inscriptionum Atticarum*, 1935, pl. 15).  
 274 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
 280 Temple of Athena Nike. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
 286 Attic red figure oinochoe. Ht. 19.3 cm. (7 5/8 in.); with handle 24 cm. (9 7/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 13.196, Francis Bartlett Donation. (Photo: Museum).